

# Second edition

# Oxford Practice Grammar

with answers John Eastwood

Oxford University Press

Oxford University Press Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai Nairobi Sao Paulo Shanghai Singapore Taipei Tokyo Toronto

with an associated company in Berlin

Oxford and Oxford English are trade marks of Oxford University Press.

ISBN 0 19 431369 7 (with answers)
ISBN 0 19 431427 8 (with answers with CD-ROM)
ISBN 0 19 431370 0 (without answers)

© Oxford University Press 1992, 1999

First published 1992 (reprinted nine times) Second edition 1999 Tenth impression 2002 Printing ref. (last digit): 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Oxford University Press.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Illustrated by Richard Coggan Designed by Richard Morris, Stonesfield Design Typeset by Tradespools Ltd., Frome, Somerset Printed in China

#### **Thanks**

The author and publisher would like to thank:

all the teachers in the United Kingdom and Italy who discussed this book in the early stages of its development;

the teachers and students of the following schools who used and commented on the pilot units of the first edition:

The Bell School of Languages, Bowthorpe Hall, Norwich

The Eckersley School of English, Oxford Eurocentre, Brighton Eurocentre, London Victoria King's School of English, Bournemouth Academia Lacunza -International House, San Sebastian, Spain

the teachers and students of the following schools who used and commented on the first edition of this book:

Anglo World, Oxford Central School of English, London Linguarama, Birmingham

Thomas Lavelle for his work on the American English appendix;

Rod Bolitho for his valuable advice on what students need from a grammar book.

The author would also like to thank:

Stewart Melluish, David Lott and Helen Ward of Oxford University Press for their expertise and their commitment in guiding this project from its earliest stages to the production of this new edition;

Sheila Eastwood for all her help and encouragement.

# Contents

Introduction *page vi* Key to symbols *vii* Starting test *viii* 

#### Words and sentences

- 1 Word classes: nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc 2
- 2 Sentence structure: subject, verb, object, etc 4
- 3 Direct and indirect objects 6

#### Verbs

- 4 The present continuous 8
- 5 The present simple 10
- 6 Present continuous or simple? 12
- 7 State verbs and action verbs 14 Test 1: Present tenses 16
- 8 The past simple 18
- 9 The past continuous 20
- 10 Past continuous or simple? 22
  Test 2: Past simple and past continuous 24
- 11 The present perfect (1) 26
- 12 The present perfect (2): **just, already, yet; for** and **since** 28
- 13 The present perfect (3): ever, this week, etc 30
- 14 Present perfect or past simple? (1) 32
- 15 Present perfect or past simple? (2) 34 Test 3: Present perfect and past simple 36
- 16 The present perfect continuous 38
- 17 Present perfect continuous or simple? 40
- 18 The past perfect 42
- 19 Review of the past simple, continuous and perfect 44
- 20 The past perfect continuous 46 Test 4: Past and perfect tenses 48
- 21 Review of present and past tenses *50* Test 5: Present and past tenses *54*
- 22 Introduction to the future 56
- 23 Will and shall 58
- 24 Be going to 60
- 25 Will and be going to 62
- 26 Present tenses for the future 64
- 27 When I get there, before you leave, etc 66 Test 6: The future with will, be going to and present tenses 68

- 28 Will be doing 70
- 29 Will have done and was going to 72
- Review of the future 74
  Test 7: The future 76
- 31 The verb **have** 78
- 32 Short forms, e.g it's, don't 80
- 33 Emphatic do 82

### Questions, negatives and answers

- 34 Yes/no questions 84
- 35 Short answers, e.g. Yes, it is. 86
- 36 Wh-questions 88
- 37 Subject/object questions 90
- 38 Prepositions in wh-questions 92
- 39 **Who, what** or **which?** 94 Test 8: Questions 96
- 40 Negative statements 98
- 41 Negative questions 100
- 42 Question tags, e.g. **isn't it?** 102
- **43 So/Neither do I** and **I think so** *104* Test 9: Questions, negatives and answers *106*

#### Modal verbs

- 44 Ability: can, could and be able to 108
- 45 Permission: can, may, could and be allowed to 110
- 46 Possibility and certainty: may, might, could, must, etc 112
- 47 Necessity: must and have to 114
- 48 Necessity: **mustn't, needn't,** etc 116
- 49 Should, ought to, had better and be supposed to 118
- 50 Asking people to do things 120
- 51 Suggestions, offers and invitations 122
- 52 Will, would, shall and should 124
- **13 It may/could/must have been,** etc *126* Test 10: Modal verbs *128*

#### The passive

- 54 Passive verb forms 130
- 55 Active and passive (1) 132
- 56 Active and passive (2) 134
- 57 Special passive structures *136*
- 58 Have something done 73\$
- **To be done** and **being done** *140* Test 11: The passive *142*

#### The infinitive and the ing-form

- 60 Verb + to-infinitive 144
- 61 Verb + ing-form *146*
- 62 Verb + to-infinitive or verb + ing-form? 148
- 63 Like, start, etc *150*
- **Remember, regret, try,** etc *152*Test 12: Verb + to-infinitive or ing-form *154*
- 65 Verb + object + to-infinitive or ing-form 156
- 66 Question word + to-infinitive 158
- 67 Adjective + to-infinitive 160
- 68 **For** with the to-infinitive 162
- 69 The infinitive with and without to 164
- 70 Verb/Adjective + preposition + ing-form 166
- 71 Afraid to do or afraid of doing? 168
- 72 Used to do and be used to doing 170
- 73 Preposition or linking word + ing-form 172
- 74 See it happen or see it happening? 174
- 75 Some structures with the ing-form *176*Test 13: The infinitive and the ing-form *178*

## Nouns and articles (a/an and the)

- 76 **Ship** and **water:** countable and uncountable nouns *180*
- 77 A carton of milk, a piece of information, etc 182
- 78 Nouns that can be either countable or uncountable *184*
- 79 Agreement 186
- 80 Singular or plural? 188
- 81 Pair nouns and group nouns 190
- 82 Two nouns together *192* Test 14: Nouns and agreement *194*
- 83 **A/an** and **the** (1) 196
- 84 **A/an** and **the** (2) 198
- 85 **A/an, one** and **some** 200
- 86 Cars or the cars? 202
- 87 Prison, school, bed, etc 204
- 88 On Friday, for lunch, etc 206
- 89 Quite a, such a, what a, etc 208
- 90 Place names and the 210 Test 15: A/an and the 214

## This, my, some, a lot of, all, etc

- 91 This, that, these and those 216
- 92 My, your, etc and mine, yours, etc 218
- 93 The possessive form and of 220
- 94 Some and any 222
- 95 A lot of, many, much, (a) few and (a) little 224
- 96 All, half, most, some, no and none 226
- 97 Every, each, whole, both, either and neither 228

Test 16: This, my, some, a lot of, all, etc 230

#### **Pronouns**

- 98 Personal pronouns, e.g. I, you 232
- 99 **There** and **it** 234
- 100 Reflexive pronouns 236
- 101 Emphatic pronouns and each other 238
- 102 The pronoun **one/ones** 240
- **103 Everyone, something,** etc 242 Test 17: Pronouns 244

# Adjectives and adverbs

- 104 Adjectives 246
- 105 The order of adjectives 248
- 106 **The old, the rich, etc** 250
- 107 Interesting and interested 252
- 108 Adjective or adverb? (1) 254
- 109 Adjective or adverb? (2) 256 Test 18: Adjectives and adverbs 258
- 110 Comparative and superlative forms 260
- 111 Comparative and superlative patterns (1) 264
- 112 Comparative and superlative patterns (2) 266 Test 19: Comparative and superlative 268
- 113 Adverbs and word order 270
- 114 Yet, still and already 274
- 115 Adverbs of degree, e.g. very, quite 276
- 116 Quite and rather 278
- 117 **Too** and **enough** 280

Test 20: Adverbs and word order 282

#### **Prepositions**

- 118 Prepositions of place 284
- 119 In, on and at (place) 288
- 120 In, **on** and **at** (time) 290
- 121 For, since, ago and before 292
- 122 During or while? By or until? As or like? 294
- 123 Preposition + noun, e.g. on holiday 296
- 124 Noun + preposition, e.g. trouble with 298
- 125 Adjective + preposition, e.g. **proud of** 300 Test 21: Prepositions 302

#### Verbs with prepositions and adverbs

- 126 Prepositional verbs, e.g. wait for 304
- 127 Verb + object + preposition 306
- 128 Phrasal verbs (1) 308
- 129 Phrasal verbs (2) 310
- 130 Phrasal verbs (3) 312
- 131 Verb + adverb + preposition 314

  Test 22: Verbs with prepositions and adverbs 316

#### Reported speech

- 132 Direct speech and reported speech 318
- 133 Reported speech: person, place and time 320
- 134 Reported speech: the tense change 322
- 135 Reported questions 324
- 136 Reported requests, offers, etc 326 Test 23: Reported speech 328

## Relative clauses

- 137 Relative clauses with who, which and that 330
- 138 The relative pronoun as object 332
- 139 Prepositions in relative clauses 334
- 140 Relative structures with **whose**, **what** and **it** 336
- 141 The use of relative clauses 338
- 142 Relative pronouns and relative adverbs 340
- 143 Relative clauses: participle and to-infinitive *342* 
  - Test 24: Relative clauses 344

#### Conditionals and wish

- 144 Conditionals (1) 346
- 145 Conditionals (2) 348
- 146 Conditionals (3) 350
- 147 Review of conditionals 352
- 148 If, when, unless and in case 354
- 149 Wish and if only 356
  - Test 25: Conditionals and wish 358

## Linking words

- 150 But, although and in spite of 360
- 151 To, in order to, so that and for 362
- 152 Review of linking words 364
- 153 Links across sentences 366

#### **Appendices**

- 1 Word formation 368
- 2 The spelling of endings 370
- 3 Punctuation 372
- 4 Pronunciation 374 (missing)
- 5 American English 377
- 6 Irregular verbs 383

#### Key to the starting test 385

## Key to the exercises 386

#### Key to the tests 414

#### Index 425 (missing)

# Introduction

#### Who is this book for?

Oxford Practice Grammar is for students of English at a middle or 'intermediate' level. This means students who are no longer beginners but who are not yet expert in English. The book is suitable for those studying for the Cambridge First Certificate in English. It can be used by students attending classes or by someone working alone.

#### What does the book consist of?

The book consists of 153 units, each on a grammatical topic. The units cover the main areas of English grammar. Special attention is given to those points which are often a problem for learners: the meaning of the different verb forms, the use of the passive, conditionals, prepositions and so on.

Many units contrast two or more different structures such as the present perfect and past simple (Units 14-15). There are also a number of review units. The emphasis through the whole book is on the meaning and use of the forms in situations. Most units start with a dialogue, or sometimes a text, which shows how the forms are used in a realistic context.

There are also 25 tests. These come after each group of units and cover the area of grammar dealt with in those units.

Each unit consists of an explanation of the grammar point followed by a number of exercises. Almost all units cover two pages. The explanations are on the left-hand page, and the exercises are on the right-hand page. There are a few four-page units, with two pages of explanation and two pages of exercises.

The examples used to illustrate the explanations are mostly in everyday conversational English, except when the structure is more typical of a formal or written style (e.g. Unit 75B).

There are also appendices on a number of other topics, including word formation, American English and irregular verbs.

#### What's new about this edition?

There have been many changes in both the content and design of the book.

The number of units has been increased from 120 to 153. There are more two-page units and fewer four-page units.

The 25 tests are a new feature. There is also a Starting test to help students find out what they need to study.

There are many more dialogues and illustrations on the explanation pages. Many of the examples and situations are new.

• There are many new exercises and more different types of exercise.

The number of appendices has been increased from two to six.

This new edition features a group of characters whose lives are the basis for many of the situations in both the explanations and the exercises. (But you can still do the units in any order.)

#### How should the book be used?

There are various ways of using the book. If you know that you have problems with particular points of grammar, then you can start with the relevant units. The contents list and index will help you find what you want. Or you can do the Starting test (see page *viii*) and then use the results to decide which parts of the book to concentrate on. Or you can start at the beginning of the book and work through to the end, although the grammar topics are not ordered according to their level of difficulty.

When you study a unit, start with the explanation page and then go on to the exercises. Often you can study a part of the explanation and then do one of the exercises. The letter after each exercise title, e.g. (A), tells you which part of the explanation the exercise relates to. If you have made mistakes in your answers to the exercises, look back at the explanation.

#### What about the tests?

There are 25 tests at intervals through the book. You can do a test after you have worked through a group of units. At the beginning of each test you are told which units are being tested.

The tests do two things. Firstly, they enable you to find out how well you have mastered the grammar. (If you get things wrong, you can go back to the relevant unit or part of a unit.) Secondly, the tests give you practice in handling exam-type questions. Many of the test questions are similar to those used in the Cambridge First Certificate Use of English Paper.

#### What's the best way to learn grammar?

It is usually more effective to look at examples of English rather than to read statements about it. The explanations of grammar in this book are descriptions of how English works; they are a guide to help you understand, not 'rules' to be memorized. The important thing is the language itself. If you are learning about the present perfect continuous, for example, it is helpful to memorize a sentence like *We've been waiting here for twenty minutes* and to imagine a situation at a bus stop like the one in Unit 16A. The explanation - that the action happens over a period of time lasting up to the present - is designed to help towards an understanding of the grammar point. It is not intended that you should write it down or memorize it.

Active learning will help you more than passive reading, so it is important to do the exercises and to check your answers.

Another way of actively learning grammar is to write down sentences you see or hear which contain examples of the grammar you are studying. You may come across such sentences in English books or newspapers, on television or on the Internet. You may meet English speakers. For example, someone may ask you *How long have you been living here?* Later you could note down this sentence as a useful example of the present perfect continuous. It is also a good idea to collect examples with a personal relevance like *I've been learning English for three years*.

# Key to symbols

The symbol / (oblique stroke) between two words means that either word is possible. *I may/might go* means that / *may go* and *I might go* are both possible. In exercise questions this symbol is also used to separate words or phrases which need to be used in the answer.

Brackets () around a word or phrase mean that it can be left out. *There's* (some) milk in the fridge means that there are two possible sentences: *There's* some milk in the fridge and *There's* milk in the fridge.

The symbol ~ means that there is a change of speaker. In the example *How are you?* ~ *I'm fine, thanks*, the two sentences are spoken by different people.

The symbol > means that you can go to another place in the book for more information. > 7 means that you can find out more in Unit 7.

The symbol ▶ in an exercise means an example.

# Starting test

This test will help you to find out which parts of the book you need to spend most time on. You don't have to do the whole test at once - you could do numbers 2 to 22 first to test your knowledge of verbs. Choose the correct answer - a), b), c) or d).

Some of the questions are quite difficult, so don't worry if you get them wrong. This book was written to help you get them right in future!

W	ords and sentences
1	We gave a meal. a) at the visitors b) for the visitors c) the visitors d) to the visitors
Ve	erbs
2	I'm busy at the momenton the computer. a) I work b) I'm work c) I'm working d) I working
3	My friend the answer to the question. a) is know b) know c) knowing d) knows
4	I think I'll buy these shoesreally well.  a) They fit b) They have fit c) They're fitting d) They were fitting
5	Where the car? a) did you park b) did you parked c) parked you d) you parked
6	At nine o'clock yesterday morning we
7	When I looked round the door, the baby quietly. a) is sleeping b) slept c) was sleeping d) were sleeping
8	Here's my report it at last. a) I finish b) I finished c) I'm finished d) I've finished
9	I've made some coffee. It's in the kitchen. a) ever b) just c) never d) yet
10	We to Ireland for our holidays last year. a) goes b) going c) have gone d) went
11	Robert ill for three weeks. He's still in hospital. a) had been b) has been c) is d) was
12	My arms are aching now because since two o'clock. a) I'm swimming b) I swam c) I swim d) I've been swimming
13	I'm very tired. over four hundred miles today. a) I drive b) I'm driving c) I've been driving d) I've driven
14	When Martin the car, he took it out for a drive. a) had repaired b) has repaired c) repaired d) was repairing
15	Janet was out of breath because a) she'd been running b) she did run c) she's been running d) she's run
16	Don't worry. I be here to help you. a) not b) shall c) willn't d) won't

# 1. Word classes: nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc

#### **A** Introduction



Look at the different kinds of word in this sentence.

Pronoun	Verb	Detern	niner	Adjective	Noun	Preposition	Noun	Adverb
I	have	an		importan	t conference	at	work	tomorrow,
Linking w	ord F	ronoun	Verb	Adverb	Adjective			
So	]	[	am	rather	busy.			

#### B What kind of word?

There are eight different kinds of word in English. They are called 'word classes' or 'parts of speech'. Here are some examples from the conversations in the cafe. The numbers after the examples tell you which units in the book give you more information. 1 Verb: have, am, is, would, like, come, are, sitting, look 4-75

Noun: conference, work, coffee, party, Saturday, Jessica, friends, corner 76-82

Adjective: **important, busy, good, cheap** 104-109 Adverb: **tomorrow, rather, really, here** 113-117

Preposition: at, to, on, in 118-125 Determiner: an, this, our, the 83-97

Pronoun: I, it, you 98-103 Linking word: so, and 150-153

#### C Words in sentences

Some words can belong to different classes depending on how they are used in a sentence.

VERBS NOUNS

Can I look at your photos? We I like the look of that coat.

work on Saturday morning. I'll be at work tomorrow.

## 1 What kind of word? (B)

Read this paragraph and then say which word class each <u>underlined</u> word belongs to. To help you decide, you can look back at the examples in B.

Andrew didn't go to the <u>cafe</u> with the other students. Rachel told him they were going <u>there</u>, but he wanted to <u>finish</u> his work. Andrew isn't very <u>sociable</u>. He stays in his room and concentrates <u>totally</u> on his studies. He's an excellent student, but he doesn't have much fun.

?	to preposition	7 sociable	
?	cafe noun	8 in	
1	the	9 and	
	told		
3	they	11 an	
4	there	12 excellent	
5	he	13 but	
6	finish	14 fun	

#### 2 What kind of word? (B)

Read this paragraph and then write the words in the spaces below. Write the first three verbs under 'Verb', and so on. Do not write the same word more than once.

Henry thinks Claire is wonderful. He loves her madly, and he dreams of marrying her, but unfortunately he is rather old for her. Today they are at a cafe with their friends Sarah and Mark, so Henry can't get romantic with Claire. But he might buy her some flowers later.

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
think	Henry		
Preposition	Determiner	Pronoun	Linking word

#### 3 Words in sentences (C)

Is the underlined word a verb, a noun or an adjective?

?	Shall we go for a <u>walk</u> ?	noun
?	Shall we walk into town?	verb

- 1 Laura wanted to talk to Rita.
- 2 Laura wanted a talk with Rita.
- 3 The windows aren't very clean.
- 4 Doesn't anyone <u>clean</u> the windows?
- 5 We went to a fabulous show in New York.
- 6 Laura wanted to show Rita her photos.
- 7 Henry thought Claire looked beautiful.
- 8 A strange thought came into Emma's head.
- 9 Sarah is feeling quite tired now.
- 10 Studying all night had tired Andrew out.

# 2. Sentence structure: subject, verb, object, etc



#### Sentence structure

The parts of a sentence are the subject, verb, object, complement and adverbial. A statement begins with the subject and the verb. There are five main structures which we can use to make a simple statement.

- 1 SUBJECT VERB
  My arms are aching.
  Something happened.
- 2 SUBJECT VERB OBJECT

  / need a rest.

  Five people are moving the piano.

  The subject and object can be a pronoun (e.g. I) or a noun phrase (e.g. the piano).
- 3 SUBJECT VERB COMPLEMENT

  This piano is heavy.

  It was a big problem.

  The complement can be an adjective (e.g. heavy) or a noun phrase (e.g. a big problem).

  The complement often comes after be. It can also come after appear, become, get, feel, look, seem, stay or sound. For adjectives and word order see Unit 104B.
- 4 SUBJECT VERB ADVERBIAL

  It is on my foot.

  Their house is nearby.

  An adverbial can be a prepositional phrase (e.g. on my foot) or an adverb (e.g. nearby).
- 5 SUBJECT VERB OBJECT OBJECT

  It s giving me backache.

  David bought Melanie a present.

  We use two objects after verbs like give and send (see Unit 3).

#### **B** Adverbials

We can add adverbials to all the five main structures. My arms are aching terribly. I really need a rest. Of course this piano is heavy. Fortunately their house is nearby. To everyone's surprise, David actually bought Melanie a present yesterday.

34, 36 Word order in questions 113 Adverbs and word order page 377 Seem, look etc in American English

#### 1 Parts of the sentence (A)

Mike and Harriet are on holiday. They have written a postcard to David and Melanie. Look at each <u>underlined</u> phrase and say what part of the sentence it is: subject, verb, object, complement or adverbial.

- ► We're having a great time. *object*
- 1 The weather is marvellous.
- 2 We really enjoy camping.
- 3 It's great fun.

- 4 We're on a farm.
- 5 We like this place.
- 6 The scenery is beautiful.

#### 2 Sentence structure (A)

After moving the piano, the five friends had a rest and a cup of tea.

Look at this part of their conversation and then write the letters a)- e) in the correct place.

- a David: That was a difficult job.
- b Tom: I agree.
- c Mike: I'm on my deathbed.
- d David: Someone should give us a medal.
- e Harriet: I've made some more tea.
- ➤ Subject + verb
- 1 Subject + verb + object
- 2 Subject + verb + complement
- 3 Subject + verb + adverbial
- 4 Subject + verb + object + object .........

#### 3 Word order (A)

Put the words in the correct order and write the statements.

▶	is / Melanie / very nice	Melanie is very nice.
1	football / likes / Tom	
2	an accident / David / had	
3	moved / the piano / we	
4	a tall woman / Harriet / is	
5	sat / on the floor / everyone	
6	gave / some help / Mike's friends / him	

#### 4 Adverbials (B)

These sentences are from a news report. Write down the two adverbials in each sentence. Each adverbial is a prepositional phrase or an adverb.

- ► Prince Charles opened a new sports in Stoke centre in Stoke yesterday. in Stoke yesterday
- 1 He also spoke with several young people.
- 2 The sports centre was first planned in 1994.
- 3 Naturally, the local council could not finance the project without help.
- 4 Fortunately, they managed to obtain money from the National Lottery.

# 3 Direct and indirect objects



#### A Introduction

Henry gave Claire some flowers. Here the verb give has two objects. Claire is the indirect object, the person receiving something. Some flowers is the direct object, the thing that someone gives.

Henry gave some flowers to Claire. Here give has a direct object (some flowers) and a phrase with to. To comes before Claire, the person receiving something.

Here are some more examples of the two structures.

INDIRECT OBJECT DIRECT OBJECT

Emma gave Rachel a CD.

I'll send my cousin a postcard.

We bought all the children an ice-cream.

Emma gave the CD I'll send a postcard We bought ice-creams

DIRECT OBJECT

to Rachel. to my cousin. for all the children.

PHRASE WITH TO/FOR

#### B To or for?

We give something to someone, and we buy something for someone.

We can use to with these verbs: bring, feed, give, hand, lend, offer, owe, pass, pay, post, promise, read, sell, send, show, take, teach, tell, throw, write

Vicky paid the money to the cashier, OR Vicky paid the cashier the money. Let me read this news item to you. OR Let me read you this news item. We showed the photos to David, OR We showed David the photos.

We can use for with these verbs: book, bring, build, buy, choose, cook, fetch, find, get, leave, make, order, pick, reserve, save

They found a spare ticket **for** me. OR They found me a spare ticket. I've saved a seat **for** you. OR I've saved you a seat.

Melanie is making a cake **for** David, OR Melanie is making David a cake.

## C Give + pronoun

Sometimes there is a pronoun and a noun after a verb such as **give.** The pronoun usually comes before the noun.

Henry is very fond of Claire. He gave her some flowers.

We use **her** because Claire is mentioned earlier. **Her** comes before **some flowers**.

Henry bought some flowers. He gave them to Claire.

We use them because the flowers are mentioned earlier. Them comes before Claire.

#### I Give (A)

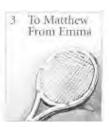
Look at the Christmas presents and write sentences about them.

Put one of these words at the end of each sentence: necklace, scarf, sweater, tennis racket, watch











► Harriet gave Mike a watch.

#### Indirect object or to? (A)

Write the information in one sentence. Put the <u>underlined</u> part at the end of the sentence. Sometimes you need *to*.

- ? Daniel lent something to Vicky. It was his calculator.
- ? Mark sent a message. It was to his boss.
- 1 Emma sold her bike. Her sister bought it.
- 2 Tom told the joke. He told <u>all his friends</u>.
- 3 Melanie gave some help. She helped her neighbour.
- 4 Ilona wrote to her teacher. She wrote a letter.
- → Daniel *lent Vicky his calculator*.
- → Mark sent a message to his boss.
- → Emma
- → Tom .....
- → Melanie
- → Merame
- → Ilona .....

#### 3 To or for? (B)

Mark's boss at Zedco is Mr Atkins. He is telling people to do things. Put in to or for.

- ? Give these papers *to* my secretary.
- 3 Don't show these plans4 Leave a message
- anyone.

- ? Could you make some coffee for us?
  - me, could you?
- 5 Fetch the file

my secretary. me, could you?

- Book a flight
   Can you post this cheque
- ..the hotel?
- 6 Write a memo

.....

all managers.

#### 4, Give + pronoun (C)

Complete each answer using the words in brackets. Sometimes you need to use to or for.

- ? Matthew: Why is everyone laughing? (a funny story / us)
  - Vicky: Daniel told us a funny story.
- ? Trevor: There's some fish left over, (it / the cat)
  - Laura: I'll feed it to the cat.
- 1 Mark: What are you doing with those bottles? (them / the bottle bank)
  - Sarah: I'm takin

2 Trevor:

- How are things with you, Daniel? (a job / me)
- Daniel: Fine. Someone has offered.....
- 3 David: What about those papers you found? (them / the police)
  - Tom: Oh, I handed
- 4 Emma: It's pouring with rain, look, (my umbrella / you)
  - Rachel: It's OK. I'll lend .....

# 4 The present continuous



#### B Form

The present continuous is the present tense of be + an ing-form.

/ am looking OR I'm looking you/we/they are looking OR you/we/they're looking he/she/it is looking OR he/she/it's looking

NEGATIVE

I'm not looking you/we/they aren't looking he/she/it isn't looking QUESTION

am I looking? are you/we/they looking? is he/she/it looking?

I'm getting the lunch ready. The train is coming, look.
We're looking for a post office. Rachel isn't wearing her new dress.
What are you doing? Who is Vicky dancing with?

For rules about the spelling of the ing-form see page 370.

#### C Use

We use the present continuous to say that we are in the middle of an action.

*I'm waiting for the train.* (I'm at the station <u>now</u>.)

*I'm getting the lunch ready*. (I'm in the kitchen <u>now</u>.) *I'm waiting* means that I am in the middle of a period of waiting. The wait is not yet over.

We can also use the present continuous when we are in the middle of something but not actually doing it at the moment of speaking.

/ must get hack to the office. We're working on a new project.

I'm quite busy these days. **I'm doing** a course at college.

We can use the present continuous when things are changing over a long period. *The number of cars on the road is increasing.* The earth is slowly **getting** warmer.

For the future meaning of the present continuous see Unit 26A. *I'm* playing badminton with Matthew tomorrow.

6 Present continuous or simple? 7 State verbs and action verbs

#### 1 Form (B)

Look at the pictures and say what people are doing.

Use these verbs: carry, paint, play, ride, take

Use these objects: a bicycle, a parcel, a photo, a picture, basketball











He's riding a bicycle.

2

3 4

#### 2 Form (B)

Rachel is in the computer room at college. Complete her conversation with Andrew. Put in a present continuous form of the verb.

Andrew: What (▶) are you doing? (you / do)

Rachel: (▶) I'm writing (I / write) a letter to a friend. He's a disc jockey. Vicky and I

(1) ..... (try) to organize a disco.

Andrew: That sounds a lot of work. How (2).... (you / find) time for your studies?

Rachel: Well, as I said, Vicky (3) ......(help) me.

(we / get) on all right. (5) (we / not / spend) too much time on it. (6) ...... (it / not / take) me away from my studies,

don't worry about that. Oh, sorry, (7) ...... .. (you / wait) for this computer?

Andrew: Yes, but there's no hurry.

Rachel: (8)

(I / correct) the last bit of the letter. I've nearly finished.

#### 3 Use(C)

What can you say in these situations? Add a sentence with the present continuous.

- ► A friend rings you up in the middle of 'Neighbours', your favourite soap opera. Is it important? I'm watching 'Neighbours'.
- 1 A friend is at your flat and suggests going out, but you can see rain outside. I don't want to go out now. Look,.....
- 2 A friend rings you up at work.

Sorry, I can't talk now. 3 You want to get off the bus, but the man next to you is sitting on your coat.

Excuse me,

4 A friend wants to talk to you, but you have just started to write an important letter. Can I talk to you later?

5 You have been ill, but you're better now than you were.

I'm OK now .....

# 4 The present simple



#### A Use

We use the present simple for

- thoughts and feelings: / think so, I like it.
- states, things staying the same, facts and things that are true for a long time:
   We live quite near (see Unit 7).
- repeated actions: We come here every week.

#### and also

- in phrases like **I promise**, **I agree**, etc: *I promise I'll pay you back*.
- in a negative question with why to make a suggestion: Why don't we go out?

For the future meaning of the present simple see Units 26 and 27.

The new term starts next week.

#### **B** Positive forms

I/you/we/they **get** he/she/it **gets** 

In the present simple we use the verb without an ending.

I get the lunch ready at one o'clock, usually. We always do our shopping at Greenway.

Most children **like** ice-cream. You **know** the answer.

But in the third person singular (after **he**, **she**, **it**, **your friend**, etc), the verb ends in **s** or **es**. For spelling rules see page 370.

It gets busy at weekends. My husband thinks so, too.

Sarah catches the early train. She faxes messages all over the world.

# C Negatives and questions

NEGATIVE

QUESTION

I/you/we/they do not get OR don't get he/she/it does not get OR doesn't get

do I/we/you/they get? does he/she/it get?

We use a form of **do** in negatives and questions (but see Unit 37). We use **do** and **don't** except in the third person singular, where we use **does** and **doesn't**.

We don't live far away. He doesn't want to go shopping.

Do you live here? ~ Yes, 1 do. What does he want? ~ Money.

We do not add s to the verb in negatives and questions.

NOT He-doesn't gets and NOT Does he gets?

6 Present continuous or simple? 7 State verbs and action verbs

#### 1 Use (A)

Look at each <u>underlined</u> verb and say what kind of meaning it expresses. Is it a thought, a feeling, a fact or a repeated action?

- ? Matthew <u>loves</u> sport.
- a feeling
- ? Sarah often works late at the office.
- a repeated action
- 1 1 hate quiz programmes.
- 2 We <u>play</u> table tennis every Thursday.
- 3 The computer belongs to Emma.
- 4 These plates cost £20 each.
- 5 I believe it's the right thing to do.
- 6 I'm hungry. I want something to eat.
- 7 I usually go to work by bus.
- 8 It's OK. I <u>understand</u> your problem.

#### 2 Forms (B-C)

Complete the sentences by putting in the verbs. Use the present simple. You have to decide if the verb is positive or negative.

- ? Claire is very sociable. She knows (know) lots of people.
- ? We've got plenty of chairs, thanks. We don't want (want) any more.
- 1 My friend is finding life in Paris a bit difficult. He................................ (speak) French.
- 2 Most students live quite close to the college, so they .......... (walk) there.
- 3 My sports kit is really muddy. This shirt ......(need) a good wash.
- 4 I've got four cats and two dogs. I ......(love) animals.
- 5 No breakfast for Mark, thanks. He.....(eat) breakfast.
- 6 What's the matter? You ......(look) very happy.
- 7 Don't try to ring the bell. It ......(work).
- 9 Matthew is good at badminton. He ...... (win) every game.
- 10 We always travel by bus. We .....(own) a car.

#### 3 Forms (B-C)

Rita: No, (13)

I just (14)

Complete the conversation. Put in the present simple forms.

Comp	implete the conversation. I at in the present simple forms.				
Rita:	(▶) Do you like (you / like) football, Tom?				
Tom:	: (►) / love (1 / love) it. I'm a United fan. (1)				
	Nick usually (2)	(come) with me.			
	And (3)	(we / travel) to away games, too.			
	Why (4)	(you / not / come) to a match some time?			
Rita:	I'm afraid football (5)	(not / make) sense to me — men running after			
	a ball. Why (6)	(you / take) it so seriously?			
Tom:	It's a wonderful game. (7)	(I / love) it. United are my whole life.			
Rita:	How much (8)	(it / cost) to buy the tickets and pay for the travel?			
Tom:	A lot. (9)	(I / not / know) exactly how much.			
	But (10)	(that / not / matter) to me.			
	(11)	(I / not / want) to do anything else.			
	(12)	(that / annoy) you?			

(find) it a bit sad.

.....(it / not / annoy) me.

# 5 Present continuous or simple?



#### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We use the present continuous for something happening now. / am speaking to you live means that Kitty is in the middle of a live broadcast. Here are some more examples.

It's raining at the moment.

I'm watching this programme.

Look. That man is taking a photo of you.



#### PRESENT SIMPLE

We use the present simple for repeated actions. / often speak live to the camera means that she does it again and again.

It always **rains** at the weekend. I **watch** television most weekends. He's a photographer. He **takes** lots of photos.

#### B Thoughts, feelings and states

We normally use the present simple to talk about thoughts and feelings.

/ think it's a good programme. Kitty likes her job. We also use it

to talk about states (see Unit 7) and permanent facts.

Reporting means a lot to her. Paper burns easily. We also use

the present simple in I promise, I agree, I refuse, etc.

I promise I'll write to you. It's all right. I forgive you.

## C Temporary or permanent?

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We use the present continuous for a routine or situation that we see as temporary (for a short period).

I'm working at a sports shop for six weeks. At the moment they're living in a very small flat.

#### PRESENT SIMPLE

We use the present simple for a routine or situation that we see as permanent.

/ work at a sports shop. It's a permanent job. They live in a very nice flat.

#### **D** Always

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We can use **always** with the present continuous to mean 'very often', usually with the added meaning of too often'.

Tom is always inviting friends here. (= He invites them very often.)

I'm always making silly mistakes.

(= I make silly mistakes too often.)

#### PRESENT SIMPLE

Always with the present simple means 'every time'.

Tom always invites us to stay at Christmas. (= He invites us every Christmas.) / always make silly mistakes in exams. (= I make mistakes in every exam.)

4 David:

#### 1 Present continuous or simple? (A-B) At work Mark is talking to Alan in the corridor. Complete their conversation. Put in the present continuous or simple of the verbs. Mark: (►) *Are you looking* (you / look) for someone? Alan: Yes, $(\triangleright)$ / need (I / need) to speak to Neil. He isn't in his office. Mark: (1)..... (he / talk) to the boss at the moment. Alan: Oh, right. And what about you? (4)...... (you / look) for someone too? Mark: Yes, Linda. (5) ...... (you / know) where she is? Alan: Oh, she isn't here today. She only (6) (work) four days a week. ..... (she / not / work) on Fridays. She'll be here on Monday. Mark: Thank you. (8) ......(you / know) a lot about Linda. Alan: Well, most days (9) ...... (I / give) her a lift, or(10) .....(she / give) me one. (11) .....(she / live) quite close to me. (12) ......(it / save) petrol. Well, (14) ..... 2 Present continuous or simple? (A-C) Complete the sentences. Put in the present continuous or simple of the verbs. ► I'm writing (I / write) to my parents. / write (I / write) to them every weekend. ..... (it / snow) outside. ..... (it / come) down quite hard, look. 2 Normally (I / start) work at eight o'clock, ...... (I / start) at seven this week. We're very busy at the moment. .....(I / drive) to work. ..... (rise) in the east, remember. It's behind us so 4 The sun ...... (we / travel) west. ..... (I / promise) I'll give you some help later. 6 .....(I / want) a new car ......(I / save) up to buy one. 3 Always (D) Complete the sentences. Use *always* and the present continuous or simple. ► Melanie: Tom talks too much, doesn't he? Rita: Yes, and he's always talking about football. ► Laura: You forget your keys every time. Trevor: I try to remember them, but / always forget. 1 Claire: Sarah takes the train every day, doesn't she? Mark: Yes,.... the train. 2 Vickv: Rachel misses lectures much too often in my opinion. Emma: I agree. lectures. 3 Mike: Every time I drive along here, I go the wrong way. Harriet: But it's very simple, isn't it? Why..... the wrong way?

Melanie: I know .....

Trevor and Laura argue much too often, I think.

# 7 State verbs and action verbs

#### A States and actions

STATES

A state means something staying the same.

The flat is clean.

The farmer owns the land.

The box contained old books. State

verbs cannot usually be continuous. NOT

The farmer is owning the land.

ACTIONS

An action means something happening.

I'm cleaning the flat.

The farmer is buying the land.

He put the books in the box. Action verbs

can be simple or continuous.

He put I He was putting everything away.

Some state verbs: be, believe, belong, consist of, contain, depend on, deserve, exist, hate, know, like, love, matter, mean, own, need, prefer, remember, resemble, seem, understand

#### B I think/I'm thinking etc

Sometimes we can use a verb either for a state or for an action.

STATES (simple tenses)

I think you're right. (= believe) We have three cars. (= own) I come

from Sweden. (= live in)

*I see* your problem. (= understand)

Do you see that house? (= have in sight)

This picture looks nice.

She appears very nervous. (= seems)

The bag weighed five kilos.

*The coat fits.* (= is the right size)

ACTIONS (simple or continuous)

I'm thinking about the problem.

We're having lunch. (— eating)

*I'm coming from Sweden.* (= travelling)

/ usually **come** on the plane.

Mark is seeing his boss. {= meeting)

I see Daniel quite often.

I'm looking at this picture.

She appeared/was appearing in a film.

They weighed/were weighing my bag.

I'm fitting a lock to the window.

These examples with the verb **be** are about how people behave.

PERMANENT QUALITY

TEMPORARY BEHAVIOUR

Claire **is** a very sociable person.

That man **is** an idiot. **being** very sociable today.

Andrew **is** 

You are being an idiot this morning. (= You are behaving like an idiot.)

We use **am/are/is being** only to talk about behaviour, not about other things. *I'm better now, thanks.* **Are** you ready? Is anyone interested?

#### I like/I'm liking etc

We can use some state verbs in the continuous to talk about a short period of time.

PERMANENT STATE (simple tenses)

/ love/enjoy parties.

I like school.

Holidays cost a lot of money.

SHORT PERIOD (continuous)

I'm loving/enjoying this party. I'm liking school much better now. This trip is costing me a lot of money.

Sometimes we can use either the simple or the continuous with no difference in meaning. You look well, OR You're looking well. We feel a bit sad. OR We're feeling a bit sad.

## 1 States and actions (A)

Tom is on the Internet. He's telling people about himself. Say which verbs express states and which express actions.

► I surf the Net most evenings, action

1 My flat is in the town centre......

2 I <u>drive</u> a taxi in the daytime.....

3 I own two cars.

4 I go to lots of parties.

5 I <u>love</u> football.

#### 2 I think/I'm thinking etc (B)

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form of the verb.

Emma: Hi, Matthew. What (►) do you look/are you looking at?

Matthew: Oh, hi. These are photos of me when I was a child.

Emma: Oh, look at this one. (1) I think/I'm thinking you look lovely, Matthew.

Matthew: (2) I have/I'm having some more photos here.

Emma: Look at this. Why such a big coat?

Matthew: It was my brother's. That's why (3) it didn't fit/it wasn't fitting properly.

Emma: Oh, (4) I see/I'm seeing. And (5) you have/you're having your tea here. And in this one

(6) you think/you're thinking about something very serious.

Matthew: This is a photo of the village (7) I come/I'm coming from.

Emma: Oh, that's nice.

Matthew: And I caught this fish, look. (8) It weighed/It was weighing about half a kilo.

Emma: What a nice little boy! And what a sentimental old thing you are now!

#### 3 The verb be (B)

Put in the correct form of be.

- ? Daniel is doing some of the work. He s being very helpful at the moment.
- ? I 'm tired. I want to go home.
- 1 The children...... very polite today. They don't usually behave so well.
- 2 I'm afraid Melanie can't come because she .....ill.
- 3 Of course you can understand it. You.....stupid, that's all.
- 4 We ..... interested in doing a course here.
- 5 Vicky very lazy at the moment. She's done no work at all today.

#### 4 I like/I'm liking etc (C)

Write a sentence which follows on. Choose from these sentences.

think it's going to be perfect for me. And I've still got a chance to win.

I've never wanted to change it. It uses so much petrol.

It's too expensive to buy. I play it every weekend.

- ► I enjoy the game. *I play it every weekend*.
- 1 I'm enjoying the game.
- 2 The car costs a lot of money.
- 3 The car is costing a lot of money.
- 4 I'm liking my new job.....
- 5 I like my job.....

# Test 1 Present tenses (Units 4-7)

# Test1A

Read	the co	nversation b	etween two	o students. The	en look at the answers below	
and '	write th	e correct ans	wer in eacl	n space.		
Lisa	Who	o (►) is Mic	helle talkin	g to?		
Amy	: I car	n't see Miche	lle.			
Lisa	You	(1)		looking	g in the right place. She's over there.	
Amy	: Oh,	that's Adrian	n. He's new	here.		
Lisa:	Reall	y? Where (2)	)		he live? (3)you know	?
Amy					anything else about him.	
Lisa					ılking about, I wonder?	
					x very interested. He's got a very bored expression or	1
his		, ( )			<i>y y y y</i>	
	face.	And he (7)			saying anything.	
<b>.</b> .		` ´	-) 4	.: At	, , , ,	
<b>▶</b> a)		,	c) does			
		b) doesn't				
			c) does	d) is		
			c) Does			
		b) doesn't				
5 a			c) does	d) is		
		b) doesn't		/		
7 a	) aren't	b) doesn't	c) don't	d) isn't		
Tes	t lB					
Reac	l Tessa's	s postcard to	Angela an	d write the mis	ssing words. Use one word only in each space.	
Wa'r	o ( ) h	avina o oroo	et tima hara	It's booutiful	and the sun (1) shining.	
		went water-sl			you think of that?	
1 CSU	ciuay i v	veni waiei-sr	Killig! Wila	. (2)	you tillik of tilat?	
I'm (	3)		а	t a table in our	hotel room and writing a few postcards. The room	is
fine,	but we	(4)		like the	food very much. But it (5)	
matte	er becau	se we (6)		(	out to a restaurant every evening.	
We'r	e both (	7)	vers	lazzy at the mo	oment. I (8) up qu	ite
					up even later. You know of course how much	
	l's work		Nigel (9).			
					n and how he's (11) talk	nig
				i mai ne s forgo	otten all about work. So it's the perfect holiday. The	
oniy	problei	n is that it's (	(12)		us a lot of money. But we'll worry about that later.	
Т	410					
	t l C					
				ke in it. Write t		
sente	ence. <b>&gt;</b>	The children	n is doing t	heir ho <del>mework</del>	<del>: no</del> w. The	
chila	lren are	doing their h	iomework r	ow.		
1 Tł	<del>ie girls i</del>	<del>are play tenr</del>	nis at the n	noment.		
	41 1.	41 1:1				
<u>∠ B0</u>	<del>tn my t</del>	<del>orothers like</del>	es sport.			
 3 Aı	 <del>เทล พะ</del> ล	ring her nev	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			

4 What colour you like best?
5 My suit case is weighing ten kilos?
6 At the moment I stay at a hotel.
-7 Robert catch the same bus every month
8 What is this word mean here

# Test ID

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb. Use the present continuous or the present simple. ► A: Is Janet

in	, ple	ase?
	B:	Yes, but / think (I / think) she's busy at the moment. She's washing (she / wash) her hair.
1	A:	(I / think) of buying a new computer.
	B:	But computers (cost) so much money. What's wrong with the one we've
		got?
	A:	(it / get) out of date now.
2	A:	Your new trousers (look) nice.
	B:	Thank you. The trouble is (they / not / fit) properly.
		(I / not / know) why I bought them, really.
3	A:	What (you/do)?
	В	(I / weigh) this letter (I / need) to know how
		many stamps to put on it.
4	A:	(I / think) this road is really dangerous. Look how fast that lorry
	B:	(1/ agree). People shouldn't go so fast.
5	A:	(I / like) musicals. And this is a great show, isn't it?
		(you / enjoy) it?
	B:	Yes, I am(I / love) every minute of it.
6	A:	(I / always / fall) asleep. I just can't keep awake.
	B:	What time (you / go) to bed?
	A:	About ten o'clock usually. But (it / not / make) any difference.
7	A:	Could you post the goods to me, please?
	B:	Yes, certainly.
	A:	(I / live) at a guest house at the moment as $(1/1)$
		look) for a flat. So could you send it to my work address?
	B:	Yes, of course. And you'll have the goods by the end of the week,
8	A:	Why(you / want) to change the whole plan?
	B:	I'm just not happy with it.
	A:	And(1 / not / understand) why (you / be) so
		difficult about it.

8 The past simple

#### A Introduction

В

#### **Positive forms**

A regular past form ends in **ed.** 

It happened very quickly. The van

crashed into the cat I posted the letter yesterday.
once owned a caravan

For spelling rules, see page 370.

Some verbs have an irregular past form.

The car came out of a side road. Vicky rang earlier.

I won the game.

I had breakfast at six. The train left on time. We took some photos.

For a list of irregular verbs, see page 383.

The past simple is the same in all persons except in the past tense of be.

I/he/she/it was I was ill last week, you/we/they were Those cakes were nice.

## C Negatives and questions

We use **did** in negatives and questions (but see Unit 37).

NEGATIVE QUESTION

I/you/he/she/it/we/they **did not stop**OR **didn't stop** 

did I/you/he/she/it/we/they stop?

It all happened

rery quickly. The car came straight out of the side road, and the van went into the back of it. The van

driver didn't have a chance, It was

the car driver's fault.

The car did not stop. The driver didn't look to his right.

What did you tell the police? ~ Nothing. Did you ring home? ~ Yes, I did.

We do not use a past form such as **stopped** or **rang** in negatives and questions.

NOT The-car didn't stopped and NOT Did you rang?

We also use was and were in negatives and questions.

NEGATIVE OUESTION

I/he/she/it was not OR wasn't was I/he/she/it? you/we/they were OR weren't were you/we/they?

I wasn't very well last week. The gates weren't open.
Where was your friend last night? Was your steak nice?

#### D Use

We use the past simple for something in the past which is finished.

Emma passed her exam last year. We went to the theatre on Friday. Elvis Presley died in 1977. I knew what the problem was. When did you buy this car? ~ About three years ago.

10 Past continuous or simple? 14-15 Present perfect or past simple?

#### 1 Positive forms (B)

What did Claire do on holiday last month? Look at her photos and use these words: go out dancing, have a picnic, lie on the beach, play volleyball, swim in the sea











➤ She lay on the beach	
1	3
2	4

# 2 Positive forms (B)

Complete the newspaper story about a fire. Put in the past simple forms of the verbs.

Two people (▶) died (die) in a fire in Ellis Street, Oldport yesterday morning. They	
(1)(be) Herbert and Molly Paynter, a couple in their seventies. T	The fire
(2)(start) at 3.20 am. A neighbour, Mr Aziz, (3)	(see)
the flames and (4) (call) the fire brigade. He also	
(5) (try) to get into the house and rescue his neighbours, but the	e heat
(6) (be) too great. The fire brigade (7)	(arrive) in five
minutes. Twenty fire-fighters (8) (fight) the fire and finally	
(9) (bring) it under control. Two fire-fighters (10)	
(enter) the burning building but (11) (find) the couple dead.	

## 3 Negatives and questions (C)

Complete the conversation. Put in the past simple negatives and questions.

Claire: (►) Did you have (you / have) a nice weekend in Paris? Yes, thanks. It was good. We looked around and then we saw a show. ..... (we / not / try) to do too much. Claire: What sights (2) ...... (you / see)?

Claire: And what show (4).....(you / go) to?

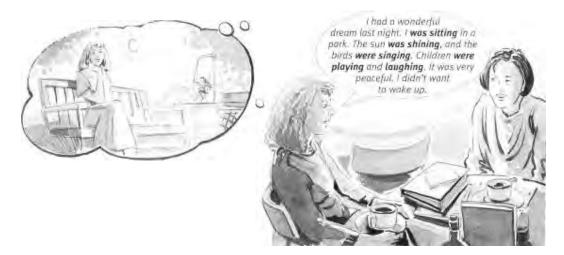
Mark: Oh, a musical. I forget the name. (5) ..... (I / not / like) it.

Claire: Oh, dear. And (6) ...... (Sarah / enjoy) it?

Mark: No, not really. But we enjoyed the weekend. Sarah did some shopping, too, but

.....(I / not / want) to go shopping.

# 9 The past continuous



#### A Introduction

The past continuous means that at a time in the past we were in the middle of an action.

#### B Form

The past continuous is the past tense of be + an ing-form.

I/he/she/it was playing you/we/they were playing

NEGATIVE

I/he/she/it wasn't playing you/we/they weren't playing

OUESTION

was I/he/she/it playing? were you/we/they playing?

Soft music was playing. People were walking in the park. I wasn't dreaming. I really was in New York City. Why did you give our secret away? What were you thinking of? Was Matthew already waiting for you when you got there?

#### C Use

Read this conversation.

Melanie: / rang at about three yesterday afternoon, but you weren't in. I didn't know where you were.

David: Oh, I was helping Mike. We were repairing his car. It took ages. We were working on it all

Melanie: It was raining. 1 hope you weren't doing it outside.

David: No, we were in the garage. So I didn't get wet. But I'm afraid I got oil all over my new trousers. Melanie: Why were you wearing your new trousers to repair a car? David: / don't know. I forgot I had them on.

It was raining at three o'clock means that at three o'clock we were in the middle of a period of rain. The rain began before three and stopped some time after three. We were working all afternoon means that the action went on for the whole period. David is stressing the length of time that the work went on.

We use the continuous with actions. We do not normally use it with state verbs (see Unit 7). For states we use the past simple.

1 didn't know where you were, NOT I wasn't knowing...

#### 1 Form (B)

Today is the first of January, the start of a new year. Most people are feeling a bit tired.

What were they doing at midnight last night?

Use these verbs: dance, drive, listen, watch, write

Use these phrases after the verb: an essay, his taxi, in the street, television, to a band











ightharpoonup	Claire wa	is list	enino	to	а	hand
	Claire wa	is iisi	ening	$\iota \upsilon$	и	vana.

l	Trevor and Laura	
3	Tom	
1	Δndrew	

#### 2 Form (B)

Complete the conversation. Put in the past continuous forms.

#### 3 Use(C)

**What** can you say in these situations? Add a sentence with the past continuous to say that an action lasted a long time.

- ➤ You had to work yesterday. The work went on all day. / was working all day.
- 1 You had to make phone calls. The calls went on all evening.
- 2 You had to wait in the rain. The wait lasted for half an hour.
- 3 You had to make sandwiches. This went on all afternoon.
- 4 You had to sit in a traffic jam. You were there for two hours.
- 5 Your neighbour played loud music. This went on all night.

# 10 Past continuous or simple?

#### A Introduction

A reporter is interviewing Mike and Harriet.

Reporter: Mike and Harriet, tell me what you saw.

Harriet: Well, when we were driving home last night, we saw a strange object in the sky.

Mike: As we were coming down the hill into town, it just suddenly appeared in front of us.

We stopped the car and got out.

Harriet: It was a very clear night. The stars were twinkling. Mike: It was a spaceship. It

seemed quite big. It had some strange writing on the side.

And a light was flashing on the top. Harriet: As we were watching

it, it suddenly **flew** away and **disappeared**.

PAST CONTINUOUS

We use the past continuous for an action that we were in the middle of.

We were driving home.

(We were in the middle of our journey.)

A light was flashing.

We do not normally use the past continuous for states. See Unit 7.

NOT The spaceship was seeming ...

NOT It was having writing ...

NOT I wasn't knowing ...

PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for a complete action in the past.

We **drove** home.

(We finished our journey.)

The spaceship **flew** away.

We also use the past simple (not normally the continuous) for states. See Unit 7.

The spaceship **seemed** quite big. It **had** writing on the side. I **didn't know** what it was.

## B It happened as I was driving

We often use the past continuous and simple together when one (shorter) action comes in the middle of another (longer) one.

As we were driving down the hill, a strange object appeared in the sky.

While Laura was sitting in the garden, it suddenly began to rain.

You drove right past me when I was waiting for the bus.

The appearance of the strange object comes in the middle of the longer action, the drive down the hill. Shorter action:

An object appeared.

In the three sentences above, the past continuous comes after as, while or when

(As we were driving ...). We can also use when before the past simple.

We were driving down the hill when a strange object appeared in the sky.

David was making lunch when the phone rang.

But we use two past simple verbs for one action after another.

When we saw the spaceship, we stopped the car. (= We saw it and then we stopped.)

## C The sun was shining

PAST CONTINUOUS

We often use the past continuous to describe the

background.

The sun was shining.
The stars were twinkling.

PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for actions in a story,

We arrived at the beach.
The aliens landed quietly.

#### 1 Past continuous or simple? (A-B)

David is always having accidents. His girlfriend Melanie is talking about some of the accidents. Write her sentences from these notes. Each sentence has one verb in the past continuous and one in the past simple.

- ? when / he / carry / a suitcase / he / drop / it / on his foot When he was carrying a suitcase, he dropped it on his foot.
- ? he / break / his leg / when / he / ski He broke his leg when he was skiing.
- 1 he / sit down / on a chair / while / I / paint / it
- 2 as / he / run / for a bus / he / collide / with a lamppost
- 3 his hair / catch / fire / when / he / cook / chips
- 4 when / he / hold / a beautiful vase / he / suddenly / drop / it
- 5 he / sit / in the garden / when / a wasp / sting / him / on the nose

## 2 Past continuous or simple? (A-B)

Put in the correct form of the verb.

Rita: I hear the lights (▶) went (go) out in your flats last night. Emma: Yes, (►) / was watching (I / watch) a documentary on TV when suddenly (1)..... (we / lose) all the power. But (2).....(it / come) on again after about ten minutes. Vicky: Rachel (3)..... (come) down the stairs when the lights (4).....(go) out. She almost (5)..... (fall) over. Daniel: Matthew and I (6).....(play) table tennis at the time. (I / lose) a whole hour's work. But this morning (8) (9)(I/get) up early and (10)..... (do) it again. 3 Past continuous or simple? (A-C) Find the second part of each sentence. Put each verb into the correct form. ? Vicky (have) a beautiful dream when she (touch) the wire. ? When Andrew (see) the question, when I (find) a £10 note in it. 1 The train (wait) when the alarm clock (ring). 2 I (read) a library book the crowd (rush) in. 3 Sarah (have) an electric shock he (know) the answer immediately. 4 When the doors (open), they (see) that the sun (shine). 5 When the campers (wake), when we (arrive) at the station. ? Vicky was having a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang. ? When Andrew saw the question, he knew the answer immediately. 1 2 3

# Test 2 Past simple and past continuous (Units 8-10)

#### Test 2A

Put in the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

$\blacktriangleright$	The car stopped (stop) at	the lights.
1	We	(leave) the cinema before the end of the film.
2	The streets	(be) crowded with people.
3	My grandmother	(die) last year.
4	Everyone	(have) a marvellous time.
5	We	(not / like) the food they gave us.
6	Claire	(go) to Egypt last month.
7	The accident	(happen) last weekend.
8	It	(not / be) a very comfortable journey.
9	I	(know) that ages ago.

#### Test 2B

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► There were lights on the spacecraft, (had) *The spacecraft had lights on it.*
- 1 I had my old coat on. (wearing)
- 2 I was on holiday, and you were on holiday, too. (we)
- 3 It isn't true that I made a mistake, (didn't)
- 4 The boys were in the middle of a game of cards, (playing)
- 5 No one told me about the change of plan, (know)
- 6 My friend was the winner of the competition, (won)
- 7 Is it a fact that the Romans built this wall? (did)

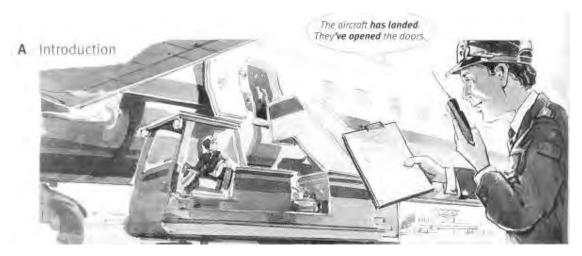
#### Test 2C

Lorna Bright is a long-distance	e walker. Look at this part of	i her diary describing a moi	rning's walk along the
coast. Write the missing words	s. Use one word only in each	h space.	
It was a fine day (►) when I s	started out on the last part of	f my walk around the coas	t of Britain. The sun
was(1)	, and a light wind (2)		olowing from the south-
west. I was pleased that it (3)	r	raining. I knew by now tha	at I
(4)	.like rain. In fact I (5)	it.	
I (6)	along the cliff top and the	en down into the lovely litt	le fishing village of
Wellburn, past a cafe where pe	eople (7)	having morning c	offee. Three miles past
Wellburn I (8)	down for five n	ninutes and (9)	a drink
Now it (10)	getting warmer, so	I (11)	off one of my
sweaters. 1(12)	stop for long be	ecause 1(13)	to reach
Seabury by lunch-time. (14)	I	finally got there, it (15)	
just after half past twelve.			

# Test 2D

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence,		
The hotel were very quite.		
The hotel was very quiet.		
1 It was peaceful, and the birds were sing.		
2 1 washed my hair when the phone rang.		
3 You came to the club last night.		
4 It taked ages to ge home.		
5 5. We tried to keep quiet because the baby sleeping		
6 As I was watching him, the man was suddenly running away.		
7 We pass a petrol station two minutes ago.		
8 Everything was seeming OK.		
9 Where bought you that bag?		
10 When I heard the alarm I was having the room immediately.		
Test 2E		
Complete the sentences. Put in the correct form of each verb. Use the past continuous or past simple.		
When Martin arrived (arrive) home, Anna was talking (talk) to someone on the phone. Martin started (start)		
to get the tea.		
1 I (lie) in the bath when the phone (ring).		
It(stop) after a few rings.		
2 It(be) cold when we		
alight snow(fall).		
3 Your friend who(come) here the other day(seem)		
very nice. I (enjoy) meeting her.		
4 When I (see) the man, he		
He (have) a black baseball cap on.		
5 When I (open) the cupboard door, a pile of books		
(fall) out.		
6 I (walk) along the street when I suddenly (feel)		
something hit me in the back. I (not / know) what it was.		
We		
We (hear) about a bomb scare in Oxford Street. So		
We		
8 Something very strange		
I (see) my mother in the seat beside me. But she died three years ago.		
( ) J		

# 11 The present perfect (1)



The present perfect tells us about the past and the present. *The aircraft has landed* means that the aircraft is on the ground now.

#### B Form

The present perfect is the present tense of  $\mathbf{have} + \mathbf{a}$  past participle.

I/you/we/they have washed OR I/you/we/they've washed he/she/it has washed OR he/she/it's washed

NEGATIVE OUESTION

I/you/we/they haven't washed have I/you/we/they washed? he/she/it hasn't washed has he/she/it washed?

Regular past participles end in ed, e.g. washed, landed, finished. We've washed the dishes. Have you opened your letter? The aircraft has landed safely. How many points has Matthew scored? The students haven't finished their exams.

## C Irregular forms

Some participles are irregular.

I've made a shopping list. We've sold our car. I've thought about it a lot. Have you written the letter? She hasn't drunk her coffee. For a list of irregular verbs see page 383.

There is a present perfect of **be** and of have.

The weather has **been** awful I've **had** a lovely time, thank you.

#### D Use

When we use the present perfect, we see things as happening in the past but having a result in the present.

We've washed the dishes. (They're clean now.)

We've eaten all the eggs. (There aren't any left.)

You've broken this watch. (It isn't working.)

The aircraft has landed. (It's on the ground now.)

They've learnt the words. (They know the words.)

12-13 More on the present perfect 14-15 Present perfect or past simple? page 377 American English

#### 1 Form (B)

Add a sentence. Use the present perfect.

- ▶ I'm tired. (I / walk / miles) I've walked miles.
- 1 Emma's computer is working now. (she / repair / it)
- 2 It's cooler in here now. (I / open / the window)
- 3 The visitors are here at last, (they / arrive)
- 4 Mark's car isn't blocking us in now. (he / move / it)
- 5 We haven't got any new videos, (we / watch / all these)

#### 2 Irregular forms (C)

Look at the pictures and say what the people have done.

Use these verbs: break, build, catch, see, win

Use these objects: a film, a fish, a house, his leg, the gold medal







3





► She's won the gold medal.

1. 2.

#### 3 Review (A-D)

Trevor and Laura are decorating their house. Put in the verbs. Use the present perfect.

Laura:	: How is the painting going? (▶) Have you	finished ? (you / finish)
Trevor	r: No, I haven't. Painting the ceiling is reall	y difficult, you know.
	(1)(I /	not / do) very much. And it looks just the same as
	before. This new paint (2)	(not / make) any difference.
Laura:	(3) (yo	u / not / put) enough on.
Trevor:	<del>·····································</del>	hurt) my back. It feels bad.
Laura:	: Oh, you and your back. You mean (5)	(you / have) enough of
	decorating. Well, I'll do it. Where (6)	(you / put) the brush?
Trevor	r: I don't know. (7)	(it / disappear).
	(8) (I /	look) for it, but I can't find it.
Laura:	: You're hopeless, aren't you? How much (9	) (you / do) in here?
	Nothing! (10)	(I / paint) two doors.
Trevor:	: (11)(I	/ clean) all this old paint around the window.
	It looks much better now, doesn't it?	
Laura:	(12) (v	ve / make) some progress, I suppose.
	Now, where (13)	(that brush /go)?
	Oh, (14)	(you / leave) it on the ladder, look.

# 12 The present perfect (2): just, already, yet; for and since



#### A Just, already and yet

We can use the present perfect with **just**, **already** and **yet**.

**Just** means 'a short time ago'. Vicky heard about the concert not long ago. **Already** means 'sooner than expected'. They sold the tickets very quickly. We use **yet** when we are expecting something to happen. Vicky expects that Rachel will buy a ticket.

**Just** and **already** come before the past participle **(heard, sold)**. **Yet** comes at the end of a question or a negative sentence.

Here are some more examples.

We've just come back from our holiday. I've just had an idea.

It isn't a very good party. Most people have already gone home.

My brother has already crashed his new car. It's eleven o'clock and you haven't finished breakfast yet.

*Has your course started yet?* But for American English see page 377.

#### B For and since

We can use the present perfect with for and since.

Vicky has only had that camera for three days. Those people have been at the hotel since Friday. I've felt really tired for a whole week now.

We've **lived** in Oxford **since** 1992. NOT We live here since 1992. Here something began in the past and has lasted up to the present time.

We use **for** to say how long this period is **for** three days). We use **since** to say when the period began (**since** Friday).

We use **how long** in questions.

How long has Vicky had that camera? ~ Since Thursday, I think. How long have Trevor and Laura been married? ~ Oh, for about three years.

We can also use the present perfect with **for** and **since** when something has stopped happening. / **haven't seen** Rachel **for** ages. She **hasn't visited us since July**.

11,13 More on the present perfect 14-15 Present perfect or past simple?

17 Present perfect continuous or simple? 114 **Yet, still** and **already** 121 **For, since, ago** and **before** 

1	Just (A)		
	Write replies using the present perfect and <i>just</i> .		
	Use these past participles: checked, eaten, made, remembered, rung, tidied		
► We must find out the address. ~ It's all right, <i>I've just remembered it.</i>			
	1 The children's room looks neat. ~ Yes, they've		
	2 Is Daniel making some coffee? ~ It's ready.		
	3 What happened to that chocolate? ~ Sorry,		
	4 Has Rachel got all the answers right? ~ Yes,		
	5 Have you told your sister? ~ Yes, I've		
2	Just, already and yet (A)		
_	Complete the dialogue. Use the present perfect with <i>just</i> , <i>already</i> and <i>yet</i> .		
	Vicky: ( > ) You haven t done your project yet (you / not do / your project / yet), 1 suppose.		
	Rachel: No, I haven't. (1)		
	Vicky: (2)(I /just / see / Andrew), and he says		
	(3)(he / already / do) about half of it.		
	Rachel: Well, he works too hard.		
	Vicky: (4)		
	Rachel: (5)(you / already / begin) to worry about it, haven't you?  Take it easy. There's plenty of time.		
	Vicky: (6) (we / already / spend) too long thinking about it.		
	(7)(I / not / do / any real work / yet)		
	and (8)		
	to the end of term.		
	Rachel: OK. (9)		
3	For and since (B)		
٠			
	Andrew is a very hard-working student. It's midnight and he is still working at his computer.		
	Write sentences with the present perfect and <i>for</i> or <i>since</i> .		
	▶ be / at his computer / six hours  He's been at his computer for six hours.		
	1 not / have / any fun / a long time		
	2 have /a cold /a week		
	3 not/see/his friends/ages		
	4 not / do / any sport / last year		
	5 be / busy with his studies / months		
4	For and since (B)		
	Complete the sentences.		
	? You ought to wash the car. You haven't washed it for ages.		
	? I'd better have a shower. I haven't had one since Thursday.		
	1 I think I'll ring my girlfriend. I haven't the weekend.		
	2 We're going to see some old friends. We haven't five years.		
	3 Let's watch a video, shall we? We haven't quite a while.		

4 We could have a barbecue. We haven't .......last summer. 5 Shall we play tennis? We haven't ...... our holiday.

# 13 The present perfect (3): ever, this week, etc

#### A Gone to or been to?





Claire has **gone to** Australia.

Gone there means that she is still there.

Claire has **been to** Australia.

Been there means that the visit is over.

#### B Ever and never

Mark: Where have you been this time, Claire?
Claire: I've just come back from the States. Florida.

Mark: You get around, don't you? I've never been to Florida. Was it good?

Claire: It was OK. Not as good as Australia. I might go to Brazil next time. Have you ever been there?

Mark: No, / haven't.

We can use **ever** and **never** with the present perfect. We use **ever** in questions. In *Have you ever been to Brazil?* the word **ever** means 'in your whole life up to the present time'. **Never** means 'not ever'.

Here are some more examples.

Have you ever played cricket? ~ No, never. Has Andrew ever had any fun? ~ I don't think so. I've never ridden a motor bike in my life. You've never given me flowers before. This is the most expensive hotel we've ever stayed in.

#### C First time, second time, etc

After It's/This is the first/second time, we use the present perfect.

This is the first time we've been to Scotland, so it's all new to us. This is the second time Rachel has forgotten to give me a message. I love this film. I think it's the fourth time I've seen it.

#### D Today, this week, etc

We use the present perfect with **today** and phrases with **this**, **e.g. this morning**, **this week**, **this year**. We've **done** quite a lot of work **today**.

I haven't watched any television so far this week.

*Have you had a holiday this year?* ~ No, *not yet.* **This year** is the period which began in January and has lasted up to the present time.

14-15 Present perfect or past simple?

#### 1 Gone to or been to? (A)

Complete the conversation. Put in gone or been.

Emma: Hi. Where's Rachel?

Vicky: She's  $(\triangleright)$  *gone* to the supermarket to get something for a meal.

Emma: But I've got some chicken for tonight. I've just (1)................. to a supermarket on

my way home, that new place near the station.

Natasha: I haven't (2). .....to that one yet.

Vicky: Where's Jessica? Isn't she here?

Emma: No, she's (3)...... to London. She'll be back tomorrow.

#### 2 Ever and never (B)

Write the questions and answers. Use the information in brackets.

► Matthew: (sailing?) Have you ever been sailing?

Natasha: (no, windsurfing) No, I've never been sailing, but I've been windsurfing.

1 Laura: (San Francisco?)
Mark: (no, Los Angeles

ark: (no, Los Angeles) .....

But

2 Tom: (basketball?)
Trevor: (no, volleyball)

But

But
3 Daniel: ('Hamlet'?)

Vicky: (no,'Macbeth')

But

#### 3 First time, second time, etc (C)

What would you say in these situations? Use time and the present perfect.

▶ You are watching a cricket match. You have never seen one before.

This is the first time I've seen a cricket match.

1 You have lost your bank card. It has happened once before.

This is

- 2 The washing-machine has broken down. This has happened twice before.
- 3 You are in England for the first time in your life.
- 4 You are staying in a hotel where you once stayed before.
- 5 You have missed the bus. You've done the same thing about four times before.

#### 4 Today, this week, etc (D)

Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

- ▶ Mark buys a newspaper most mornings, but he hasn't bought one this morning.
- 1 I see Vicky most days, but .....
- 2 We go to the club most weekends, but ......
- 3 We usually have a party each term, but ..
- 4 Someone usually rings in the evening, but no one

# 14 Present perfect or past simple? (1)



The present perfect tells us about the past and the present. United have won the Cup, so it's theirs now.

The past simple tells us about the past, a time which is finished. Last year is in the past.

We use the past simple (not the present perfect) to talk about times in the past such as yesterday, last week, in 1994, a hundred years ago.

We watched United last week, NOT We have watched United last week. Long ago dinosaurs lived here. NOT Long ago dinosaurs have lived here.

Here are some more examples.

#### PRESENT PERFECT

Emma has packed her case.
(So her things are in the case now.)
Mike has repaired the chair.
(So it's all right now.)
The plane has just landed.
I've turned the heating on. (It's on now.)
I've dropped my calculator. (It's on the floor now.)

#### PAST SIMPLE

Emma packed her case last night.
(Her things may be unpacked now.)
Mike repaired the chair.
(It may be broken again now.)
The plane landed ten minutes ago.
I turned the heating on earlier, but it's off again now.
I dropped my calculator, but it seems to be OK.

#### 6 I've done it. I did it yesterday.

Trevor: We've **bought** a new car.
Tom: Oh, have you? What sort?

Laura: An Adagio. We bought it last week.

We often give a piece of news in the present perfect, e.g. We've bought a new car. (The car is ours now.) We use the past simple, e.g. We bought it last week, to give details or to ask for details about things such as when and where it happened.

Here are some more examples.

I've found my wallet. ~ Oh, good. Where did you find it? Your parcel has arrived. The postman brought it at eight o'clock. They've closed the factory. ~ Really? When did they do that?

#### C Structures with for, since and last

PRESENT PERFECT

We can say that something hasn't happened for a long time or <u>since</u> a specific time in the past.

We haven't had a party for ages.

We haven't had a party since Christmas.

#### PAST SIMPLE

We can say that it is a long time <u>since</u> something happened or when was <u>the last time</u> it happened.

It's ages since we last had a party.

Christmas was the last time we had a party.

#### 1 I have done or I did? (A)

Pι	at in the correct verb form.			
?	I've done (I / do) all the housework. The flat is really clean now.			
?	A young couple <i>bought</i> (buy) the house next door. But they didn't live there long.			
1	Our visitors (arrive). They're sitting in the garden.			
2	There's still a problem with the television. Someone(repair) it,			
	but then it broke down again.			
3.	(I / lose) my bank card. I can't find it anywhere.			
4	The match (start). United are playing well.			
5	My sister (run) away from home. But she came back two days later.			
6	Daniel (earn) some money last week. But I'm afraid he's already spent it all.			
	(we / plant) an apple tree in the garden. Unfortunately it died.			
8	Prices (go) up. Everything is more expensive this year.			
9	Someone(turn) on the hi-fi. What's that song called?			
10	(I / phone) the office at eleven to speak to the manager, but he isn't there today			
11	(I / make) a cake. Would you like a piece?			
12	The runner Amos Temila (break) the world record for the 1500 metres in			

#### 2 I've done it. I did it yesterday. (B)

Things that have happened today are on the radio and TV news.

Give the news using the present perfect and past simple.

▶ the Prime Minister / visit Luton University / speak to students there / earlier today

The Prime Minister has visited Luton University. He spoke to students there earlier today.

Frankfurt. Then two days later in Helsinki, Lee Williams ran it in an even faster time.

- 1 the train drivers / go on strike / stop work / at twelve o'clock
- 2 the Queen / arrive in Toronto / fly there / in an RAF aircraft
- 3 two men / escape from Parkhurst Prison / get away / during the night
- 4 the actor Howard Bates / die in a car accident / his car / crash into a wall
- 5 Linda [ones / win the women's marathon / run it / in 2 hours 27 minutes

#### 3 Structures with for, since and last (C)

Complete the conversations.

C	mpiete in	e conversations.	
▶	Mike:	This car is filthy. I haven't been to the car wash for about a year.	
	Tom:	What! You mean it's twelve months since you last went to the car wash?	
1	Laura:	I haven't used my camera recently. June was the last time I took a photo.	
	Trevor:	Really? I'm surprised you	June.
2	Rachel:	I haven't seen Andrew for weeks.	
	Daniel:	Nor me. It's	him.
3	Tom:	What about a game of cards? We haven't played since your birthday.	
	David:	Really? You mean my birthday	cards?
4	Emma:	I feel terrible. It's three days since I ate anything.	
	Vicky:	What did you say? You	three days?

# 15 Present perfect or past simple? (2)





We use the present perfect for a state which has gone on up to the present. (David is still in hospital.)

We've lived here for ten years. (And we still live here.)

# B Have you (ever)...? and Did you (ever)...?

PRESENT PERFECT

We use the present perfect for actions in a period of time up to the present.

This young director has made four films so far. He has made films means that it is possible he will make more films.

Here are some more examples.

Have you ever been to America? ~ Yes, twice. I've played table tennis before. We've never had any money.

#### C Today, this week, etc

PRESENT PERFECT

We use **today** and phrases with **this** for a period up to the present.

It hasn't rained today.

Have you seen this week's magazine?

# I was in hospital for six weeks.

#### PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for a state in the past, in a period which is finished. (David's stay in hospital is over.)

We **lived there** for ten years. (We don't live there now.)

#### PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for actions in the past, a period which is finished.

The director **made** many films in his long career. He made films means that his career in films is over. He won't make any more.

Did Churchill ever go to America? ~ Yes, I think so. I played table tennis at college.

We never had any money in those days.

#### PAST SIMPLE

We use **yesterday** and phrases with **last** for a past period.

It rained yesterday.

Did you see last week's magazine?

But sometimes **today** etc can mean a past period. Compare:

/ haven't seen Rachel today. (It's still daytime.) Has the post come this morning? (It's still morning.) I didn't see Sarah at work today. (The working day is over.)
Did the post come this morning? (It's later in the day.)

#### 1 I've been or I was? (A) Complete this letter to a newspaper. Put in the present perfect or past simple. A few days ago I (►) learned (learn) that someone plans to knock down the White Horse Inn. This at our crossroads for 500 years. It (2).................. (be) famous in the old days, and in Brickfield all my life. The villagers (5)..............(know) about the plans for less happy, but this week we're angry. We will stop them, you'll see. 2 Have you (ever)...? and Did you (ever)...? (B) Look at each conversation and choose the best sentence, a) or b). ▶ Have you heard about the woman walking across the US? ~ Yes, she's reached the Rockies. a) The walk is continuing, b) The walk has finished. 1 Have you ever played beach volleyball? ~ Yes, we played it on holiday. a) The holiday is still going on. b) The holiday is over. 2 Did you know old Mr Green? ~ No, I never met him. a) Mr Green is probably alive, b) Mr Green is probably dead. 3 Wayne Johnson is a great footballer. ~ Yes, he's scored 200 goals for United. a) Wayne Johnson still plays for United, b) Wayne Johnson has left United. 3 Today, this week, etc (C) Put in this, last, today or yesterday. ► Last month prices went up, but this month they have fallen a little. 1 It's been dry so far ...... week, but ...... week was very wet. earned ..... 3 We didn't have many visitors .......vear. We've had a lot ..... year. 4 I don't feel so tired now. We got up quite late ... morning. I felt really tired ..... when we got up so early. 4 Present perfect or past simple? (Units 14 and 15) Put in the verbs. Tom: (▶) Have you heard (you / hear) the news about David? Harriet: No. (1) ......(what / happen)? Tom: (2)..... (he / have) an accident. He was walking down some steps. (3)...... (he / fall) and (4)..... (break) his leg. Harriet: Last night! (7)...... (you / know) about it last night, and (8)..... (you / not / tell) me! Well, (9) .....(I / not / see) you last night. And (10) ......(I / not / see) you today, until now.

.....(he / do) the same thing about two years ago.

(12)

# Test 3 Present perfect and past simple (Units 11-15)

# Test 3A

Test 3A				
Pu	t in the past participles of the verbs in brackets.			
<b>•</b>	the second secon			
1	Have you (wash) the car?			
2	You haven't (eat) very much.			
3	They've (open) a new supermarket.			
4	You've (write) it in pencil.			
5	I've (make) the sandwiches.			
6	We've (have) our lunch.			
7	United have(score) a goal.			
8	The balloon has(land) in a field.			
9	Who's (break) this glass?			
10	It's warm because the heating has			
11	Have you(sell) your flat yet?			
12	I've(finish) that job at last.			
	•			
Test 3	BB			
	mplete the second sentence so that it follows on from the first. Use the present perfect.			
1	My hair is tidy now. I've <i>brushed</i> my hair.  The door is open. Someonethe door.			
2	This is Oliver's drawing, look. Olivera picture.			
3	The calculator is broken. Someone			
4	United are the winners. United the game.			
5	There's no more wine in the bottle. We all the wine.			
6	The floor is clean now. I the floor.			
7	I know my number now. I			
8	The guests are here now. The guests			
9	I'm still working on the computer. I with the computer yet.			
9	This still working on the computer. I with the computer yet.			
Test 30	r			
	cide which word is correct.			
•	I'd like to borrow this book. Has Anna read it <i>yet</i> ?			
	a) done b) for c) just d) yet			
1	Ben writes very quickly. He's finished his essay,			
	a) already b) been c) for d) yet			
2	What are you going to do? ~ I don't know. I haven't decided			
	a) just b) long c) since d) yet			
3	I've to London. I went there in June.			
	a) been b) gone c) just d) yet			
4	Have youdone any skiing?			
	a) ever b) for c) just d) long			
5	My boyfriend hasn't rung week,			
	a) for b) last c) since d) this			
6	I haven't seen that coat before. Howhave you had it?			
	a) already b) for c) long d) since			
7	The girls haveto the cinema. They won't be back until ten o'clock.			
	a) already b) been c) gone d) just			

8	I haven't seen my parents	last Christmas.
	a) already b) before c) for d) since	
9	This is the first	I've ever lived away from home.
	a) already b) since c) that d) time	
10	This programme must be new. I've	seen it before.
	a) ever b) never c) since d) yet	

#### Test 3D

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary *have* or *has* out of the sentence and write it in the space.

? Susan has lost her keys. She can't find them anywhere.

V

? Christopher has hurt his hand, but it's OK now.

has

- 1 The directors have arrived half an hour ago, but they didn't stay long.
- 2 It's raining, and Peter has left his umbrella behind, look.
- 3 It's a long time since your friends have last visited us.
- 4 None of you have called me for weeks. Aren't we friends any more?
- 5 We can play tennis now. The others have finished.
- 6 The company has bought some land, but then it sold it.
- 7 The computer isn't on now. Someone has turned it off.
- 8 Tessa has posted the parcel. It's on its way to you.
- 9 Several bombs have gone off in the city centre. It has happened an hour ago.
- 10 Simon has left. He and Oliver have left after lunch.

#### Test3E

Pu	Put in the present perfect or past simple of the verbs in brackets.			
?	I've had (have) these shoes since my eighteenth birthday.			
?	I tidied (tidy) my desk, but now it's in a mess again.			
1	The last time I(go) to Brighton was in August.			
	I'd like to meet a ghost, but I(never / see) one.			
3	I've finished my homework. I			
4	And the race is over! And Micky Simpson (win) in a record time!			
5	I(work) for a computer company for a year. That was after college.			
6	What time(you / get) to work this morning?			
	Martin(be) to Greece five times. He loves the place.			
8	The President (come) out of the building and is going to make a speech			
9	You won't believe this, but I've got some tickets for the concert. ~ Oh, well done. How			
	(you / get) them?			
	Of course I can ride a bike. But I(not / ride) one for years.			
11	Marilyn Monroe(be) in about thirty films.			
12	(you / ever / bake) your own bread? ~ No, but I might try it some time.			
13	Janet (be) very ill three years ago.			
14	Rupert has left a message for you. He(ring) last night.			
15	(you / see) the news today? ~ No, not yet. I'll watch it at ten.			
16	We moved here in 1993. We(be) here a long time now.			

# 16 The present perfect continuous

#### A Introduction

We use the present perfect continuous for an action (waiting). The action happens over a period of time (for twenty minutes). Here the period lasts up to the present - they are still waiting now.

#### B Form

The present perfect continuous is the present tense of **have + been +** an ing-form.

I/you/we/they have been waiting OR I/you/we/they've been waiting he/she/it has been waiting OR he/she/it's been waiting

NEGATIVE

QUESTION

I/you/we/they haven't been waiting he/she/it hasn't been waiting

have I/you/we/they been waiting? has he/she/it been waiting?

We've been waiting here for

twenty minutes.

We're going to

be late for the film

We've been standing here for ages. It has been raining all day.

Have you been waiting long? Our team hasn't been doing very well lately.

#### C Use

We use the present perfect continuous for an action over a period of time leading up to the present (see A). In these examples the action is still going on.

We've been waiting here for twenty minutes. (We're waiting <u>now</u>.)

Listen. That burglar alarm has been ringing since eight o'clock this morning.

We must use the perfect in these situations.

NOT We wait here for twenty minutes OR We're waiting here for twenty minutes.

We can use the present perfect continuous to talk about repeated actions up to now.

Natasha has been playing the piano since she was four. We can also use it to talk about an action which ends just before the present.

I've been swimming. That's why my hair is wet.

#### D For, since, how long and recently

We can use the present perfect continuous with **for** and since (see Unit 121).

My sister has been staying with me for three weeks now.

You've been playing on that computer since seven o'clock.

We use **how long** in questions.

How long have you been waiting?

Note also **recently** and **lately.** These both mean 'in the last few days or weeks'. *I* haven't been feeling very well recently. What have you been doing lately?

17 Present perfect continuous or simple? 121 For and since

#### 1 Form (B)

Put in the verbs. Use the present perfect continuous.

Ilona: Sorry I'm late.

Emma: It's OK. ( $\blacktriangleright$ ) / haven't been waiting (I / not / wait) long.

What(1)......(you/do)?

Emma: Your English is very good. You don't need lessons, surely.

How long (3) ...... (you / study) English?

Ilona: Er, eight years now. But my accent wasn't so good before I came to England.

(4) .....(I / try) to improve it.

Ithink (5) ...... (it / get) better lately.

Emma: Your accent is fine, Ilona. Honestly.

#### 2 Use(C)

Say what these people have been doing. Use these verbs: argue, cook, drive, wait, work











- ► Andrew is tired because he's been working all day.
- 1 Trevor and Laura are upset because ......
- 2 David is hot because....
- 3 Mark feels very stiff because all day.

#### 3 Use(C-D)

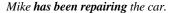
What could you say in these situations? Write sentences with the present perfect continuous and a phrase with for. Use these verbs: play, read, swim, talk, travel, work

- ► A video is on. It began two hours ago, and it hasn't finished yet. *The video has been playing for two hours.*
- 1 Matthew went into the water an hour ago. He doesn't want to come out yet.
- 2 Your friends started their journey around the world three months ago. They've gone about halfway now.
- 3 Mark got to the office early this morning. Ten hours later he's still there.
- 4 Melanie rang Rita forty minutes ago, and they're still on the phone.
- 5 Trevor has got an interesting book. He started it quite a long time ago. Ask him how long.

# 17 Present perfect continuous or simple?

#### A I have been doing or I have done?





We use the present perfect continuous for an action happening over a period of time (see Unit 16). We are thinking of Mike doing the repair and getting oil on his hands.

Here are some more examples.

#### OVER A PERIOD (have been doing)

We've been touring Scotland. A strong wind has been blowing all day. Vicky is out of breath. She's been running. I've been writing an essay. I'm tired now.

We normally use the continuous form when we say <u>how long</u>.

Rachel has been playing music all day.

I've been ironing shirts since ten o'clock.

How long have you been learning to drive?



Mike has repaired the car.

We use the present perfect simple for a complete action (see Unit 11). We are thinking of the finished repair and the result of the repair - that the car is all right now.

#### COMPLETE (have done)

We've finished our tour of Scotland. The wind has blown a tree over. Vicky is here at last. She's run all the way. I've written an essay. I can hand it in now

We normally use the simple form when we say how much/many.

Rachel has played at least twenty CDs.

I've ironed eight shirts.

How many driving lessons have you had?

#### B States and actions

We cannot normally use the continuous form with a state verb (see Unit 7).

I've known the secret for a long time, NOT I've been knowing the secret. My parents have had this car for about ten years. We've never been very happy here, I'm afraid.

Live and work (= have a job) can be continuous or simple, with no difference in meaning.

We've been living here since 1992. OR We've lived here since 1992.

Sarah has been working for the company for three years now. OR Sarah has worked for the company for three years now.

#### 1 I have been doing or I have done? (A)

Look at these conversations and put in the correct form of the verb. Use the present perfect continuous or simple.

▶	Sarah:	I feel really tired.		
	Mark: It's because you've been doing (you / do) too much.			
Sarah: Well, at least I've finished (I / finish) that report now, and I can relax.			iX.	
1	David:	Someone	(leave) the ladder or	utside, look.
	Harriet:	I expect that's Mike.	(he / cle	ean) the windows. I don't
		think	(he/ finish) yet.	
2	Laura:	You've got mud on your shoes.		
	Trevor:	It's all right, I'll take them off		(I / work) in the garden.
	Laura:	Yes, it looks a lot tidier. Well done		(you / do) a good job.
3	Tom:	(I	/ hear) that you and Harriet	are building a garage.
		How long	(you / do) that?	
	Mike:	Oh, for about a month now. (we / do)		about half of it.

#### 2 I have been doing or I have done? (A)

What would you ask in these situations? Use the present perfect continuous or simple.

- ? Your friend is wearing glasses. You've never seen him with glasses on before. Ask him how long ... How long have you been wearing glasses?
- ? Nick is playing computer games. Ask him how many ... How many computer games have you played?
- 1 You meet a group of people walking across country. Ask them how many miles ...
- 2 Some workmen are digging up the road outside Sarah's house. Ask her how long ...
- 3 Laura is taking lots of photos of you and your friends. Ask her how many ...
- 4 You have just woken up from an afternoon sleep and seen that it is raining. Ask your friend how long ...

#### 3 I have been doing or I have done? (A-B)

**Complete** the conversation. Put the verbs in the present perfect continuous or simple.

Laura:	What are you doing, Trevor? (▶) You've been (you / be) in here for ages. You're making an awful		
	mess.		
Trevor:	(1)	(I / clear) out this cupboard most of the afternoon. There's a	
	lot of old stuff in here. (2)	(I / find) these, look.	
I aura:	(3)	(you / sit) there staring at those old boots for the last five	
	minutes. (4)	(I / watch) you.	
	(5)	(you / be) in a dream.	
Trevor:	They're football boots. (6)	(I / have) them since I was about	
	sixteen. (7) (they / be) in here for years.		
Laura:	ra: Well, throw them away. And what about that tennis racket? Is that yours?		
Trevor:	vor: No, it must be yours. (8)		

# 18 The past perfect

#### A Introduction

IN THE CANTEEN AT WORK, MARK IS TELLING A COLLEAGUE ABOUT THE DREADFUL DAY HE HAD YESTERDAY:



I felt really tired when I took the train to work yesterday because Sarah and I had been to a party the evening before. We hadn't gone to bed until after one. I hadn't been on the train long when I had a bit of a shock. I suddenly realized that I'd left my wallet at home. Then I began to wonder. Had I left it in the office the day before? I just couldn't remember. I wanted to go back to bed. I felt awful.

The situation is in the past (I *took* the train ... I felt tired ...). When we talk about things <u>before</u> this past time, we use the past perfect.

Sarah and I had been to a party the evening before.

I'd left my wallet at home.

We are looking back from the situation of the train journey to the earlier actions - going to a party and leaving home without the wallet.

Here are some more examples of the past perfect. It was twenty to six. Most of the shops had just closed.

I went to the box office at lunch-time, but they had already sold all the tickets. By 1960 most of Britain's old colonies had become independent.

As well as actions, we can use the past perfect to talk about states.

I felt better by the summer, but the doctor warned me not to do too much. **I'd been** very ill. The news came as no surprise to me. **I'd known** for some time that the factory was likely to close.

#### B Form

The past perfect is **had** + a past participle.

He had enjoyed the party, OR He'd enjoyed the party.

They **hadn't gone** to bed until late. Where **had** he **put** his wallet? For irregular past participles see page 383.

#### C Present perfect and past perfect

Compare these examples.

PRESENT PERFECT (before now)

My wallet isn't here. **I've left** it behind. The match is over. United **have won**. That man looks familiar. **I've seen** him somewhere before. PAST PERFECT (before then)

My wallet wasn't there. **I'd left** it behind. The match was over. United **had won**. The man looked familiar. **I'd seen** him somewhere before.

19 Review of the past simple, continuous and perfect 20 The past perfect continuous

#### 1 The past perfect (A)

Read about each situation and then tick the right answer.

- Two men delivered the sofa. I had already paid for it.
- Which came first, a) the delivery, or b) V the payment?

  The waiter brought our drinks. We'd already had our soup.
  - Which came first, a) the drinks, or b) the soup?
- 2 I'd seen the film, so I read the book.
  - Did 1 first a) see the film, or b) read the book?
- 3 The programme had ended, so I rewound the cassette.
  - Did I rewind the cassette a) after, or b) before the programme ended?
- 4 I had an invitation to the party, but I'd arranged a trip to London.

  Which came first, a) the invitation, or b) the arrangements for the trip?

#### 2 The past perfect (A-B)

Add a sentence with the past perfect using the notes.

► Claire looked very suntanned when I saw her last week. She'd just been on holiday, (just / be on holiday)

1	We rushed to the station, but we were too late.
2	I didn't have an umbrella, but that didn't matter.
	(the rain / stop)
3	When I got to the concert hall, they wouldn't let me in.
	(forget / my ticket)
4	Someone got the number of the car the raiders used.
	(steal / it / a week before)
5	I was really pleased to see Rachel again yesterday.
	(not see / her / for ages)
6	Luckily the flat didn't look too bad when my parents called in.
	(just / clean / it)
7	The boss invited me to lunch yesterday, but I had to refuse the invitation.

#### 3 Present perfect and past perfect (C)

Put the verbs in the present perfect (have done) or past perfect (had done).

- ? It isn't raining now. It's *stopped* (stop) at last.
- ? We had no car at that time. We'd sold (sell) our old one.
- 2 You can have that newspaper. I ......(finish) with it.
- 3 There's no more cheese. We.....(eat) it all, I'm afraid.

- 6 I spoke to Melanie at lunch-time. Someone ......(tell) her the news earlier.
- 8 Don't you want to see this programme? It ......(start).
- 9 It'll soon get warm in here. I.....(turn) the heating on.
- 10 At last the committee were ready to announce their decision.

They ..... (make) up their minds.

# 19 Review of the past simple, continuous and perfect

#### A Introduction

Read this true story. It happened some years ago.

A young man walked into a supermarket in Southampton and put a few items of food in a basket. He had chosen a time when not many people were shopping in the store. He found a checkout where no one else was waiting. When the cashier had checked the goods, the man gave her a £10 note. When she opened the till, the man quickly snatched all the money from it and ran out of the store before she realized what was happening. At the time the security guard was standing at the other end of the store. When staff checked the records in the till, they found that the thief had taken only £4.37. As he had left the £10 note behind, the operation had cost him £5.63.

#### B Comparison of tenses

We use the past simple to talk about the past (see Unit 8).

*He snatched the money and ran away.* The past simple is used for the actions in the story, to tell us what happened next.

We use the past continuous (see Unit 9) for something <u>around</u> a past time or a past action.

At the time of the incident, not many people were shopping in the store.

The few customers were in the middle of doing their shopping.

We use the past perfect (see Unit 18) for things before a past situation.

Staff found that the thief **had taken** only £4.37. The theft of the money happened before they found out how much.

#### C Past simple and past continuous

We often use these two forms together when a shorter action comes in the middle of a longer one (see Unit 10B).

/ was waiting at the checkout when I noticed a strange-looking man.

Seeing the man came in the middle of the wait.

#### D Past simple and past perfect

When we use these two forms together, we use the past perfect for what happened earlier.

A man walked into a supermarket. He had chosen a quiet time. The choice of the time came before the arrival in the supermarket.

In this example, one past action followed another.

He filled the basket and went to the checkout. We can also use either

#### when ... had done, or after ... did/had done.

When he had filled the basket, he went to the checkout.

After he had filled (OR After he filled) the basket, he went to the checkout. But when

one short action comes straight after another, we use the past simple for both.

When she **opened** the till, he **snatched** all the money out of it.

Note the different meanings.

When I switched the TV on, the programme started. I was just in time.

When I switched the TV on, the programme had started. I missed the beginning. We can use the past perfect or the past simple with before or until. There is no difference in meaning.

The man arrived at the store before it **had** opened/before it **opened**.

The chairman didnt speak until he had heard/until he heard all the arguments.

#### 1 Past simple, continuous and perfect (A-D)

Look at these sentences and then tick the right answer.

- ▶ David and Tom were talking together when a young woman spoke to them. Which took more time, a) what David and Tom said, or b) what the woman said?
- 1 Mike had put up the tent, but Harriet was still unloading things from the car. Which finished first, a) putting up the tent, or b) unloading?
- 2 Mark went home and switched off the computer. What did he do first, a) go home, or b) switch off the computer?
- 3 When Claire arrived, Henry was walking up and down. Which started earlier, a) Claire's arrival, or b) Henry's walking?
- 4 When Sarah had phoned the office, she drove to the hotel. Did she phone the office a) before, or b) after driving to the hotel?

#### 2 Past simple and past perfect (D)

Write the two sentences as one. Use when and the past perfect in either the first or the second part of the sentence.

- ► I took the book back to the library. I read it. / took the book back to the library when I'd read it.
- ▶ The students did the experiment. They wrote a report on it. When the students had done the experiment, they wrote a report on it.
- 1 Nick saved enough money. He bought a motor bike.
- 2 Mark put all the dishes away. He dried them.
- 3 I looked both ways. I pulled out into the road.
- 4 The golfers went into the clubhouse. They played the last hole.

#### 3 Past simple, continuous and perfect (A-D)

Daniel is telling the story of how he forgot his passport. Put the verbs into the correct form. (►) /(happened (it / happen) last August at the airport. A few weeks before, a group of us

(1) (decide) to go to Greece together for a holiday.				
(2) (we / wait) in the queue at passport control when suddenly				
(3)(I / realize) that (4)(I / forget) my passport.				
(5)				
(7) (ring) my parents. (8) (they / work) in the garden,				
but luckily my mother (9) (hear) the phone.				
(10)(they / find) the passport and immediately				
(11)(drive) to the airport with it. (12)(] / meet) them at				
the information desk. (13) (we / have) no time to talk, but				
(14)(I / say) goodbye to them earlier that morning.				
(15)				
(16)(sit) in their seats				
ready for take-off. When (18) (they / see) me, everyone				
(19)(start) clapping.				

# 20 The past perfect continuous

#### A Introduction



David is talking about a situation in the past (*Ifell and broke my leg*). When we look back to something before this past time, we use the past perfect simple (see Unit 18) or the past perfect continuous.

Past perfect simple: 1 had taken a bus into town.
Past perfect continuous: / had been swimming in the pool

We use the past perfect continuous for an action which happened over a period of time. The swimming went on for some time before David broke his leg.

#### B Form

The past perfect continuous is **had been** + an ing-form. / had been waiting ages, OR I'd been waiting ages. I had not been paying attention, OR / hadn't been paying attention. Was the ground wet? Had it been raining?

#### C I had been doing or I had done?

Compare the past perfect continuous and simple.

#### OVER A PERIOD (had been doing)

found the calculator. I'd been looking for it for ages. Vicky felt tired because she'd been working

all day.

We are thinking of Vicky's work going on as she got tired.

We normally use the continuous with a phrase saying how long.

When the company went bankrupt, it had been losing money for months.

We do not normally use the past perfect continuous for states (see Unit 7). NOT*He had been seeming unwell* 

#### COMPLETE (had done)

I finally bought a new calculator. I'd looked everywhere for the old one. Vicky felt pleased because she'd done so much work. We are thinking of Vicky's work as complete.

We normally use the simple form with a phrase saying how much/many.

When the company went bankrupt, it **had** lost over a million pounds.

We also use the past perfect simple for states (see Unit 7).

The old man **had** seemed unwell for some time before he died.

#### D Comparison with other continuous forms

Compare the <u>present</u> perfect continuous (has/have been doing) and the <u>past</u> perfect continuous.

Vicky looks very upset. I think she's been crying.

Vicky looked very upset. I thought she'd been crying. Compare the past continuous (was doing) and the past perfect continuous.

When I phoned, Natasha was having a piano lesson. (I phoned during the lesson.)

When I phoned, Natasha had been having a piano lesson. (I phoned <u>after</u> the lesson.)

#### 1 Form (B)

Complete the conversation. Put in the past perfect continuous of the verbs.

Rachel: How was your job interview?

(2) (I / not look) forward to the interview at all.

Rachel: So what happened?

Vicky: The woman interviewing me was half an hour late because

- (3).....(she / deal) with an unexpected problem, she said.
- (4) ...... (I / wait) ages, and I'd got even more nervous.

Rachel: How did the interview go?

#### 2 Form and use (A-B)

Add a sentence with the past perfect continuous to explain why. Look at the pictures to find the reasons.











tree

Claire got burnt. *She'd been lying in the sun.* 

- 1 Vicky looked upset....
- 4 A young man was struck by lightning

#### Comparison with other tenses (C-D)

Put in the correct form of the verbs.

- ▶ Tom could hear shouts from the flat next door. His neighbours were arguing (argue) again.
- $1\quad \text{Emma went into the sitting-room. It was empty, but the television was still on.}$

Someone (watch) it.

- 2 I ......(play) tennis, so I had a shower. I was annoyed because I ......(not win) a single game.

# TEST 4 Past and perfect tenses (Units 16-20)

#### Test 4A

Read the conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space. Hello, Robert. I ( $\triangleright$ ) haven't seen you for ages. Robert: (2)..... just started a new job in computer software. Tessa: Robert: You (3)...... working for Tuffex Plastics when we last met. Tessa: That's right. I hadn't (4)..... working there long before I got fed up. 1 (5).....realized what a horrible job it would be. But what about you? (6).....you found a job? Well, six months ago I (7) ......working for a car hire company, but then Robert: they (8).....bankrupt. So I'm out of work now. (9).... been looking around for another job. Tessa: Well, I'm sure you'll find one soon. ► a) didn't b) hadn't c) haven't d) wasn't a) been b) had c) has d) was 2 a) I'd b) I'll c) I'm d) I've a) did b) had c) have d) were a) be b) been c) done d) had 5 c) haven't d) wasn't a) didn't b) hadn't b) Had c) Have d) Were a) Did a) been b) had c) have d) was b) going a) go c) gone d) went 9 a) I'd b) I'll c) I'm d) I've

#### Test 4B

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- Susan had a green dress on. (wearing) Susan was wearing a green dress.
- 1 The doctor began work at six o'clock and is still working, (has)
- 2 Rupert didn't have his credit card, (forgotten)
- 3 I didn't want to go without taking a photo, (until)
- 4 Nancy has been writing the report. It is finished now. (written)
- 5 My wait in the queue has lasted forty minutes so far. (I)
- 6 When we arrived, everyone was on the dance floor, (dancing)
- 7 The computer has been mine for four years, (had)
- 8 In the middle of our lunch there was a knock at the door, (when)
- 9 Nigel felt sick from eating too many cakes, (because)

#### Test 4C

Write the sentences correctly.

- ► I like this CD. I've been having it for ages.

  I've had it for ages.
- 1 It was my first day back at work. I was on holiday.
- 2 I'm quite tired now. I play badminton
- 3 I had to sit down. I'd been havig a shock
- 4 You need a rest. How much have you been working?
- 5 The robbery happened at midday, Lots of people walked along the street outside.
- 6 My sister speaks good English. She is practising her English since last summer.
- 7 At last I have my qualification. : I've been passing my exam.
- 8 Michelle looked really sunburnt. She'd lie in the sun-for-too long.
- 9 We got to the coach stop at nine yesterday. But the coach has already gone.

#### Test 4D

Co	mpl	ete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb.		
▶	A:	Did you buy (you / buy) anything at the antiques sale yesterday?		
	B:	3: No. / wanted (I / want) to buy some jewellery, but I'd left (I / leave) my credit card at home		
1	A:	: Are you still copying those addresses?		
	B:	No, that's all of them(I / finish) now.		
2	A:	The train is never going to get here.		
	B:	How long(we / wait) now?		
	A:	At least half an hour		
3	A:	Did you have a nice chat with Tessa?		
	B:	No, not really. When (we / drink) our coffee,		
		(she / hurry) off home.		
4	A:	It's terrible about that plane crash, isn't it?		
	B:	Yes, awful(I / have) breakfast when		
		(I / hear) the news.		
5	A:	So you sing in a rock band, do you? How long(you / do) that?		
	B:	Oh, since I was sixteen. (we / do) about a dozen concerts.		
6	A:	Do you know what Polly was so upset about yesterday?		
	B:	No, I don't. But I'm sure(she / cry). Her eyes looked red.		
	A:	Perhaps (she / have) some bad news.		
7	A:	The shooting was very frightening, I suppose.		
	B:	It certainly was. When we (hear) the shot,		
		we all (throw) ourselves to the floor.		

# 21 Review of present and past tenses

#### A Introduction

Study the verb forms.

Claire is ready to go on safari.

Present continuous: She is waiting for her guide.

Present simple: She goes on holiday a lot.

Present perfect: She has bought a safari suit.

Present perfect continuous: She has been planning her

trip for months.

Past simple: She bought the suit last week.
Past continuous: She was going past Harrods when

she saw it in the window.

Past perfect: She had already decided that she

needed a safari suit. Past perfect

continuous: She had been looking for one

for a week or two.



#### **B** I am doing or I do? (Unit 6)

#### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We use the present continuous for an action now, something we are in the middle of.

/ am writing a letter.

Claire is wearing a safari suit.

We're getting lunch now.

We use the present continuous for a feeling over a short period of time.

Vicky is liking her course much better this year.

We use the present continuous for a temporary situation or routine.

I'm very busy at the moment, so **I'm getting** up early this week.

#### PRESENT SIMPLE

We use the present simple for repeated actions, things that happen again and again.

] write home every week.

Tom never wears smart clothes.

We usually **get** lunch at about one.

We normally use the present simple for thought; and feelings, and for states and permanent facts.

Claire likes holidays.

Four times twelve makes forty-eight.

We use the present simple for a permanent situation or routine.

I usually **get** up quite late,

#### C I have done or I did? (Units 14-15)

PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect tells us about the past and the present.

They have locked the door. No one can get in. We use the present perfect for a state which has gone on up to the present.

*I've known him for ages. He's an old friend.*We use the present perfect for actions in a period of time up to the present.

/ have seen the carnival several times.

#### PAST SIMPLE

The past simple tells us about the past, a time which is finished.

They **locked** the door at ten o'clock last night. We use the past simple for a state in the past,

*I knew him when we were at college together.*We use the past simple for actions in the past,

I saw the carnival several times as a child.

#### D I have been doing or I have done? (Unit 17)

#### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We use the present perfect continuous for an action over a period of time leading up to the present. We are thinking of the action going on.

Daniel's tired. He's **been working.**I've **been reading** all afternoon.
We've **been staying** here for a week/since
Thursday.

#### PRESENT PERFECT

We use the present perfect simple for a complete action. We are thinking of the result.

At least he's earned some money. I've read 200 pages.

#### E I was doing or I did? (Unit 10)

#### PAST CONTINUOUS

We use the past continuous for an action that we were in the middle of.

/ was reading the paper at half past ten.

#### PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for a complete action in the past or for a past state.

I **left** the house at half past ten. Vicky **had** a headache.

We often use the past continuous and simple together when a shorter action (simple) comes in the middle of a longer one (continuous).

We were looking for the coffee bar when we met Emma. But we

use two past simple verbs for one action after another.

When we saw Rachel, she waved to us.

#### F I did or I had done? (Units 18-19)

We use the past simple to talk about a past situation and the past perfect for things that happened earlier. I threw the magazine away. I'd finished with it. When Sarah found the letter, someone had already opened it. When the new people moved in, the house had been empty for a year.

We can use when ... had done to say that one thing finished and then something else happened.

When we'd paid the bill, we left the restaurant. But when one short action comes straight

after another, we use the past simple for both.

When the firework went off, the dog ran away.

Compare these two sentences.

When we arrived, the others all left. (We arrived and then they left.) When we arrived, the others had all left. (They left before we arrived.)

#### G I had been doing or I had done? (Unit 20)

We use these forms when we look back from a situation in the past.

#### PAS! PERFECT CONTINUOUS

We use the past perfect continuous for an action over a period of time. We are thinking of the action going on.

Emma's hand ached because she'd **been using** the computer.

When I finally served the meal, **I'd been cooking** for hours.

#### PAST PERFECT

We use the past perfect simple for a complete action. We are thinking of the result,

Her work looked really neat because she'd **used** the computer.

I felt quite proud that **I'd cooked** a meal for eight people.

#### 1 Present tenses (A-D)

Complete the sentences using the notes in brackets. The verbs can be present continuous (*am doing*), present simple (*do*) or present perfect (*have done*).

- ▶ We bought this picture a long time ago. We've had it (we / have / it) for ages.

- We're in the middle of decorating our kitchen, so we can't cook any meals.
  - ......(we / get / them) from a take-away restaurant this week.
- 5 The colour of this paint is absolutely awful ......(I/hate/it).

#### 2 Present tenses (A-D)

Read about each situation. What else do you say? Use the verb in brackets.

You can't go out with a friend because you have a Saturday job. (work)

I'm sorry. *I work on Saturdays*.

You have just met a friend you last saw months ago. (not see)

1 You have just met a friend you last saw months ago. (not see Hello! How are you? .....

- 2 Someone has arranged to phone you at this time, and you're ready for the call, (wait)
  I have to stay by the phone......
- 3 Your friend is wearing a very nice jacket you haven't seen before, (like)
  Oh, that's nice......
- 4 You are watching the snow fall. It started yesterday and is still falling, (snow) I can't believe it......

#### 3 Present and past tenses (A-F)

Read about each situation and then tick the right answer.

- ▶ When we were talking, Tom left the room.
  - Which took longer, a) our conversation, or b) Tom's departure?
- 1 Mark has been a member of the golf club for two years.
  - a) He joined the club two years ago and is still a member.
  - b) He was a member of the club for two years but is not a member now.
- 2 Vicky is watching the weather forecast.

The weather forecast a) hasn't started yet, b) has started but not finished, or c) is over.

- 3 I've switched off the burglar alarm.
  - Do I think that the alarm a) is off, b) is on, or c) may be on or off?
- 4 I've been studying all afternoon, and I've got a headache.
  - Am I thinking of a) how much I have learned, or b) the action going on for a long time?
- 5 We had already travelled some distance when the sun rose.
  - Did our journey start a) before sunrise, b) at sunrise, or c) after sunrise?
- 6 I'm going to work by bus this week.
  - a) 1 always go to work by bus. b) My routine is different for this week.

#### 4 Present and past tenses (C-E)

Put in a pronoun and the correct form of the verb. Use the past continuous (was doing), the past simple (did) or the present perfect continuous (have been doing).

► Mark: I rang at one, but you weren't in your office.

Sarah: No, / was having (have) lunch.

1 David: You look tired.

Melanie: Yes, I expect I do...... (work) all day.

2 Sarah: Is Laura at home?

Trevor: No,..... (go) out about half an hour ago.

3 Vicky: I haven't finished this letter yet.

Rachel: It must be a long letter. ......(write) it since lunch-time.

4 Harriet: I see you've got some new neighbours.

5 David: Did Tom drive you home?

Melanie: Yes,..... (stop) and offered me a lift

while.....(wait) for a bus outside the town hall.

#### 5 Present and past tenses (A-G)

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form.

Melanie: How (▶) are you getting/<del>do you get</del> on in your new job, Nick?

Nick: Oh, so (1) you know/you're knowing about my job as a car salesman.

Melanie: (2) <u>David's told/David told</u> me yesterday.

Nick: Well, I (3) haven't been/wasn't in the job long. (4) I started/I've started on Monday.

Melanie: And how many cars (5) have you been selling/have you sold so far?

Nick: Well, none yet. Give me a chance. Up to now (6) I've been learning/I've learned all the time.

Melanie: David says you (7) had/were having a sports car once.

Nick: I've still got it. (8) I had/I've had it for about five years. (9) I don't often drive/I'm not often

driving it because (10) I don't like/I'm not liking getting it dirty. Normally (11) I ride/I'm riding my motor bike. And the car is expensive to run. 1(12) bought/had bought it on impulse. I (13) was working/worked on a building site at the time. For several months before I bought it, (14) I'd done/I'd been doing overtime, and when (15) I'd been earning/I'd earned enough to buy a

car, it was a really magical moment. Maybe you'd like a ride in it some time?

Melanie: Oh, yes please. That would be lovely.

#### 6 Present and past tenses (A-G)

Complete the radio news report. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

# TEST 5 Present and past tenses (Unit 21)

#### Test 5A Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb. ► A: Are you ready? B: I won't be a moment. I'm doing (I / do) my hair. A: Could you tell me your address? B: Well,....(I / live) in a friend's house at the moment. Luckily......(I / find) a place of my own now, but I can't move in until next week. A: Is this your CD? 2 B: No, it isn't mine.....(I / think)......(it / belong) A: Can I borrow your calculator, please? B: Well,..... (I / use) it to work out these figures at the that..... (I / start). A: Why can't you wash your dirty plates sometimes? ...... (you / leave) them in the sink most of the time. time.....(I / rush) around all the time. Test 5B Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. One day a man was (**b**) walking past a house in Bournemouth when he (1).....a woman's voice shouting for help. The man (2) ...... someone probably trying to murder her. He ran to a phone box and (3) the police. The police came quite quickly, but by now the shouting had (4) (5) . However, the man (6) ...... quite sure that he door, there was no answer. So they broke down the door and went in. Inside the house was a woman who had just (9)..... out of the shower. She explained to the police that she had (10)..... singing along to the Beatles song 'Help!'. Test 5C Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Begin with the word in brackets. ▶ Our trip to Africa was in October. (We ...) We went to Africa in October. We've had ten hours of rain. (It...) It's the right thing to do in my opinion. (I ...) Our sofa is in a different place now. (We ...) 3 It was breakfast-time when Susan rang. (I ...) 4 Their game of badminton is always on Tuesday. (They ...) 5

#### Test 5D

Write the correct answer in each space.

- ► This isn't my first visit to London. *I've been* here before.
  - a) I'm b) I've been c) I was
- 1 I've got my key. I found it when..... for something else.
  - a) I looked b) I've looked c) I was looking
- 2 Sorry, I can't stop now. ..... to an important meeting.
  - a) I go b) I'm going c) I've gone
- 3 I can't get Tessa on the phone ...... all afternoon.
  - a) I'm trying b) I try c) I've been trying
- 4 The bank told me last week there was no money in my account.
  - a) I'd spent b) I spent c) I was spending
- 5 There's a new road to the motorway. ..... it yesterday.
  - a) They'd opened b) They opened c) They've opened

#### Test 5 E

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (V). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

? Martin has changed his mind about next weekend.

V

? We were enjoyed the holiday very much.

were

it all.

- 1 Nancy is practising on the piano.
- 2 It was lucky that we had been decided to buy our tickets in advance.
- 3 We were riding our bikes when suddenly I was felt a pain in my leg.
- 4 We are go camping for three weeks every summer.
- 5 They have planted some new trees last year.
- 6 I suddenly realized I had been walking in the wrong direction.
- 7 Did you know that Anna has been won a prize?
- 8 No one told me that the goods had arrived the week before.

#### Test 5F

Complete the news report. Put each verb into the correct form.

The actress Vanessa Kemp (▶) has disappeared (disappear). Yesterday she				
(I)(fail) to arri	ive at the Prince Charles Theatre in	London's West End for her		
leading role in the comedy 'Don't look no	ow!'. Ms Kemp, who (2)	(live) in		
Hampstead, (3)	(leave) home at four o'clock yeste	erday afternoon for the theatre, a		
journey she (4)	(make) several times the week bet	fore. Two people who		
(5) (walk) past	her home at the time (6)	(see) her		
leave. But no one (7)	(see) her since then. At half	past seven she still		
(8) (not / arrive	e) at the theatre. At eight o'clock th	e theatre manager had to break		
the news to the audience, who (9)	(wait) patiently	for the play to start. Since		
yesterday, theatre staff and friends (10)	(try) to co	ontact Ms Kemp, but they		
(II)(have) no	success so far. The police (12)	(take) the		
matter seriously, but they (13)	(believe) that she	is unlikely to be in any danger.		
Her friends all (14) (want) to hear from her soon.				

#### 22 Introduction to the future

#### A Present, past and future

Read this paragraph from Rachel's letter to her aunt and uncle.

This is my last year at college, so I'll be leaving in June. And I've already got a job! In September I'm starting work at a bank in London. So I'll be free for most of the summer. I'm going to spend six weeks travelling around the US. My friend Vicky is coming with me. (She finishes college at the same time as me.) We're really looking forward to the trip. We might go to Canada too. Vicky has friends in Toronto.

When we talk about the present or the past, we use verb forms to say what <u>is happening</u> now, what happened yesterday, and so on. *Vicky has friends in Toronto*.

We know about things in the present and in the past because they are already real. But talking about the future is more of a problem. There is no single form in English that we can always use for the future. There are many different ways of talking about the future, depending on how we see a future event. It may be something that is fairly sure to happen, but on the other hand it may be just a plan or an intention, or it may be something that you think will happen but you can't be sure about.

#### B Verb forms used for the future

Here are some examples of verb forms used to express the future.

Be going to> 24I'm going to spend six weeks in the US. (an intention)Will> 23 AI'll be free for most of the summer, (neutral future)Present continuous> 26AI'm starting work in September, (an arrangement)Present simple> 26BShe finishes college at the same time, (a timetable)Will be doing> 28I'll be leaving in June, (in the course of events)

Very often there is more than one possible form that could be used.

She'll **finish** college in June. She **finishes** college in June.

She's finishing college in June. She'll be finishing college in June.

Rachel could use any of these in her letter.

#### C Will

We often use **will** as a neutral way of expressing the future, but it is not 'the future tense'. It is only one of the forms we can use. In some situations **will** is not the right word.

After college **I'm going to travel** around the US. Here Rachel is saying what she intends to do in the future. We cannot use **will** here.

#### D Being sure and unsure

We cannot always be sure about the future. To show that we are unsure we can use **might** or **could** (see Unit 46).

We might go to Canada. It could snow soon.

To show how sure or unsure we are, we often use phrases like **I'm sure**, **definitely**, **I expect**, **I (don't) think** and **probably**.

I'm sure it'll be all right. We're definitely going to be at the meeting. I expect everyone will be going home. Rachel will probably be late. I think I'm going to sneeze. I don't think Tom's coming tonight.

#### 1 Present, past and future (A-B)

Rachel has received a letter from a friend of hers who left college last year.

Find the sentences which refer to the future and write them below.

I'm really enjoying my work at the store. I'm learning lots about the job. Soon they're moving me to another store - in Birmingham. They told me about it last week. I'll be leaving here at the end of the month. I feel a bit sad about that. Luckily they'll find a flat for me.

The time is going very quickly. I've been here three months. The training programme finishes next summer. 1 like the work, and I want to stay with the company. They'll decide about that next year. I'm just hoping for the best.

ightharpoons	Soon they're moving me to another store — in Birmingham.
1	
2	
3	

#### 2 Present and future (A-D)

Say if the second sentence is about the present or the future. Look at the phrases of time such as at the moment and on Friday.

- ► I'm busy. I'm cooking a meal at the moment. present
- 1 I'm nervous. I'm cooking for ten people on Friday.
- 2 I don't want to go out. I might watch a video later.
- 3 There's football on TV tonight. I might watch it.
- 4 We're off at last. We arrive in New York at seven.
- 5 This train is never on time. We always arrive late.

#### 3 Present and future (A-D)

Read each pair of sentences and then answer the question about them.

- ➤ a) I'll see you on Thursday.
  - b) I saw you on Thursday.

Which sentence is about the future? a

- 1 a) I'm going to Manchester. I'm waiting for a connecting train.
  - b) I'm going to get a train to Manchester, changing at Birmingham.

Which is spoken during the journey?.....

- 2 a) We'll know the results of the tests next week.
  - b) We might know the results of the tests next week.

Which sentence is more certain? .....

- 3 a) I'm doing two exams this year.
  - b) I'm doing some work at the moment.

In which sentence has the action already started?...

- 4 a) What time do we arrive in Swansea?
  - b) What time will we arrive in Swansea?

Which question is more likely if you are travelling by car?

- 5 a) I'm eating at the Thai restaurant tonight.
  - b) I'll eat at the Thai restaurant tonight.

Which would you say if you've booked a table?

#### 23 Will and shall



We use will to say what we know or think about the future. Will here has a neutral meaning. It does not express the idea that we have already decided to do something or that we are planning something.

#### B Will for instant decisions

We also use **will** for an instant decision, when we decide on something or agree to do it more or less at the moment of speaking.

I'm thirsty. I think I'll make some tea.

NOT l make some-tea.

You've left your computer on. ~ Oh, I'll go and switch it off. We must celebrate. I know, we'll have a party.

I don't think **I'll do** any work tonight. I'm too tired.

We also use it to order things.

I'll have the ham salad, please.

We also use will in offers and invitations (see Unit 51).

Offer: I'll peel the potatoes. ~ Oh, thank you.

Invitation: Will you come to lunch? ~ Yes, thank you. I'd

love to. Promise: I'll

pay you back next week.

#### C The form of will

The form is will or '11.

The west will have rain tomorrow. You'll be late if you don't hurry. Will you be at home this evening? The world will end in the year 2050. The negative is will not or won't.

The cost will not be more than £50. I won't have time for a meal.

#### D Shall

We can use shall for the future, but only in the first person, after I or we.

/ will be/I shall be on holiday in August.

We will know/We shall know the results soon.

But NOT Everyone shall know the results-seen.

I will and I shall have the same meaning here, but shall is a little formal. Both I will and I shall can be shortened to I'll, which is pronounced /ail/.

I'll be on holiday in August. (= I will OR I shall)

Shall has other meanings. We can use it in offers and suggestions (see Unit 51).

Offer: Shall I pack up your shopping for you?  $\sim$  Oh, thank you.

Suggestion: *Shall we all go out together?* ~ *Good idea.* We do not use **shall** in American English (see page 377).

25 Will and be going to 28 Will be doing 29 A Will have done 144 Will in conditionals

#### 1 Will for the future and for instant decisions (A-B)

Read the conversations. Which replies are statements about the <u>future</u> and which are instant <u>decisions</u>?

- ► What would you like? ~ I'll have an orange juice, please. decision
- 1 Shall we go out tonight? ~ I'll be too tired, I think.
- 2 We've lost a tennis ball. ~ I'll help you look for it.
- 3 I'm worried about the exam. ~ Oh, you'll be all right.
- 4 I haven't got any transport. ~ Oh, we'll give you a lift.
- 5 I must fix this shelf some time. ~ We'll be dead before then.

#### 2 Instant decisions (B)

Say what your decision is in these situations, or what you offer to do.

Use these verbs: answer, carry, have, post, shut

- ➤ You and your friend have come into the room. The window is open, and it is cold.

  /// shut the window.
- 1 The phone is ringing. You are the nearest person to it.
- 2 The choice on the menu is fish or chicken. You hate fish.
- 3 You are meeting a friend at the station. He has two suitcases. There's a bag, too.
- 4 Your friend has written a letter. You are going to walk into town past the post office.

#### 3 Will and won't for the future (C)

Use the notes to write about what will happen next weekend.

- 1 Tom / watch / the match
- 2 Harriet's party / be / fun
- 3 Trevor / not put up / the shelves
- 4 Laura / be / annoyed
- 5 Andrew / study / all weekend
- 6 Rachel / not do / any work

#### 4 Will and shall (A, D)

Complete the conversation. Put in will or shall.			
Rachel: What $(\triangleright)$ <i>shall</i> we do today?			
Vicky: It would be nice to go out somewhere.	The forecast says temperatures		
(1)rise to thirt	y degrees.		
Jessica: (2)we go for a	walk?		
Rachel: That sounds a bit boring. What about the seaside? We could get a bus.			
Jessica: How much (3)	.it cost? I haven't got very much money.		
Vicky: It isn't far. It doesn't cost much.			
Jessica: Everywhere (4)	be so crowded today because it's a holiday. The journe		
(5) take ages.			
Rachel: Come on, Vicky. (6)	we leave Jessica behind if she's going to be so		
miserable?			

# 24 Be going to

#### A Intentions



We use **be going to** to talk about something we have decided to do (an intention). David intends to climb up the ladder.

Here are some more examples.

I'm going to watch the next programme.

Emma is going to do an experiment this afternoon.

Rachel and Vicky are going to spend six weeks in the State:. We can use I'm not going to for a refusal.

I'm sorry, but **I'm not going to walk** half a mile in the ram. (= 1 don't want to/I'm not willing to walk.)

The present continuous can have a very similar meaning to **be going to.** We can often use either form (see Unit 26A).

I'm going to visit my friend at the weekend.

*I'm visiting* my friend at the weekend.

We do not use will here.

We can use **be going to** with the verb **go** (*We're going to go out this evening*), but the present continuous is more usual. *We're going out this evening*.

#### B Form

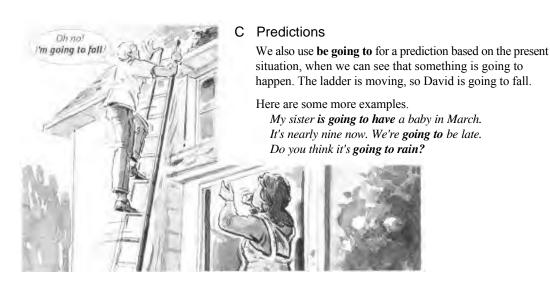
We use the present tense of be + going to + a verb.

They're going to move house. Matthew is going to play squash.

Vicky isn't going to have any lunch. We aren't going to complain.

Is Daniel **going to apply** for the job?  $\sim$  / think he is.

When are you going to pay this bill? ~ I don't know. I can't at the moment.



25 Will and be going to > 29B Was going to

#### i Intentions (A-B)

Look at the pictures and say what is going to happen.

Use these verbs: answer, catch, have, hit, light

Use these objects: the ball, a bath, a bus, the firework, the phone











	They're going to have a bath.
	1
	3
	4
	7 1111111111111111111111111111111111111
2	Form(B)
	Put in the verbs with <i>be going to</i> .
	Laura: What are you doing with that camera?
	<b>Trevor:</b> ( $\triangleright$ ) <i>I'm going to take</i> (I / take) it to work. (1)
	(2) (he / take) a few photos with it.
	Laura: Why can't he buy his own camera?
	Trevor: He's got one, but it isn't working properly. (3)
	before he can get it repaired.
	Laura: Well, how long (4) (he / keep) ours? When
	(5) (we / get) it back?
	Trevor. (6)
	(7)
	Laura: Well, I hope (8)(it / not / get) damaged.
3	Predictions (B-C)
	What would you say in these situations? Use these words: be sick, crash, get wet, lose, not stop, rain
	► The sky is full of dark clouds.
	(s going to rain.
	1 Now it's starting to rain. There's nowhere to shelter, and you haven't got an umbrella.
	2. Very first seeffel. Therete a terrible first in several to the
	2 You feel awful. There's a terrible feeling in your stomach.
	3 You are playing Scrabble. The game is nearly over and you are 100 points behind.
	4 You can see a plane coming down. It's out of control and falling to the ground.
	5 You are waiting for a train. There's one coming, but you don't know if it's the one you want. It's travelling very fast.

# 25 Will and be going to

#### A Introduction

Emma: *It's my birthday soon. I'll be twenty* 

next Friday.

Aunt Joan: Oh, really? Are you going to have a party?

Emma: I'm going to have a meal in a restaurant

with a few friends.

Aunt Joan: That'll be nice.

WILL

Will has a neutral meaning. We use it to talk about facts in the future.

I'll be twenty next Friday.

The spacecraft will come down in the Pacific

Ocean tomorrow morning.



BE GOING TO

We use **be going to** for an intention, something we have already decided to do.

We're going to have a meal. Tom is going to sell his car.

Will does not express an intention.

It's her birthday. She's going to have a meal with her friends, NOT She'll have a meal. But we often use **be going to** for an intention and **will** for the details and comments. We're all going to have a meal. There'll be about ten of us. ~ Oh, that'll be nice.

As well as be going to, we can use the present continuous (see Unit 26A).

We're going to drive/We're driving down to the South of France. ~ That'll be a long journey. Yes, it'll take two days. We'll arrive on Sunday.

#### B Decisions and intentions

WILL

We use **will** for an instant decision or agreement to do something.

There's a postbox over there. I'll post these letters. You still haven't put those shelves up, Trevor. ~ OK. I'll do it tomorrow.

Trevor is deciding now.

BE GOING TO

Be going to means that we have already decided.

I'm going out. I'm going to post these letters. You still haven't put those shelves up, Trevor. ~ I know. I'm going to do it tomorrow.

Trevor has already decided.

#### C Predictions

WILL

We can use will for a prediction about the future.

I think United will win the game. One day people will travel to Mars.

BE GOING TO

We use **be going to** for a prediction when we see from the present situation what is going to happen in the future.

There isn't a cloud in the sky. It's going to be a lovely day.

This bag isn't very strong. It's going to break.

It is often possible to use either form in a prediction. For example, we can also say *I think United are going to win the game*. Usually **be going to** is a little more informal and conversational than **will.** 

#### Will and be going to (A-B) Complete the conversations. Put in will or be going to with the verbs. Vicky: Have you got a ticket for the play? Daniel: Yes, I'm going to see (see) it on Thursday. ? Harriet: The alarm's going. It's making an awful noise. Mike: OK, I'll switch (switch) it off. 1 Daniel: Did you buy this book? Matthew: No, Emma did. She...... (read) it on holiday. Would you like tea or coffee? 2 Laura: Oh, I.....(have) coffee, please. Sarah: I'm going to miss a good film on TV because I'll be out tonight. 3 Trevor: Laura: I .....(video) it for you, if you like. I'm just going out to get a paper. 4 Rachel: Emma: What newspaper..... (you / buy)? 2 Will and be going to (A-C) What would you say? Use will or be going to. ▶ You want to express your intention to look round the museum. Your friend: Do you have any plans for this afternoon? Yes, I'm going to look round the museum. 1 You hate dogs. Dogs always attack you if they get the chance. Your friend: That dog doesn't look very friendly. It's coming towards us..... 2 You predict the landing of aliens on the earth in the next ten years. Your friend: All this talk about aliens is complete nonsense, isn't it? Is it? I think 3 You know that your friend's sister has decided to get married. Your friend: Have you heard about my sister? You: Well, I heard that ..... 4 You suddenly decide you want to invite Ilona for a meal. Your friend: Did you know Ilona will be in town next weekend? You: No, I didn't. 3 Will and be going to (A-C) Complete the news report about the village of Brickfield. Use will or be going to. Sometimes either is possible. We have learned this week that the local council has plans for Westside Park in Brickfield. The council (►) is going to sell (sell) the land to a builder, Forbes and Son. The plans are all ready. (I)...... (we / build) fifty houses,' said Mr Forbes. 'In two years' time everything houses. Most of them (4)......(be) for young families. And we intend to take care But people living near the park are angry. 'This is a terrible idea. We're all against it,' said Mrs Mary Brent. (we / have) a protest march on Saturday. I expect everyone in Brickfield (be) there. We've reached our decision. (8).....(we / stop) this plan.'

## 26 Present tenses for the future

## A The present continuous for arrangements

**Tom:** Are you doing anything this evening? Nick: Yes, I'm going to an ice hockey match. The Tigers are playing the Kings.

I bought my ticket yesterday.

We use the present continuous for what someone has arranged to do in the future. Here Nick has arranged to go to the match. (He has bought a ticket.) Here are some more examples.

I'm meeting Harriet at six o'clock. David is coming round later on.
We're having a party tomorrow. Sarah is going to Paris next week.

We also use the present continuous to talk about things happening now (see Unit 4).

Present: We're having a party at the moment.

Future: We're having a party tomorrow.

Here the phrase of time shows whether we mean the present or the future. But sometimes there is no phrase of time, as when Nick says *The Tigers are playing the Kings*. Here it is clear from Tom's question that the conversation is about a future event.

The present continuous for the future and **be going to** (Unit 24A) have similar meanings.

We're having a party next week. (We have made the arrangements.) We're going to have a party next week. (We intend / We have decided to have one.)

Often we can use either form.

I'm meeting/I'm going to meet Harriet at six o'clock.

## B The present simple for a timetable

Mark: What time does your train leave tomorrow?

Sarah: Seven twenty-three in the morning.

It gets into Paris at eleven twenty-three.

We can use the present simple for the future when we are talking about a timetable, usually a public one such as a train timetable.

The train leaves at seven twenty-three tomorrow morning.

The match starts at half past seven.

Next Friday is the thirteenth.

I've got the tour details here. We **spend** three days in Rome. Compare the present simple for repeated actions (see Unit 6A).

The train leaves at seven twenty-three every morning.

### Be to and be about to

We use be **to** for a future event that is officially arranged. It is often used in news reports.

The Queen is to visit Portugal in November.

The Student Games are to take place in Melbourne next year.

We could also use the present continuous here.

The Queen is visiting Portugal in November.

We use **be about to** for the very near future.

The plane is at the end of the runway. It is about to take off. Do you want to say goodbye to our visitors? They're about to leave.





1 The present continuous (A
-----------------------------

Read the conversation and say if the verb refers to the present or the future.

Mark: (▶) What are you <u>reading</u>, Claire?

Claire: Oh, it's a guidebook to Brazil. (1) I'm going there next month. (2) My sister and I are having a holiday there. (3) I\_m really looking forward to it. (4) We're spending three weeks in Rio. (5) So I'm finding out about all the things we can do there.

<b>▶</b> present	3
1	4
2	5

## 2 The present continuous for arrangements (A)

For each situation write a sentence with the present continuous. Use the verbs in brackets.

- ► Mike and Harriet have accepted an invitation to Tom's party next week, (go) *They're going to Tom's party next week.*
- 1 Laura has agreed to be in the office on Saturday, (work)
- 2 Claire has just bought a plane ticket to Cairo dated 15 May. (fly)
- 3 Mark has arranged a meeting with his boss at four o'clock this afternoon, (see)
- 4 Matthew and Daniel have booked a tennis court for tomorrow afternoon, (play)

## 3 Present tenses for the future (A-B)

Put the verbs into the present continuous or the present simple.

#### 4 Be to and be about to (C)

Complete these sentences on the news. Some are spoken by the newsreader in the studio and some by reporters on the spot. Use *be to* or *be about to* with the verbs in brackets.

- ? The new museum is to open (open) in the autumn.
- ? The Prime Minister is at the microphone now. He is about to start (start) speaking.
- 3 The US President (visit) Ireland in the new year.
- 4 The riot isn't over yet, but the police are here. They................(move) in.

## 27 When I get there, before you leave, etc

#### A Introduction

Mark: Did I tell you I've got a meeting in Glasgow

at nine o'clock tomorrow morning? I'm

driving up there overnight. Sarah: You're going

to drive all through the night?

You're crazy. You'll be exhausted **before you arrive.** Why don't you take a train? Mark: I'll

be OK. I'll need the car while I'm there.

I have to visit some companies in the area. I can sleep when I get home.

Study these examples.

You'll be exhausted **before** you **arrive**, NOT <del>before you'll arrive</del> I'll need the car **while I'm** there, NOT <del>while I'll be there</del> I can sleep **when I get** home, NOT <del>when I'll get home</del>

Each of the sentences has a linking word of time, e.g. **before**, **while** or **when**. The sentences are about the future, about Mark's trip to Glasgow. But after the linking words we use the present simple (**arrive**, **am**, **get**), not **will** 

We can start the sentence with a linking word.

When I get home, I can sleep.

## B Linking words

We use the present simple for the future after these linking words of time:

after, as, as soon as, before, by the time, until, when, while.

I'm starting a job in sales after I finish college. As soon as you hear any news, will you let me know? I must get to the bank before it closes.

They'll have stopped serving meals by the time we get to the restaurant. We also use the present simple for the future after if (see Unit 144). If you come in late tonight, please don't make a noise.

## C Present perfect

After a linking word of time, we can often use the present perfect for the future.

I'm starting a job in sales after I've finished college.

As soon as you've heard any news, will you let me know?

Compare *after I finish college* (see B). The meaning is the same.

But sometimes there is a difference in meaning between the present simple and the present perfect. When I see the report, I'll make some notes. (I'll do both at the same time.) When I've seen the report, I'll make some notes. (I'll see it and then make notes.)

### D Present continuous

We can also use the present continuous for the future, especially after **when** and **while**. **When I'm boating** along the canal next week, I might be able to relax. Mark is going to listen to music **while** he's **driving** to Scotland.

26 Present tenses for arrangements and timetables



## 1 When I gat there, before you leave, etc (A-B)

Comment on the situations. Start each sentence with *when* and the present simple.

- ► Claire: I have to call at the travel agency. I'm going to get some holiday brochures. When Claire calls at the travel agency, she's going to get some holiday brochures.
- 1 Mark: I want to see the boss. I'm going to discuss my problem.
- 2 Rachel: I'm going to use the computer later. I'm going to send an e-mail.
- 3 Tom: I'm visiting David in hospital. I'm going to tell him about United's win.
- 4 Matthew: I'll be in town tomorrow. I might buy some new trainers.

## 2 When I get there, before you leave, etc (A-B)

	and Sarah are continuing the conversation in 27A. Put in the verbs. Use <i>will</i> or the present simple.  If $(\triangleright)$ you take $(you)$ take a train $(\triangleright)$ it!! by $(it/p_0)$ much more comfortable. If
Saran.	If (▶) you take (you / take) a train, (▶) it'll be (it / be) much more comfortable. If (1) (you / need) a car, you can hire one when
	(2)(you / get) to Glasgow.
Mark:	If (3)
	complicated. I'd rather take my own.
Sarah:	It's too dangerous. You might fall asleep on the motorway.
Mark:	I won't fall asleep. I can play loud music. Anyway, (5)
	much quicker when (6) (there / be) no traffic on the road. As soon as
	(7) (I / arrive), (8) (I / ring) you, I promise.
Sarah:	(9) (I / be) worried until (10) (I/hear) from
	you. But don't ring before (11)
Mark:	(12)(I / lie) down for a couple of hours before
	(13)(I/go).
Sarah:	Good idea. (14) (you / be) exhausted tomorrow if
	(15)(you / not / get) some sleep this evening.

### 3 Present perfect and continuous (C-D)

loin each pair of sentences using the word in brackets.

- ? You can apply for a better job soon. But you need to have more experience first, (when) *You can apply for a better job when you've had more experience.*
- ? I'm going to listen to this tape. I'll be travelling on the motorway tomorrow, (as) I'm going to listen to this tape as I'm travelling on the motorway tomorrow.
- 1 You shouldn't decide now. You need to think about it first, (until)
- 2 I'll think of you next week. I'll be lying on the beach, (when)
- 3 We can leave in a minute. I need to pay the bill first, (as soon as)
- 4 We can discuss it later. We'll be sitting on the plane together, (while)
- 5 You can use the computer in a minute. I'll have finished with it soon, (when)

# TEST 6 The future with will, be going to and present tenses (Units 23-27)

## Te

(4)

Test	6A				
Pι	at in the missing words. Use one word only in each space.				
<b>&gt;</b>	I don't want a steak. I think I'll have the chicken.				
1	1 2				
2	We're at that table in the corneryou join us?				
3	I'm seeing the boss this afternoon. But I must study this report before I				
4	There will be drinks at the reception, but there will be any food.				
5	The European heads of state are meet in Brussels on 3 October.				
6	It's a lovely day				
7	My birthdayona Sunday next year.				
8	My brother is engaged. He'smarried in June.				
9	You won't be allowed to go to your seat after the play				
10	Martin's got his coat on. I think he's to go out.				
Test 6	6B				
	rite the sentences correctly.				
<b>&gt;</b>	I'm hungry. <del>I think I-have-something- to-eat</del> .				
	I think I'll have something to eat.				
1	You say you're getting a coach at nine. What time is it getting to London?				
2	I'll give Polly the news. I'll tell her when I'll see her this evening.				
3	Rupert looks really tired. He's about felling asleep.				
4	We've arranged to go out. We meet in town later.				
5	I'm going to Spain next week. <del>I send you a postcard.</del>				
_					
6	I'm going to get to the airport early. I can-read a book—while I'll be waiting.				
7	I feel a bit tired, <del>I go to lie down.</del>				
8	Why not come to the party? All your friends shall be there.				
9	There's been a bomb warning. No one can go into the building until the police will have searched it,				
<b>-</b>					
Test 6					
	ad the news report and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.				
wa	e Maxi-Shop company is ( <b>&gt;</b> ) <i>going</i> to build a huge new shopping centre on the edge of Millingham, it is announced yesterday. There (1)				

to fight this plan,' said a spokesperson for the local Environment Group.' us

	ink what is going (5)
	elds left. So we're (8)
	) at half past seven.' Owners of shops in the town centre are also unhappy. 'The
ne	ew centre (10) take our customers away,' said one of them.
Test	6D
L	ook at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.
	A: Let's go to the carnival, shall we?
	B: Yes, good idea. I expect it'll be fun.
	a) it'll be b) it's c) it's being
1	A: Could I have a word with you, please?
	B: Sorry, I'm in a big hurry. My train in fifteen minutes.
	a) is going to leave b) leaves c) will leave
2	A: Have you decided about the course?
	B: Yes, I decided last weekend for a place.
	a) I apply b) I am to apply c) I'm going to apply
3	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	B: Well, you, then.
4	a) I help b) I'll help c) I'm going to help
4	A: Is the shop open yet?
	B: No, but there's someone inside. I think
_	a) it opens b) it's about to open c) it will open
5	A: Do you mind not leaving your papers all over the table?  B: Oh, sorry. I'll take them all with me when
	a) I go b) I'll go c) I'm going
6	A: It's a public holiday next Monday.
U	B: Yes, I know
	a) Are you doing b) Do you do c) Will you do
	a) The you doing b) Bo you do b) will you do
Test (	SE Control of the con
W	rite the sentences using a future form of the verb. Use the word in brackets.
•	Express your instant decision to take a taxi. (I'll)
	l'// take a taxi.
1	Express your intention to have a rest, (going)
2	Express the idea that the timetable shows the start of term on 6 September, (starts)
3	Predict a world war in five years' time, (there)
4	Express the idea that you and ludy have arranged a game of tennis for tomorrow, (playing)

5 Give your prediction of a probable fall in prices, (probably)

6 Warn your passenger about the car crashing, (going)

## 28 Will be doing

### A Introduction

Rachel: Would you like to come to our party tomorrow,

Andrew? Andrew: Er, thanks for the invitation,

but I've got lots of

work at the moment. I'll be working all day tomorrow. Rachel: You won't be working

on Saturday evening,

surely. Come on, Andrew, take a break. We'll be starting at about ten o'clock.

We can use **will be** + an ing-form (the future continuous) to talk about future actions. There are two different uses.



## B Will be doing for continuous actions

We use the future continuous for an action over a period of time.

It means that at some time in the future we will be in the middle of an action.

Andrew can t go to the party. He'll be working all day tomorrow.

I'll be out at three o'clock. I'll be playing golf.

When the men leave the building, the police will be waiting for them.

What will we be doing in ten years' time, I wonder?

Compare the past continuous (Unit 9), present continuous (Unit 4) and future continuous.

Past: This time **last week** we **were sitting** on the beach.

Present: At the moment we're sitting on the beach. Future:

This time next week we'll be sitting on the beach.

Compare will do and will be doing in these sentences. The band will play when the President enters. (The President will enter and then the band will play.) The band will be playing when the President enters. (The band will start playing before the President enters.)

## C Will be doing for single actions

We also use **will be** + an ing-form for an action which will happen in the course of events because it is part of a plan or part of a schedule of future events.

The party will be starting at ten o'clock, (part of the evening's events)

The ship will be sailing soon, (part of our journey)

More than one form is often possible. **Will** (Unit 23) or the present continuous (Unit 26A) often have a very similar meaning.

The visitors will be arriving/will arrive/are arriving later.

We often use the future continuous for something that will happen as part of a routine.

I'll call in and see you tomorrow afternoon. **I'll** be **passing** your house. It's on my way home from work. Trevor and Laura **will be cleaning** the house tomorrow. They always do it on Sunday.

We can also use **will be** + an ing-form to ask about someone's plans.

Will you be going anywhere near a chemist's this morning? ~ Yes, why? ~ Could you get me some aspirin, please? ~ Yes, of course. How long will you be using this computer? ~ You can have it in a minute.

## 1 Will be doing (B)

2

	<b>3</b> ( )
Complet	e the conversation. Put in a pronoun and the future continuous form of the verb.
Daniel:	I'm going to go into business when I leave college. Five years from now (▶) I'll be running (I / run
	a big company. I expect (1) (I / earn) lots of money.
Vicky:	I don't know what (2) (I / do). What about you, Natasha?
	What (3)(you / do), do you think?
Natasha:	I'm too lazy to do any work. I intend to marry someone very rich.
	(4) (I / give) dinner parties all the time. We'll have a cook
	(5) (who / do) all the work, of course. And you'll both get invitations.
Vicky:	You're joking, aren't you, Natasha? I expect (6)(you / play) in an
	orchestra. That's what you really want to do, isn't it?
Will ha	doing (C)
Put in the	e answers. People are saying what they will be doing as part of their routine.
► David	When are you going to the club, do you know?
(Nick	goes to the club every Friday.)

Emma: tomorrow.

2 Claire: Are you going to France again soon?

1 Vicky: Are you likely to see Ilona in the near future?

(Henry goes to France every summer.)

(Emma sees Ilona every day.)

Nick: I'll be going there next Friday.

Henry:

3 Jessica: When are you going to play badminton again? (Matthew plays badminton every weekend.)

Matthew:

4 Andrew: When are you next having lunch in the canteen? (Daniel has lunch in the canteen every day.)

Daniel:

## 3 Will be doing (C)

You want to ask a friend to do something for you or to let you do something. Find out if it is convenient for your friend. Use the verbs in brackets.

- ➤ You want to have a look at your friend's magazine tonight, (read) Willyou be reading your magazine tonight?
- 1 You want your friend to take your library book back today, (go to)
- 2 You want your friend to send your best wishes to Vicky soon, (write to)
- 3 You want to use your friend's calculator this afternoon, (use)
- 4 You want your friend to give a photo to Daniel tomorrow, (see)
- 5 You want your friend to give you a lift to the festival, (drive)
- 6 You want your friend to give a message to her sister soon, (phone)

## 29 Will have done and was going to



We use **will have** + a past participle (the future perfect) for something that will be over in the future. Sarah is thinking of a future time (half past eight). At half past eight she will be able to say 'I have finished'.

Here are some more examples.

/ like looking at these pictures, but I'll have had enough by lunch-time.

Trevor and Laura will have lived here for four years next April.

This chess game is going to last ages. They won't have finished it until midnight.

Will you have read this book by the time it's due back to the library? ~ Yes. I'll have finished it by then. We often use the future perfect with expressions of time such as by lunch-time, until midnight, before then, by the time you have to take it back.



We can use **be going to** in the past tense to express an intention in the past. Trevor intended to put the shelves up yesterday. Often the intended action did not happen. In fact Trevor did not put the shelves up.

Here are some more examples.

/ was going to tidy the flat, but I didn't have time.

Daniel wasn't going to spend any money, but he saw a jacket he just had to buy.

The girls left early. They were going to catch the eight o'clock train.

So you went to the airport without a ticket. Where were you going to fly to?

The woman walked away just as I was going to speak to her. (just as = at the moment when)

We can also use **was going to** for a prediction in the past.

/ knew something was going to go wrong with the plan.

**Would** has a similar meaning (see Unit 134C).

/ knew something would go wrong with the plan.

## 1 Will have done (A)

Paul wants to be an artist. He's reading about a famous artist called Winston Plummer.

Winston Plummer was a great artist, who had a wonderful career. He won lots of prizes before he was twenty. By the age of twenty-five he had had his own exhibition. He was the subject of a TV documentary by the time he was thirty. By the age of thirty-five he had become world-famous. He made millions of pounds from his pictures before he was forty.

	Paul is daydreaming about his own future career. What is he thinking?  I hope /// have won lots of prizes before I'm twenty.	
	Perhaps	e
	2 I wonder if	٠.
	3 Maybeby the age of thirty-five.	
	4 Ihope by the age of forty	y.
2	Will have done (A)	
	How good is your maths? Can you work out the answers?	
	▶ It's quarter to six. Melanie is putting something in the oven.	
	It needs to be in the oven for an hour and a half. When will it have cooked? It	
	will have cooked at quarter past seven.	
	1 It's seven o'clock in the evening, and Andrew is starting to write an essay. He writes one page every	
	fifteen minutes. He plans to finish the essay at midnight. How many pages will he have written?	
	He will have written pages.	
	2 It's Monday morning, and Sarah is travelling to work. It's twenty miles from her home to the office.	
	How far will she have travelled to and from work by the time she gets home on Friday?	
	3 Matthew is doing press-ups — one every two seconds. How many will he have done after five minutes?	
3	Was going to (B)	
	Complete the sentences. They are all about being just too late.	
	Use was/were going to with these verbs: go, get, see, pick	
	► The train left just as Mike was going to get on it.	
	1 I'm afraid the shop closed just as wein.	
	2 The phone stopped ringing just as Melanie it up.	
	3 We a film about the Mafia, but the tickets were sold out.	
4	Was going to (B)	
	Trevor is always making excuses for not doing things. Complete his sentences.	
	▶ put up the shelves / not have any screws	
	Sorry. I was going to put up the shelves, but I didn't have any screws.	
	1 paint the door / not feel very well	
	Sorry.	
	2 repair the lamp / forget	
	Oh, yes.	
	3 wallpaper the bedroom / not have time	

## 30 Review of the future

### A Introduction

В

CLAIRE IS TALKING TO SARAH OUTSIDE THE TRAVEL AGENT'S.



I'm going to New York next week. I'm about to pick up my ticket. I'm going to do some shopping on Fifth Avenue. I need some new clothes, and I'll be buying some Christmas presents, too. I'm only there for two days, so if II be a big rush.

There are many different ways of talking about the future in English. Often more than one form is

I'll be buying some Christmas presents, too. I'm going to buy some Christmas presents, too.

### Talking about the future

How we express future time depends on how we see a future event. Here are some ways of talking about what we think will happen

in the future.

The neutral future A prediction

A prediction based on the present A less certain prediction

The very near future A future action over a period Something that will be over in the future

The sun will rise at 5.45 am tomorrow. Claire's trip will be a big rush. Claire's trip is going to be a big rush. I'm going to be sick! I think it'll be cold in New York. It's probably going to be cold in New York. Claire is about to pick up her ticket. Claire will be shopping non-stop for two days.

The sales will have finished by Saturday.

## Intentions and plans

We often want to talk about our decisions and intentions and what we plan to do in the future.

An instant decision (deciding now)

A less certain decision or intention

An intention (something already decided)

A past intention An arrangement In the course of events

An official arrangement

A timetable

It's a lovely coat. It fits perfectly.

Yes, I'll buy it.

I'm going to do some shopping. I think I'll buy this hat, too.

I might go to a show.

I was going to buy a guidebook, but I forgot.

I'm flying to New York next week. I'll be buying some presents, too.

The President is to address the nation tonight. I'm in New York for two days next week.

## 1 Will, will be doing and will have done (B) Complete the live news report. Put in will and the simple, continuous or perfect form of the verb. from a group of quiz writers. Claude (3)...... (answer) their questions for a very long If all goes well, his name (7)......(be) in the next Guinness Book of Records. Claude has also got a number of sponsors, and by tomorrow (8) ...... (he / earn) at least thousandth question. 2 The future (B-C) What do these people say? Pay special attention to the <u>underlined</u> words. ▶ Tom is predicting a win for United in their next game. Tom: United will win their next game. 1 Andrew intends to get up early tomorrow. Andrew: I 2 Vicky's train <u>timetable</u> says 'Arrival 10.30'. The train 3 Daniel has arranged to see his bank manager tomorrow. Daniel: 4 Rachel will go out in the very near future. Rachel: 5 There's a crowd of demonstrators in the main square of the capital. The police are arriving. Reporter Kitty Beamish is predicting trouble. Kitty: 3 The future (B-C) Complete the conversation. In each sentence choose the best form of the verb to express the future. Usually more than one answer is possible. Hello, Claire. Sarah tells me (▶) *you're going* (you /go) to New York. (2)..... (I / look) round the shops. Mark: (3) ..... (that / be) exciting. Mark: (5) ...... (you / stay) with friends? Claire: No, (6) ...... (I / stay) at a hotel near Central Park. But apartment for a meal one evening. And it isn't definite yet, but (9) ..... (we / see) a show. Claire: My flight (11)......(be) on Tuesday morning.

Mark: OK, (12) ...... (I / see) you when you get back then.

## Test 7 The future (Units 23-30)

### Test 7A

Read the telephone conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

An	ıy:	When (▶) will I see you again?								
Sin	non:	I don't know. I'm (1) to be busy this week. And I'll								
		(2).			going to L	ondon on	Saturday.			
An	ıy:	Oh.	But you (3)	)		be her	e for my pa	rty, won't yo	ou?	
Sin					get					
An	ıy:	1(5)			going	to invite y	ou.	_		
Sin	non:	Wel	l, I'm sorry	I can't com	e.					
An	ıy:	What (6)you doing in London?								
Sin	non:	Oh,	I'm just go	ing (7)		S	ee one or tv	vo people. L	ook, I must go.	
		I'm	cooking so	mething th	at I think is (8	)		to b	oil over.	
$\blacktriangleright$	a) an	n	b) do	c) going	d) will	5	a) be	b) have	c) was	d) wi
1	a) be	eing	b) going	c) shall	d) will	6	a) are	b) going	c) to	d)wi!
2	a) be	;	b) do	c) for	d) to	7	a) be	b) for	c) is	d) to
3	a) ar	e	b) do	c) was	d) will	8	a) about	b) might	c) probably	d)wi]

#### Test 7B

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there.

If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- They're probably going to knock the building down. V be
- We are be going to get a dog soon.

a) about b) aren't c) be

- 1 The bus is leaves at eight twenty.
- The doors of the theatre are about to open.
- 3 The meeting will be start at half past seven. The festival is for to take place in June.
- My friend will be calling here tomorrow morning.
- We were going to eat in the restaurant, but it was full.
- I have to register for my course before the classes will begin.
- I will to have finished lunch by two o'clock.

## Test 7C

Put in a form of the verb. Use the future continuous (will be doing), the future perfect (will have done) or was/were going to.

- ► It's quite a long way, isn't it? We'// have walked (walk) about five miles by the time we get back, I'd say.
- I......(drive) over and see you, but there's something wrong with the car.
- I've got loads of work. I expect I ......(work) all night. And I'm not looking forward to it.
- We.....(buy) that computer game, but they don't make it for the kind of computer we've got.
- I know you'll put on a wonderful show. You ......(have) so much practice by the time you perform it that it's sure to be brilliant.

### Test 7D

Complete the conversation. Use will, be going to or a present tense. Choose the best form. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

Peter: Hello. Where are you going?

Polly: To my evening class. I'm learning Swedish. And next week (▶) /// have (I / have) a chance to

(2).....(I / leave) on Friday. (3)......(I / visit)

some friends there.

Peter: (4) ...... (that / be) nice.

Polly: Well, I'd better hurry. My lesson (5) .................................. (start) at half past seven, and it's

twenty-five past now.

#### Test 7E

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ▶ We have decided to help with the project, (going) We are going to help with the project.
- 1 We're willing to wait for you. ('11)
- 2 You can get off this train at Bath, (stops)
- 3 My friend intended to meet us. (going)
- 4 Adrian's job interview is on 17 October, (having)
- 5 Our meal will be over by eight o'clock, (finished)
- 6 I think I'm going to go on the trip, (might)
- 7 The fire hasn't gone out yet, but it will in a minute, (about)

### Test 7F

Choose the correct form.

- ► A: I'd better go. I'm cycling home, and I haven't got any lights on my bike.
  - B Oh, yes. It'll be/It'll have beeft dark soon.
- 1 A: I hear the rent on your flat is very expensive.
  - B Yes it is. I'll move/I'm going to move, I've decided.
- 2 A: I'd like a photo of Martin and me.
  - B. I'll take/I'm going to take one with your camera, then.
- 3 A: Have you booked a holiday yet?
- B: Yes, we go/we're going to Spain.
- 4 A: What's that man doing up there?
  - B Oh no! He'll jump/He's going to jump!
- 5 A: Can I borrow your bike on Monday?
  - B I'm sorry, but I'll be using/I'll have used it. I always cycle to work.

## 31 The verb **have**

## A Have and have got

Look at these examples.

HAVE GOT

We have three cats.We've got three cats.Emma has toothache.Vicky has got blue eyes.Daniel doesn't have a car.I haven't got any money.

**Do** you have the address?  $\sim$  Yes, I do. Have you got a ticket?  $\sim$  No, I haven't.

Here **have** and **have got** mean the same thing. We can normally use either form. But **have got** is more informal. Note that we do not use **have got** in short answers (No, / *haven't*.).

### B Forms

PRESENT TENSE

have have got

I/you/we/they have I/you/we/they have got OR I/you/we/they've got

he/she/it has got OR he/she/it's got

NEGATIVE I/you/we/they don't have 1/you/we/they haven't got he/she/it hasn't got

he/she/it doesn't have do have I/you/we/they got? has he/she/it got?

QUESTION I/you/we/they have?

does he/she/it have?

PAST TENSE

I/you/he/she/it/we/they **had** 

NEGATIVE I/you/he/she/it/we/they didn't have did

QUESTION Lyou/he/she/it/we/they have?

We do not often use **had got** in the past tense.

Tom had several jobs to do. We didn't have time to stop. Why did you have that funny hat on?

#### C The action verb have

Here are some examples of **have** as an action verb.

*Mark has lunch around one. I have* a shower every morning.

The children **had** a game of cards. We **had** a wonderful holiday.

Have expresses an action. Mark has lunch means that he eats lunch.

With the action verb **have** we cannot use **got** and we cannot use a short form.

NOT Mark has got lunch around one and NOT I've a shower every morning.

The action verb have can also be continuous.

Mark is having lunch now. We were having a conversation in English.

What time **are** you **having** your driving lesson?

In negatives and questions in simple tenses, we use a form of do. We didn't

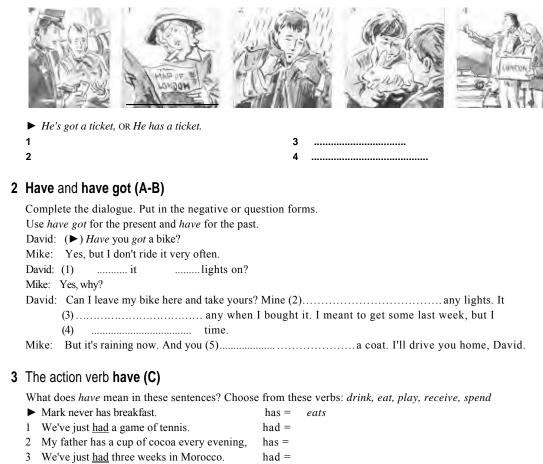
have a very good time. We don't have parties very often. Where do you

have lunch? How often does Vicky have strange dreams?

In English we often use expressions like have a talk instead of a verb like talk. Here are some examples, Shall we have a swim? 1 usually have a rest in the afternoon. I had a talk with Daniel. Trevor and Laura are having an argument.

## 1 Have and have got (A-B)

Look at the pictures and write positive or negative sentences with have or have got. Use these objects: a car, a map, a rabbit, a ticket, an umbrella



## 4 The verb have (A-C)

4 Claire had lots of presents on her birthday.

had =

## 32 Short forms, e.g. it's, don't

### A The use of short forms



A short form like **it's** or **don't** stands for the full form it is or **do not.** We leave out one or more letters and we write an apostrophe (') instead. We use short forms in conversational English and in informal writing such as a letter to a friend. Short forms are sometimes called 'contracted forms'.

We cannot use a short form when the word is stressed, in a short answer for example.

Have you looked in this drawer? ~ Yes, I have, NOT Yes, I've But we can use n't in a short answer: No. I haven't.

#### B The most common short forms

Some verbs can have short forms when they come after I, you, etc.

VERB SHORT FORMS

am I'm

are you're, we're, they're

is/has he's, she's, it's

have I've, you've, we've, they've

had/would I'd, you'd, he'd, she'd, it'd, we'd, they'd will I'll, you'll, he'll, she'll, it'll, we'll, they'll

shall I'll, we'll

A short form can also come after a noun.

Vicky's lost her bank card. (Vicky has ...) The card'll be in here. (The card will...)

There are also some short forms with question words and with here, there or that.

who's, what's, where's, when's, how's, who'd, who'll, what'll here's, there's, that's, there'll, that'll, there'd, that'd

There is a negative short form **n't** which can come after some verbs.

aren't, isn't, wasn't, weren't, haven't, hasn't, hadn't, don't /daunt/, doesn't, didn't, won't (- will not), shan't (= shall not), can't, couldn't, mustn't, needn't, mightn't, shouldn't, wouldn't, daren't

Sometimes we can shorten either **not** or the verb.

It is not funny. - \* It isn't funny. OR It's not funny.

You will not believe it. -> You won't believe it. OR You'll not believe it. But we cannot use n't after I.

I am not sure. -> I'm not sure, NOT I amn't sure.

### C 's and 'd

's can be is or has, and 'd can be had or would.

She's short, and she's got fair hair. (She is short... she has got...) If I'd known, I'd have told you. (If I had known, 1 would have ...)

### 1 Short forms (B)

Write the sentences in a more informal style, with short forms.

#### In a business letter

#### In a letter to a friend

► You are quite right.

You're quite right.

- 1 It is a difficult problem.
- 2 I have seen the results.
- 3 I do not have any information.
- 4 We have not reached a decision.
- 5 I am very excited about it.
- 6 You need not decide now.
- 7 It is not yet certain.
- 8 We will be pleased to see you.
- 9 Do not worry.
- 10 I would like to buy a new computer.
- 11 We are willing to help.
- 2 We will not know the result for some time.

## 2 Short forms (B)

Complete the dialogues. Put in the short form of these phrases: do not, he is, I am, is not, it is, what is, where is









► How are you?  $\sim I'm$  fine, thanks.

## 3 's and 'd

Write the forms in full. Use is, has, had or would.

What's your name? What is your name?

- 1 I'd like a coffee, please.
- 2 There's been an accident.
- 3 That's correct.
- 4 I'd seen the film before.
- 5 Who's got the key?
- h We'd have stopped if we'd seen you.

## 33 Emphatic do



## B Emphatic forms

Often we can be emphatic by using a full form like is or have, rather than a short form such as's or 've (see Unit 32). We stress the word when we speak it.

Yes, it is late. It's half past one in the morning. My goodness you have done a lot of work. Well done. We can also stress modal verbs such as will and should.

You will write to me, won't you? You really should drive more carefully. We almost had an accident.

In the present simple we put **do** before the verb.

You're so right. I do agree with you. Your hair is much too long. You do need a haircut.

We do hope you can come to our barbecue. I'm getting fed up with those dogs. They do make such a » In the third person singular we use does.

You shouldn't have forgotten. I did remind you.

The city centre does get crowded, doesn't it?

Emma says Matthew doesn't care about her, but he says he does care.

We do not add s to the verb.

It does **look** nice, NOT <del>it does looks nice</del>. In

the past simple we use did.

We **did** enjoy the concert. It was really good. Vicky is quite sure that she **did** see a ghost.

We do not add ed to the verb.

We did enjoy it. NOT We did enjoyed it.

## C The imperative with do

We can use **do** with an imperative for emphasis.

**Do** hurry up, or we'll be late. Oh, do be quiet. I'm trying to concentrate.

Here do makes the speaker sound more worried or annoyed. We use this structure only in an informal situation.

But we can also use **do** with an imperative in offers and invitations (see page 122).

Do have some more soup. Do take a seat, wont you?

Here **do** sounds very polite.

► Yes, I will be late home.

## 1 Emphatic do (A-B)

2

3

Put in the emphatic forms of these sentences: / like my new portrait. I'm smiling. It's foggy today. Yes, I'll be late home. Yes, I remembered the water.

1	
En	nphatic do (A-B)
Со	emplete the answers. Use a pronoun + emphatic $do + a$ verb.
$\blacktriangleright$	Tom: Melanie is always helping people, isn't she?
	David: Yes, she docs help a lot of people.
1	Trevor: How much did that dress cost?
	Laura: Well,rather a lot.
_	Jessica: Someone once told me I look like the singer Arlene Black.
	Natasha: Well, a bit like her, actually.
3	Daniel: This train doesn't stop at our station.
	Matthew: Are you sure? I thinkthere.
4	Nick: Why didn't you go to the match on Saturday?
_	Tom: What do you mean? to the match.
5	Vicky: Matthew and Emma never quarrel.
	Rachel: Oh yes,
En	nphatic do (A-C)
	hat would you say? Use <i>do, does</i> or <i>did.</i>
	Tell your friend that you worry about your job prospects.
	You know, / do worry about my job prospects.
1	
	Actually,
2	Admit that your room needs tidying up.
	I'm afraid
3	Explain to your teacher that you find the work difficult.
	I'm afraid
4	
_	Actually,
5	<b>,</b>
,	Here you are
6	1 1 2
	You know,

## 34 Yes/no questions

#### A Use



A yes/no question is one that we can answer with yes or no.

Are you ready? ~ Yes, nearly/No, not quite.

Has anyone seen my bag? ~ Yes, it's on the chair./No, I don't

think so.

These questions are asking for information. For example, Daniel wants to know if Vicky is ready or not.

Sometimes yes/no questions have other uses, especially questions with modal verbs. For example, when Matthew says *Shall we go then?* he is making a suggestion, not asking for information. Here are some examples of the different uses.

Making a suggestion: Shall we eat out

Requesting: tonight?

Can/Could you write the address

Offering: down for me, please?

Can I carry something for you? ~ No,

Inviting: *it's OK, thanks.* 

Would you like to come to a party?-

Asking permission: Yes, I'd love to.

*May I use your phone?* ∼ *Yes, of COURSE* 

#### B Form

A yes/no question begins with an auxiliary verb. An auxiliary verb is a form of be or have or a modal verb e.g. **can.** The auxiliary verb comes before the subject.

AUXILIARY SUBJECT

Is it raining? STATEMENT: It is raining.

Has David got a car?

Can Emma drive? QUESTION: Is it raining?

The main verb be also comes before the subject in a question.

*Is it cold out there?* Are you ready? Was it easy? If there is more than one auxiliary verb, only the first one comes before the subject.

*Have* you been working? *Could* we have done better?

In the present simple and past simple we use a form of do.

AUXILIARY SUBJECT

**Do** the buses run every day? STATEMENT: They (do) run every day.

**Does** Mark play golf?

**Did** you like the concert? QUESTION: Do they run every day?

A question cannot begin with an ordinary verb such as run, play or like.

NOT Plays Mark golf? and NOT Liked your the concert?

The verb after the subject does not end in s or ed.

NOT *Does Mark plays golf?* and NOT *Did you liked the concert?* 

35 Answers with yes and no

### 1 Use (A)

Write down the use of each question. Choose from these uses:

asking for information (x3), asking permission, inviting, making a suggestion, offering, requesting (x2)

- ? Could you post this letter for me?
- requesting
- ? Can we get a number 35 bus from this stop?
  - asking for information
- 1 Can I help you with those bags?
- 2 Shall we stop for a rest?
- 3 Is it Tuesday today?
- 4 Could you wait a moment, please?
- 5 Would you like to have tea with us?
- 6 Will your friend be here next weekend?
- 7 May I sit down?

### 2 Form(B)

Claude Jennings, the World Quiz Champion, is going to be on Guy's chat show.

Guy is wondering what to ask Claude. Read what Guy is thinking and write down his questions.

- ► (I expect Claude has won lots of prizes.) Have you won lots of prizes?
- 1 (1 wonder if he's a rich man.)
- 2 (Perhaps quizzes are his only hobby.)
- 3 (I expect he worked hard at school.)
- 4 (I wonder if he's got any other interests.)
- 5 (1 wonder if it's an interesting life.)
- ..... 6 (Perhaps his wife asks him quiz questions.)
- 7 (And maybe he answers questions in his dreams.).....

#### 3 Yes/no questions (A-B)

What would you say in these situations?

- ▶ You want to know if Mark has been to Los Angeles. Ask Sarah. Has Mark been to Los Angeles?
- 1 You aren't sure if Rachel and Vicky are going to America. Ask them.
- 2 You want to know if Laura plays tennis. Ask Trevor.
- 3 You are wondering if Claire enjoyed her holiday. Ask her.
- 4 You want to suggest to Rachel that you both go for a walk.
- 5 You need to know if David will be at the club tonight. Ask him.
- 6 You want to know if the train is on time. Ask Mark.
- 7 You are wondering if Mike and Harriet go camping. Ask David.
- 8 You want to ask Matthew if you can borrow his squash racket.
- 9 You want to know if Nick has got a motor bike. Ask him.

## 35 Short answers, e.g. Yes, it is.

### A Answering yes or no

Look at the answers to these questions.

Is it raining?  $\sim$  Yes. Are we going to be late?  $\sim$  Yes, we are.

Did you say something? ~ No. Did you finish the crossword? ~ No, I didn't.

We can sometimes answer a question with a simple **yes** or **no**, but we often use a short answer like **No**, **I didn't**. We usually put a comma after **yes** or **no**.

We do not normally use a full sentence, but we can do if we want to add emphasis to the answer.

Did you open my letter? ~ No, I didn't open your letter.

Sometimes, to be polite, we may need to add information.

Did you get the tickets? ~ No, I didn't. There wasn't time, I'm afraid. Sorry.

### B Form

A positive short answer is yes + a pronoun + an auxiliary.

QUESTION		SHORT	ANSWER	
Auxiliary			Pronoun	Auxiliary
Are	you working tomorrow? ~	Yes,	I	am.
Has	Emma got a computer? ~	Yes,	she	has.
Will	I need my passport? ~	Yes,	you	will.
Did	they repair your phone? ~	Yes,	they	did.

We can also use the main verb be in a short answer.

7s it time to go? ~ Yes, it is. It's ten past eleven.

Note that in the present simple and past simple we use a form of **do**. *Do* you like classical music? ~ Yes, I do. NOT YES I-LIKE.

A negative short answer is no + a pronoun + an auxiliary + n't.

QUESTION		SHORT	ANSWER	
Auxiliary			Pronoun	Auxiliat
Is	the photocopier working now? ~	No,	it	isn't.
Have	the children gone to sleep? ~	No,	they	haven't.
Will	there be food at the party? ~	No,	there	won't.
Does	this train stop at Derby? ~	No,	it	doesn't.

But note No, I'm not.

Are you working tomorrow? ~ No, I'm not. NOT No , I amn't.

### C Answering requests, suggestions, offers and invitations

To answer a request, suggestion, etc, we normally use a phrase like **Yes, of course** or **Yes, please** rather than a short answer. If we answer in the negative, we have to give some explanation.

Request: Could you help me move these chairs, please? ~ Yes, of course. OR I'm afraid I'm rather busy.

Suggestion: Shall we have a coffee? ~ Yes, OK. OR Sorry, I can't. I have to go.

Offer: Can I give you a hand? ~ Yes, please. That's very kind of you. OR It's OK, thanks. I can manage Invitation: Would you like to come to the barbecue? ~ Yes, please. I'd love to. OR I'd love to, but I'll be away

Short negative answers would sound strange or impolite here.

### 1 Form (B)

It's eleven o'clock, and everyone has arrived at a party. Put in the short answers.

- ► Have you got a drink? ~ Yes, I have, thank you. I've just put it down somewhere.
- 1 Can you speak Arabic? ~ ....., but not very well.
- 3 Has David come with you? ~ ...... He's in hospital, actually.
- 4 Did you come by car, Tom? ~ ...... It took ages because of all the traffic.
- 6 Do you like England? ~ .....-I'm enjoying my stay here.
- 8 Have you seen Nick recently? ~......I think he's moved away.

#### 2 Form (B)

It's one o'clock in the morning, and the party is in full swing.

People are still talking. Put in the short answers.

- ► Are you French? ~ No, I'm not. I'm Italian. I'm from Milan.

- 3 Has Rita broken up with her boyfriend? ~...... It's all over, she told me.
- 4 Did you see that documentary about the ozone layer on television last night?
- 6 Are you and Mike staying the night here? ~ ...... We have to get home tonight.
- 8 Are you OK, Vicky? ~..... I feel really awful.

#### 3 Answering questions (A-C)

Which would normally be the best answer?

- ► Are you busy today?
- a) Yes, busy, b) V Yes, I am.
- 1 Is it too hot in here for you?
  - a) No, it isn't, b) No, I'm fine, thanks.
- 2 Do you know Emma?
  - a) Yes. b) Yes, we live in the same building.
- 3 Tell me, did you steal my money?
  - a) No. b) No, I didn't steal your money.
- 4 Do you live on the campus?
  - a) Yes, I do. b) Yes, I live on it.
- 5 Would you like to come out with us for the day?
  - a) Yes, I would like, b) Yes, please.
- 6 Is it the eighteenth today?
  - a) Yes, it is. b) Yes, it is the eighteenth of November today.
- 7 Did you bring my CD?
  - a) No. b) No, sorry. I forgot it.
- 8 Can I carry your bags?
  - a) No, you can't, b) It's all right, thanks.

# 36 Wh-questions A Introduction

Reporter Kitty Beamish is interviewing some guerrilla fighters.

Kitty: Guerillas: For our freedom. We what can you do for the people? When will the war be over? Guerillas: For our freedom. We can help them Very soon.

A wh-question begins with a question word. Question words are **who**, **what**, **which**, **whose**, **where**, **when**, **why** and **how**.

We use a wh-question to ask for information.



#### B Form

Most wh-questions begin with a question word + an auxiliary verb + the subject. (For another form of wh-question, see Unit 37.) An auxiliary verb is a form of **be** or **have** or a modal verb, e.g. **can.** 

QUESTION WORD	AUXILIARY	SUBJECT	
What	is	Kitty	doing?
Where	have	you	put the map?
When	can	we	travel safely?

The main verb be also comes before the subject in questions.

Where is Kitty? How are you? What was that noise? If there is more than one auxiliary verb, only the first one comes before the subject.

The guerrillas have been hiding. Where have the guerrillas been hiding?

I should have said something. What should I have said?

In the present simple and past simple we use a form of do.

QUESTION WORD	AUXILIARY	SUBJECT	
Where	do	people	meet?
How	does	the radio	work?
What	did	the guerrillas	say?

An ordinary verb such as **meet**, **work** or say cannot come before the subject.

NOT Where meet people? and NOT How works the radio?

The verb after the subject does not end in s or ed.

NOT How does the radio works? and NOT What did the guerrillas said?

### Question phrases

Look at these question phrases with what and how.

What time is your friend arriving? ~ Half past eight. What colour is your toothbrush? ~ Yellow. What kind of/What sort of club is it? ~ A nightclub. How old is your sister? ~ She's twenty. How often do you go out? ~ About once a week, usually. How far is the beach? ~ Only five minutes walk How long will the meeting last? ~ An hour or so, I expect. How many televisions have you got? ~ Three How much money did you spend? ~ About a hundred pounds.

## 1 Wh-questions (A-B)

What would you say in these situations?

- ► You are talking to a man at a party. Ask him where he works. Where do you work?
- 1 You want to know what the date is today. Ask your friend.
- 2 You've forgotten when the course finishes. Ask your friend.
- 3 Your friend is having a party. You'd like to know who he has invited. Ask him.
- 4 Your favourite band are going to give a concert. Ask how you can get tickets.
- 5 You are in town with a friend, and you are wondering where the two of you are going to have lunch. What do you ask?

## 2 Question words and phrases (A-C)

Quiz champion Claude Jennings is answering questions. Put in these words and phrases: how far, how long, how often, how many, what, what colour, what kind, when, where, who

Quiz-master:		Claude:
► What colour is the Greek flag?		Blue and white.
1.	is Melbourne?	It's in Australia.
2.	centimetres are there in a kilometre?	A hundred thousand.
3.	did the Second World War end?	In 1945.
4	did Romeo love?	Juliet.
5	is Sirius?	It's a star.
6	is it from Los Angeles to San Francisco?	About 400 miles.
7	are the Olympic Games held?	Every four years.
8	of food is Cheddar?	It's cheese.
9	is a game of rugby?	Eighty minutes.

## 3 Wh-questions (A-C)

Guy is interviewing a guest on his chat show. It's the actress Melissa Livingstone, who is in the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. Put in Guy's questions.

▶	Guy:	How often do you record 'Round the Corner'?
	Melissa:	Oh, we record it every day. It's a full-time job, you know.
1	Guy:	Andit?
	Melissa:	In Birmingham, at the BBC studios.
2	Guy:	
	Melissa	: How many? Well, let me see, I think we've done a thousand programmes.
3	Guy:	
		I'm not going to tell you. How much money I earn is my business.
4	Guy:	OK, I'm sorry.
	Melissa:	Oh, a long time ago. I started acting when I was twelve.
5	Guy:	
	Melissa:	My plans for the future? I just want to go on with 'Round the Corner'.

## 37 Subject/object questions

### A Who and what



Who is interviewing Kitty?

**Who** and **what** can be the subject of a question. The word order is the same as in a statement.

#### SUBJECT

Who rang you? (Someone rang you.) Who is helping you? (Someone is helping you.) What will happen next? (Something will happen next.)



Who is Kitty interviewing?

Who and what can also be the object. An auxiliary (e.g. did, will) comes before the subject.

#### OBJECT

Who did you ring? (You rang someone.) Who are you helping? (You are helping someone.) What will they do next? (They will do something next.)

**Who** and **what** can also be the object of a preposition, e.g. **to, with.** (For prepositions in questions, see Unit 38.) Compare these sentences.

#### SUBJECT

Who was talking to you? (Someone was talking to you.) What wine goes with fish? (Some wine goes with fish.)

#### OBJECT

Who were you talking to?
(You were talking to someone.)
What does this colour go with?
(This colour goes with something.)

## B Which, whose, how many and how much

These words can also be either the subject or the object.

#### SUBJECT

Which program will work best? (One of the programs will work best.) Whose dog is barking over there? (Someone's dog is barking over there.) How many people came past? (Some people came past.) How much oil got into the river? (Some oil got into the river.)

#### OBJECT

Which program will you use? (You will use one of the programs.) Whose dog is Melanie walking? (Melanie is walking someone's dog.) How many people did you see? (You saw some people.) How much oil did you buy? (You bought some oil.)

## 1 Who and what as subject and object (A)

Read about the situations and answer each question in a single phrase.

<b>&gt;</b>		om was cleaning up. David came along and took away some empty bottles
		p after spending the night on Tom's sofa. He watched them for a while.
1	a) Who helped Tom? David b	s been out with him a few times, but really she's in love with Tom.
1	Unfortunately he isn't in love w	
	a) Who is Nick in love with?	
2.	,	The plane was two hours late. On the way out they passed Mike
-	standing at a bus stop, but they	
		b) What was Mike waiting for?
3		ossroads. A lorry crashed into a van that was waiting at the lights. The
		nto a car. The van driver had to go to hospital.
	a) What hit the van?	b) What did the van hit?
2 W	ho and what as subject an	d object (A)
	•	
P	copie aren't giving you enough in	formation. Ask questions with who or what.
?	Something has happened. ~ Oh	n? What has happened?
?	I've invited someone to tea. $\sim V$	· ·
1		Oh, really?
2		
3	_	tell me.
		, I know, but
5		h?
		ybe I can help
	Rachel is planning something. ~	Is she?
8		oor. ~ Oh, really?
9		ell, tell me.
IC	1 want to meet someone. ~ who	at do you mean?
3 W	/hich, whose, how many ar	nd how much (B)
H	Iarriet is visiting her grandmother	r, Mrs Evans. It's Mrs Evans's birthday.
		sometimes gets confused. Complete her questions.
	Harriet:	Mrs Evans:
7	So ten people have sent cards.	Pardon? How many people have sent cards?
7	2 1 met David's friend yesterday.	What? Whose friend did you meet?
1	You can keep those photos.	Photos? Which
2	2 Those flowers look lovely.	Do they? Which
	Fifty pounds went missing.	Missing? How much
	I passed Mark's house earlier.	Pardon? Whose
	The doctor has four children.	Really? How many
	Doctors earn lots of money.	I don't know. How much
	Mike's uncle has died.	What's that? Whose
8	3 Trevor's wife is coming later.	Oh? Whose

## 38 Prepositions in wh-questions

#### **A** Introduction



Daniel and Rachel each ask Vicky a question. In each question, the word **what** is the object of a preposition (**for**, **about**).

What are you looking for?
(You are looking for something.)
What are you worrying about?
(You are worrying about something.)

The preposition normally comes in the same place as in a statement: **looking for, worrying about.** 

NOT For what are you looking?

NOT Abouht what are you worrying? But in more formal English, the preposition can come before the question word.

In which warehouse were the goods stored?

OR Which warehouse were the goods stored in?
In formal English we use a preposition + whom (not who).

From whom did you obtain the information? OR Who did you obtain the information from?

Here are some more examples of prepositions in wh-questions. Who are we waiting for? ~ Rachel. What's Nick laughing at? ~ Oh, one of Tom's jokes. Where are you from?/Where do you come from? ~ Bombay. What kind of holiday are you interested in? ~ A package holiday. Who did you go out with last night? ~ Just a friend.

## B What... for and what... like

We can use a question with **what**... **for** to ask about purpose.

What did you buy this computer magazine for? ~ To read about business software.

**What** are these bricks for? ~ We're going to build a wall.

What are they digging the road up for? ~ They're repairing a gas pipe.

What... for means the same as why.

**Why** are they digging up the road?  $\sim$  They're repairing a gas pipe.

We can use **what** ... **like** to ask if something is good or bad, interesting or boring, etc.

**What** was the party like? ~ Oh, we had a great time.

What's the place like where you live? ~ It's pretty quiet.

Note also look like.

**What** does your friend **look like?** ~ She's very tall and blond.

But we use **how** to ask about someone's well-being.

**How** are you? ~ I'm OK, thanks. And you?

**How** are you getting on in your new job? ~ I'm really enjoying it.

Compare these two questions.

How's Melanie? ~ Oh, she's fine, thanks. (She is happy/in good health.)

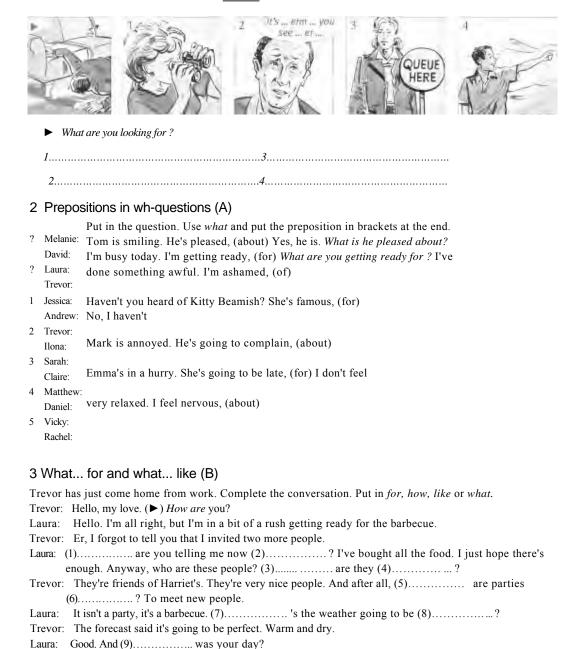
What's Melanie like? ~ She's very nice. (She is a nice person.)

### 1 Prepositions in wh-questions (A)

Ask these people questions with what.

Trevor: Oh, not too bad. Busy as usual.

Use these verbs and prepositions: look at, look for, point at, talk about, wait for



## 39 Who, what or which?

#### A What or which?

We can use what or which before a noun.

WHAT

What sport do you play? What books do you read?

We use **what** when there is a wide choice of possible answers. We ask *What sport?* because there are lots of different sports.



What sport? (Tennis or golf or football or hockey or ...?)

WHICH

Which way do we go here?
Which finger did you break?

We use **which** when there is a limited number of possible answers. We ask *Which way?* because there are only two or three ways to go.



Which way? (Right or left?)

After which we sometimes say the possible answers.

Which cafe did you go to, Snoopy's, the Coffee Pot or the Tea Gardens?

Which phone shall I use, this one or the one in the office?

Sometimes what and which are both possible.

What day/Which day is your evening class? What train/Which train will you catch?

What platform/Which platform does the train go from? What part/Which part of Italy are you from?

### B Patterns with who, what and which

We can use who, what and which without a noun.

Who sent the fax? What do you think of our plan? Which is quicker, the bus or the train? We can use what and which before a noun, but not who.

Which secretary sent the fax? NOT Who secretary sent the fax?

We can use **which** with one or ones, or with of.

You can have a photo. Which one would you like?

You can have some of the photos. Which ones would you like?

Which of these photos would you like? But

we cannot use who or what before of.

Which of the secretaries? but NOT Who-of the secretaries?

**Who** always means a person.

Who did you see? (a person) What usually means a thing. It can mean a person only when it comes before a noun.

What did you see? (a thing) What doctor/What film did you see? (a person or a thing)

Which can mean a person or a thing.

Which doctor/film did you see? (a person or a thing)

102 One and ones

### 1 What or which? (A)

The questions you are asking have a number of possible answers.

If the list of answers is incomplete, ask a question with what. If the list is complete, use which.

- ? (Do you play the piano, or the violin, or the guitar, or ...?) What musical instrument do you play ?
- ? (Did you go to the Little Theatre or the Theatre Royal?) Which theatre did you go to ?
- 1 (Did you take the morning flight or the afternoon flight?)
- 2 (Did you stay at the Grand Hotel or the Bristol?)
- 3 (Do you like classical music, or jazz, or rock music, or ...?)
- 4 (Did you buy 'Time' magazine, or 'Newsweek', or a computer magazine, or ...?)
- 5 (Do you work for EuroChemicals, or ICM, or SenCo, or ...?)
- 6 (Are you learning English, or Spanish, or Arabic, or Japanese, or ...?)

### 2 What or which? (A)

Rita is moving into a new flat. Trevor has come to see the flat and help her move in.

Complete his questions. Put in *what* or *which*. ▶ Trevor: *What* number is this

building? Rita: Forty-two.

1 Trevor: I didn't realize there were only three floors...... floor is your flat on?

Rita: The first floor.

2 Trevor: It's a very nice flat ...... room will be your living-room?

Rita: This one here, I thought.

3 Trevor. ..... colour are you going to paint it?

Rita: Oh, I don't know yet.

4 Trevor. ..... time is your furniture arriving?

Rita: Three o'clock, they said.

5 Trevor: I'll need some petrol...... way is the nearest petrol station?

Rita: Turn left at the end of the street.

### 3 Who, what or which? (B)

Detectives Wilson and Taylor are looking into the murder of Lord Weybridge at his country house. Put in who, what or which.

Wilson: (▶) Which of the guests in this house is the murderer, do you think, Taylor?

Taylor. There must be a motive for the murder. (4)..... motive could the murderer have?

Wilson: Love or money - they're the usual motives. (5)...... of them is it, I wonder?

Taylor. (6)......did Lord Weybridge leave his money to? That's the question, Wilson.

## TEST 8 Questions (Units 34-39)

#### Test 8A

Put the words in the right order and ask the question.

- everyone / is / ready *Is everyone ready*?
- 1 been / have / where / you
- 2 do / postcards / sell / you
- 3 belong / calculator / does / this / to / who
- 4 are / here / how / long / staying / you
- 5 is / like / new / office / what / your
- 6 are / flights / full / of / the / which
- 7 carnival / does / start / the / time / what
- 8 decided / has / holiday / Nancy / on / what

## Test 8B

Put in the correct question word or phrase.

► What did you buy? ~ A box of chocolates.

1	is this building? ~ It's about two hundred years old.
2	does your team play in? ~ Red.
3	bag are you carrying? ~ Judy's.
4	money do you earn? ~ About £250 a week.
5	hand do you write with? ~ My right hand.
6	of shop do you work in? ~ A toy shop.
7	first stepped on the moon? ~ Neil Armstrong, wasn't it?
8	is your mother? ~ She's much better, thank you.
9	is it to the post office? ~ About two hundred metres.
10	do you take a holiday? ~ Once a year.
11	

### Test 8C

Write the sentences correctly.

- ► Would like you:to go sailing?
- 1 Do you be a student here?
- 2 How many cakes have eaten you?
- 3 Enjoyed you your walk?
- 4 Where your-friends have gone?
- 5 What kind of music-do-you like?
- 6 Does-Peter plays tennis?
- 7 About what are you-talking?
- 8 What has it happened?

Would you like to go sailing?

#### Test8D

Read about each situation and write down the question.

- ? You want to know if it is raining.
  - Is it raining?
- ? You need to ask Polly where she lives.
  - Where do you live?
- 1 You would like to ask Nancy where she bought her coat.
- 2 You want to ask Susan if Amy can swim.
- 3 You want to ask Simon which band he likes best.
- 4 On the phone you want to know who you are speaking to.
- 5 You need to know how much video recorders cost.
- 6 You are asking permission to come in.
- 7 You need to find out how long the journey takes.
- 8 You want to ask Adrian what he locked the door for.
- 9 You want to ask what happens next.
- 10 You want to suggest that you all go out together.

### Test 8E

Write the questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

- ► Christopher is going to London by train. How is Christopher going to London?
- 1 The Smiths have got three cars.
- 2 Janet works at the supermarket.
- 3 Andrea is learning English because she will need it in her job.
- 4 The film was really romantic.
- 5 The meeting will take place next Tuesday.
- 6 Tessa switched off the computer.
- 7 Mr lohnson's burglar alarm was ringing.
- 8 Anna went to the dance with Martin.

## 40 Negative statements

#### A Use

#### Christopher Columbus

Christopher Columbus was a famous explorer. At one time people believed that he had 'discovered' America. We know now this **isn't** true. Columbus **was not** the first European to travel to the New World. We **don't** know who was, but the Vikings had sailed there around the year 1000, and probably others before them. In 1492 Columbus sailed to San Salvador in the Bahamas and to other islands, but he never reached the mainland of North America. He actually thought he was in Asia. He certainly **didn't** discover America.

We often use a negative statement to correct a mistaken idea, such as the idea that Christopher Columbus discovered America.

## B Negative verb forms

POSITIVE NEGATIVE

be: are dancing are not dancing OR aren't
have: have seen have not seen OR haven't seen
Moda verb: must stay must not stay OR mustn't stay

In a negative statement **not** or **n't** comes after the auxiliary verb.

The auxiliary verb is a form of be, have or a modal verb, e.g. must, can, could.

The girls **are not** dancing. The modem **isn't** working properly.

I haven't seen the new Disney film. David hasn't got a car.

1 mustn't stay long. You can't turn right here.

I'm **not** feeling very awake today. We write **n't** without a

space before it, e.g. isn't, haven't.

**Not** or **n't** also comes after the main verb be.

The photos are not ready yet It isn't very warm in here. If there is more than one auxiliary verb, we put not or n't after the first one.

This plate hasn't been washed. You shouldn't have bothered.

In the present simple and past simple, we use a form of do.

POSITIVE NEGATIVE

Present simple: work do not work OR don't work

looks does not look OR doesn't look

Past simple: enjoyed did not enjoy OR didn't enjoy

1 don't work on Saturdays, NOT I-work not on Saturdays.

This part of town **doesn't** look very nice. I'm afraid we **didn't** enjoy the day very much.

The verb after **not** or **n't** does not end in **s** or **ed**.

NOT It doesn't looks very nice and NOT We dtdn't enjoyed-the-day.

#### C No and not

We can use **no** before a noun or an adjective + noun. The verb is positive.

No music is allowed after eleven, OR Music is not allowed after eleven.

There are **no** new houses in the village, OR There aren't any new houses in the village. We do not use **no** with a verb.

NOT Music is no allowed and NOT The shops are no open.

## 1 Use (A)

3

4

Read the information in A about Christopher Columbus.

Then choose a positive or a negative verb.

- ► Columbus <u>discovered/didn't discover</u> America.
- 1 The first European to sail to the New World was/wasn't Columbus.
- 2 Europeans <u>had/hadn't</u> been to the New World before Columbus.
- 3 We know/don't know definitely who first sailed to America.
- 4 Columbus <u>landed/didn't land</u> on the North American mainland.
- 5 People's opinion of Columbus <u>has/hasn't</u> changed over the last 500 years.
- 6 When Columbus landed on San Salvador, he knew/didn't know where he was.
- 7 It <u>is/isn't</u> true that Columbus travelled across the United States.

### 2

Negative verb forms (B)
Complete the conversation, Put in the negative forms of these words:
can, did, do, does, has, have, is, was, were
Rita: Does anyone live in that house next door?
Melanie: Yes, he's called Jake. He's rather strange. He ( $\triangleright$ ) hasn't got a job, but he (1) be short
of money because he's just bought a new car.
Rita: The house (2)look very smart.
Melanie: The people who lived there before Jake (3) look after it very well.
And they (4)very good at gardening. When Jake bought the house, it had been
empty for a while. It (5)
anything to it, as you can see.  Rita: Is he a friend?
Melanie: No, we aren't really friends. I (7) know him very well. I say hello when I see him,
that's all. I (8) seen him for a while, actually.
and the r (0) soon min for a winte, actuary.
Negative verb forms (B)
Vicky and Rachel are good friends, but they are very different kinds of people.
Complete the sentences using a negative.
► Vicky gets upset, but Rachel doesn't get upset.
1 Vicky gets headaches. Rachel is lucky. She
2 Rachel can relax. Vicky is different. She
3 Rachel missed a lecture yesterday, but Vicky
4 Vicky is a nervous person, but Rachel
5 Vicky loses things. Rachel
6 Rachel was a happy child. Vicky
7 Rachel has decided on a career, but Vicky
No and <b>not</b> (C)
Complete this paragraph from a travel article. Put in <i>no</i> or <i>not</i> .  Metropolis is (▶) <i>not</i> an attractive town. There are (1)

# 41 Negative questions



#### B Form

We make a question negative by putting **n't** after the auxiliary (e.g **have, does).** 

POSITIVE

Have you done it yet? What does the advert tell you? Who eats meat? What went wrong?

NEGATIVE

Haven't you done it yet? What doesn't the advert tell you? Who doesn't eat meat? What didn't go wrong?

#### C The use of negative yes/no questions

A negative yes/no question often expresses surprise.

*Haven't* you put those shelves up yet? (= I am surprised that you haven't yet.) *Don't* the children want the ice-cream? (= I am surprised that they don't want it.)

A question with can't can be a complaint or an impolite request.

Can't you sit down? You're blocking my view.

We can also use a negative yes/no question instead of a statement and a tag. Aren't you a friend of Harriet's? (= You're a friend of Harriet's, aren't you?)

#### D Yes/no answers

The answer **yes** means that the positive is true, and **no** means that the negative is true. Haven t you repaired the car yet? ~ Yes, I did it yesterday. Haven t you repaired the car yet? ~ No, sorry. I haven't had time.

#### E The use of negative wh-questions

We can use Why don't...? for a suggestion.

Why don't you put the shelves up now? ~ Well, all right.

Why don't we sit on the balcony? ~ Good idea.

We can use Why didn't...? to criticize.

We'll have to stand now. Why didn't you book seats for us? (= You should have booked seats for us.]

We can also use a wh-question to ask for information.

Who hasn't checked their baggage in? ~ Oh, I haven't. Sorry.

What don't you understand? ~ This paragraph here.

### 1 Negative yes/no questions (B-C)

What would you say in these situations? Use negative yes/no questions.

- ► You are surprised to learn that Rita doesn't like football. *Don't you like football, Rita*?
- 1 You find it surprising that Melanie can't drive.
- 2 It's a surprise that Rachel won't be at the disco.
- 3 You find out that surprisingly Nick hasn't got a television.

I/	iegative j	yes/no questions (B-C)										
Сс	mplete the	e conversations using the words in the br	ack	ets.								
<b>&gt;</b>	Mike:	I walked home from the town centre,	(ta	ke / bus)								
	Harriet:	You mean you walked all the way? Did										
1	Vicky:		I think I'd like to lie down for a while, (feel / well)									
	Rachel:			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,								
2	Matthew:	,	n looking forward to getting the photos you've sent, (arrive / yet)									
_	Richard:											
3	David:	I saw Rita, but she walked straight pas										
_	Melanie:											
4	Andrew:	I never sit by the pool. I hate water, (s										
•	Emma:			<del></del> ,								
	Ziiiiiw.	1.64										
V	oolno on	owers (D)										
		swers (D)										
	it in <i>yes</i> or <i>no</i>											
		tke stop and give you a lift? $\sim No$ , he did		•								
		u tired after working all day? ~										
		u write the number down? ~										
3	Haven't y	ou got an umbrella? ~, it's	her	e in my bag.								
4	Couldn't	you get in to the opera? ~,	we	didn't have tickets.								
٧	hy not? (	B. E)										
	•	• •	t th	e Magic World theme park. A ride crashed, and								
		injured. This is what Kitty has found out.		e Magie world theme park. A fide crashed, and								
þ	topic were	injured. This is what Kitty has found out.										
•	The peop	le on the ride didn't get enough help.	3	They aren't trained in first aid.								
1	The staff	didn't know what to do.	4	The ambulance wasn't called immediately.								
2	They cou	ldn't stop the ride.	5	The doctor didn't have a mobile phone.								
**	71 4			1								
	-	ons beginning with why does Kitty ask?										
	-	't the people on the ride get enough help?										
1												
2	•••••											
3												

# 42 Question tags, e.g. isn't it?

#### A Use

Melanie: It's a lovely day, isn't it?

Harriet: Beautiful. We're having a glorious summer, aren't we? Melanie: You haven't heard a forecast for the weekend, have you?

Harriet: No, I haven't, but I think it's going to stay sunny.

A question tag is a short question added on to a statement. When a tag is spoken, the voice can go down or up.

FALLING RISING

It's a lovely day, isn't it?

With a falling intonation, the speaker thinks the statement is true. Melanie knows that it is a lovely day, and she is inviting Harriet to continue the conversation. The tag is not really a question.

You haven't heard a forecast, have you? With a rising intonation, the speaker is less sure, Melanie doesn't know if Harriet has heard a weather forecast or not. The tag is more like a real question.

#### B Form

**POSITIVE STATEMENT + NEGATIVE TAG** 

It is very warm, isn't it?

A negative tag is an auxiliary verb + n't + pronoun.

You've played before, haven't you? The children can swim, can't they? It'll be dark soon, won't it?

There was a mistake, wasn't there?

NEGATIVE STATEMENT + POSITIVE TAG

It isn't very warm, is it?

A positive tag is an auxiliary verb + pronoun,

David hasn't got a car, has he? I shouldn't laugh, should I? You aren't ill, are you?

The answer wasn't right, was it?

The pronoun (you, he, etc) refers to the subject of the sentence, e.g. you, David. In the present simple and past simple we use a form of do.

You live near here, don't you? This coat looks nice, doesn't it? I turned right, didn't I?

We don't have to pay, do we? The shower doesn't work, does it? Your horse didn't win, did it?

The answer **yes** means that the positive is true, and **no** means that the negative is true.

Mark works for Zedco, doesn't he? ~ **Yes**, he does. (He **works** for Zedco.) Melanie doesn't eat meat, does she? ~ Fes, / think she does. (She **eats** meat.) Claire is married, isn't she? ~ No, of course she isn't. (She **isn't** married.) Andrew hasn't got many friends, has he? ~ **No.** (He **hasn't** got many friends.)

#### C Requests and suggestions

After a request with an imperative (e.g. Wait ...), we can use can you? or could you? Wait here a moment, can you? Give me an example, could you? We can also use You couldn't..., could you? or You haven't..., have you? for a request.

You couldn't help me, could you? You haven't got a pound, have you?

After Don't... the tag is will you?: Don't make any noise, will you? After Let's ... we use shall we?: Let's sit in the garden, shall we?

page 379 Question tags in American English

#### 1 Use (A)

Look carefully at each statement and tag. Say if it is more likely to be a comment (with falling intonation) or a question (with rising intonation).

- ► This price list is up to date, isn't it? ~ Yes, it is.
- a question
- 1 It was a super show, wasn't it? ~ Great. I really enjoyed it.
- 2 These sweaters are nice, aren't they? ~ I like this one.
- 3 We've got time for a coffee, haven't we? ~ A quick one maybe.
- 4 Let me see, the bus goes at ten past, doesn't it? ~ Quarter past

#### 2 Form(B)

You are at a barbecue. Add tags to help start a friendly conversation.

- ? These sausages are delicious, aren't they<sup>7</sup>.  $\sim$  They certainly are.
- ? You haven't lived here long, have you? ~ No, only three months.
- 1 It's quite a big garden, .....? ~ Yes, there's plenty of room.
- 2 There aren't many people here yet,.....? ~ No, but it's still quite early.
- 3 You're Rachel's friend, ......? ~ Yes, I'm Vicky.
- 4 You came in a sports car, .....? ~ That's right.
- 5 These burgers look good,.....? ~ I can't wait to try them.
- 6 We can sit on the grass,.....?  $\sim$  I think it's dry enough.
- 7 The weather forecast wasn't very good, .....? ~ No, it wasn't.

#### 3 Form(B)

Emma:

Complete the conversation. Put in the question tags.

Emma: You don't really want to go out with me any more, (▶) do you<sup>7</sup>.

Matthew: Of course I do. But I need a bit of time to myself sometimes.

Emma: You get plenty of time to yourself, (1) ......?

Matthew: Emma, you know what I feel for you.

I've told you enough times, (2) ......?

Emma: Yes, you have. And you're quite happy, (3) ......?

You don't mind, (4) .......?

The situation doesn't bother you, (5) ......?

Matthew: Why are we arguing? There's nothing to argue about, (6).....?

#### 4 Requests and suggestions (C)

What would you say in these situations? Write sentences with a question tag. Use the word in brackets. > You want to look at a newspaper. Daniel might have one, so ask him. (haven't) You haven't got a newspaper, have you?

You can't ever look at things from my point of view, (7) ......?

- 1 Suggest to Vicky that you both listen to some music. (Let's)
- 2 Warn David not to do anything silly. (Don't)
- 3 You need a train timetable. Emma might have one, so ask her. (haven't)
- 4 Ask Rachel to pass you the salt. (Pass)

# 43 So/Neither do I and I think so

#### A So and neither

Vicky: I'm hungry.

Rachel: So am 1.1 haven't eaten anything all day.

Daniel: Neither have I.1 didn't have time for breakfast.

We use **so** after a positive statement and **neither** after a negative one. *I'm hungry*. ~ *So am I*. (= And I'm hungry./I'm hungry, too.) / *haven't* eaten. ~ *Neither have I*. (= And I haven't eaten./I haven't eaten either.)

The structure is **so/neither** + an auxiliary + the subject.

The auxiliary is a form of be or have or a modal verb, e.g. can.

We're really busy at work. ~ So are we. Tom has gone to the match. ~ And so has Nick.

David can't drive, and neither can Melanie. The subject

comes at the end. NOT We're busy. ~ So we are. In the present

simple and past simple we use a form of do.

/ love old cowboy films. ~ So **do** I. This phone doesn't work. ~ **Neither does this one.** United won, and **so did** Rangers.

We can use nor instead of neither.

Emma isn't here tonight. Neither/Nor is Matthew.

#### B I think so, etc

Vicky: It's 'Round the Corner' at half past seven, my favourite

soap opera. Are we going to be back in time?

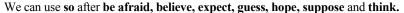
Daniel: I think so. We haven't got far to go now.

Rachel: We might miss the beginning.

Vicky: Oh, I hope not. I want to know if Bernard really did stea

the money.

Here *I think* so means I think we'll be back in time', and *I hope* not means T hope we don't miss the beginning'.



Do you think you'll get the job? ~ Well, I hope so. Are you going on holiday this year? ~ Yes, I expect so. I don't know for sure if Henry is rich, but I should think so. But we cannot use so after know or be sure.

There's been an accident. ~ Yes, **I know**, NOT <del>/ know</del>-so. Are you sure you're doing the right thing? ~ Yes, **I'm sure**, NOT I-m-sure so.

There are two negative structures.

NEGATIVE + SO

Is it raining? ~ I don't think so.

Are you going to the concert? ~ I don't expect so.

With expect and think, we normally use the negative and so.

POSITIVE + not

Is it raining? ~ I hope not.

Have we won a prize? ~ I'm afraid not.

With be afraid, guess and hope, we use the positive and not.

We can use **believe** and **suppose** in either structure.

Will there be any seats left? ~ I don't suppose so. OR I suppose not.



#### So and neither (A)

Andrew has just met Jessica at a party. They are finding out that they have a lot in common. Put in the structures with so and neither.

Andrew: I haven't been to a party for ages.

? Jessica: Neither have 1.1 hate crowded rooms.

? Andrew: Yes, so do I. I'm not a party-goer, really.

 Jessica: No,..... I can't make conversation.

2 Andrew: 

3 Jessica: And...... I lead a pretty quiet life.

4 Andrew: Well, ..... I haven't got many friends.

5 Jessica: ..... And I would really like a good friend.

Andrew: Oh. ....

#### 2 So and neither (A)

Look at the table and complete the sentences.

	Mark	Claire	Melanie	Emma
Music	1	X	X	1
Travel	1	1	X	X
Skiing	X	1	1	X
Cooking	X	X	1	1

?	Claire	can	ski	and	so	can	Mela	anie

- ? Mark isn't keen on cooking, and neither is Claire.
- 1 Melanie doesn't like travelling much, and ......
- 2 Mark has got lots of CDs, and .....
- 3 Emma can't ski, and .....
- 4 Claire isn't a music lover, and
- ..... 5 Melanie cooks quite often, and .....
- 6 Mark travels quite a lot, and .....

#### 3 I think so, etc (B)

Complete these short conversations. Put in structures with so or not and use the words in brackets.

!	Laura:	Does the library open on Saturdays? (think)
	Trevor:	Yes, / think so. But I'm not absolutely certain.
?	Harriet:	You can't go out for an evening meal wearing shorts, (guess)
	Mike:	! guess not. I'd better put some trousers on.
1	C 1	Will there has been forced at the consent to sight (consent)

1 Sarah: Will there be a lot of people at the concert tonight? (expect) Mark: ......There aren't usually very many.

2 Daniel: Are you going to apply for the job? (suppose) Vicky:

It's the only one available.

3 David: Do you think it's going to rain? (hope)

Melanie: Well. .....I'm just about to go out.

4 Nick: Will the match take place in this weather? (think)

Tom: In fact, I'm sure it won't. 5 Claire: Are my photos ready, please? (afraid)

Assistant:

# TEST 9 Questions, negatives and answers (Units 34-43)

#### Test 9A

Read the conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space. Judy:  $(\triangleright)$  *Shall* we go to the party tonight? (1) ..... giving a party? Judy: Susan. You know her, (2) ...... you? I'm (3) .....sure. Has she got long dark hair? Lisa: Judy: Lisa: Janet. They're twins, aren't (7) .....? Yes, that's right. Judy: Lisa: (8).....one is Susan? Oh, I (9)..... know. They both look the same. I can't always tell them apart. Judy: Lisa: Judy: That (11)..... matter. OK. (12)..... go to it then, shall we? Lisa: ► a) Do b) Shall c) Would a) What's b) Who's c) Whose 7 a) it b) not c) they 2 a) don't b) know c) so 8 a) What b) Which c) Who a) isn't b) no c) not 9 a) don't b) no c) not 10 a) neither a) got b) has b) not c) so c) so 5 11 a) doesn't a) Haven't b) Having c) Not b) isn't c) not a) it b) neither c) so 12 a) Could b) Let's c) Shall

#### Test 9 B

What would you say? Use the word in brackets, and use a question form in each sentence.

- ➤ You want to suggest a game of cards, (have) Shall we have a game of cards?
- 1 You are asking Tessa where her house is. (live)
- 2 You want Janet to tell you what she is thinking, (about)
- 3 You are inviting a friend to come to your room, (like)
- 4 You are surprised that your friend missed the football match on television, (watch)
- 5 You are asking permission to take a photo, (may)
- 6 You are looking for Polly. You are asking her friend for information, (seen)
- 7 You are asking Nigel about the number of letters he has written, (how)
- 8 You are asking Nancy about the people coming to her party, (who)
- 9 You are asking Martin's wife if he cooks every day or once a week, (often)
- 10 You are asking about the weather tomorrow, (will)

#### Test 9C

Each of these replies is wrong. Write the correct reply. ► Is it going to snow? ~ I'm not thinking it. I don't think so. 1 Has the computer arrived? ~ No, not. 2 Don't you like curry? ~ Yes, I hate it.

- 3 Will you be in tonight? ~ Yes, I expect.
- 4 Horrible weather. ~It isn't very nice isn't it?
- 5 Would you like a sweet? ~ Yes, right.
- 6 I'm quite tired now.  $\sim$  Too am I.
- 7 You might catch my cold. ~ I-don't hope to.
- 8 The first train didn't stop. ~ Neither-the-second

#### Test 9 D

Rupert is at a job interview. Someone is asking him questions. Write the questions. ► Interviewer: Where do you live? Rupert: Oh, I live in Longtown. 1 Interviewer: Rupert: I'm twenty-three. 2 Interviewer: ..... Yes, I went to college. Rupert: 3 Interviewer: Rupert: My interests? I don't have any, really. 4 Interviewer: ..... Rupert: Which company? Oh, I work for BX Electric. 5 Interviewer:

Nothing. There's nothing I don't like about my job.

#### Test9E

Put in the missing word.

Rupert:

- ► How does this phone work? ~ You press this button.
- 1 The new building looks awful. ~ I agree. It...... look very nice.
- 2 Could you give me a receipt, please? ~ Yes, of......
- 3 This chair isn't very comfortable. ~ And..... is this bed.
- 4 Didn't you watch 'Frankenstein' last night? ~...... I hate horror films.
- 5 What's this wood.....? ~ I'm going to make a table.
- 7 Will there be any free gifts? ~ No, there.....
- 8 Have they sent you some money? ~ No, I'm afraid......
- 9 Don't drop those plates,..... you? ~ OK, I'll be careful.
- 10 How.....is it to the station? ~ About half a mile.
- 11 Do those shoes fit you? ~ Yes, I think .....
- 2 Why.....we have a picnic? ~ Yes, good idea.
- B .....foot is hurting? ~ My right one.
- 4 I feel a bit cold actually. -Yes,...... do I.
- 15 Who.....eaten their ice-cream? ~ Oh, it's mine. I'm just going to eat it.
- 16 ......of these magazines would you like? ~ This one, please.

# 44 Ability: can, could and be able to

#### A Can and can't

Vicky: How many instruments can you play, Natasha?
Natasha: Three - the violin, the clarinet and the piano.
Vicky: That's terrific. You haven't got a piano here, though.

Natasha: No, but I can go to the music room in college and play the one in there.

Vicky: I'm not musical at all. I can't even sing.

We use **can** to say that something is possible: that someone has an ability (*Natasha can play the piano*) or an opportunity (*She can go to the music room*). **Can** is usually pronounced but sometimes we say. The negative is **cannot** or **can't**.

#### B Can and be able to

In the present tense, **be able to** is a little more formal and less usual than **can**.

Emma is good with computers. She can write/is able to write programs.

But in some structures we always use be able to, not can.

To-infinitive: *It's nice to be able to go to the opera,* (NOT *to-can-go*)

After a modal verb: Melanie might be able to help us.

Present perfect: It's been quiet today. I've been able to get some work done.

For the future we use **can** or **will be able to** but NOT *will-can*.

If we earn some money, we can go/we'll be able to go on holiday next summer.

I'm afraid I can't come/I won't be able to come to the disco on Friday.

But to suggest a possible future action, we normally use can.

Let's have lunch together. We can go to that new restaurant.

#### C Could and was/were able to

For ability or opportunity in the past, we use could or was/were able to.

Natasha **could** play (OR **was able to** play) the piano when she was four.

In those days we had a car, so we **could** travel (OR **were able to** travel) very easily.

To say that the ability or opportunity resulted in a particular action, something that really happened, we use was/were able to but not could.

The plane was able to take off at eleven o'clock, after the fog had lifted.

Luckily Mark was able to get (OR succeeded in getting) the work done in time.

The drivers were able to stop (OR managed to stop) before they crashed into each other.

Compare these two sentences.

The children **could** swim when they were quite young, (a past ability)

The children were able to swim across the river. (a past action)

In negative sentences and questions, we can use either form. It was

foggy, so the plane couldn't/wasn't able to take off. The pool was

closed, so they couldn't/weren't able to have a swim. Could you/Were

you **able to** describe the man to the police?

We normally use **could** (not **was/were able to**) with verbs of seeing etc, and with verbs of thinking. We **could see** the village in the distance. As soon as Harriet opened the door, she **could smell** gas. I **couldn't understand** what was happening.

► He can walk on his hands.

#### 1 Can and can't (A)

Look at the pictures and say what they can or can't do. Use these words: climb trees, juggle, lift the weights, play the violin, walk on his hands



#### 2 Can and be able to (B)

Harriet is visiting David, who hurt himself when he fell off a ladder. Complete the conversation using *can* or a form of *be able to*. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

Harriet: Hello, David. I'm sorry I haven't (▶) been able to come (come) and see you before.

I've been really busy lately. How are you?

#### 3 Could and was/were able to (C)

- ▶ Which is closer to the meaning of the sentence 'Years ago I could run a marathon'?
  - a) I ran a marathon at one particular time in the past.
  - b) I was once fit enough to run a very long way.
- 1 Which of these sentences is correct?

I was ill, so I couldn't go to the party.

I was ill, so I wasn't able to go to the party.

- a) Only the first one. b) Only the second one. c) Both of them.
- 2 Which is closer to the meaning of the sentence 'Sarah was able to leave work early yesterday'?
  - a) Sarah left work early yesterday.
  - b) Sarah had the opportunity to leave work early yesterday, but we don't know if she took it.

#### 4 Could and was/were able to (C)

Put in *could* or *was/were able to*. Sometimes either is possible. Use a negative if necessary.

- ► Suddenly all the lights went out. We *couldn't* see a thing.
- 1 The computer went wrong, but luckily Emma..... put it right again.
- 2 There was a big party last night. You...... hear the music half a mile away.
- 3 I learnt to read music as a child. I ..... read it when I was five.
- 4 People heard warnings about the flood, and they...... move out in time.
- 5 The train was full. I find a seat anywhere.

# 45 Permission: can, may, could and be allowed to

#### A Asking permission

We use can, could or may to ask for permission.

Can I use your pen?

*Could* we borrow your ladder, please? ~ Well, I'm using it at the moment.

*May I see the letter?* ~ *Certainly.* Could often sounds more

polite than can. May is rather formal.

#### B Giving and refusing permission

To give permission we use can or may (but not could).

You can wait in my office if you like.

Could I borrow your calculator? ~ Of course you can.

You may telephone from here, (a written notice)

May is formal and is not often used in speech.

To refuse permission we use **can't** or **may not** (but not **couldn't**). Could we picnic here? ~ I'm sorry. I'm afraid you **can't**. Members **may not** bring more than two guests into the club. We can also use **must not**.

Luggage must not be left unattended.



#### C Talking about permission

We sometimes talk about rules made by someone else. To do this we use can, could and be allowed to.

We use **can** to talk about the present, and we use **could** for the past.

Present: Each passenger can take one bag onto the plane.

Past: In the 1920s you could drive without taking a test.

We can also use be allowed to.

Present: Passengers are allowed to take one bag onto the plane.

Future: Will I be allowed to record the interview on tape?

Past: We weren't allowed to look round the factory yesterday.

For a general permission in the past we use either could or was/were allowed to.

/ could always stay/1 was always allowed to stay up late as a child.

But to say that the permission resulted in a particular action, something that really happened, we use was/were allowed to (but not could).

I was allowed to leave work early yesterday.

We were allowed to go into the control room when we looked around the power station.

Compare these questions with may and be allowed to.

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

ASKING ABOUT PERMISSION

May I take a photo of you? (= Will you allow it?)

Are we allowed to take photos? (= What is the rule?)

#### 1 Asking permission (A)

How would you ask for permission in these situations?

Use Can I...?, Could I...? or May I...? and these verbs: borrow, join, look at, use ▶

You are at a friend's flat. You want to make a phone call. Can I use your phone?

- 1 You need a calculator. The person sitting next to you has got one.
- 2 You have gone into a cafe. Three people who you know from work are sitting at a table. You go over to the table.
- 3 You had to go to a lecture, but you were ill. Your friend went to the lecture and took notes. Next day you are well again and you see your friend.

#### 2 Giving and refusing permission (B)

A policeman is telling you what the signs mean. What does he say? Use can and can't and these verbs: drop, go, have, park, play, smoke, turn



	Policeman:
?	You can't go this way.
?	You can park here.
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

#### 3 Be allowed to (C)

Put in the correct forms.

Rita: I hear you've moved into a new flat with a couple of friends.

Emma: Yes, it's a nice flat, but the landlady is really strict. (**>**) We aren't allowed to do (we / not / allow / do) anything. It was my birthday last month, and

(1).....(I / not / allow / have) a party.

We're hoping to have an all-night party soon, but I'm not absolutely sure if

(4) ..... (we / allow/hold) it.

### 4 May I...? or Am I allowed to ...? (C)

Are you asking for permission, or are you asking what the rule is? Put in May I...? or Am I allowed to ...?

- ? May I use your computer?
- ? Am I allowed to smoke in this cinema?

cross the road here?
ask you a personal question?

3 rollerblade in this park?
4 drive a car without insurance?

5 .....read your magazine?

# 46 Possibility and certainty: may, might, could, must, etc

### A May, might and could

Rachel: Whose bag is that?

Daniel: / don't know. It may belong to Maria's friend.

Vicky: It might be a bomb. It could explode at any moment.

We use **may** or **might** to say that something is possible or that it is quite likely.

We can use them for the present or the future.

It may/might be a bomb. (= Perhaps it is a bomb.)

/ may/might go to the disco tomorrow. (= Perhaps I will go to the disco.)

We can use **could** to say that something is possible.

*The story could be true, I suppose.* (= Possibly it is true.)

You could win a million pounds! (= Possibly you will win a million pounds.)

Sometimes **could** means only a small possibility. It is possible (but not likely) that you will win a million pounds.

In some situations we can use may, might or could.

It may/might/could rain later.

After may, might or could we can use a continuous form (be + an ing-form). That man may/might be watching us. (= Perhaps he is watching us.) Sarah may/might be working late tonight. (= Perhaps she will be working late.) I'm not sure where Matthew is. He could be playing squash. (= Possibly he is playing squash.)

#### B May, might and could in the negative

The negative forms are may not, might not/mightn't, and could not/couldn't.

MAY NOT AND MIGHT NOT

Something negative is possible. *Daniel may not get the job. Tom might not be in. I mightn't finish the marathon tomorrow.* (It is possible that I will not finish it.)

COULDN'T

Something is impossible.

Vicky is afraid of heights. She **couldn't** climb onto the roof.

*I'm completely unfit. I couldn't run a marathon.* (It is impossible for me to run it.)

#### C Must and can't

MUST

We use **must** when we realize that something is certainly true.

She isn't answering the phone. She **must** be out. I had my keys a moment ago. They **must** be here somewhere.

Andrew isn't here. He **must** be working in the library.

CAN'T

We use **can't** when we realize that something is impossible.

We haven't walked far. You can't be tired yet.

Life can't be easy when you have to spend it in a
wheelchair.

Nick can't be touring Scotland. I saw him hat this morning.

53 Might/could/must have been page 379 Mustn't in American English t> 51A Could in suggestions

# 1 Might be and might be doing (A) Vicky and Rachel are at college. They're looking for their friend Natasha. Complete the conversation. Use may or might and the verb in brackets. Sometimes you need to use the continuous. Vicky: I can't find Natasha. Have you seen her? Rachel: (▶) She might be (she / be) in the music room. (▶) She may be practising (she / practise). (3) ...... (she / sit) out there reading the paper. (5) .......(you / find) her in the canteen. Emma: No, I've looked there. Rachel: Well, here comes Jessica. (6) (she / know). 2 May and might (A-B) Add a sentence with may or might (both are correct). ? I'm not sure if it's going to rain. It might rain. ? I don't know if we'll see an elephant. We may see one. 1 I can't say whether Daniel will win 2 I haven't decided if I'm having a holiday. 3 I don't know if we'll get an invitation. 4 I've no idea whether Sarah will be late..... 3 I'm not sure if my friends are visiting me..... 3 Mightn't and couldn't (B) Put in *mightn't* or *couldn't*. ? I've got one or two things to do, so I mightn't have time to come out tonight. ? David *couldn't* work as a taxi driver. He can't drive. 2 Mark ......be in the office tomorrow. He thinks he's getting a cold. 5 Don't ring tomorrow because I...... be in. I'm not sure what I'm doing. 4 Must, can't and might (A, C) A reporter is interviewing Mrs Miles for a TV news programme. Complete the conversation. Put in *must*, *can't* or *might*. Mrs Miles: My name's Nora Miles, and I'm going to do a parachute jump. Reporter: Mrs Miles, you're seventy-three, and you're going to jump out of an aeroplane. You (▶) must be mad. You (1) be serious. Mrs Miles: It really (2).....be wonderful to look down from the sky. I've always wanted to try it. Reporter: But anything could happen. You (3) ...... be injured or even killed. I wouldn't take the risk. Mrs Miles: Well, young man, your life (4) ...... be much fun if you never take risks. You ought to try it. You never know - you (5) ......enjoy it. Reporter: Enjoy it? You (6) be joking!

# 47 Necessity: must and have to

#### A Present, past and future

We use **must** and **have to/has to** to say that something is necessary. You'll be leaving college soon. You **must** think about your future. We're very busy at the office. I **have to** work on Saturday morning. Mark **has to** get the car repaired. There's something wrong with the brakes.

When we use the past, or the future with will, we need a form of have to.

Emma had to go to the dentist yesterday, NOT She must go to-the dentist yesterday.

That wasn't very good. We'll have to do better next time.

And in other structures we also use a form of have to, not must.

To-infinitive: / don't want to have to wait in a queue for ages.

After a modal verb: Emma has toothache. She might have to go to the dentist.

Present perfect: Mark has had to drive all the way to Glasgow.

For negatives and questions with have to/has to and had to, we use a form of do.

/ don't have to work on Sundays. Why does Andrew have to study every evening?

Did you have to pay for your second cup of coffee? ~ No, I didn't. I don't have to work means that it is not necessary for me to work (see Unit 48B).

#### B Must or have to?

Both must and have to express necessity, but we use them differently.





MUST

We use **must** when the speaker feels that something is necessary.

You must exercise. (I'm telling you.) We must be quiet. (I'm telling you.)

I/we must can also express a wish.

/ **must** buy a newspaper. 1 want to see the racing results.

We **must** invite Claire. She's wonderful company.

HAVE TO

We use **have to** when the situation makes something necessary.

*I have to exercise.* (The doctor told me.) *We have to be quiet.* (That's the rule.)

1 have to buy a newspaper. The boss asked melt get one.

We **have to** invite Trevor and Laura. They invited us last time.

#### Have got to

Have got to means the same as have to, but have got to is informal. We use it mainly in the present. I have to/I've got to make my sandwiches. My father has to/has got to take these pills. Do we have to apply/Have we got to apply for a visa?

48 Mustn't and needn't

#### 1 Have to (A) Complete the conversations. Use the words in brackets and a form of have to. ▶ Melanie: David's broken his leg. *He's had to go* (he's / go) to hospital. Harriet: Oh no! How long will he have to stay (will / he / stay) there? Melanie: I don't know. 1 Claire: I parked my car outside the hairdresser's, and while I was in there, the police took the car Henry: How much ..... (you / pay)? Claire: Two hundred pounds! 2 Trevor That door doesn't shut properly... (you / slam) it every time. Laura: ..... (you / will / fix) it then, won't you? 3 Jessica: .....(I / will / take) a lot more if I want a good job. Andrew: 4 Mike: We're in a new house now......(we / move). The old place was too small. Nick: Did it take you long to find a house? No, we found one easily. ..... (we / not / look) very hard. But it Mike: was in bad condition...... (we've / do) a lot of work on it. 5 Nick: My brother ...... (start) work at five o'clock in the morning. Melanie: Nick: Half past three. 2 Must and have to (B) Write a sentence with must, have to or has to. ► The sign says: 'Passengers must show their tickets.' So passengers have to show their tickets. ► The children have to be in bed by nine. Their parents said: 'You must be in bed by nine.' 1 Laura has to get to work on time. Her boss told her: 2 The police told Nick: 'You must keep your dog under control.' So Nick 3 The pupils have to listen carefully. The teacher says: 4 The new sign says: 'Visitors must report to the security officer.' So now.... 3 Must or have to? (B) Put in *must ox have to/has to*. Choose which is best for the situation. ► I have to go to the airport. I'm meeting someone. 1 You ......lock the door when you go out. There've been a lot of break-ins recently. 2 Daniel ......go to the bank. He hasn't any money. 3 I ...... work late tomorrow. We're very busy at the office. 4 You really..... make less noise. I'm trying to concentrate. 5 I think you \_\_\_\_\_ pay to park here. I'll just go and read that notice.

6 Youreally ...... hurry up, Vicky. We don't want to be late.

7 I ......put the heating on. I feel really cold.

# 48 Necessity: mustn't, needn't, etc

#### A Mustn't or needn't?

We use **must** to say that something is necessary (see Unit 47). You must be careful with those glasses. I must remember my key.

Now compare mustn't and needn't.

MUSTN'T

We use **mustn't** to say that something is a bad idea.

You mustn't drop those glasses. They'll break. I mustn't forget my key, or I won't get in. You mustn't wear your best clothes. You'll get them dirty.

NEEDN'T

We use **needn't** when something is not necessary,

You **needn't** wash those glasses. They're dean. We needn't make sandwiches. There's a cafe. You needn't wear your best clothes. You can wear what you like.

#### B Don't have to and don't need to

We can use **don't have to** and **don't need to** when something is not necessary.

The meaning is the same as **needn't**.

You don't have to / don't need to wash those glasses. They're clean.

Mark doesn't have to /doesn't need to finish the report today. He can do it at the weekend. For American usage see page 379.

For the past we use *didn't*.

The food was free. We didn't have to pay/We didn't need to pay for it.

#### C Didn't need to or needn't have?



Daniel hadn't booked a seat, but luckily the train wasn't full. He didn't need to stand.



Trevor and Laura booked a table for dinner. But the restaurant was empty. They needn't have booked a table.

#### DIDN'T NEED TO

We use **didn't need to** when something was not necessary. Standing was not necessary because there were seats.

Mark didn't need to hurry. He had lots of time. He drove slowly along the motorway. We didn't **need to** go to the supermarket because we had plenty of food.

Sometimes we can use didn't need to when the action happened, even though it was not Mark didn't need to hurry, but he drove at top speed. necessary. He likes driving fast.

#### NEEDN'T HAVE

We use **needn't have** + a past participle for something we did which we now know was not necessary, e.g. booking a table.

Mark needn't have hurried. After driving at too speed, he arrived half an hour early. We needn't have gone to the supermarket. We already had a pizza for tonight.

#### i Must, mustn't or needn't? (A) Put in must, mustn't or needn't. ► Laura: You *needn't* take an umbrella. It isn't going to rain. Trevor: Well, I don't know. It might do. Laura: Don't lose it then. You mustn't leave it on the bus. 1 Vicky: Come on. We ...... be late. It's only ten past. We ...... hurry. There's lots of time. Rachel: 2 Claire: My sister and I are going a different way. Guide: Oh, you ...... go off on your own. It isn't safe. We.....keep together in a group. David: I'll put these cups in the dishwasher. Melanie: No, you .....put them in there. It might damage them. In fact, we ......wash them at all. We didn't use them. Secretary: ..... forget to type this letter. Mark: Yes, it..... go in the post today because it's quite urgent. But the report isn't so important. You..... type the report today. 2 Don't have to (B) An old woman is talking to a reporter from her local newspaper. She is comparing life today with life in the past. Complete her sentences using don't have to, doesn't have to or didn't have to. ▶ We had to make our own fun in the old days. There wasn't any television then. These days people don't have to make their own fun. 1 There's so much traffic now. You have to wait ages to cross the road. In those days you 2 I had to work long hours when I was young. But children today have it easy. They..... 3 My father had to work in a factory when he was twelve. Just imagine! Today a twelve-year-old child 4 There's so much crime today, isn't there? People have to lock their doors now. It was better in the old days when people ..... 5 We had to wash our clothes by hand. There weren't any washing-machines, you know. Nowadays people ..... 3 Didn't need to or needn't have? (C) Write the sentences using didn't need to or needn't have. ▶ The previous owners had already decorated the flat, so we didn't need to decorate it ourselves (we / decorate / it / ourselves). 1 Luckily we were able to sell our old flat before we bought the new one, 2 It was very hot yesterday, so I watered all the flowers. And now it's pouring with rain (I / bother). 3 We've done the journey much more quickly than I expected. ..... (we / leave / so early). 4 K friend had already given me a free ticket to the exhibition, It was a waste of money.

# 49 Should, ought to, had better and be supposed to



# B Should and ought to

We use **should** and **ought to** to say what is the best thing or the right thing to do.

There is no difference in meaning.

You're not very well. Perhaps you should see a doctor.

Your uncle was very kind to me. I ought to write him a letter of thanks.

People shouldn't break/oughtn't to break their promises. We can also

use **should** and **ought to** in questions to ask for advice.

Where **should** I put this picture, do you think?

It's a difficult problem. How ought we to deal with it?

After **should** or **ought to** we can use a continuous form (**be** + an ing-form).

It's half past six already. I **should be cooking** the tea. Why are you sitting here doing nothing? You **ought to be working**.

#### C Had better

We use **had better** to say what is the best thing to do in a situation.

It's cold. The children had better wear their coats.

The neighbours are complaining. We'd better turn the music down.

My wife is waiting for me. I'd better not be late.

We could also use **should** or **ought to** in these examples, although **had better** is stronger. The speaker sees the action as necessary and expects that it will happen.

# D Be supposed to

We use **be supposed to** when we are talking about the normal or correct way of doing things. The guests **are supposed to** buy flowers for the hostess. Look at these cars. This area **is supposed to** be kept clear of traffic. The bus driver needs to concentrate. You're **not supposed to** talk to him. How **am I supposed to** cook this? ~ It tells you on the packet.

We can use was/were **supposed to** for the past.

It's eleven o'clock. You were supposed to be here at ten thirty, you know.

52D Shalt used to ask for advice

# 1 Should and ought to (B) Put in *should, shouldn't, ought* or *oughtn't.* (Look for the word *to.*) I can't come out tonight, Rachel. I (▶) *ought to* do some more work. I'm behind with everything. I've got so much to do. Rachel: You (1) ...... worry so much, Vicky. Don't panic. You (2)...... to relax sometimes. You (3)..... take a break. Vicky: I know 1(4) ......panic, but I do. I can't help it. Rachel: Anyway, you're doing OK, aren't you? Your results have been good. You (5)..... be pleased. You (6).... to invent problems for yourself. 2 Had better (C) What would you say in these situations? Add a sentence with 'd better (not) and the words in brackets. ▶ Vicky doesn't feel well. She's got a headache. What might you say to her? (an aspirin) You'd better take an aspirin. 1 You and Daniel are meeting Rachel. You've both arrived, but she isn't there yet. She is usually late. (wait).... 2 Ilona is leaving her bike outside the swimming-pool. You know it won't be safe if she leaves it unlocked. 3 Some friends are going to visit you today. Your room is in a mess. What do you think? (tidy) 4 Nick is giving you a lift in his old sports car. There's a speed limit, and there's a police car behind you. (too fast) 5 There's an exam tomorrow. Neither you nor Rachel have done any work for it. (some revision) 3 Be supposed to (D) Add a sentence using be (not) supposed to and these verbs: leave it outside, report to the police, stand in a queue, take two before meals, watch it ▶ You shouldn't bring your bike in here. You're supposed to leave it outside. 1 I've got some pills.... 2 Foreign visitors can't travel freely here. 3 Be careful waiting for a bus in England. 4 This film isn't for under-sixteens. Should, ought to, had better and be supposed to (A-D) Complete the conversation. Use should, ought to, had better or be supposed to and the verbs in brackets. Usually there is more than one correct answer. What time ( $\triangleright$ ) are we supposed to be (we / be) at the coffee morning? Rachel: The invitation says ten o'clock. (2)..... (we / not / be) late. Rachel: Oh, it won't matter if we're a bit late. Vicky: I think it would be rude, wouldn't it? I don't think people (3) (arrive) late when they've been invited to something. Rachel: You worry too much. (4) ...... (you / not / take) everything so seriously, Vicky. It's a coffee morning, not a job interview. (5)..... (we / not / get) there exactly on time.

# 50 Asking people to do things

#### A Polite requests

We can use can or could in a request, when we ask someone to do something.

Can everyone be quiet for a minute, please?

Can you keep me informed'? ~ Yes, of course.

**Could** you lend me ten pounds until tomorrow? ~ Sorry, I haven't got ten pounds.

I wonder if you could explain something to me. ~ I'll try.

Could is often more polite than can.

In a request we can also use **Do you mind...?** or **Would you mind...?** with an ing-form.

Do you mind waiting a moment? ~ No, I can wait.

Would you mind sitting in the back? ~ No, not at all. We

can also use Would you like to ...?

Would you like to lay the table for me? ~ Yes, of course. We do not use Do you like ...?

for a request, NOT DO YOU LIKE TO LIE THE TABLE FOR ME?

It is always worth taking the trouble to use one of these request forms in English. We do not normally say Lay the table for me. This can sound very abrupt and impolite without a phrase like Could you ...?

#### B The imperative

We can sometimes use the imperative form to tell someone what to do.

Bring another chair. Hurry up or we'll be late. We

form the negative with don't.

Don't be silly. Don't make so much noise.

We can use an imperative when we are with friends in an informal situation. But we do not use it to a stranger or in a more formal situation.

Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to Oxford Street, please?

NOT Tell-me-the way to Oxford Street-please.

Would you mind sending me a copy of your catalogue?

NOT Send-me-a-copy-of your-catalogue.

Even people in authority often avoid using the imperative to give orders. Instead they can use I want/I'd like you to ..., You must..., or a polite request form. Manager: / want you all to be at the meeting. Policeman: You must wait until you see the green light. Doctor: Could you lie down on the bed, please?

#### C Asking for things

We use Can I/we have...? and Could I/we have ...? when we ask someone to give us something.

Can we have our room key, please? Could I have a receipt, please? We can also say

Could you give me a receipt, please?but we do not use the imperative.

NOT Give me a receipt.

When we ask for something in a shop or a cafe, we can simply name what we want, but we must say please A large white loaf, please. Two coffees, please.

We can also use I'd like ... or I'll have ...

I'd like a chicken sandwich, please. I'll have a coffee.

45 Can and could for permission 52B Would like

### 1 Asking people to do things (A-C)

Complete these sentences and write them in: Can I... a fork, please? Could ... have a towel, ...? Could you ... the ... for me? Would you ... answering the phone?









▶	Could you open the door for me?	2	•••••
4		2	

### 2 Asking people to do things (A-C)

Mr Atkins is the boss at Zedco. He tells everyone what to do. Complete his sentences. Use these words: *can, could, have, like, mind, must, want, wonder, would* 

- ▶ Would you mind making some tea, Alan?
- 1 You.....inform me of any developments.
- 2 Could I ..... the latest sales figures, please?
- 3 Would you .....to arrange a meeting some time next week, Fiona?
- 4 I.....everyone to read the report.
- 5 ......I see the file, please, Mark?
- 6 .....you mind putting this in writing?
- 7 I....if you could translate this letter, Linda.
- 8 ...... you meet our customer at the airport?

#### 3 Asking people to do things (A-C)

Read about each situation and then make a request. Use the word in brackets.

- ► It is cold in the restaurant. Ask the waiter to shut the window, (could) Could you shut the window, please?
- 1 You are buying a coat. Ask the assistant for a receipt, (can)
- 2 You want to know the time. Ask someone in the street, (could)

  Excuse me ......
- 3 You need someone to help you. Ask a friend, (can)
- 4 You have bought some food, but you haven't got a bag. Ask the assistant, (could)
- 5 You are carrying a tray. Ask someone to clear a space on the table, (mind)
- 6 You are on the phone. You want to speak to the manager, (could)

# 51 Suggestions, offers and invitations

### A Suggestions

We can use **Shall we** ...? or **Let's** to make a suggestion. *It's* a lovely day. **Shall we** go for a walk? ~ Yes, OK. **Let's** play some music. ~ Good idea.

We can also use could for a suggestion.

We could watch this comedy on TV tonight. ~ Well, actually I've seen it before.

You **could** invite a few friends around. ~ Yes, why not?

We can also use **Why don't**...?

Why don't we have a look round the market?

To ask for a suggestion we use shall, should or can.

Where shall/should we go for our holiday? ~ What about Spain?

What can I get Claire for her birthday? ~ I've no idea.

#### **B** Offers

We can use **will** or **can** to offer to do something. *I'll* carry your bag. ~ Oh, thanks. We **can** give you a lift. ~ Oh, that would be great. Thank you.

We can also use question forms with shall or can.

**Shall** we pay you the money now?  $\sim$  Oh, there's no hurry.

Can I get a taxi for you?  $\sim$  Yes, please.

To offer food or drink, we use would like.

Would you like one of these chocolates? ~ Yes, please. Thank you.

**Would** anyone **like** more coffee? ~ No, thanks.

We can also use Will/Won't you have ...?

Will you have a biscuit? ~ Thank you.

Won't you have something to drink? ~ Not for me, thank you.

In informal speech we can use the imperative.

Have a biscuit. ~ Thank you.

#### C Invitations

The words we use in invitations are similar to those we use in offers of food and drink (see B). To invite someone, we often use **Would you like to** ...?

**Would** you **like to** have lunch with us? ~ Yes, I'd love to. Thank you.

**Would like** can have a verb with **to** after it, or an object with a noun. Would you like **to stay** the night. ~ Oh, that's very kind of you. Would you like **a bed** for the night? ~ Are you sure it's not too much trouble?

We can also use Will/Won't you ...?

*Will you join us for coffee?* ~ Yes. Thanks. Won't you sit down?

In informal speech we can use the imperative. *Come* and have coffee with us. Please sit down.

52 Will, would, shall and should

#### i Suggestions, offers and invitations (A-C)

Put the words in the right order and write in the sentences:

post I for you I I'll / that letter for a minute I shall / stop /we

have / one of these / wont I you a game / like / would /you









Þ	•	I	V	o	n	ıt	7	y	0	и	ı	ŀ	u	ı	v	e	(	9	n	e	•	o	f	ì	t	h	$\epsilon$	S	e	?
1																														

2	•••••	
3		

#### 2 Suggestions and offers (A-B)

Complete the conversation. Put in could, shall, will or would.

Daniel: Where  $(\triangleright)$  shall we have our picnic, then?

Rachel: This looks all right. (1).....we sit here?
Emma: Oh, I've forgotten the sausages. They're in the car.

Matthew: (2) ..... I get them?

Emma: Oh, thanks, Matthew.

Vicky: We (3).....sit by those trees. It looks nicer over there.

Rachel: No, it's fine here.

Daniel: Yes, it's better here, I think.

Emma: (4) .....you like a sandwich, Vicky?

Vicky: Oh, thank you.

Emma: (5) .....you have one, Rachel?

Matthew: And here are the sausages. (6)...... anyone like one?

#### 3 Suggestions, offers and invitations (A-C)

What would you say? There is more than one correct answer.

- ► A friend has called at your flat. Invite him to come in. Would you like to come in ?
- 1 Offer your visitor a cup of tea.
- 2 You don't know what to say in your letter. Ask your friend for a suggestion.
- 3 You are walking in town with a friend. Suggest having a cup of coffee.
- 4 A woman you know is afraid to walk home alone. Offer to walk home with her.
- 5 You are writing to a friend. Invite her to visit you one weekend.

# 52 Will, would, shall and should

#### A Will and would for predictions

We can use will for a prediction (see Unit 25C).

It's midnight, and Sarah is still working. She'll he tired tomorrow. We're going to Cornwall for the weekend. ~ Thafll he nice. Wait a minute while I send this e-mail. It won't take long.

We use **would** for a past prediction or a prediction about a possible situation. Past: At midnight Sarah was still working. She **would** be tired the next day.

Possible: How about going to Cornwall next weekend? ~ That would be nice. I

wouldn't enjoy a camping holiday.

We can use **shall** instead of **will**, and **should** instead of **would**, but only in the first person, after **I** and we, *I will/shall be twenty-five in June*.

We would/should like to meet your family. But NOT My friend should like ...

Shall and should are a little formal here.

#### B Would like

We can use would like, usually shortened to 'd like, when we ask for something.

I'd like a brochure, please. We'd like to order our drinks first.

This is a more polite way of saying / want a brochure, for example.

We also use would like in offers and invitations.

**Would** you like a free gift? **Would** you like to visit the museum with us?

#### C Decisions and refusals

We can use will for an instant decision or for an offer.

Decision: *Tea or coffee? ~ I'll have coffee, please,* (see Unit 23B)

Offer: *I'll wait for you if you like. ~ Oh, thanks. I won't be long.* 

We use won't and wouldn't for a refusal.

The strikers won't go back to work until they get a pay increase.

The key went in the lock, but it wouldn't turn. I

won't... is a strong refusal.

/ won't listen to any more of this nonsense.

#### D Shall and should

We use  $\boldsymbol{Shall\ I}$  ...? in offers and  $\boldsymbol{Shall\ we}$  ...? in suggestions.

Offer: Shall I wait for you? ~ Oh, thanks. I won't be long.

Suggestion: *Shall* we go to the park? ~ Good idea. We also use **shall** to ask for a suggestion. *What* 

shall we have for lunch?

We use either **shall** or **should** to ask for advice.

I'm in terrible trouble. What shall/should I do? We use should to say what is the best thing or the right thing to do.

People should exercise regularly.

You shouldn't spend all your money as soon as you've earned it.

23 Will and shall 49 Should 51 Suggestions, offers and invitations

#### 1 Will and would (A-B)

Complete the conversation. Put in *will, won't, would* or *wouldn't*.

Emma: We (▶) *won't be* here next September. It's hard to believe, isn't it?

In a few months our student days (1).......be over.

Matthew: It (2).....be long now. I wish I had a job.

Then 1(3).....know where I was going.

Emma: Who knows what the future (4) ...... bring?

Matthew: Why don't we get married, Emma? Then at least we (5).....be together.

Emma: I don't think so, Matthew. It (6).....be a good idea.

Matthew: I couldn't live without you, Emma.

Emma: I really (7)..... like to believe you, Matthew.

#### 2 Some other uses of will and would (B-C)

Complete the conversations. Put in will, won't, would or wouldn't with these verbs: eat, give, go, help, let, like, open, stand

► Vicky: Have you noticed how thin Jessica has got?

Rachel: She's on a diet. She won't eat anything except carrots.

1 Harriet: Mike and I.....you get everything ready.

Mike: Yes, we're quite willing to lend a hand.

2 Laura: You're late. I thought you were going to leave work early today.

Trevor: Sorry. The boss ...... me go.

3 Mark: Sarah and I .....you a lift, Mike.

Sarah: Yes, we're going your way.

4 Harriet: I heard Rita has quarrelled with her boyfriend.

Melanie: That's right. If he's invited to the party, she.....

5 Vicky: I've had enough of table tennis for one day.

6 Trevor: What's wrong with the washing-machine?

Laura: When I tried to use it earlier, the door ......

7 Mike: This lamp is always falling over.

Harriet: It ..... up properly.

#### 3 Will, would, shall and should (A-D)

What would you say? Use will, would, shall or should.

▶ Offer to make the tea.

Shall I make the tea?

- 1 Suggest going to the swimming-pool.
- 2 Refuse to take any risks.
- 3 Say politely that you want a shower.
- 4 Tell someone it's best they don't decide in a hurry.
- 5 Predict the end of the world in the year 3000.

# 53 It may/could/must have been, etc

#### **A** Introduction

Vicky, Emma and Matthew are at a club in town.

Vicky: Where's Daniel? He should have been here half an hour ago.

Emma: He may have got lost. It isn't easy to find this place.

Matthew: He could have forgotten all about it, I suppose.

Emma: He can't have forgotten. We were talking about it this morning.

Matthew: Well, something must have delayed him.

We can use a modal verb with the perfect (have + a past participle).

We use this structure to talk about possible past events.

#### B May have, might have and could have

We use these forms to say that possibly something happened in the past. *He* may have got lost. (= Perhaps he has got lost.) You might have left your keys at work. (= Perhaps you left them at work.) Someone could have stolen them. (= It is possible that someone stole them.)

We also use **could have** for an opportunity that we didn't take or a possible result that didn't happen. **We could have gone** out somewhere, but we were too tired. You were very lucky. There **could have been**a terrible accident.

### May not have, might not have and couldn't have

Compare these different uses.

MAY/MIGHT NOT HAVE

Possibly something did not happen.

Daniel may not have caught the bus. I expect he

missed it.

(Perhaps he didn't catch it.) 7 *might not have locked the door.* 

(Perhaps I didn't lock it.)

COULDN T HAVE

It is impossible that something

happened. Daniel couldn't have caught the

bus. It doesn't

run on Sundays.

(It is impossible for him to have caught the

bus.)

#### Must have and can't have

Must and can't are opposites.

MUST HAVE

My watch says it's only ten past two. It must

have stopped.

I realize it is certainly true that my watch has stopped.

CAN T HAVE

You've only spent five minutes on that job. You can't have done it properly. I realize it is impossible that you did the job properly.

### Should have and ought to have

We use these forms when someone didn't do the right thing. We didn't play very well We should have played better. I got lost. ~ Sorry. I ought to have drawn you a map. It was a lovely old building. They shouldn't have knocked it down.

29A Will have done 46 May, might, could, must, can't 48C Needn't have 49 Should, ought to 146 Would have

#### It may/could/must have been, etc (B-D)

Look at each conversation and choose the best sentence, a) or b).

- ▶ Has the car broken down? ~ Well, we may have run out of petrol.
  - a) I'm sure there's no petrol left, b) I think there's no petrol left.
- 1 You could have had a free holiday. ~ Yes, we could, but the dates weren't convenient.
  - a) We had a free holiday, b) We didn't have a free holiday.
- 2 Did you record the programme? ~ I can't remember. I might not have done.
  - a) I'm not sure if I recorded it. b) I certainly didn't record it.
- 3 Can't you find that newspaper? ~ No, someone must have thrown it away.
  - a) It was necessary to throw it away, b) I realize now that it was thrown away.

#### Should and ought to (E and Unit 49B)

Complete the replies. Use should/ought to or should have/ought to have.

► Rita: Tom's car was stolen. He hadn't locked it.

David: I suppose it's his fault then. He should have locked it.

► Tom: I can't sleep sometimes. My neighbours play music all night.

Melanie: That's a nuisance. They shouldn't play music all night.

1 Mark: The picnickers left litter everywhere.

Sarah: That's awful.....

2 Emma: Jessica isn't very friendly, is she? She never says hello to people.

Matthew: I know.

3 Rachel: I don't think Daniel's going to get that job. He was late for the interview.

Natasha: That can't have looked very good.

4 Daniel: Did you see Vicky crossing the road? She didn't look.

Emma: She could have been killed......

3 It may/could/must have been, etc (B-E)

Complete the conversation. Use cant have, might have, must have and shouldn't have.

Harriet: There's a parcel outside. The postman (>) must have left (leave) it.

Mike: Well, (1) ......(he/ leave) it outside. He isn't supposed to do that.

Someone (2)...... (take) it. Why didn't he ring the bell?

Harriet: He always rings. (3) ...... (you / be) out when he came.

Mike: I haven't been out. So (4) ...... (he / ring) the bell.

#### 4 It may/could/must have been, etc (B-E)

Complete the sentences. The second person agrees with the first. Use might have, couldn't have, etc.

► Matthew: I'm sure the computer didn't make a mistake. That's impossible.

Emma: No, of course the computer couldn't have made a mistake.

1 Mark: I can't see the letter here now. So clearly someone posted it.

Alan: Yes,

2 Natasha: It's possible Emma didn't hear the alarm.

Rachel: Well, I suppose .....

3 Sarah: Henry drove at 100 miles an hour. Don't you think that's dangerous?

Mark: Yes, I do.....

4 Daniel: I just don't believe that Andrew has failed the exam.

Vicky: Andrew? Impossible!

# Modal verbs (Units 44-53)

#### Test 10A

Decide which word is correct.

- 4 I don't think I want to see this film. ~ Oh, I think you...... enjoy it. a) can b) shall c) will d) would
- 5 I'm quite happy to walk. You .......... drive me home. a) don't b) haven't c) mustn't d) needn't
- 6 1 show you the way? ~ Oh, thank you.
  a) Do b) Shall c) Will d) Would
  7. It's lets I think we hetter
- 7 It's late. I think we ..... better go. a) had b) have c) should d) would
- 8 We all tried to push the van, but it..... move. a) can't b) couldn't c) won't d) wouldn't

#### Test 10 B

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ? I won't be able to come to the meeting.
- ? We didn't needn't have watered the garden because it's raining, didn't
- 1 Would you like to be in the team?
- 2 Did people have to bring their own sleeping-bags?
- 3 I could to ski when I was quite young.
- Would you mind for checking these figures?
- 5 We may be go swimming tomorrow.
- 6 1 knew that I would be sorry later.
- 7 If you had fallen, you could have been hurt yourself.
- 8 We're not supposed to use this entrance.
- 9 You don't have to do all the work yourself.
- 10 Anna wasn't be allowed to take photos.

#### Test 10C

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- Perhaps Susan knows the address, (may) Susan may know the address.
- 1 We should be careful, (ought)
- 2 I managed to finish all my work, (able)

- 3 I realize that it was a terrible experience for you. (must)
- 4 It's against the rules for players to have a drink, (allowed)
- 5 The best thing for you to do is sit down, (better)
- 6 The report must be on my desk tomorrow morning, (has)
- 7 It is possible that Joanne did not receive my message, (might)
- 8 It's impossible for Martin to be jogging in this weather, (can't)
- 9 Tessa wants a cup of coffee, (like)
- 10 It was not necessary for Nancy to clean the flat, (didn't)

#### Test 10D

Say what the speaker is doing. After each sentence write one of the phrases from the box.

asking for advice giving an order making a suggestion refusing permission asking permission inviting offering food expressing a wish making a request offering to help

► Will you have a piece of cake?

offering food

- 1 May I sit down?
- 2 You must report to me every day.
- 3 What jobs should I apply for?
- 4 Would you like to spend the day with us?
- 5 Shall I do the washing-up?
- 6 Shall we sit outside?
- 7 I'm sorry. You can't park here.
- 8 Could you fill in this form, please?
- 9 We really must have a nice big party.

#### Test 10 E

Here is some information for visitors to New York City. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Before you travel to the US, you ( $\triangleright$ ) must find out what documents you need. British people do not
(1) to get a visa, but there are different rules for different nationalities. For example, you
(2)need to show that you have enough money with you. But there's one rule you can
be sure about: everyone (3) to show their passport. The roads in New York are very
busy, but don't worry - you (4) get around cheaply and easily by subway. Remember
that you are not (5) to smoke on public transport or in shops. And don't forget either
that you are (6) to tip taxi drivers and waiters. New York is not the most dangerous city
in the US, but you really (7) walk along empty streets at night. And it is safer if you are
(8) to travel around in a group.

# 54 Passive verb forms

#### A Introduction

A passive verb is a form of **be** + a passive participle, e.g. **is baked, was worn.**Some participles are irregular (see page 383).

# B Summary of verb tenses

Present simple:
Present continuous:

Present perfect: Past simple: Past

continuous: Past

perfect:





ACTTVE

We bake the bread here. We are baking the bread. We have baked the bread. We baked the bread yesterday. We were baking the bread. We had baked the bread.

The bread is baked here. The bread is being baked. The bread has been baked. The bread was baked yesterday. The bread was being baked. The bread had been baked.

We form negatives and questions in the same way as in active sentences. *The bread isn't baked in a factory.* The jacket hasn't been worn for years. Where is the bread baked? Has the jacket ever been worn by anyone else?

#### The future and modal verbs in the passive

We use **be** + a passive participle after **will**, **be going to, can, must, have to, should**, etc.

The gates **will be dosed** this evening. This rubbish **should be thrown** away. The machine **has to be repaired**. The news **might be announced** soon. Seats **may not be reserved**. How **can** the problem **be solved**?

ACTIVE PASSIVE

Future: We will bake the bread next.

We are going to bake the bread.

**Modal verb:** We should bake the bread soon.

We **ought to bake** the bread.

The bread will be baked next.

The bread is going to be baked.

The bread **should be baked** soon. The bread **ought to be baked.** 

#### The passive with get

We sometimes use **get** in the passive instead of **be**.

Lots of postmen get bitten by dogs. I'm always getting chosen for the worst jobs.

Last week Laura got moved to another department. Get is informal. We often use it for something happening by accident or unexpectedly.

In negatives and questions in the present simple and past simple, we use a form of **do.**The windows **don't get cleaned** very often. How **did** the painting **get damaged?** 

We also use **get** in these expressions: **get dressed/changed, get washed** (= wash oneself), **get engaged/married/divorced, get started** (= start), **get lost** (= lose one's way). *Emma and Matthew might get married.* Without a map we soon **got lost.** 

#### i The present continuous passive (B)

Look at the pictures and say what is happening. Use these subjects: the car, dinner, a flag, some houses, the seals. Use these verbs: build, feed, raise, repair, serve.











The car is being repaired.

#### 2 Passive verb tenses (B)

Complete the information about Barford Hall. Put in the correct form of these verbs.

(6).....as an arts centre.

#### 3 The future and modal verbs in the passive (C)

A press conference is being held. Put in the correct form of the verbs.

► Reporter: Can this new drug prolong human life?

Professor: Yes, we believe that human life can be prolonged by the drug.

1 Reporter: Are you going to do any more tests on the drug?

Professor: Yes, further tests ...... soon.

2 Reporter: What...... the drug.....?

Professor: It will be called Bio-Meg.

3 Reporter: Can people buy the drug now?

Professor: No, it ......by the public yet.

4 Reporter: Do you think the company should sell this drug?

Professor: Yes, I think Bio-Meg ......to anyone who wants it.

#### 4 The passive with get (D)

Put in get or got and the passive participle of these verbs: break, change, divorce, hurt, lose

- ▶ If we're going out to the theatre, I'd better *get changed*.
- 1 Daniel ...... when he tried to break up a fight.
- 2 I know the way. We won't .....
- 3 You'd better wrap up the glasses, so they don't .....
- 4 They were only married a year before they ......

# 55 Active and passive (1)

#### A What is the sentence about?

Compare these two entries in an encyclopedia.

Alexander Graham Bell A British inventor who went to live in Canada and then the USA. Bell invented the telephone.

#### Telephone

An apparatus with which people can talk to each other over long distances. The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

Look at these two sentences.

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Bell invented the telephone.

The telephone was invented by Bell.

The two sentences have the same meaning, but they are about different things. One sentence is about Bell, and the other is about the telephone. Each sentence begins with the subject. The subject is the starting-point of the sentence, the thing we are talking about. The new information about the subject comes at the end of the sentence.

We say *Bell invented the telephone because* we are talking about **Bell**, and the new information is that he invented **the telephone**.

When the subject is the person or thing doing the action (the agent), then we use an active verb.

We say *The telephone was invented by Bell* because we are talking about **the telephone**, and the new information is that it was invented by **Bell**.

When the subject is not the agent (is not doing the action), then we use a passive verb.

ACTIVE

Bell invented the telephone.

Subject and agent

The subject (Bell) is the agent.

PASSIVE

The telephone was invented by Bell,

Subject

Agent

The subject (the telephone) is not the agent lift the thing that the action is directed at,

#### B The passive and by the police, in 1876, etc.

In a passive sentence, when we want to say who or what did the action, we use by.

On our way home we were stopped by the police. The new hospital will be opened by the Queen. The paper was all blown away by the wind.

We can give other details about the action. For example, we can use a phrase saying when or where something happens.

*The telephone was invented* in 1876. The visitors will be driven to the airport.

The concerts are usually held at the university.

Sometimes there is no phrase after the verb.

A new swimming-pool is being built. All the documents have been destroyed. For more details see Unit 56.

#### 1 Active or passive verb? (A)

Choose the correct verb forms in this news report about a storm.

Millions of pounds' worth of damage ( has caused/has been caused by a storm which (1) swept/was swept across the north of England last night. The River Ribble (2) burst/was burst its banks after heavy rain. Many people (3) rescued/were rescued from the floods by fire-fighters, who (4) received/were received hundreds of calls for help. Wind speeds (5) reached/were reached ninety miles an hour in some places. Roads (6) blocked/were blocked by fallen trees, and electricity lines (7) brought/were brought down, leaving thousands of homes without electricity. 'Everything possible (8) is doing/is being done to get things back to normal,' a spokesman (9) said/was said.

### 2 By the police, etc (B)

In each of these sentences <u>underline</u> who or what is doing the action (the agent).

- ► The traffic was all heading out of town.
- 1 The photo was taken by my brother.
- 2 The water was pouring out of the hole.
- 3 A policeman has been murdered by terrorists.
- 4 We were woken by the alarm.
- 5 The guide led a group of tourists around the castle.
- 6 The dog has bitten several people.

#### 3 Active and passive (A-B)

You are telling a friend some news. Use the notes and complete the second sentence. Sometimes you need to use the active and sometimes the passive.

?	(Past simple: Claire / go / to Florida / last month)
	You remember Claire? She went to Florida last month.
?	(Present perfect: send / our luggage / to Australia)
	Bad news about our luggage. It's been sent to Australia.
1	(Past simple: Claude Jennings / win / the quiz competition)
	Did you hear about the quiz competition? It
2	(Past simple: Mrs Miles / do / a parachute jump / last week)
	You know Mrs Miles? She
3	(Present perfect: a bull / attack / David)
	Have you heard about David? He's
4	(Present continuous: build / the house)
	Trevor and Laura have bought a house. It's still
5	(Present simple: Andrew / like / Jessica)
	Did I tell you about Andrew? He
6	(Present perfect: throw away / your stamp collection)
	Bad news about your stamp collection. It's
7	(Present perfect: Martians / kidnap / my neighbours)
	Did I mention my neighbours? They've
8	(Past simple: five people / see / the ghost)
	Did you hear about the ghost? It

# 56 Active and passive (2)

#### A The passive and the agent

In a passive sentence, we sometimes mention the agent (the person or thing doing the action).

We use by with the agent.

The cheque must be signed by the manager.

The medals were presented by Nelson Mandela.

But we mention the agent only if it is important for the meaning of the sentence.

Sometimes we do not mention it.

1 We do not mention the agent if it does not add any new information.

All our money and passports were stolen. A man was arrested last night. We do not need to say that the money was stolen 'by a thief or that the man was arrested 'by the police'.

2 We do not mention the agent if it is not important.

The streets are cleaned every day. Oil has been discovered at the North Pole. Who discovered the oil is less important than the fact that it is there.

3 It is sometimes difficult to say who the agent is.

This kind of jacket is considered very fashionable these days.

A number of attempts have been made to find the Loch Ness monster.

### B Empty subjects (they, people, etc)

Compare these two sentences.

ACTIVE

**They** clean the streets every day.

The streets are cleaned every day.

The new and important information is <u>how often</u> the streets are cleaned. We are not interested in saying who cleans them. In the active sentence we can use the 'empty subject' **they.** We sometimes use a sentence with an empty subject instead of the passive, especially in conversation.

PASSIVE

We can also use the empty subjects **people**, **you**, **one** and **someone**.

ACTIVE PASSIVE

**People** use this footpath all the time. **You/One** should check the details. **Someone** took my purse.

This footpath is used all the time.
The details should be checked.
My purse was taken.

#### When do we use the passive?

We use the passive in both speech and writing, but it is more common in writing. We see it especially in textbooks and reports. We use it to describe activities in industry, science and technology, and also for official rules.

Bananas are exported to Europe. The liquid is heated to boiling point.

Payment can be made at any post office. Cars left here will be towed away. In these situations, it is often not important to say who is doing the action, or it is difficult to say.

The passive is also often used in news reports.

A number of political prisoners have been released.

Talks will be held in London next week.

### i The passive and the agent (A)

Laura is writing to a friend. This is part of her letter.

Someone broke into our house at the weekend. The burglar took some jewellery. But luckily he didn't do any damage. A very nice young police officer interviewed me. Detectives found some fingerprints, and the police computer identified the burglar. Police have arrested a man and are questioning him. But they haven't found the jewellery.

na	avent io	und the Jewellery.	
L M L M L M	aura: felanie: aura: felanie: aura:	Our house ( ) was broken into at the weeken Oh no!  Some jewellery (1)  But luckily no damage (2)  Did the police come and see you?  Yes, they did. I (3)  I don't suppose they know who did it.  Well, amazingly they do. Some (4)	
N		and the (5) A man (6) Wonderful. There's only one problem. The (8)	
2 A	ctive o	r passive sentence? (A)	
V U I n	Vrite a p  Jse a phr  a Bel  notor car  1. but /  2. a Ger  comm	haragraph from the notes about the first motor rase with by only if it adds information.  Igian called Etienne Lenoir / make / the first  Lenoir / not produce / many cars / for sale rman called Karl Benz / start / mercial production  It / now / see / Benz / as the father / of the	car. Some sentences are active and some are passive.  The first motor car was made by a Belgian called Etienne Lenoir.  But Lenoir Commercial  Benz
E	Empty s	subjects (B)	
)	Daniel: Vicky:	What? You mean they've increased the bus five: Bicycles should be used for short journeys,	
2	Emma:	A new source of energy has been discovered	
	Daniel: Rachel: Vicky: David: Tom:	, ,	(they)
5	Vicky: Emma	Why isn't litter put in the bin? (people)	

# 57 Special passive structures

# A I was given ...

Look at these sentences.

Henry gave some flowers to Claire. Henry gave Claire some flowers. An active sentence with a verb like **give** can have two different structures (see Unit 3).

If we use a passive sentence, either some flowers or Claire can be the subject.

Some flowers were given to Claire.
This is about the flowers, and it tells us who received them.

*Claire* was given some flowers.

This is about Claire, and it tells us what she received.

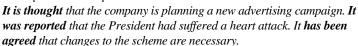
It is quite normal in English for a person to be the subject in a passive sentence like the one about Claire. *Mike* was sent tickets for the concert. *My wife* is paid more than 1 am. *Andrew* has been awarded a prize for his essay.

We can use the following verbs in this structure: allow, award, fed, give, grant, hand, leave (in a will), lend offer, owe, pay, promise, sell, send, show, teach

#### B It is said that...

It is said that Henry is in love with Claire. (= People say that Henry is in love with Claire.)

We can use the structure **it** + passive verb + clause with verbs of reporting. We use this structure when we cannot say or do not need to say who the speaker is, for example in news reports.



Here are some verbs we can use in this structure: agree, allege, announce, assure, believe, consider, decide expect, explain, hope, know, report, say, suggest, suppose, think, understand

#### He is said to ...

We can also use subject + passive verb + to-infinitive.

Henry is said to be in love with Claire.

This structure is also used in news reports.

*United were expected to win.* (= People expected that they would win.)

The company is thought to be planning a new advertising campaign.

(= Someone thinks that it is planning a new advertising campaign.)

The President was reported to have suffered a heart attack.

(= Someone reported that he had suffered a heart attack.)

We can use the following verbs in this structure: believe, expect, find, know, report, say, think, understand

We often use **be supposed to** for things that people say.

/ might watch this programme. It's **supposed to be** very funny.



## 1 I was given ... (A)

Zedco managers are writing a report saying how well the company looks after its employees. Write sentences from the notes. Put the important <u>underlined</u> information at the end of the sentence.

- ? <u>useful work skills</u> / they are taught to our staff Our staff arc taught useful work skills.
- ? <u>people with initiative</u> / they are given opportunities *Opportunities are given to people with initiative.*
- 1 special training / it is given to new employees
- 2 staff who perform well / they are given extra payments
- 3 company shares / they are offered to most employees
- 4 six weeks' holiday / this is allowed to all Zedco staff
- 5 women who leave to have children / they are paid a full salary

# 2 It is said that... (B)

Report these rumours. Instead of the active (e.g.  $People\ say\dots$ ) use the passive (e.g.  $It\ is\ said\ that\dots$ ).

▶ People say this.

The quiz champion Claude Jennings has lost his memory. It is said that the quiz champion Claude jenniiKS has lost his memory.

Everyone expects this.

The soap opera 'Round the Comer' will end next year.

It is

2 Journalists suppose so.

The footballer Wayne Johnson is earning £1o million a year.

3 Lots of people believe this.

The Prime Minister and his wife have separated.

#### 3 He is said to... (C)

Now report the rumours in Exercise 2 like this.

- ► The quiz champion Claude Jennings is said to have lost his memory.
- 1 The soap opera 'Round the Corner'....

# 58 Have something done

#### A Introduction

Compare these situations.



Claire decorated the room. (She did the work herself.)



Claire had the room decorated. (A decorator did the work.)

We can use **have** in a passive structure. *Claire had the room decorated* means that she arranged for a decorator to do it for her as a professional service.

### B Form

Look at these examples

	HAVE	SOMETHING	DONE	
You should	have	your car	serviced	regularly.
Mark usually	has	his suits	cleaned	at Superclean
We	had	the television	repaired	only last year,
You've	had	your hair	cut.	
Our neighbours are	having	a new garage	built.	
Is Melanie	having	a new cooker	installed?	

Note that we can use the perfect or the continuous (have had, are having).

In negatives and questions in simple tenses, we use a form of **do**. Mark **doesn't have** his suits cleaned at Fastclean. We **didn't have** new windows put in because it was too expensive. **Do** you **have** your car serviced regularly? Where **did** you **have** your hair cut?

## C Get something done

We can also use **get something done.** 

We must **have** another key **made**. OR We must **get** another key **made**. The sentences have the same meaning, but **get** is more informal than **have**.

Here are some more examples with get.

Laura got her shoes repaired. We're getting the carpet cleaned.

Where did you get your hair cut? Do you get your heating checked every year?

# D Have meaning 'experience'

We can use **have** in this structure with the meaning 'experience something', often something unpleasant. We **had** all our money **stolen**. The car **had** its mirror **pulled** off.

# 1 Have something done (A-B)

Look at the pictures and say what people are doing or what they did. Use these phrases: her photo, his windows, his car, her eyes, his hair Use these verbs: dean, cut, repair, take, test











▶	At the moment Trevor is having his hair cut.
1	Last week Mike.
2	At the moment Melissa
3	Yesterday David
	At the moment Rachal

# 2 Have something done (A-B)

Read about each situation and write sentences with have something done.

- ► Melanie is paying the man who has repaired her bicycle. *Melanie has had her bicycle repaired.*
- 1 David went to the hospital. A nurse bandaged his arm.
- 2 Daniel is going to the dentist. She's going to fill his tooth.
- 3 Laura is walking around town while her photos are being developed.

# 3 Get something done (C)

Look again at Exercise 2. The jobs are all done now. Complete the questions using get.

▶	Mike: Where d	lid you get your bicycle repaired, Me	elanie ?	
1	Harriet: Why			 
2	Emma: Where			 
3	Sarah: Where			 

# 4 Have meaning 'experience' (D)

Say what happened to these people.

- ► Claire (whose luggage was searched in customs) Claire had her luggage searched in customs.
- 1 Tom (whose car was stolen from outside his house)
- 2 Rita (whose rent was increased by ten per cent)
- 3 David (whose electricity has been cut off)

# 59 To be done and being done



Compare the active and passive.

ACTIVE PASSIVE

to-infinitive: / ought to meet Sarah at the airport. I hope to be met at the airport. ing-form: / insist on meeting you at the airport. I love being met at the airport. (I meet people.) (People meet me.)

Here are some more examples.

/ want to play volleyball. I hope to be chosen for the team.

The minister agreed to answer questions. He agreed to be interviewed on television.

Why did Tom keep **making** jokes about me? I don't enjoy **being laughed** at.

You say you remember telling me the news. But I certainly can't remember being told.

An ing-form sometimes comes after a preposition.

The postman complained **about being attacked** by Nick's dog.

Famous people get tired of **being recognized** everywhere they go.

#### B Active forms with a passive meaning

The active ing-form after **need** has a passive meaning.

The bicycle needs oiling. (= The bicycle needs to be oiled.)

The windows **need cleaning**. (= The windows need **to be cleaned**.) We cannot use the passive ing-form here.

NOT The-bicycle needs being oiled.

We sometimes use an active to-infinitive when we talk about a job to be done.

I've got some letters to write today. We've got this bill to pay.

Here we use the active **(to write)** because the subject of the sentence (I) is the person who has to do the job. But if the subject is not a person, then we use the passive infinitive.

The letters are **to be written** today. The bill is **to be paid** without delay.

All this mess has to be cleared away. The goods have to be shipped.

We can use the structure be + to-infinitive to give an order.

The matter is to be given top priority. You're not to drive too fast.

After the subject there, we can use either an active or a passive to-infinitive.

There are some letters to write/to be written today. There's a bill to pay/to be paid.

62 Verb + active to-infinitive or ing-form 73 Preposition + active ing-form

#### i Passive forms (A)

/ am asking the government

to allow me into Britain. I am worried about them refusing me entry. I am afraid of your officials sending me away. I don't want you to misunderstand me. I hope someone in Britain will offer me a job. I don't mind them paying me low wages at first. I am willing for my employer to re-train me. I would like Britain to give me a chance.

Report what the man says. Use the passive to-infinitive or ing-form.

- ? He's asking to be allowed into Britain.
- ? He's worried about being refused entry.



### 2 Active and passive forms (A)

TV reporter Kitty Beamish is interviewing some workers who are protesting about not being paid enough. Complete the workers' statements. Put in an active or passive to-infinitive or ing-form. ▶ We want to be paid (pay) better wages.

1	We don't er	njoy(use) as cheap labour.
2	We're tired	of (work) for low wages.
3	We expect	(treat) like human beings.
4	Wedon'twa	ant (give) up all our rights.
5	We hope	(invite) to a meeting with the management.

.....(take) seriously.

#### 3 Active and passive forms (A-B)

6 We insist on

Put in an active or passive to-infinitive or ing-form.

Andrew: I don't remember (10)...... (tell) when the project was due in.

Jessica: Why? Haven't you done it yet? Andrew: Oh, yes. I handed it in ages ago.

# The passive (Units 54-59)

#### Test 11A

Rewrite these sentences beginning with the <u>underlined</u> words.

- ► Thieves robbed <u>a woman</u>.
  - A woman was robbed.
- 1 They may ban the film.
- 2 They offered Nancy a pay increase.
- 3 We need to correct the mistakes.
- 4 Someone reported that the situation was under control.
- 5 They are testing the new drug.
- 6 We haven't used the machine for ages.

#### Test 11B

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

## Test 11C

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► We have to test these products, (be) These products have to be tested.
- 1 Pavarotti sang the song, (by)
- 2 Nigel's passport was stolen, (had)
- 3 They pay doctors a lot of money, (are)
- 4 I hope they'll interview me for the job. (to)
- 5 Someone was cleaning the floor, (being)
- 6 A mechanic is repairing Judy's car. (having)

- 7 Tessa lost her way. (got)
- 8 Everyone agreed that the plan should go ahead, (it)
- 9 When did they decorate your kitchen? (get)
- 10 They say exercise is good for you. (be)

#### Test 11D

Which of the two sentences follows on best?

- ► There's going to be a big art exhibition.
  - a) A lot of visitors will be attracted to it. b) It will attract a lot of visitors.
- 1 Our neighbours have got a cat and a dog.
  - a)A lot of mice are caught by the cat. b) The cat catches a lot of mice.
- 2 Last night Martin dreamt he saw his dead grandmother.
  - a) A white dress was being worn by the ghost, b) The ghost was wearing a white dress.
- 3 We've bought a new computer.
  - a) It can do the job much more quickly, b) The job can be done much more quickly.
- 4 My grandfather is very ill.
  - a) He's being looked after in the local hospital, b) The local hospital is looking after him.
- 5 We've completed the experiment.
  - a) The newspapers will publish the results, b) The results will be published in the newspapers.

#### Test 11E

Each of these sentences is incorrect. Write the correct sentence.

► Those nice glasses got break.

Those nice glasses got broken.

- 1 The story was written Agatha Christie.
- 2 Baseball do play at this stadium.
- 3 This shirt needs iron.
- 4 I got cut my haif yesterday.
- 5 It believes that there is-going to be a war.
- 6 My parents divorce- themselves last year.
- 7 I've got a report to be written.
- 8 To the winner was given a prize.
- 9 This man on TV supposes to be the tallest person in the world.

# 60 Verb + to-infinitive

#### A Introduction



After some verbs we can use a to-infinitive, e.g. **decided to have, arranged to play.** Here are some more examples.

/ expect to get my money back.
Sarah agreed to work late at the office.
We cant afford to go to Australia.
Are you hoping to get a job in London?
Melanie has offered to help us when we move house.
We can put not before the to-infinitive.

Some people just choose **not to get** married. At least I managed **not to lose** my temper.

With some other verbs we use an ing-form, not a toinfinitive (see Units 61 and 62). *Mark has finished playing golf.* 

## B Seem and appear

We can use a to-infinitive after seem and appear.

Sarah **seemed to** be quite annoyed. The computer program **appears to have** a bug in it. The person I spoke to **didn't seem to know** anything about the company's products.

We can use a continuous or a perfect to-infinitive.

Continuous: Andrew seems to be studying even harder these days.

Perfect: David appeared to have hurt himself.

# C Tend, manage and fail

We use **tend to** for things that usually happen.

We **tend to get** up later at weekends. (= We usually get up later at weekends.)

We use **manage to** for being able to do something.

*Luckily I managed to find my way here all right.* (= I was able to find my way.)

We use fail to for things that don't happen.

David failed to pay his electricity bill. (= David didn't pay his electricity bill.)

## D He promised to go, his promise to go

Some nouns can come before a to-infinitive. Compare these sentences. Verb

+ to-infinitive: Mark promised to go shopping.

But then he arranged to play golf. Noun + to-

infinitive: Mark forgot about his promise to go shopping.

Sarah found out about his arrangement to play golf.

Here are some nouns we can use: agreement, arrangement, decision, demand, desire, failure, offer, plan, promise, refusal, tendency, threat

61-62 Verb + ing-form 65 Verb + object + to-infinitive

#### 1 Verb + to-infinitive (A)

Say what each speaker did. Use these verbs before a to-infinitive: decide, demand, offer, promise, threaten ► Henry: I really must speak to the manager. Henry demanded to speak to the manager.

- 1 Trevor: I'll put the shelves up soon, I promise.
- 2 Claire: OK, I'll buy both the dresses.
- 3 Melanie: I'll cook the meal if you like.
- 4 Tom: If you don't control that dog, Nick, I'll shoot it.

#### 2 Seem (B)

Complete the answers using seem and a to-infinitive. (Some

of the to-infinitives may be continuous or perfect.)

? Vicky: Have Matthew and Emma got over their quarrel?

Daniel: I think so. They seem to have got over it.

? Rita: Is Claire in love with Henry?

Sarah: Probably not. She doesn't seem to be in love with him.

1 Tom: Do Mike and Harriet really believe there's life on Mars?

2 Victor: Has Ilona's English improved?

Emma: Yes, quite a lot.

3 David: Does Rita like football?

4 Natasha: Is Daniel working hard, do you think?

Rachel: Yes, I think so hard.

5 Sarah: Has Trevor made a good job of those shelves?

Laura: Not really. a very good job of them.

#### 3 Verb + to-infinitive (A-D)

Put in the to-infinitive form. (Some may be continuous or perfect.)

Use these verbs: come, find, hang, have, invite, leave, take Harriet:

Hello, Nick. You managed (▶) to find your way then? Nick: Yes,

in the end. It's a bit complicated, isn't it?

Harriet: Well you're here now. Do you want (1) ......your coat up?

Mick: Thank you.

Harriet: I'm glad you decided (2) ..... to our party.

Everyone seems (3) ...... a good time.

We tend (4) ......lots of people to our parties.

Nick: Is Tom here?

Harriet: No, he couldn't come. He'd already made an arrangement

(5) somebody somewhere in his taxi.

Nick: And Rita?

Harriet: Er, she was here, but she appears (6).....early. I don't know where she's gone. She was with someone.

# 61 Verb + ing-form



After some verbs we can use an ing-form, for example, **suggested going, enjoy putting.**/ usually **avoid driving** in the rush hour. We'll have to **practise throwing** the ball into the basket.

Have you **finished typing** that letter? Nick says he's **given up smoking**. We can sometimes put **not** before an ing-form.

Imagine **not having** anywhere to live.

With some other verbs we use a to-infinitive, not an ing-form (see Units 60 and 62). *I* don't want to put up a tent in the rain.

#### **B** Mind

We use **mind** + an ing-form mostly in negative statements and in questions. Andrew doesn't **mind having** lots of work. He quite likes it. (= He doesn't dislike having lots of work.) Do you **mind waiting** a moment? ~ No, that's OK. I wouldn't **mind travelling** around the world some time.

#### C Verbs with can't

Note **can't** or **couldn't** with **help, resist, face** and **stand.** We can put an ing-form after these verbs. / think Tom is very amusing. I **can't help laughing** at his funny stories. The dress was so beautiful that Claire **couldn't resist buying** it. Let's eat out, shall we? I **can't face cooking** a meal today. I never go in the bank if it's busy. I **can't stand waiting** in a queue.

## D Keep (on) and carry on

We use **keep** or **keep** on + an ing-form to talk about something continuing, or when it happens again and again.

Just keep stirring the mixture until it boils. Nick keeps ringing Rita and asking her out. The runners didn't mind the rain. They just kept on running.

For **continue** see Unit 63C.

Carry **on** means something continuing.

Just carry on stirring the mixture until it boils.

65D Verb + object + ing-form

#### 1 Verb + ing-form (A)

Answer the questions using the notes in brackets. ► Mike: Is your car working now? (they / not / finish / repair / it) You: No, they

haven't finished repairing it yet.

1 Laura: Have you done the crossword? (I / give up / try)

You: No,....

2 Daniel: There's a story here in the paper about a 110-year-old man. (1 / can / not / imagine / be)

You: Good Lord. .....so old.

Tom: Do you like football? (I / enjoy / watch / it / on TV)

You Well....

4 Rachel: Whose idea was it to invite all these people? (suggest / have / a party)

You: I'm not sure. Someone.....

#### 2 Verbs with can't (C)

Use three words from the table to complete each sentence.

1	2	3
can't couldn't	face help resist stand	doing feeling having lying noticing

- Rita said she was OK, but I couldn't help noticing how upset she looked.
- 1 I hate holidays by the sea. I...... on a beach all day.
- 2 [feel really full. I'm afraid I ......a pudding with my lunch.

#### 3 Verb + ing-form (A-D)

Some friends have had a meal together in a restaurant. Put in the ing-forms.

Use these verbs: change, discuss, eat, get, miss, ring, try, wait, walk

Vicky: Shall we go then?

Rachel: Daniel hasn't finished (▶) eating yet.
Daniel: It's OK. It's just a piece of chocolate.

Matthew: Chocolate? After that enormous meal?

Daniel: I know. I've eaten too much. When I find something new on the menu,

I just can't resist (1).....it.

Rachel: How are we getting home?

Vicky: I don't mind (2) ...... I feel like some fresh air.

Rachel: You're crazy. It's miles. And we've just eaten.

Matthew: I suggest (3)...... for a taxi. It'll save (4)...... around for a bus.

Emma: Good idea. I couldn't face (5)..... cold again after being in the warm all evening.

Rachel: Yes, the bus journey is too complicated. It involves (6)..... buses in the centre.

We don't want to risk (7)...... a bus and having to wait half an hour.

Daniel: Or we could take a taxi to the bus station and then get a bus from there.

Matthew: Well, you can carry on (8)...... the problem, but I'm going to ring for a taxi.

# 62 Verb + to-infinitive or verb + ing-form?

#### Introduction

Some verbs are followed by a to-infinitive, and some by an ing-form.

VERB + TO-INFINITIVE (Unit 60)

VERB + ING-FORM (Unit 61)

Harriet decided to have a party.

Harriet suggested having a party.

Decide takes a to-infinitive.

Suggest takes an ing-form.

A few verbs take either a to-infinitive or an ing-form (see Units 63-64). Laura started to paint/started painting a picture.

### **B** To-infinitive or ing-form?

#### + TO-INFINITIVE

These verbs are followed by a to-infinitive. agree, aim, appear (see 60B), arrange, ask, attempt, beg, can't afford, can't wait (see C), choose, claim, decide, demand, desire, expect, fail (see 60C), guarantee, happen (see D), help (see 69C), hope, manage (see 60C), offer, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, prove (see D), refuse, seem (see 60B), tend (see 60C), threaten, turn out (see D), undertake, want, wish

#### + ING-FORM

These verbs are followed by an ing-form.

admit, avoid, cant face (see 61C), can't help (see 61C), can't resist (see 61C), can't stand (see 61C), carry on (see 61U), consider, delay, deny, detest, dislike, enjoy, excuse, fancy (see C), finish, give up, imagine, involve, justify, keep {on}, (see 61D), mention, mind (see 61B), postpone, practise, put off, resent, risk, save, suggest, tolerate

## C Can't wait and fancy

If you can't wait to do something, you are eager to do it.

/ can't wait to see the photos you took. (= I am eager/impatient to see the photos.)

If you fancy doing something, you want to do it.

Do you fancy going out for a meal? (= Would you like to go out for a meal?) Fancy is informal.

### D Happen, turn out and prove

We use **prove to** or **turn out to** when experience shows what something is like. *In* the end our forecast **proved to be** correct. Finding Harriet's house **turned out to be** more difficult than Nick had expected.

Note the meaning of happen to.

*I happened to see Sarah in town.* (= I saw Sarah by chance in town.)

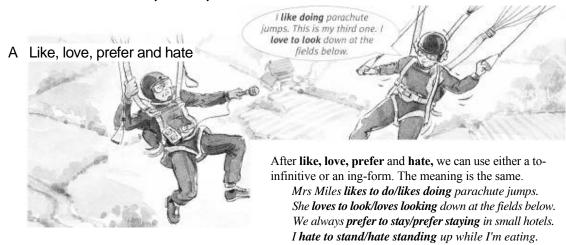
#### E Two forms together

We can sometimes use more than one to-infinitive or ing-form together. The government decided to refuse to give in to the terrorists. I want to avoid hurting anyone's feelings. The man denied threatening to kill a policeman.

65 Verb + object + to-infinitive or ing-form 70 Verb + preposition + ing-form

i To-	infinitive or ing-form? (A-C)
Con	mplete the conversation. Put in a to-infinitive or ing-form.
Ma	atthew: Are we going to have a holiday this year?
Na	tasha: Didn't we all decide (▶) to spend (spend) our holidays on a Greek island?
Ma	atthew: Lovely. I enjoy ( $\triangleright$ ) lying (lie) on the beach.
	I might manage (1)(get) a sun tan.
Da	niel: I'd love a holiday. I can't wait (2)(leave) this place behind.
Em	nma: I don't fancy (3) (stay) in one place all the time.
	I really dislike (4)(sit) on the beach all day.
Na	tasha: Well, I don't mind (5) (tour) around somewhere.
En	nma: Matthew, you promised (6)(go) to Scotland with me.
	We were planning (7) (hire) a car.
	atthew: Scotland? Are you sure? But I couldn't face (8)
	sica: I'm afraid I can't afford (9) (spend) too much money.
An	drew: And I can't justify (10) (take) all that time off from my studies.
2 To	-infinitive or ing-form? (A-D)
	omplete this article from a magazine. Put in the to-infinitive or ing-form of these verbs:
	cept, argue, be, find, have, insist, lose, plug, repair, say, take, wait
del Ar alv Th fir m de in	ways happen, unfortunately. If the thing doesn't work, you should take it straight back to the shop. If you lay(1)
3 Tv	vo forms together (E)
	/hat might you say in these situations? Write a sentence with both a to-infinitive and an ing-form.
	Your decision to change your holiday arrangements might upset Vicky. You won't risk that. You don't
	want to. What do you say to Rachel?
	I don't want to risk upsetting Vicky.
1	You and Melanie want to complain about your meal in a restaurant. You need to see the manager.
	Melanie won't ask, but you don't mind. What do you say to her?
2	Matthew doesn't like the idea of going to Scotland. But he promised. He admitted it. What do you tell Emma?
3	your friends?
	Just as Larrived

# 63 Like, start, etc



But compare these two meanings of the verb like.

LIKE TO DO

**Like** takes a to-infinitive when it means that we prefer to do something even though we may not enjoy it.

I like to check my work carefully before I hand it in.

LIKE DOING

**Like** usually takes an ing-form when we use it to talk about hobbies and interests,

Claire likes skiing.

I don't like swimming much,

## B Would like, etc

After would like, would love, would prefer and would hate,

we use a to-infinitive but not usually an ing-form.

I'd like to do a parachute jump one day. My sister would love to work as an artist.

Mark would prefer to drive rather than take the train. I'm glad I live here. I'd hate to live in a big tit):

Compare would like and like.

I'd like to lie on the beach today. It's too hot to do anything else.

**I'd like** means 'I want', but it is more polite (see Unit 52B).

I like lying on the beach. I always spend my holidays sunbathing.

I like means the same as 'I enjoy',

# C Start, intend, etc

We can use either a to-infinitive or an ing-form after these verbs: begin, bother, continue, intend, propose (= intend), start

People began to leave/began leaving the theatre before the end of the play. Rachel didn't bother to do/bother doing the washing-up. Do you intend to make/intend making a complaint? The meaning is the same.

We do not usually have two ing-forms together.

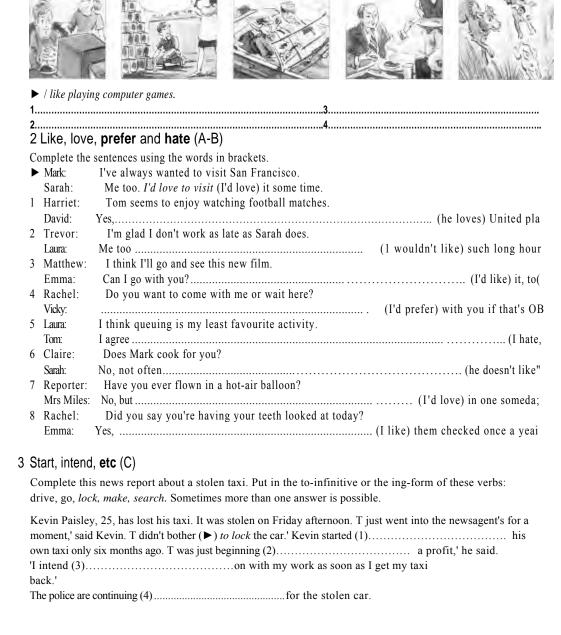
It was starting to get dark, NOT It was starting getting dark.

## 1 Like and would like (A-B)

Write in the words. Begin I like ... or I'd like ...

Use these verbs: buy, chase, drive, play, see

Use these objects: computer games, rabbits, the manager, this car, this tin



# 64 Remember, regret, try, etc

With some verbs, the choice of a to-infinitive or an ing-form depends on the meaning

## A Remember and forget

/ must remember to post this letter today. It's important. The clothes are still dirty because I forgot to

switch on the machine.

We use **remember/forget to do** for necessary actions. The remembering is before the action.

#### B Regret

We regret to inform you that we are not taking on any new staff at present. Regret to do something means to be sorry for something you are doing, e.g. giving bad news.

# C Try

I'm trying to run this computer program. Try to do something means to attempt something, to do your best.

#### D Stop

An old man walking along the road stopped to talk to us. Stop to do something means to stop so that you can do it.

#### E Mean

I think Nick meant to break that glass. It didn't look like an accident. Mean to do something is the same as to intend to do it.

#### F Go on

The teacher introduced herself and went on to explain about the course.

**Go on to do something** means to do something else, to do the next thing.

#### G Need

I need to clean my shoes.

This means that I must clean my shoes, I have to clean them.

I can **remember posting** the letter. I posted it on Friday morning. I'll never **forget flying** over the Grand Canyon. It was wonderful.

We use **remember/forget doing** for memories of the past. The action is before the remembering.

I regret spending all that money. I've got none left.

**Regret doing something** means to be sorry because of something that happened in the past.

I tried clicking on the box, but it doesn't work. Try doing something means to do something which might solve a problem.

There's too much noise. Can you all stop talking, please?

**Stop doing something** means to end an action, to finish doing it.

I'm applying for a visa. It means filling in this form.

**Means doing something** expresses the idea of one thing resulting in another.

The teacher told everyone to be quiet, but they just went on talking.

**Go on doing something** means to continue doing it.

My shoes **need cleaning**. This means that my shoes need to be cleaned (see Unit 59B).

## 1 Remember and forget (A)

Put in the to-infinitive or the ing-form of the verbs.

Laura: Did you remember (►) to pick (pick) up those photos today?

Trevor: What photos?

Laura: Oh, no. I can remember (1) ......(mention) it to you only this morning.

Trevor: I can't remember (2) ...... (agree) to pick up some photos.

Laura: Well, don't forget (3)......(call) at the shop for them tomorrow. You've got a

terrible memory. Yesterday you forgot (4)................................ (lock) the door.

I can clearly remember (6)................................... (look) for my keys. They were in my pocket.

Laura: You ought to write notes to yourself to remind you.

## 2 Remember, regret, try, etc (A-G)

Put in the to-infinitive or the ing-form of the verbs.

## 3 Remember, regret, try, etc (A-G)

Write each pair of sentences as one. Use a to-infinitive or an ing-form.

- ? Trevor didn't ring Laura. He forgot.
  - Trevor forgot to ring Laura.
- ? Tom and Nick had been playing cards for hours. But they went on with the game. *Tom and Nick went on playing cards*.
- 1 Harriet didn't think she could move the piano. She didn't even try.
- 2 Mike once saw a spaceship. He'll never forget it.
- 3 What about painting the walls? They need it.
- 4 Natasha was unkind to Jessica. But she didn't mean it.
- 5 Andrew was studying. He went on through the night.
- 6 When Mark was driving, he needed to make a phone call. So he stopped.

# TEST 12 Verb + to-infinitive or ing-form (Units 60-64)

# Test 12A

C	omplete the conversations. Put in a to-infinitive or an ing-form.			
•	A: I hear you sometimes sail to France in your boat.			
	B:	That's right. I really enjoy sailing.		
1	A:	Are you going to organize our trip?		
	B:	Yes, of course. I've agreedit.		
2	A:	You wear a uniform at work, don't you?		
	B:	Yes, 1 have to, although I dislike it.		
3	A:	Do you think they'll approve the plan?		
	B:	Yes, I'm quite sure they'll decide it.		
4	A:	What time will you be back?		
	B:	Oh, I expect back some time around nine.		
5	A:	Did I remind you about the dinner tonight?		
	B:	Yes, thank you. You keepme.		
6	A:	Was your decision the right one, do you think?		
	B:	Yes, luckily. In the end it proved the best thing for everyone.		
7	A:	Do you still work at the post office?		
	B:	No, I gave up there last year.		
8	A:	Have ICM bought the company?		
	B:	Well, they've offeredit.		
9	A:	I'm sorry you had to wait all that time.		
	B:	Oh, it's all right. I didn't mind		
Test	12B			
Μ	ake se	entences from the notes.		
	Tessa / want / buy / a new coat / soon			
		sa wants to buy a new coat soon.		
1	we	/ must / avoid / waste / so much time		
2	son	netimes / a country / refuse / take part / in the Olympics		
3	I / 1	ike / see / the Rocky Mountains / some day		
4	Ι/10	nean / give / Judy / a nice welcome / yesterday		
4	1 / 1	nean / give / Judy / a nice welcome / yesterday		
5	I/a	lways / like / see / my doctor / once a year		
6	the buses / usually / stop / run / before midnight			

7 I / can't face / get up / at five / tomorrow

10 my father / seem / get / better / now

last year / we / make / an agreement / work / together

yesterday / you / promise / carry on / shoot / the film

#### Test 12C

Read the conversation and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. Anna: I hear you're preparing to (▶) leave for Australia. That's right. And I'm really looking forward to it. I can't (1)...... to get there. I'm hoping (2)..... see all my friends while I'm there. I'm going to enjoy (3)..... them again after so long. Anna: Martin and I (4)..... like to go away, but we can't manage it this year. There's just one problem that I (5)...... to sort out. My tickets haven't arrived. I've tried to ring the travel agency, but I can't get through. I'm beginning to regret (6)...... going there myself to pick them up. Anna: I expect they'll be here tomorrow. Lisa: That's really leaving it to the last minute. It's such a worry. Anna: Well, I know you. You can't (7)..... worrying, can you? Lisa: No, I can't. I hope this holiday isn't going to turn out (8)..... be a disaster. Anna: Of course it isn't. Just keep (9)...... trying to get through.

#### Test 12 D

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

- ► The man kept-ask <del>us for money</del>. The man kept asking us for money.
- 1 We've finished to-decorate-the flat.
- 2 I regret say what I-did.
- 3 Tessa decided go not to work
- 4 Do-you mind help me?
- 5 I'm beginning getting worried.
- 6 I cant afford buy a new ear.
- 7 I hope to avoid to make things worse
- 8 Peter seems gone-away-already.

#### Test 12E

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► I wish I hadn't sold my bike, (regret) I regret selling my bike.
- 1 The children were eager to see their presents, (wait)
- 2 I hate to get up in the dark, (stand)
- 3 By chance I saw your brother yesterday, (happened)
- 4 The shop usually opens ten minutes late, (tends)
- 5 Would you like to go for a walk? (fancy)
- 6 The police continued to watch the house, (carried)
- 7 Seeing Nelson Mandela will always stay in my memory, (forget)

# 65 Verb + object + to-infinitive or ing-form

#### A Introduction

Customer: None of the things I ordered have arrived. They're three

weeks late. I expect the goods to arrive on time.

Mark: I'm sorry we've kept you waiting so long. Can I find out

what the problem is and then ring you back?

Some verbs can take an object + a to-infinitive, and some take an object + an ing-form.

VERB OBJECT

I expect the goods to arrive on time.

I'm sorry we've kept you waiting so long.



## B Verb + object + to-infinitive

We asked the doorman to let us in. Nick couldn't persuade Rita to go out with him.

The hot weather has caused ice-cream sales to increase.

It took ages to download the pictures from the Internet.

I didn't mean my suggestion to be taken seriously. (See Unit 59A.)

Here are some verbs we can use in this structure: **advise**, **allow**, **ask**, **beg**, **cause**, **enable**, **encourage**, **expect**, **force**, **help** (see Unit 69C), **intend**, **invite**, **mean** (= intend), **order**, **recommend**, **remind**, **take** (time), teach, **tell**, **warn** 

#### C Want + object + to-infinitive

We can also use an object + a to-infinitive after want, (would) like, (would) love, (would) prefer and (would) hate.

Tom wants United to win. We'd hate the house to be left empty. We can use this structure to give an order (see Unit 50B).

*I want everyone to come here. I'd like you to listen carefully.* We cannot normally use a that-clause. NOT *I want that everyone comes here.* 

#### D Verb + object + ing-form

Andrew is so serious. I can't imagine him having a good time.

Do you **remember Laura taking** our photo? A new law has **stopped traffic going** into the city centre.

Here are some verbs we can use in this structure: **dislike, imagine, involve, keep, mind, prevent** (see Unit 70C), **remember, risk, stop** (see Unit 70C)

#### E Advise, allow, encourage and recommend

We can use these verbs with an ing-form or with an object + a to-infinitive.

+ [NG-FORM

+ OBJECT + TO-INFINITIVE

They **allow fishing** here.

They allow people to fish here.

I wouldn't **recommend walking** home alone.

I wouldn't recommend you to walk home aloni.

We do not use **suggest** + an object + a to-infinitive.

I suggested to Nick (that) he should leave, NOT I-suggested Niek-to4eave.

# 1 Verb + object + to-infinitive (B) Report what people said. Use the verbs in brackets. ▶ Police to motorists: Take special care, (warn) The police warned motorists to take special care. 1 Guy to Kitty: Would you like to come on my chat show? (invite) 2 Sarah to Mark: Don't forget to get the theatre tickets, (remind) 3 Dentist to Daniel: You should give up eating sweets, (tell) 4 Police to gunman: Come out with your hands up. (order) 2 Want and would like (C) Complete the sentences using would like or don't/doesn't want. ▶ Mike won't wear a tie. Harriet is annoyed. She would like him to wear a tie because they're going to a concert. 1 Mrs Miles is going to do a parachute jump, but her son and daughter don't like the idea. They .....because they think it's dangerous. 2 Henry is falling in love with Claire, but she's worried about this. She .....because she doesn't find him attractive. 3 Natasha may not go on holiday with her friends. They ......because she's always good fun to be with. 3 Verb + object + to-infinitive or ing-form (B, D) Kitty Beamish is reporting what people have said to her. She combines the two sentences into one. ? 'The lorry skidded. The icy road caused it.' The icy road caused the lorry to skid. ? 'The workers might go on strike. The company can't risk that.' The company can't risk the workers going on strike. 1 'The suspects might leave the country. The police must stop that.' 2 'Congress opposed him. The President didn't expect that.' 3 'The hostages lay down. The terrorists forced them.' 4 'The pound is falling in value. The government doesn't mind that.' 4 Advise, allow, etc (E) Complete this paragraph from a guidebook to London. Use the to-infinitive or the ing-form. We wouldn't recommend (▶) *driving* (drive) into London in the rush hour. We'dadvise you(1) ..... (travel) by train. We'd recommend (2) ......(buy) a special saver ticket, which is cheaper than the full fare.

But the railway companies don't allow you (3)...... (use) saver tickets before ten o'clock.

This is to encourage people (4)..... (take) a later train, which will be less busy.

# 66 Question word + to-infinitive



## B Structures with what to do, where to go, etc

Before the question word we can use a verb such as **ask**, **decide**, **discover**, **discuss**, **explain**, **find out**, **forget**, **know**, **learn**, **remember**, **say**, **think**, **understand**, **wonder**.

It was a real problem. I couldn't think what to do.

We were wondering where to park the car.

Matthew wants to know how to work the computer.

Have Trevor and Laura decided when to have their barbecue?

Sometimes there is a verb + object before the question word. In this structure we can use **advise**, **ask**, **show**, **teach** and **tell**.

Tom **showed me how to change** a wheel.

The guide didn't tell the tourists when to be back at the coach.

Before the question word we can also use the adjectives **clear**, **obvious** and **sure** and the expressions **have an idea** and **make up your mind**.

I wasn't sure who to ask for help. Claire doesn't have much idea how to cook.

A preposition (e.g. of) can come before the question word.

There's the question of who to invite to the reception. You need to be informed about what to do in an emergency.

### C Why, what, whose, which and whether

We cannot use **why** before a to-infinitive.

No one could explain why we had to wait, NOT-No one could explain why to wait.

After what, which, whose, how many and how much, we can use a noun.

Sarah and Mark were discussing **what colour to paint** the walls. We wondered **whose story to believe** - both drivers said it wasn't their fault. It's difficult to know **how much luggage to take** with you.

We can use whether but not if.

We'll have to decide **whether to go** ahead with the project (or not).

NOT We'll have to decide if to go ahead.

Melanie wasn't sure whether to ring the doctor or not.

I was wondering **whether to order** some tea.

# 1 Structures with what to do, where to go, etc (B)

Comment on these situations.







1 What should I say?







3 How do I stop?

1 2	(can't thin (not sure)	,		on.
	•	s with <b>what to do, where to <i>go,</i> e</b> tc (		
			•	•
		e questions and then complete the paragraph and and a to-infinitive.	ao	out a man coming out of prison. Use a
				How can he find somewhere to live?
				What should he do?
		ould he go?		Who can he contact?
		· ·		
		rill have problems when he leaves prison. He retime in prison, he isn't sure (1)		
				a place to live either.
		't be completely alone. A social worker will adv		
		(5) if he needs he		
50	) working (	3) 11 He needs he	1P	•
<b>3</b> C	Question	word + to-infinitive (B-C)		
		ding it very difficult to make your mind up.		
		our answers to the questions. Use a question v	wc	ord and a to-infinitive
		Are you going to buy that sweater?	0	7.4 WIN W VO III
	You;	I don't know whether to buy it or not.		
?	Tom:	What time do you think we should leave?		
	You:	I'm not really sure what time to leave.		
1	Daniel:	Do you want to do business studies?		
	You:	I'm wondering		business studies or statistics.
2	Vicky:	How much money should we spend on the	p	resent?
	You:	I've no idea		on it.
3	Matthew;	Do you intend to join the sports club?		
	You;	I can't decide	•••	it or not.
4	Vicky:	Which route should we take?		
	You:	It's difficult to know		
5		: Which lottery numbers are you going to cl		
	You:	I haven't decided	•••	

# 67 Adjective + to-infinitive



# B It is easy to drive the car

An adjective + to-infinitive often comes in this structure with it + be.

It's important to look in the mirror. It's lovely to see you. It's quite safe to use the ladder. It was silly to make such a fuss.

The subject can also be a person.

I'm delighted to see you. We're ready to start now.

# C The car is easy to drive

Compare these two sentences. They both mean the same thing.

It is easy to drive the car. The car is easy to drive. We do not use it in the second sentence.

NOT The car is easy to drive it and NOT The car it is easy to drive.

Here are some more examples.

Your writing is difficult to read. A small car would be cheap to run. The parade was fascinating to watch. The ladder is quite safe to use.

We can use this structure with adjectives meaning 'good' or bad', e.g. awful, bad, exciting, fascinating, good, marvellous, nice, terrible, wonderful. We can also use it with these adjectives: cheap, convenient, dangerous, difficult, easy, expensive, impossible, safe, simple.

# D Certain, sure and likely

We can use a to-infinitive after **certain**, **sure**, **likely** and **unlikely**. *United are certain/sure to win*. (= They will certainly win.) *Sarah is likely to be at work*. (= She is probably at work.)

#### E For and of

After some adjectives we can use **for** + object + to-infinitive (see Unit 68).

It's **important for drivers to take** care. It isn't **safe for children to play** on ladders.

After an adjective describing how someone behaves (e.g. polite, silly), we can use of. It was polite of Emma to write and thank us. (Emma was polite.) It was silly of me to forget the tickets. (I was silly.)

68 For with the to-infinitive 117 Too and enough

# 1 It is easy to drive the car (B) Sarah's job is to write advertisements. She is writing one for Compex computers. Write sentences with it and an adjective followed by a to-infinitive. ▶ Buy a Compex computer. It isn't expensive. It isn't expensive to buy a Compex computer. 1 Using the computer is very simple. It's very 2 Understanding the handbook isn't difficult. It isn't 3 You can run any kind of software. It's easy. 4 Exploring the world of Compex is absolutely fascinating. 5 Try the ultimate computer experience. Are you ready? 2 The car is easy to drive (C) Sarah isn't happy with her ideas for the Compex advertisement. She is rewriting the first four sentences like this. ► A Compex computer isn't expensive to buy. 1 The computer The handbook 3 4 3 Certain, sure and likely (D) Complete the conversation. Make sentences from the notes in brackets. Nick: Are you going to Mike and Harriet's party? Tom: Yes, I am. (▶) It's sure to be a good party (it / sure / be / a good party). Nick: Will there be a lot of people there? Nick: Has Rita been invited, do you know? Tom: Oh, (2) (she / certain / be / there). Nick: I don't know that part of town. Is the house easy to find? Tom: No, it isn't. Take a map or (3) ......(you / unlikely / find / it).

## 4 For and of (E)

Vicky and Rachel are talking about two students they know called Gary and Steve.

Complete the conversation. Put in for or of.

I can't believe that Gary and Steve had a fight in a pub. Don't you think that was very foolish Vicky: (▶)of them?

Rachel: Yes, it was especially stupid (1).....them to quarrel about which football team is the best. There must be something more interesting (2).....them to talk about.

Vicky: I blame Steve. It wasn't very sensible (3) ......him to knock Gary's drink over.

on the head with a chair.

# 68 For with the to-infinitive

#### A Introduction

Sarah: I'll just ring the office. The boss is waiting for me to ring her back.

Mark: / don't think it was a good idea for you to bring that mobile phone on holiday with you, Sarah.

We can use **for** + object + to-infinitive. Here are some more examples.

FOR OBJECT TO-INFINITIVE

My mother has arranged for **someone** to look after her dog next week.

It's difficult for unskilled people to find work these days.

The crowd were impatient for the match to begin.

It's a nuisance for you to have to wait.

## B For expressing purpose

We can use this structure to say why something is done (to express purpose). (See also Unit 151E. Mark photocopied the figures for the Sales Manager to have a look at. (= He photocopied the figures so that the Sales Manager could have a look at them.) The shop provides baskets for the customers to put their purchases in. I'd like to put forward a few suggestions for you to think about.

## C Too and enough

We can use too and enough with this structure. The road is too busy for the children to cross safely. Unfortunately the table was too small for all of us to sit round. Fortunately the table was big enough for all of us to sit round. The guide didn't speak loudly enough for everyone to hear clearly.

#### D For and of

FOR

We often use **for** + object + to-infinitive after an adjective.

Harriet was anxious for the party to

be a success. Would it be **possible for** you to move

your car, please?

Some of the adjectives we can use with **for:**anxious, awful, cheap, convenient, dangerous,
difficult, eager, easy, exciting, expensive, friendly,
good, happy, horrible, impatient, important,
interesting, marvellous, necessary, nice, normal,
polite, possible, ready, safe, sensible, silly, stupid,
terrible, useful, willing, wonderful, wrong

Compare these two sentences.

It was good for you to come jogging. (= It was good for your health.)

OF

After an adjective saying how someone behaves, we use **of** + object + to-infinitive.

It's **kind of** Melanie to put you up for the night. (Melanie is kind.)

It was **clever of** you to work out the answer. (You were clever.)

Some of the adjectives we can use with **of:** brave, careless, clever, foolish, generous, good, helpful, honest, intelligent, kind, mean, nice, polite, sensible, silly, stupid, wrong

It was good of you to come jogging with me. (= It was a kind action by you.)

1	For with the to-infinitive (A)	
	The second person agrees with what the first one s	ays. Use for and a to-infinitive.
	Daniel: Andrew should take it easy. That wou	uld be best.
	Matthew: Yes, you're right. It would be best f	
	1 Trevor: Our new computer should arrive	
	Laura: Me neither. I	
	2 Rachel: Matthew shouldn't marry Emma. I	t would be a mistake.
	Vicky: I think so too.	
	3 Customer: Advertisements should tell the true	
	Mark: I agree.	
2	For expressing purpose (B)	
	Write the advertisement for a holiday centre.	
	Match the sentence pairs and write sentences with	for and a to-infinitive.
	There are lots of activities. There's a fun pool.	You can enjoy them. You can relax in them. Guests
	There are quiet areas. There are regular shows.	can take part in them. You can ride on it if you
	There's a siant roller-coaster.	dare. Children can swim in it.
	► There are lots of activities for guests to take part	4 :
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
3	3 Too and enough (C)	
	Add a sentence with too or enough and: difficult, fi	unny, heavy, high, hot, loud
	? Mike and Harriet couldn't lift the piano. It was	s too heavy for them to lift.
	? Tom won't repeat the joke. It isn't funny enoug	
	1 Emma can't reach the top shelf	
	2 We can't understand the poem	
	3 Not everyone could hear the music	
	4 The tea had got cold. Daniel couldn't drink it	
4	4 For and <b>of (D)</b>	
	A)apanese company called Sanko is going to ope	n a new factory in a town in England.
	Write the sentences from the local newspaper.	, ,
	► marvellous / the town / have / some new jobs	
	It will be marvellous for the town to have some n	new jobs.
	► clever / our local council / bring / Sanko / here	
	It was clever of our local council to bring Sanko h	
	1 difficult / the town / attract / new industry	
	It has been	
	2 very generous / the council / give / the land / to	Sanko
	It was	
	3 the company / eager / production / begin / soo	n
	TI.	

# 69 The infinitive with and without to

This is an overview of the different structures with a to-infinitive (e.g. **to do)** and an infinitive without **to** (e.g. do).

#### A The to-infinitive

We use a to-infinitive:

1 After an adjective (see Unit 67)

It's nice to have a place of your own. The car is really cheap to run.

2 After a noun

/ must take a **book to read.** (— a book that I <u>can</u> read)

We've got a few jobs to do. (= jobs that we must do)

3 With be able to, be about to, be allowed to, be going to, have to, ought to and used to

We aren't allowed to park here. The game is about to start.

We're going to buy a camcorder. You have to fill in a form.

4 After some verbs, e.g. decide, hope, manage, offer (see Unit 60)

Tom decided to leave early. I hope to see you soon.

Did you manage to sort out the problem? Henry offered to pay for the meal.

5 After some verbs + object (see Unit 65)

Laura persuaded Trevor to put up some shelves.

I want you to do something for me.

6 After **for** + object (see Unit 68)

We've arranged for you to visit our head office.

It is important for students to register with a doctor.

7 After a question word (see Unit 66)

We don't know where to leave our coats.

This book tells you how to train race horses.

8 To say why (see Unit 151B)

Mark went out to play golf. I need the money to pay the phone bill.

#### B The infinitive without to

We use an infinitive without to:

1 After can, could, may, might, must, needn't, shall, should, will, and would

We could go to a night club. I must speak to the manager. It

might rain later. Sarah will be away for three days.

2 After had better and would rather

It's cold. You'd better wear a coat. I'd rather listen to Elvis than the Beatles.

3 After make + object and let + object

That programme was funny. It really made me laugh.

Trevor will be here at five. His boss is going to **let him leave** work early.

4 After see or hear + an object (see Unit 74)

They saw the lights come on. We all heard the bomb go off.

#### C Help

An infinitive after help can be with or without to.

Can I help (to) get the tea? Vicky helped me (to) choose a present.

1	Т	he to-i	infinitive (A)
		ike will	on these situations. Join each pair of sentences using a to-infinitive.  give you a lift. He promised. You: Mike <i>promised to give me a lift.</i> vant to eat. You must have something.
	2		mustre having a rest. It's nice.
	_		'S
	3		tita speak to Nick? He wants her to.
	4		l can't repair the video. He doesn't know how to.
	5	Claire	and her sister are going to Bali. They have decided.
	6	Melan	ie is visiting David. She has gone to the hospital.
	7	Vicky	is doing some studying. Unfortunately she has to.
	8	Sarah	must ring the office. It's important.
2	Th	e infin	itive without to (B)
	Put	t in the 1	missing verbs. Usually more than one answer is correct.
	ightharpoons		en repairing the car. I really must wash my hands.
	1		s in the letter? Why won't you let meit?
	2		ou see that lovely old carpast a moment ago? a terribly sad story. It made me
	4		want to do anything energetic. I'd rather on the beach.
	5		ry cold. I think it might for the first time this winter.
	6		getting this pain in my leg. I think I'd better a doctor.
3	Th	e infin	itive with and without to (A-B)
	Ma	atthew a	and Emma are at the railway station. Emma is going away for the weekend. Put
			nitive of the verbs. You have to decide whether or not you need to. Matthew:
		-	are you'll $(\triangleright)$ be (be) all right?
		nma:	Yes, of course. I'm not a child. I can manage (►) to look (look) after myself.
		atthew: nma:	OK, sorry.  Some friends have invited me (1)(visit) them. I'm not going to the North Pole
			It'll be nice for you (2)(see) your old friends again. I just know you're
			going (3)(have) lots of fun. Let me (4)(buy) you a magazine
			(5)(read) on the train.
	En	nma:	I can't (6)(read) when I'm travelling. It makes me (7)(feel)
			sick, even in a train. I'd rather just (8)(look) out of the window.
	Ma	atthew:	OK. Well, you'd better (9) (get) in. I think it's about (10) (leave)
	г		Oh, did I remind you (11)(change) at York?
	En	nma:	Yes, Matthew, you did. Don't worry, I won't (12)(forget). I know perfectly well how (13)(get) there.
			10w (13)(got) there.

# 70 Verb/Adjective + preposition + ing-form

#### Introduction

Claire: *I'm thinking of going to Turkey*.

Travel agent: Are you interested in travelling around the country, or would you like to stay in one place?

Claire: / don't want to do a lot of travelling.

Some verbs and adjectives can have a preposition after them (see Units 125-126).  $\!\!/$ 

apologized for my mistake. Laura is keen on photography.

Sometimes we can use an ing-form after the preposition.

		PREPOSITION	ING-FORM	
I	apologized	for	making	a mistake.
Laura is	keen	on	taking	photos.
I'm	thinking	of	going	to Turkey.
Are you	interested	in	traveling	around?
We're	tired	of	not having	a place to live.

We can use **not** before the ing-form, e.g. **not having.** 

## B Verb + preposition + ing-form

Don't you believe in discussing things openly? Laura doesn't feel like cooking tonight. Unfortunately Tom insisted on telling us all about United's win. I'm looking forward to seeing my friends again. I've succeeded in getting hold of the CD I wanted. Also: agree with, apologize for, concentrate on, object to, rely on, think of

We can use about after ask, complain, dream, speak, talk, think, and wonder.

They're talking about building a new swimming-pool.

#### C Verb + object + preposition + ing-form

After some verbs we can put an object (e.g. Matthew).

Emma accused Matthew of not caring about her.

Higher prices will discourage customers from buying.

The fire-fighters prevented/stopped the fire (from) spreading.

The club has **punished its players for fighting** during a match.

Also: blame ... for, congratulate ... on, thank ... for

We can use this structure in the passive.

Matthew was accused of not caring. The customers will be discouraged from buying.

#### D Adjective + preposition + ing-form

People were annoyed at not being able to see properly. I'm bored with waiting. Vicky is excited about going to America. I'm fed up with living in this awful place. Tom is good at telling jokes. The man was found guilty of stealing from his employers. I'm pleased about/at winning a prize. Also: capable of, fond of, interested in (see Unit 71B), keen on, tired of

125 Adjective + preposition 126 Verb + preposition

1	Verb + preposition + ing-form (A-B)
	Complete the conversation between Claire and her sister Sophie.
	Put in the verbs with these prepositions: for, in, like, of, on
	Sophie: Where's that little radio of yours?
	Claire: Oh, it got broken. Henry knocked it off the table.
	Unfortunately he hasn't succeeded (▶) in getting (get) it to work again.
	Sophie: Oh, what a pity.
	Claire: It was only a cheap thing. In fact I'd been thinking (1) (buy) a new one.
	But Henry not only apologized (2) (break) it, he
	insisted (3)
	Sophie: Henry is such a gentleman.  Claire: He didn't really need to buy me a new one, but I didn't feel (4)
	Chaire. The didn't really need to buy life a new one, but I didn't leer (4)
2	Verb (+ object) + preposition + ing-form (A-C)
	Comment on these situations. Join each pair of sentences using a preposition and an ing-form. ▶
	The police prevented the crime. It didn't take place. The police prevented the crime from taking
	place.
	1 Laura blamed Trevor. He forgot the tickets.
	Laura
	2 The doctors succeeded. They saved the driver's life. The doctors
	THE doctors
	3 The customers complained. They didn't receive the goods.
	4 Emma has accused Matthew. She says Matthew broke his promise.
	5 Melanie is insisting. She's going to cook a meal for David.
	6 A new traffic scheme has stopped cars. They can't go into the town centre.
	7 Everyone congratulated Claude. He won the quiz competition.
	8 Some football fans were arrested. They attacked a policeman.
_	Namb (Adjusting a preparation a incretorne (AD)
٦	8 Verb/Adjective + preposition + ing-form (A-D)
	Complete Emma's letter to her friend Kirsty. Put in a preposition and an ing-form.
	Thank you (►) for inviting (invite) me to come and see you next month. I'm already excited (1)(see) you again.
	You must be very pleased (2)(get) the job you wanted. Congratulations. Personally, 1 wouldn't be keen (3)(travel) forty miles to work.
	I apologize (4)

# 71 Afraid to do or afraid of doing?

#### A Afraid



David is **afraid to climb** the ladder. (= He <u>doesn't</u> want to climb the ladder because he is afraid.)

Here are some more examples.

I was afraid to say anything in front of all those people. Claire was afraid to wander too far from the hotel.

# B Anxious, ashamed and interested

Compare these examples.

Zedco are anxious to increase their sales. (= They want to increase their sales.)

I'm ashamed to tell you what I scored in the test. (= I don't want to tell you because I'm ashamed.)

*I'd* be interested to meet Laura. (= I want to meet her.)

/ was **interested to hear** Mike's story. (= I found his story interesting.)

# C Structures with sorry

To apologize for something we are doing, we use a to-infinitive.

I'm sorry to tell you this, but your test score is rather low.

*I'm sorry to ring so late, but it's important.* To express regret, we also use a to-infinitive.

/ was sorry to hear that Mike's uncle had died.



David is **afraid of falling**. (= He is afraid because he might fall.

/ was afraid of sounding foolish, you see.

She was **afraid of getting** lost.

Mark was anxious about presenting his report. (= He was worried because he had to present his report.)

I'm ashamed of getting such a low score. {— I'm ashamed because I got such a low score.)

Laura is interested in painting. (= It is an interest/a hobby of hers.)

To apologize for something we did, we can use **about** + ing-form.

I'm sorry about making all that noise last night. (OR I'm sorry I made all that noise last night.)

### 1 Afraid (A)

Complete the sentences. Use these words and put the verb into the to-infinitive or ing-form: *dive into the water, drop them, fall, move* 









► He's afraid to dive into the water.	2 She's afraid
1 She's afraid.	3 He's afraid

## 2 Afraid (A)

Look at what people say and write a comment about each person.

Rewrite the second sentence using afraid to or afraid of.

- ► Vicky: There's a large bull in the field. I don't want to open the gate. Vicky is afraid to open the gate.
- Claire: I arrived at the airport in good time. 1 thought I might get stuck in traffic.

Claire was afraid of getting stuck in traffic.

- 1 Nick: I was going to do a bungee jump yesterday. But I couldn't jump.
- 2 Daniel: The policeman looked angry. I didn't want to argue with him.
- 3 Matthew: I'm keeping my shirt on. I might get sunburnt.

### 3 Afraid, anxious, ashamed and interested (A-B)

#### 4 Sorry (C)

Complete the conversation. Use a to-infinitive or <i>about</i> + ing-form. Look at the information in brackets.		
Alan:	I'm sorry (►) to disturb you (I'm disturbing you	ı), but could I just say something? I'm sorry
	(1)(I was so rud	e) last night. I didn't mean what I said.
Mark:	Oh, that's OK. I'm sorry (2)	(I lost my temper).
Alan:	Right. OK. And, as I said, sorry (3)	(I'm interrupting you).

# 72 Used to do and be used to doing



**Used** + to-infinitive means that something happened regularly or went on for a time **in** the past. *I used to travel* means that in the past I regularly travelled, but I no longer do so.

Here are some more examples.

We used to play that game when we were younger.

Nick used to smoke, but he gave it up. I used to like fish, but I never eat it now.

There **used** to **be** a dancehall here, but they knocked it down.

We cannot use this structure in the present tense.

Claire travels a lot. NOT Claire uses to-travel a lot.

We normally use **didn't use to** in negatives and **did** ... **use** to in questions.

We didn't use to have computers, OR We never used to have computers.

Where **did** people **use** to **buy** their food before the supermarket was built?

**Did** you **use to live** in London?



**Be used to** + ing-form means that something is familiar and is no longer strange. *I'm used to travelling* means that travelling is no longer strange or difficult because I have done it for so long.

Here are some more examples.

We're used to getting up early. We do it every day. NOT We're used to get up early.

Sarah is used to working late at the office. Most visitors to Britain aren't used to driving on the left.

I wasn't used to wearing glasses. It seemed very strange at first.

We can also say **get used to** to talk about things becoming more familiar. *It was difficult at first, but Mike soon got used to working at night. After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to living on her own.* 

### Used to do (A)

1 Mrs Bell is a hundred years old. She's the oldest person in the village.

A radio reporter is interviewing her. Put in used to with the verb.

Mrs Bell: I've always lived in the village, but not always in this house.

Reporter: Where (▶) *did you use to live* (you / live)?

Mrs Bell: When I was a girl, we lived at Apple Tree Farm.

(1)..... (we / like) it there.

Reporter: But life was hard, wasn't it?

Mrs Bell: Oh, yes. Things (2) ......(be) different from the way they are

now. In those days (3) .....(we / not / have) electricity.

Reporter: And (4) ..... (you / help) with the farm work?

Mrs Bell: Yes, (5) ......(I / look) after the hens.

## 2 Used to do and be used to doing (A-B)

Look at the pictures and say what the people used to do or are used to doing.

Use these verbs: climb, fly, paint, play, sign

Use these objects: autographs, badminton, mountains, pictures, planes











- ? He used to paint pictures.
- ? She's used to signing autographs.
- 1 She .....
- 2 They.....
- 3 He.....

#### 3 Used to do and be used to doing (A-B)

Put in a to-infinitive or to + ing-form. Use the verbs in brackets.

- ? When I was a child, I used to dream (dream) of being an astronaut.
- ? I'm terribly nervous. I'm not used to speaking (speak) to a large audience.
- 1 It took us ages to get used ......(live) in a block of flats.
- 2 Lots of trains used......(stop) here, but not many do now.
- 3 Didn't Nick use.....(work) on a building site?
- 4 There didn't use....... (be) so many soap operas on television.

- 7 When Laura was at college, she used......(have) a picture of Elvis Presley on her bedroom wall.

## 73 Preposition or linking word + ing-form

#### A Introduction

Rachel: Shall we have some lunch?

Jessica: 1 usually go for a walk instead of eating. I'm on a diet.

Rachel: You're joking, aren't you? Since when?

Jessica: Since discovering I can't get into my old clothes.

Rachel: Well, just buy some new ones, then.

We can use an ing-form after some prepositions (e.g. instead of)

or linking words (e.g. since).

We cannot use an infinitive, NOT-instead-of to-eat.



#### B Preposition + ing-form

Here are some more examples.

As a result of losing my passport, I had to fill in a complicated form.

Vicky and Rachel might go to Canada as well as travelling around the US.

You can get skin cancer from being in the sun too long.

You aren't in favour of cutting down trees, are you?

Sarah went to work in spite of not feeling well.

We can't have a party without making a bit of noise.

We can use these prepositions before an ing-form: against, as a result of, as well as, besides, by, despite, for, from, how about, in favour of, in spite of, instead of, on, what about, without

We use what about/how about + ing-form to make a suggestion.

**How about giving** us some help? We use **for** + ing-form

to say what we use something for.

This cloth is for cleaning the floor. We use by + ing-form to

say how someone does something.

The thief got in **by breaking** a window. We

use **on** + ing-form to mean 'as soon as'.

On hearing the news of David's accident, Melanie burst into tears.

(= As soon as she heard the news,...)

### C Linking word + ing-form

Here are some examples.

I always have a shower after playing tennis.

Although hoping to get the job, Rachel wasn't really expecting to.

Sarah wanted to finish the report **before going** to bed.

The man has been unemployed since leaving prison.

You should always lock the door when leaving your room.

Mark was listening to the car radio while sitting in a traffic jam.

We can use these linking words before an ing-form: after, although, before, since, when, while

A linking word + ing-form can sometimes be a little formal. We can say the same thing like this. I always have a shower after I've played tennis. Although she was hoping to get the job, Rachel wasn't really expecting to.

70 Verb/Adjective + preposition + ing-form

6 He fell ill. He worked too hard, (as a result of)

I He has made a lot of money. He bought his first shop ten years ago. (since)

1	Co  1 2	eposition + ing-form (B)  mplete the sentences using the words in brackets.  Rachel: Do you want to walk? Vicky: Yes, let's not get a bus. (instead of)  Vicky wants to walk instead of getting a bus.  Sarah: Did you get through the work? Mark: Yes, I stayed up all night, (by)  Mark got through the work  Melanie: When do you take the pills? David: The minute I wake in the morning, (on)  David has to take the pills  Mike: So you got the answer? Harriet: Yes, and I didn't use a calculator, (without)  Harriet got the answer.
	5	Emma: Why the rucksack? Matthew: So I can carry the food, (for)  The rucksack is
2	Th Pu  1 2 3 4 5	hking word + ing-form (C) his structure is often used in instructions (sentences which tell people what to do). It in before or after and the ing-form of the verb in brackets.  Replace the top on the bottle after taking (take) the medicine.  Read the contract through carefully
3	Ro Jo	eposition or linking word + ing-form (B-C) on Mason owns a supermarket business. Write the sentences for a magazine article about his life. in two sentences into one using the words in brackets. He saw an empty shop. He was walking around town one day. (while) He saw an empty shop while walking around town one day.
		He thought carefully. He decided to buy it. (before)
		He bought the shop. He had little money of his own. (despite)  He became successful. He gave the customers what they wanted, (by)
	4	He put the profit back into the business. He didn't spend it on himself, (instead of)
	5	He was happy. He was running his own business, (when)

## 74 See it happen or see it happening?

#### A Introduction



David fell down the steps. Rachel **saw him fall.** 



David was walking with a stick. Rachel **saw him walking** across the road.

#### B See it happen

After some verbs we can use an object + an infinitive without to.

	VERB	OBJECT	INFINITIVE	
Rachel	saw	David	fall	down the steps.
Vicky	heard	someone	close	the door.
Let's	watch	the parade	go	past.
We all	felt	the house	shake.	

We can use this structure with these verbs: feel, hear, listen to, notice, see, watch

#### C See it happening

We can also use an ing-form after the object.

	VERB	OBJECT	ING-FORM	
Rachel	saw	David	walking	with a stick.
Can you	hear	someone	playing	the piano?
We	found	Matthew	exercising	in the gym.
I could	feel	an insect	crawling	up my leg.

We can use this structure with these verbs: feel, find, hear, listen to, notice, see, smell, watch

## D See it happen or see it happening?

SEE IT HAPPEN

We saw Trevor plant the tree.
(He <u>planted</u> the tree. We saw him do the whole job.)

/ watched Nick **light** a cigarette.

We noticed a young man **sit** down and order a meal.

SEE IT HAPPENING

We saw Trevor planting the tree.
(He was planting the tree. We saw him in the middle of the job.)

I watched Nick smoking a cigarette.
We noticed a young man sitting at the table.

We noticed a young man **sitting** at the table eating a meal.

When we talk about a short action, it often does not matter which structure we use. *They heard a car turn/turning the corner. I didn't see anyone leave/leaving any litter.* 

#### 1 See it happen (B)

Henry is in court. He is answering questions about a Mr Lewis, who the police suspect of a number of crimes. Add a sentence using the verb in brackets. ► And you say a second man came into the restaurant? (see) Henry: That's right. / saw him come in.

- 1 Are you quite certain that Mr Lewis took the envelope? (see)
  Henry: Yes, absolutely.
- 2 Then Mr Lewis left the restaurant, did he? (watch)

Henry: He left soon afterwards .....

3 And he drove away, (hear)
Henry: Yes, he did.....

#### 2 See it happening (C)

Look at the pictures and add a sentence with *I can see/hear/smell...* and the ing-form of these verbs: *bark, burn, come, ring, wave* 









- ► The postman is on his way. I can see him coming.
- 1 There's a phone upstairs.
- 2 There's a woman in the boat.
- 3 There are some dogs outside.....
- 4 You've forgotten your lunch.

#### 3 See it happen or see it happening? (D)

There has been a bomb explosion in the city centre. TV reporter Kitty Beamish is asking people about it. What did people see or hear?

- ? Man: The bomb exploded. I heard it. It was a shock. *He heard the bomb explode*.
- ? Woman: A man was lying in the road. I saw him. He was just lying there. *She saw a man lying in the road.*
- 1 Woman: The building shook. I felt it. I couldn't believe it.
- 2 Man: People were shouting. I heard them. There was panic.
- 3 Girl: An alarm was ringing. I could hear it. It went on and on.
- 4 Boys. The police arrived. We saw them. They were over there.
- 5 Man: I saw a woman. She was crying. She was in a terrible state.

## 75 Some structures with the ing-form

#### A Two actions at the same time



All afternoon Claire lay in a hammock reading a magazine.

When two things are happening at the same time, we can use a main verb (lay) and an ing-form (reading). Here are some more examples.

We had to stand in a queue waiting for the bank to open.

You can t sit watching television all day. All afternoon, Vicky lay on the sofa thinking about life.

We can also use this structure when one action comes in the middle of another. We use the ing-form for the longer action.

Matthew injured his knee doing gymnastics. (= He injured his knee while he was doing gymnastics.) I went to sleep listening to the radio.

#### B One action after another

When there are two short actions, one straight after the other, we can use an ing-form for the first action.

\*Opening the bottle, Mike poured the drinks. (= He opened the bottle and then poured the drinks.)

\*Turning right into Madison Avenue, the car drove north for two blocks.

We can also use the perfect ing-form.

Having opened the bottle, Mike poured the drinks. (= After opening the bottle, Mike poured the drinks.)

If either of the actions is long, we must use the perfect.

Having photocopied all the papers, Sarah put them back in the file.

Having repaired the car, Tom took it out for a road test. NOT

Repairing the car, Tom took it-out for a road test.

These patterns are typical of written English. In spoken English, to talk about one action after another we use a sentence like this.

Tom repaired the car and then took it out for a road test.

#### C The ing-form saying why

We can use the ing-form to give a reason.

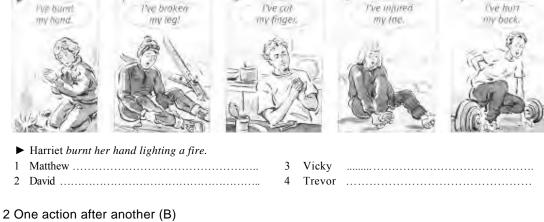
The fans queued for hours, **hoping** to get tickets. (= They queued for hours <u>because</u> they hoped to get tickets.) **Being** the youngest child, Natasha was her father's favourite. **Not knowing** the way, I had to ask for directions.

We can also use the perfect ing-form to give a reason.

**Having spent** all his money, Daniel couldn't afford a new jacket. We decided not to travel, **having heard** the terrible weather forecast.

#### 1 One action in the middle of another (A)

Say what accidents these people had. Use these phrases: lift weights, light a fire, open a tin, run, ski Put the verbs describing the longer action in the -ing form.



Rewrite the sentences about a detective. Begin with an ing-form, e.g. doing or having done.

Mitchell picked up the phone and dialled a number. He let it ring for five long minutes and then slowly replaced the receiver. He took a gun out of the drawer and put it in his briefcase. He left the office and then had to wait a while for the lift. He reached the ground floor and hurried outside to a taxi. The taxi driver pulled out a gun and shot Mitchell.

?	Picking up the phone, Mitchell dialled	l a number.
?	Having let it ring for five long minutes	, he slowly replaced the receiver.
1		
2		
3		
4		
3 T	he ing-form saying why (C)	
M	fatch the two parts and join them using	g an ing-form, e.g. doing or having done.
?	Because she didn't want to be late,	Harriet turned on the heating.
?	As she had worked hard all day,	Andrew took it back to the library.
1	Because he had studied the map,	Daniel found it hard to communicate.
2	She felt cold, so	Vicky ran to the bus stop.
3	Because he didn't know French,	Trevor knew which way to go.
4	He had finished the book, so	Sarah was exhausted.
?	Not wanting to be late, Vicky ran to th	e bus stop.
?	Having worked hard all day, Sarah wa	as exhausted.
1		
2		
3		

# TEST 13 The infinitive and the ing-form (Units 65-75)

#### Test 13A

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross out the unnecessary word and write it in the space.

- ? I'm used to driving in heavy traffic every day.
- ? Although of feeling tired, Polly didn't want to go to bed. of
- 1 It's important for to sign the form.
- 2 Peter broke his arm in playing rugby.
- 3 A woman accused Martin of stealing her money.
- 4 I wasn't sure whether to write a letter of thanks.
- 5 Do you remember a young man bumping into you?
- 6 The girl's parents wouldn't let her to stay out so late.
- 7 The book is too difficult enough for children to understand
- 8 Police found the woman for lying dead on the floor.
- 9 Cars are always expensive to repair them.
- 10 The man died as a result of falling asleep while driving.

#### Test 13B

This is an advertisement for the book 'Winning in Business'. Put in the correct form of each verb.

Are you fed up with (▶) being (be) a failure in your job? Wouldn't you rather (▶) succeed (succeed)?
Do you want (▶) to earn (earn) more money? Are you anxious (1) (get) ahead?
Do you believe in (2)(make) the most of your talents? Do you sometimes dream
about (3) (reach) the top? If the answer is yes, read on. Just imagine
yourself (4)(run) a big successful company. And now you can do something about it
instead of (5)
Make it a reality by (7)(order) your copy of the best-selling 'Winning in
Business'. It has a ten-point plan for you (8)(follow). Do it and you're
certain (9)
business. You can make other people (11)(respect) you and persuade
them (12)(do) what you want. Experts recommend (13)(buy)
this marvellous book. You'd better (14)(order) your copy today.

#### Test 13C

Combine each pair of sentences. Use a to-infinitive or an ing-form. Sometimes you also need a preposition,

- ? We've advised Nancy. She should get a lawyer.
  - We've advised Nancy to get a lawyer.
- ? I'm getting bored. I've been sitting on the beach. I'm getting bored with sitting on the beach.
- 1 We saw Rupert. He was looking in a shop window.
- 2 I remember the clown. He fell over.
- 3 Tessa wasn't sure. Which way should she go?
- 4 The porter just stood there. He expected a tip.

- 5 How about it? Shall we go to the barbecue? 6 Susan is used to it. She's always lived in the country. 7 I'm afraid. I might hurt myself. 8 Christopher apologized. He'd forgotten to pay. 9 The food was too cold. Michelle couldn't eat it. 10 Polly was silly. She gave away the secret. Test 13D Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. Calvin Coolidge was elected US President in 1924. He didn't believe (►) in doing too much, and his slogan was'Keep cool with Coolidge'. Soon (1)..... moving into the White House, Coolidge invited some the old days, and they were simple country people. They were interested (4)..... see inside the White House, and they were looking forward to (5)......dinner with the President. They thought it was nice (6).....him (7)..... invite them. But there was one problem. They weren't used (8)..... attending formal dinners, and they were worried that they wouldn't know (9)..... to behave. They were afraid (10).....looking foolish. So they decided it would be best (11)....everyone to copy exactly what Coolidge did. At last the day came. During the dinner, when Coolidge picked up his knife and fork, everyone did the same. When he drank, everyone drank, and so on. Finally Coolidge decided to amuse himself (12).....playing a little trick on his visitors. He tipped some coffee into his saucer. Everyone did the same (13)......done this, he added a little cream and sugar. Everyone did the same. Then, horrified, they watched Coolidge bend down and (14)..... the saucer on the carpet for his cat. Test 13E Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb. ► A: I'm annoved about being (be) late. B: Well, I told you to set (set) off in good time, didn't I? 1 A: Did you accuse Nigel of ......(break) a plate? B Well, it was an accident, but he did break it. I saw him.................(knock) it off the table with his elbow. 2 A: 1 came here ......(see) Janet. She must have forgotten I was coming. B It seems rather careless of her............................ (forget).

# **76 Ship** and water: countable and uncountable nouns

#### A What is the difference?



a ship

two boats

water

#### COUNTABLE

A countable noun (e.g **ship**) can be singular or plural. We can count ships. We can say **a ship/one ship** or **two ships**.

Here are some examples of countable nouns. We could see a ship in the distance. Claire has only got one sister. I've got a problem with the car. Do you like these photos? I'm going out for five minutes.

#### UNCOUNTABLE

An uncountable noun (e.g. water) is neither singular nor plural. We cannot count water. We can say water or some water but NOT a water or two waters.

Here are some examples of uncountable nouns. Can I have some water? Shall we sit on the grass? The money is quite safe. I love music. Would you like some butter?

#### B Nouns after the, a/an and numbers

There are some words that go with both countable and uncountable nouns. One of these is **the.** We can say **the ship** (singular), **the ships** (plural) or **the water** (uncountable). But other words go with one kind of noun but not with the other.

COUNTABLE

**A/an** or **one** goes only with a singular noun. *I need a spoon.* Numbers above one go only with plural nouns.

We eat three meals a day.

#### UNCOUNTABLE

We do not use **a/an** with an uncountable noun. NOT <del>A WATER</del> and NOT <del>A music.</del> We do not use numbers with an uncountable noun. NOT *three feeds* 

#### C Nouns after some, many/much, etc

**Some** and **any** go with plural or uncountable nouns. We can also use plural and uncountable nouns on their own, without **some** or **any.** 

PLURAL

Tom told **some jokes**. Do you know **any jokes?** Tom usually tells **jokes**. But NOT *He told joke*.

Many and a few go only with plural nouns.

There weren't many bottles. I made a few sandwiches.

UNCOUNTABLE

We had some fun. That won't be any fun. We always have fun.

Much and a little go with uncountable nouns. I don't drink much wine. There was only a little bread left.

79 Agreement 85 A/an, one and some 95 Many and much

#### 1 What is the difference? (A)

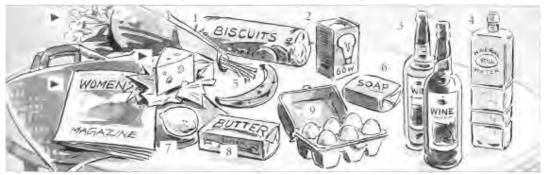
Look at the underlined nouns. Are they are countable or uncountable?

- ? There was a car behind us.
- ? I never eat meat.
- 1 Do you play golf?
- 2 I had to wait ten minutes.
- 3 Just tell me one thing.

- countable 4 Love makes the world go round.
- uncountable 5 Good luck in your new job.
  - 6 Power stations produce energy.
  - 7 I'm taking a photo.
  - 8 Would you like an apple?

#### 2 A and some (B-C)

Laura has been to the supermarket. What has she bought? Use a or some with these words: banana, biscuits, butter, cheese, eggs, flowers, lemon, light bulb, mineral water, magazine, soap, wine



?	some/lowers	4	
?	a magazine	5	
?	some cheese	6	
4		-	
- 1		1	
2		8	

#### Countable and uncountable nouns (A-C)

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form.

What are you doing, Andrew? Jessica: Andrew: I'm writing (▶)essay/an essay.

Oh, you've got (1) computer/a computer. Do you always write (2) essay/essays on your Jessica: computer? Andrew: Yes, but I'm not doing very well today. I've been working on my plan for about three

(3) hour/hours now. Jessica: You've got lots of books to help you, though. I haven't got as (4) many/much books as you.

That's because I haven't got much (5) money/moneys. Quite often I can't even afford to buy (6) food/a food.

Andrew: Really? That can't be (7) many/much fun. Jessica: I'd like to get (8) job/a job I can do in my spare time and earn (9) a/some money. I've got

(10) a few/a little ideas, but what do you think I should do?

Andrew: I know someone who paints (11) picture/pictures and sells them. Why don't you do that?

Jessica: Because I'm no good at painting.

## 77 A carton of milk, a piece of information, etc



Milk, soup, etc are uncountable nouns. We cannot use a or a number in front of them. We do not usually say a

milk or two soups. But we can say a carton of milk or two tins of soup. Here are some more examples.

CARTON, TIN, ETC

MEASUREMENTS

a carton of orange juice a kilo of cheese

a tin of paint

a **bottle** of water

a box/packet of cereal

a **jar of** jam

a **tube of** toothpaste

a glass of water

a **cup of** coffee

PIECE, SLICE, ETC

a piece of wood

a piece/slice of bread a piece/sheet of paper five **metres of** cable twenty **litres of** petrol half a **pound of** butter a **bar of** chocolate a **loaf of** bread

We can also use this structure with a plural noun after of.

a packet of crisps a box of matches three kilos of potatoes a collection of pictures

#### B A piece of information

Advice, information and news are uncountable nouns. We cannot use them with a/an or in the plural.

Can I give you some advice? NOT an advice

We got some information from the tourist office, NOT some informations

That's wonderful news! NOT a wonderful news

But we can use piece of, bit of and item of.

Can I give you a piece of/a bit of advice?

There are **two pieces/bits of information** we need to complete the questionnaire.

There's a bit of /an item of news that might interest you.

These nouns are uncountable in English, although they may be countable in other languages: accommodation, baggage, behaviour, equipment, fun, furniture, homework, housework, litter, luck, luggage, progress, rubbish, scenery, traffic, travel, weather, work

Some countable nouns have similar meanings to the uncountable nouns above.

COUNTABLE

There aren't any **jobs**. It's **a** long **journey**.

There were sofas and chairs for sale.

We've booked a room.

I've got three suitcases.

UNCOUNTABLE

There isn't any work.

Travel can be tiring.

There was furniture for sale.

We've booked some accommodation.

I've got three pieces of luggage.

#### 1 A carton of milk (A)

What did Tom buy at the supermarket? Use of.

IVIIIK			0.33	
Milk	0.35		<b>&gt;</b>	two cartons of milk
1 kilo flour	0.85		•	a kilo of flour
Jam		0.95		1
Matches		0.39		2
Bread		0.65		3
Bread		0.65		4
Chocolate		0.95		5
5 kilos potatoes		1.59		6
Breakfast cereal		1.38		7
Mineral water		0.74		8
Mineral water			0.74	
Toothpaste			0.89	
Total			£10.48	

#### 2 Countable and uncountable nouns (B)

Complete the sentences. Put in a/an or some.

I really ought to do *some* housework.

The people who camped in the field have left ..... rubbish.

I've been working on the business plan. I've made .... progress.

The visitors are here for two nights. They're looking for ... accommodation.

That shop has.....nice sofa.

You'll have to pay extra for the taxi because you've got ... luggage.

The flat is quite empty. I need..... furniture.

I can't possibly fit this guitar into.....suitcase.

Youneed.....luck to win at this game.

#### 3 Countable and uncountable nouns (B)

You are talking about the holiday you had with a friend. Use these words: <u>accommodation</u>, awful journey, beautiful scenery, chair, fun, good weather, meal.

You have to decide whether you need to put a/an or not.

? (It was quite easy to book a place to stay.)

Booking accommodation was quite easy.

? (There was nothing to sit on in your room.)

But my room wasn't very nice. It didn't even have a chair in it.

1 (You were in a beautiful part of **the** country.)

2 (The weather was good.)

And we had..... while we were there.

3 (One evening you went to a restaurant with some other people.)

One evening we had ...... with some people we met.

4 (You enjoyed yourselves at the disco.)

We went to a disco. We had ...... there.

5 (Travelling home was awful.)

Wehad ..... home last Saturday.

#### 78 Nouns that can be countable or uncountable

#### A A potato or potato?

Some nouns can be either countable or uncountable. For example, **a potato** is a separate, individual thing, but **potato** cannot be counted.



#### COUNTABLE

I'm peeling the **potatoes**. Melanie baked **a cake** for David. Vicky was eating **an apple**. Someone threw **a stone** at the police. There's **a hair** on your shirt.



#### UNCOUNTABLE

Would you like some potato? Have some cake/a piece of cake. Is there apple in this salad? The house is built of stone. I must brush my hair, NOT hairs

#### B A sport or sport?

Often the countable noun is specific, and the uncountable noun is more general.

#### COUNTABLE

Rugby is a sport. (= a particular sport) That's a nice painting over there. We heard a sudden noise outside. John Lennon had an interesting life.

#### UNCOUNTABLE

Do you like sport? (= sport in general) Paul is good at painting. Constant noise can make you ill. Life is complicated sometimes.

#### C A paper or paper?

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable with different meanings.

#### COUNTABLE

/ bought a paper. (= a newspaper) I'll have a glass of orange juice, please. Have you got an iron? (for clothes) I switched all the lights on. I've been to France many times. The journey was a great experience. I run a small business. (= a company) We finally found a space in the car park.

#### UNCOUNTABLE

/ need some paper to write on.
I bought a piece of glass for the window.
The bridge is made of iron.
There's more light by the window.
I can't stop. I haven t got time.
He has enough experience for the job.
I enjoy doing business. (= buying and selling)
There's no space for a piano in here.
There are hundreds of satellites out in space.

#### A coffee or coffee?

Words for drink are usually uncountable: *Coffee* is more expensive than tea.

But when we are ordering or offering drinks, we can say either a cup of coffee or a coffee.

Two coffees, please. (= two cups of coffee) Would you like a beer? (= a glass/bottle/can of beer)

Some nouns can be countable when we are talking about a particular kind or about different kinds. *Chianti is an Italian wine.* (= a <u>kind of Italian wine</u>) *The use of plastics has greatly increased.* (= the use of different <u>kinds of plastic</u>)

#### 1 A potato or potato? A sport or sport? (A-B)

Complete the conversations. Choose the correct form.

- ► Can I pick <u>an apple/some apple</u> from your tree? ~ Yes, of course.
- 1 I think sport/a sport is boring. ~ Me too. I hate it.
- 2 We ought to buy some potato/some potatoes. ~ OK, I'll get them.
- 3 I think painting/a painting is a fascinating hobby. ~ Well, you're certainly very good at it.
- 4 Did you hear <u>noise/a noise</u> in the middle of the night? ~ No, I don't think so.
- 5 Is there <u>cheese/a cheese</u> in this soup? ~ Yes, a little.
- 6 I had <u>conversation/a conversation</u> with Vicky last night. ~ Oh? What about?
- 7 Shall I put a chicken/some chicken in your sandwiches? ~ Yes, please.
- 8 Are you a pacifist? ~ Well, I don't believe in war/a war, so I suppose I am.
- 9 It isn't fair. ~ No, <u>life/a life</u> just isn't fair, I'm afraid.
- 10 What's the matter? ~ You've got some egg/some eggs on your shirt.

#### 2 A paper or paper? (C)

Complete the conversations. Put in these nouns: *business* (x2), *experience* (x2), *glass, iron, light, paper, space, time*. Put *a/an* or *some* before each noun.

<b>&gt;</b>	Harriet:	Did you manage to park in town?
	Mike:	It took me ages to find a space. And all I wanted was to buy some paper to wrap this present in.
1	Sarah:	Are you busy tomorrow?
	Mark:	I'm meeting someone in the office. We've gotto discuss.
2	Trevor:	Do you think I need to take with me for my shirts?
	Laura:	Oh, surely the hotel will have one.
3	Vicky:	I was going to have some juice, but I can't find
	Rachel:	If you turned on, you might be able to see properly.
4	Claire:	I've never met your brother.
	Mark:	Oh, he's usually very busy because he runs But he's been ill recently.
		The doctor has ordered him to spend resting.
5	Daniel:	How did your interview go?
	Emma:	Well, I didn't get the job. I think they really wanted someone with of
		the work, and that's what I haven't got. So it was a bit of a waste of time. And the train

#### 3 Countable or uncountable? (A-D)

Complete Claire's postcard to her sister. Choose the correct form.

The island is very peaceful. ( ) Life/A life is good here. Everybody moves at a nice slow pace. People have (1) time/a time to stop and talk. It's (2) experience/an experience I won't forget for a long time. There aren't many shops, so I can't spend all my money, although I did buy (3) painting/a painting yesterday. Now I'm sitting on the beach reading (4) paper/a paper. The hotel breakfast is so enormous that I don't need to have lunch. I've just brought (5) orange/an orange with me to eat later. I've been trying all the different (6) fruit/fruits grown in this part of the world, and they're all delicious.

## 79 Agreemen

#### A Subject and verb

Look at these examples of agreement between the subject (e.g. the window) and the verb (e.g. is).

SINGULAR

The window is open. She was upset. It has been raining. The soup tastes good. This method doesn't work.

After a singular or an uncountable noun and after **he**, **she** or **it**, we use a singular verb.

PLURAL

The windows are open.
The door and the window are open.

Her eyes were wet.

They have got wet.

The biscuits taste good.

These methods don't work. After a plural noun or they, and after nouns joined by and, we use a plural verb.

#### B Everyone, something, every, all, etc

After everyone, something, nothing, etc, we use a singular verb (see also Unit 103C).

Everyone was pleased. Something is wrong.

But compare these examples with every, each and all.

After a phrase with **every** or **each**, we use a singular verb.

Every seat has a number.

Each door is a different colour.

After all and a plural noun, we use a plural verb,

All the seats have a number.

#### C One of, a number of and a lot of

After **one** of ..., we use a singular verb. **One** of the photos is missing.

After a number of ..., we normally use a plural verb. *A number of questions were asked.* 

After a lot of ..., the verb agrees with the noun.

Every year a lot of **pollution is** created, and a lot of **trees are** cut down.

#### D Any of, either of, neither of and none of

When a plural noun comes after any of, either of, neither of or none of,

we can use either a singular or a plural verb. Is/Are any of these old maps worth keeping? I wonder if either of those alternatives is/are a good idea. Neither of these cameras works/work properly. None of the plants has/have grown very much.

#### E An amount + a singular verb

After an amount of money, a distance, a weight or a length of time, we normally use a singular verb.

Eight pounds seems a fair price. A hundred metres isn't far to swim.

*Ninety kilos is too heavy for me to lift. Five minutes doesn't seem long to wait.* We are talking about the amount as a whole, not the individual pounds or metres.

#### 1 Subject and verb (A)

Mark and Sarah are in an antique shop. Complete the conversation by choosing the correct form of the verb.

Sarah: This table (▶) <u>is/are</u> lovely.

Mark: Yes, the wood (1) is/are beautiful, isn't it?

Sarah: The style and the colour (2) is/are both perfect for what we want.

Mark: These chairs (3) <u>looks/look</u> very stylish, too, but they (4) <u>is/are</u> rather expensive.

Sarah: Can you see if the table (5) <u>has/have</u> got a price on?

Mark: Yes, it has. It says it (6)  $\frac{\cos t}{200}$  £2,000. That's ridiculous.

Sarah: Don't you think prices (7) <u>has/have</u> gone up recently? Those tables we saw last month (8) wasn't/weren't so expensive.

#### 2 Everyone, every, etc and phrases with of (B-D)

Vicky has been to a very grand party. She is telling her parents about it. Put in was or were.

#### 3 Agreement (A-D)

The BBC is making a documentary about police work. A policeman is talking about his job. Choose the correct form.

- ► Every policeman <u>is/are</u> given special training for the job.
- 1 No two days are the same. Each day <u>is/are</u> different.
- 2 But the job isn't/aren't as exciting or glamorous as some people think.
- 3 Not all policemen is/are allowed to carry guns.
- 4 A number of police officers here <u>works/work</u> with dogs.
- 5 An officer and his dog <u>has/have</u> to work closely together.
- 6 One of our jobs <u>is/are</u> to prevent crime happening in the first place.
- 7 A lot of crime <u>is/are</u> caused by people being careless.
- 8 Sorry, I have to go now. Someone <u>has/have</u> just reported a robbery.

#### 4 An amount + a singular verb (E)

Combine the questions and answers about travel and holidays into one sentence using is or are.

- ? Do you know the price of a room? ~ Fifty pounds.
  - Fifty pounds is the price of a room.
- ? How many public holidays are there?  $\sim$  Ten days in the year.

Ten days in the year are public holidays.

- 1 Are you going on a long walk? ~ Fifteen miles.
- 2 Who's travelling on the bus? ~ Eight students.
- 3 Was someone waiting for the museum to open? ~ Yes, three people.
- 4 Do you know the baggage allowance? ~ Twenty kilos.

## 80 Singular or plural?

#### A Clothes, etc

Some nouns have only a plural form (with s) and take a plural verb.

The clothes were in the dryer, NOT The clothe was ...

The goods have been sent to you direct from our factory, NOT The good has ...

My belongings are all packed up in suitcases.

PLURAL NOUNS

arms (weapons), belongings (the things you own), clothes, congratulations, contents (what is inside something), customs (bringing things into a country), earnings (money you earn), goods (products, things for sale), outskirts (the outer part of a town), remains (what is left), surroundings (the environment, the things around you), thanks, troops (soldiers)

Some nouns have both a singular and a plural form with a difference in meaning.

SINGULAR

Our special price is £10 cheaper than normal. So don't miss this **saving** of £10.

The storm did a lot of damage to buildings.

I've got a pain in my back. It really hurts.

PLURAL

My savings are in the bank. I'm going to take out all the money and buy a new car.

The newspaper had to pay £2 million in damages after printing untrue stories about a politician.

I checked the figures carefully three times. I took great **pains** to get them exactly right.

#### B News, etc

Some nouns have a plural form (with s) but take a singular verb.

The **news was** worse than I had expected, NOT The news were ...

Economics is a difficult subject, NOT Economics are ...

NOUNS TAKING A SINGULAR VERB

The word news

The subjects economics, mathematics/maths, physics, politics and statistics

The activities athletics and gymnastics

The games billiards and darts

The illness measles

#### C Means, etc

Some nouns ending in s have the same singular and plural form.

This means of transport saves energy. Both means of transport save energy. This species of insect is quite rare. All these species of insect are quite rare.

NOUNS WITH ONE FORM

crossroads, means, series (e.g. a series of TV documentaries), species (kind, type)

Works (a factory) and headquarters (a main office) take either a singular or a plural verb. The steel works has/have closed down.

#### 1 Clothes, etc (A)

Put in the nouns and add *s* if necessary.

- ► Claire had to take her luggage through *customs* (custom).
- 1 Please accept this gift as an expression of our......(thank).
- 2 The woman is demanding......(damage) for her injuries.
- 3 The .....(pain) was so bad I called the doctor.
- 4 The old man carried his few (belonging) in a plastic bag.
- 5 If we pay in cash, we make a ...... (saving) of ten per cent.
- 6 More (good) should be transported by rail instead of by road.

physics

- 8 We're going to spend all our ...... (saving) on a new car.
- 9 The company always takes ...... (pain) to protect its image.

#### 2 News, etc (B)

Look at each group of words and say what they are part of. Start your answers like this: *ath..., eco..., geo..., his..., mat..., phy...* 

- ▶ atoms, energy, heat, light
- 1 algebra, numbers, shapes, sums
- 2 dates, nations, past times, wars
- 3 the high jump, the long jump, running, throwing ......
- 4 industry, money, prices, work
- 5 the climate, the earth, mountains, rivers

#### 3 Clothes, news, etc (A-B)

Choose the correct verb form.

- ► The television news <u>is/are</u> at ten o'clock.
- 1 These clothes <u>is/are</u> the latest fashion.
- 2 Maths <u>is/are</u> Emma's favourite subject.
- 3 The troops <u>was/were</u> involved in a training exercise.
- 4 The contents of the briefcase <u>seems/seem</u> to have disappeared.
- 5 Darts is/are often played in pubs in England.
- 6 The athletics we watched was/were quite exciting.
- 7 The remains of the meal was/were thrown in the bin.

#### 4 Clothes, news, means, etc (A-C)

Complete this letter Rachel has received from her sister. Choose the correct forms.

- (▶)<u>Thank/Thanks</u> for your letter. Your news (1) <u>was/were</u> interesting. We must talk soon.
- What about us? Well, we're living on the (2) outskirt/outskirts of town, not far from the company
- (3) <u>headquarter/headquarters</u>, where Jeremy works. We've spent nearly all our (4) <u>saving/savings</u> on the house. That wouldn't matter so much if I hadn't crashed the car last week and done some
- (5) <u>damage/damages</u> to the front of it. More bills! But at least I wasn't hurt. The house is nice actually, but the surroundings (6) isn't/aren't very pleasant. We're on a very busy (7) crossroad/crossroads.

I'm doing the course I told you about. Statistics (8) <u>is/are</u> an easy subject, I find, but economics (9) gives/give me problems!

## 81 Pair nouns and group nouns

#### Pair nouns

We use a pair noun for a thing made of two parts which are the same. Some pair nouns are binoculars, glasses, jeans, pants, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, tights, trousers.

A pair noun is plural and takes a plural verb. My jeans need washing, NOT my jean
These tights were quite expensive, NOT this tight
We've got some scissors somewhere, NOT a scissor?



jeans scissors glasses binoculars

We cannot use a/an or a number with a pair noun. But we can use pair of. I need some jeans, OR I need a pair of jeans, NOT a jean-Laura bought four pairs of tights, NOT four tights

#### **B** Group nouns

A group noun can usually take either a singular or a plural verb.

The team was playing well, OR The team were playing well.

The government is in crisis, OR The government are in crisis.

The choice depends on whether we see the group as a whole or as individual people. Often it doesn't matter whether the verb is singular or plural. But sometimes one form is better than the other.

SINGULAR

The family is a very old and famous one.
The orchestra consists of eighty-six musicians.
When we mean the group as a whole, we use a singular verb.

We use it and its.

The committee has made its decision.

PLURAL

The family are delighted with their presents.

The orchestra don't know what to play.

When we mean the individual people in the group, we normally use the plural.

We use they, them and their.

The class will miss their lessons because they are all going on a trip.

Some group nouns: army, audience, band, board, choir, class, club, committee, community, company, council, crew, crowd, family, government, group, management, orchestra, population, press (= newspapers), public, staff, team, union Also: Harrods, the BBC, the United Nations, etc and England (the England team), Manchester United

#### C Police, people and cattle

These nouns have a plural meaning and take a plural verb.

The police have warned motorists to take extra care. People
don't know what the future will bring. The cattle are going
to be sold with the farm.

page 379 Group nouns in American English

#### 1 Pair nouns (A)

Trevor and Laura are shopping for clothes. Choose the correct form.

Trevor: These trousers (▶)is/are a bit tight. They (1) doesn't/don't feel very comfortable. And I think the blue ones (2) goes/go better with the jacket.

Laura: That jacket (3) is/are too long.

Trevor: Well, the jeans (4) fits/fit all right. Perhaps I'll buy the jeans instead. Laura: Yes, the jeans (5)

looks/look good on you. I like the style. I think they (6) suits/suit you. Now you

get changed while I look for (7) a/some shorts. And I might get (8) a/some skirt.

#### 2 Pair nouns (A)

Complete what Rachel says to Vicky. Put one word in each space.

This old suitcase was in the corridor. I don't know who left it here. It's been here for about three days, so I'm having a look inside. There's a pair (▶) of pyjamas, (1)........... jeans, two (2).............. of tight sanda (3)......... of sunglasses. There are (4)....... red shorts, too.



#### 3 Group nouns (B)

Complete this TV news report. Choose the correct form of the verb.

Zedco (▶) <u>have/has</u> just announced that it made a loss of £35 million last year. The management (1) <u>is/are</u> well aware that they have made mistakes. The press (2) <u>have/has</u> all been printing stories and articles critical of the company. The Zedco board (3) <u>knows/know</u> that they now have some difficult decisions to take. Naturally, the staff (4) <u>is/are</u> worried about their jobs and (5) <u>wants/want</u> a meeting with management as soon as possible. But Chief Executive Barry Douglas says things aren't really so bad. He has said that the company still (6) has/have a great future ahead of it.

#### 4 Group nouns (B-C)

Put in a group noun and is or are. Use these nouns: cattle, choir, crew, crowd, orchestra, police, population, team

► The <i>crowd are</i> all enjoying the game.
---

1	This United	the	bes	t one	Iom	has ever se	een.
---	-------------	-----	-----	-------	-----	-------------	------

- 2 The ......hoping they can take part in a national singing contest.
- 3 The ship's..... all very tired after a long sea voyage.
- 4 The..... one of the biggest that has played at one of our concerts.
- 5 The .....installing cameras to photograph speeding motorists.
- 6 At the moment beef ...... cheap because sales of beef are low.
- 7 The country's \_\_\_\_\_\_growing rapidly because of immigration.

## 82 Two nouns together

#### A Introduction

Look at these phrases.

a bread knife= a knife for cutting breada cookery book= a book about cookerya bus driver= someone who drives a busmy birthday party= a party on my birthdaythe street lights= the lights in the streeta paper bag= a bag made of paper

In English we often use one noun before another like this.

The two nouns are often written as separate words, but we sometimes use a hyphen (-), or we write them as a single word.

a tea break at the tea-table a large teapot

There are no exact rules about whether we join the words or not. If you are unsure, it is usually safest to write two separate words.

#### B A souvenir shop, etc

Look at these examples.

a souvenir shop = a shop selling souvenirs an animal hospital = a hospital for animals through the letter-box = a box for letters

The first noun is usually singular. There are some exceptions, e.g. a sports dub, a goods train, a clothes-brush, a sales conference.

#### C A teacup and a cup of tea

Look at these pictures.



a teacup



a cup of tea

A teacup is a cup for holding tea.

A cup of tea is a cup full of tea (see Unit 11

Here are some more examples.

/ picked **up a cigarette packet.**I'll wash the **milk bottle.** 

Gary opened a **packet of cigarettes**. There's a **bottle of milk** in the fridge.

#### D An ing-form + a noun

We can use an ing-form with a noun.

a sleeping-bag - a bag for sleeping in a waiting-room - a room for waiting in a washing-machine = a machine for washing clothes

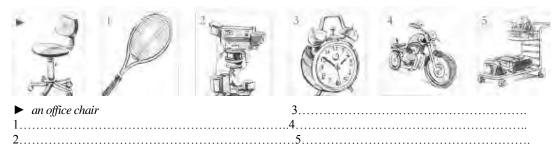
#### E Longer phrases

We can use more than two nouns.

a glass coffee-table at Sydney Opera House the bedroom carpet the winter bus timetable our Assistant Computer Technology Manager

#### i Two nouns together (A)

Say what these things are. For each picture use two of these nouns: alarm, camera, chair, clock, cycle, luggage, motor, office, racket, television, tennis, trolley



#### 2 Two nouns together (A-D)

Can you say it a better way? Use two nouns together.

- ► (I read an interesting article in a newspaper yesterday.)

  / read an interesting newspaper article yesterday.
- 1 (Have you got any shirts made of cotton?)
- 2 (What shall I do with this bottle that had lemonade in it?;
- 3 (Have you got a bag to carry shopping in?)
- 4 (Is there a shop that sells shoes near here?)
- 5 (I'd like a table in the corner, please.)
- 6 (I'll need some boots to climb in.)
- 7 (Do you operate computers?)

#### 3 Two nouns together (A-E)

Look at the definitions and write the words.

- ? a station from which trains leave
- ? a bottle once containing medicine and made of glass a glass medicine bottle

a train station

- 1 a wall made of stone
- 2 a centre where information is given to tourists
- 3 a towel you use after having a bath
- 4 clothes for working in
- 5 a block of offices in the centre of a city
- 6 a graph showing sales
- 7 a card that gives you credit
- 8 a race for horses
- 9 the Director of Marketing
- 10 a tour by bicycle at the end of the week

## TEST 14 Nouns and agreement (Units 76-82)

/

a

#### Test 14A

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ? Would you like a piece of chocolate?
- ? I like a classical music very much.
- 1 That's a wonderful news!
- 2 Do you own a computer?
- 3 I heard an interesting piece of information today.
- 4 I saw your friend playing a golf.
- 5 There's some luggage in the car.
- 6 I bought a carton of some milk.
- 7 The gates were made of an iron.
- 8 You need an experience to run a business like this.

#### Test 14 B

Tessa is talking about her shopping trip. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

#### Test 14C

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► Could I have some bread, please? (piece) Could I have a piece of bread, please?
- 1 All the windows were broken, (every)
- 2 The money I earn isn't enough to live on. (earnings)
- 3 There were bits of paper everywhere, (litter)
- 4 We went to the hotel to get a meal, (food)
- 5 Judy bought some binoculars, (pair)
- 6 I need a new book of cheques, (cheque)
- 7 I'll have some orange juice, please, (glass)
- 8 The reporter needed some information, (two)

#### Test 14 D

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

- ► Can you lend me some pen to write this cheque? Can you lend me a pen to write this cheque?
- 1 We can't sit here because the grass are wet.
- 2 Do you want a butter on your bread?
- 3 All my belonging was stolen.
- 4 Do you have any informations about hotels?
- 5 The police is questioning two men.
- 6 Can we have two coffee, please?
- 7 The news aren't very good, I'm afraid.
- 8 I just want to go into this shoes shop.
- 9 It's only a short travel by train.

#### Test 14E

Choose the correct form.

- ► The house is built of stone/a stone.
- 1 Each team wear/wears a different colour.
- 2 Let me give you an advice/a piece of advice.
- 3 Everyone was watching the football match/the match of football.
- 4 We had to take our luggage through customs/a customs.
- 5 The band <u>is/are</u> proud of their success.
- 6 I haven't got many/much friends.
- 7 Three hours is/are long enough to look round the museum.
- 8 I wear this glass/these glasses when I go out.
- 9 My father had a job at the steelwork/steelworks.
- 10 We couldn't find an/any accommodation.
- 11 Do you eat meat/a meat?
- 12 The contents of the box was/were thrown away.
- 13 Noise/A noise woke me up in the middle of the night.
- 14 Cattle was/were driven hundreds of miles by the cowboys.
- 15 One of the windows is/are open.
- 16 What would it be like to travel at the speed of <u>light/a light?</u>
- 17 Is there a sport club/sports club near here?
- 18 E-mail is a relatively new mean/means of communication.
- 19 We make furniture out of many different wood/woods.
- 20 Someone has/have kidnapped the President!

## 83 A/an and the (1)

#### A Introduction

Read this true story about an American tourist in Britain.

A man from California was spending a month in Britain. One day he booked into a hotel in Cheltenham, a nice old town in the West of England. Then he went out to look around the place. But the man didn't return to the hotel. He disappeared, leaving a suitcase full of clothes behind. The police were called in, but they were unable to find out what had happened to the missing tourist. It was a mystery. But two weeks later the man walked into the police station in Cheltenham. He explained that he was very sorry, but while walking around the town, he had got lost. He had also forgotten the name of the hotel he had booked into. So he had decided to continue with his tour of the country and had gone to visit a friend in Scotland before returning to pick up the case he had left behind.

**A/an** goes only with a singular noun. With a plural or an uncountable noun we use **some**. *He left a case*, (singular) *He left some cases*, (plural) *He left some luggage*, (uncountable)

The goes with both singular and plural nouns and with uncountable nouns.

He needed the case, (singular)
He needed the cases, (plural)
He needed the luggage, (uncountable)

#### **B** Use

When the story first mentions something, the noun has a or an.

A man booked into a hotel in Cheltenham.

These phrases are new information. We do not know which man or which hotel. But when the same thing is mentioned again, the noun has **the.** 

The man didn't return to the hotel.

These phrases are old information. Now we know which man and which hotel - the ones already mentioned earlier in the story. We use **the** when it is clear which one we mean.

A/AN

Would you like to see a show?
(I don't say which show.)
The cyclist was hit by a car.
(I don't say which car.)
In the office a phone was ringing.
(The office has lots of phones.)
Has Melanie got a garden?
(We do not know if there is one.)
The train stopped at a station.
(We don't know which station.)
We took a taxi.
We could hear a noise.

THE

Would you like to see the show?
(= the show we already mentioned)
Whose is the car outside?
('Outside' explains which car I mean.
/ was in bed when the phone rang.
{— the phone in my house)
She was at home in the garden.
(We know she has one.)
Turn left here for the station.
(= the station in this town)
We went in the car. (= my/our car)
We could hear the noise of a party.
I wrote it on the back of an envelope.

#### C A man/he and the man/someone

We use a/an + noun or someone/something when we aren't saying which one.

A man/Someone booked into a hotel. He left a case/something behind.

I wrote the number on an envelope.

We use **the** + noun or **he/she/it** when we know which one.

The man/He didn't return to the hotel.
The case/It contained clothes.

#### 1 The use of a/an and the (A-C)

Complete this true story. Put in a/an or the.

(►A man decided to rob (1) bank in the town where he lived. He walked into (2)
bank and handed (3) note to one of (4) cashiers. (5) cashier
read (6) note, which told her to give (7) man some money. Afraid that he might
have (8) gun, she did as she was told. (9) man then walked out
of(10) building, leaving (11)note behind. However, he had no time to
spend (12) same day. He had
made (14) mistake. He had written (15) note on (16) back
of (17) envelope. And on (18) other side of (19) envelope was
his name and address. This clue was quite <i>enough for</i> (20)

#### 2 A man/he and the man/someone (C)

Replace the sentences which contain an <u>underlined</u> word. Use *a/an* or *the* with the word in brackets.

- ► We didn't have much time for lunch. David made <u>something</u> for us. (omelette) *David made an omelette for us.*
- 1 They ran the race before they held the long jump. Matthew won it easily, (race)
- 2 The driver turned left. Suddenly <u>someone</u> ran into the road, (child)
- 3 Vicky was lying on the sofa. She was watching something on television, (film)
- 4 I had to take a train and then a bus. It was half an hour late, (bus)
- 5 A shoplifter tried to steal some clothes. The camera videoed her, (thief)

#### 3 The use of a/an and the (A-C)

Complete the conversations. Put in a/an or the.

<b>•</b>	Laura:	Look outside. The sky is getting very dark.
	Trevor:	I hope there isn't going to be a storm.
1	Mike:	I'm going out for walk. Have you seen my shoes?
	Harriet:	Yes, they're on floor in kitchen.
2	Melanie:	Would you like tomato? There's one in fridge.
	David:	Oh, yes, please. I'll make myself cheese and tomato sandwich.
3	Sarah:	If you're going intocity centre, can you post these letters for me?
	Mark:	Yes, I'll take them to main post office.
4	Rita:	I've got problem with my phone bill. Can I see someone about it?
	Receptionist:	Yes, go to fifth floorlift is along the corridor.
5	Tom:	I didn't know Melanie had dog.
	David:	It isn't hers. She's just taking it for a walk while owner is away.
6	Vicky:	I've got headache. I've had it all day.
	Rachel:	Why don't you go tohealth centre? It's open until six.
7	Andrew:	Guess what. I found£50 note on the pavement this morning.
	Jessica:	You really ought to take it topolice station, you know.

## 84 A/an and the (2)

#### A Introduction

We use **a/an** and **the** when we aren't saying which one, and we use **the** when we know which one. A *tourist* arrived in Cheltenham to look around the town.

Look again at the story and the examples in Unit 83.

#### B The sun, etc

When there is only one of the things we are talking about, we use the.

The sun was going down. The government is unpopular.

A drive in **the country** would be nice. We shouldn't pollute **the environment**. Normally there is only one sun or one government in the context. We mean the government of our country and the sun in our solar system.

We normally say: the country(side), the earth, the environment, the government, the moon, the ozone layer, the Prime Minister, the sea(side), the sky, the sun, the weather

We also use the with cinema, theatre and (news)paper.

Do you often go to the cinema? I read about the accident in the paper.

Note that we say a/the police officer but the police.

A police officer came to the hotel. NOT A police came to the hotel. The police came to the hotel. (= one or more police officers)

#### C A nice day, etc

A phrase which describes something has a/an.

It was a lovely day. Cheltenham is a nice old town.

It's a big hotel. This is a better photo.

But we use **the** with a superlative.

It's the biggest hotel in town. This is the best photo.

We also use a/an to classify something, to say what kind of thing it is.

The play was a comedy. The man's disappearance was a mystery.

We use a/an to say what someone's job is.

My sister is a secretary. Nick is a car salesman.

#### D A or an?

The choice of **a** or **an** and the pronunciation of **the** depend on the next sound.

a or the + consonant sound		an or the + vowel sound	
<b>a</b> cup	the cup	<b>an</b> aspirin	the aspirin
<b>a</b> poster	the poster	an egg	the egg
<b>a</b> shop	etc	<b>an</b> Indian	etc
<b>a</b> boiled egg		<b>an</b> old photo	
a record		<b>an</b> umbrella	

It is the sound of the next word that matters, not the spelling.

a one-way street	<b>an</b> open door
a uniform	<b>an</b> uncle
a holiday	<b>an</b> hour
a U-turn	an MP

8 a Member of Parliament

#### The sun, etc (A-B) Complete these sentences about pollution and the environment. Put in a/an or the. There was a programme on television about dangers to the environment. There was also ...... article about pollution in paper. ......ozone layer will continue to disappear if we don't find way to stop it. ......world's weather is changing. Pollution is having ...... effect on our climate. 4 Last week ...... oil tanker spilled oil into ...... sea, damaging wildlife. 6 If..... earth was ...... human being, it would be in hospital. 2 The use of a/an and the (A-C) Complete the conversations. Put in a/an or the. ▶ David: How was your trip to the coast? Trevor Wonderful. The sun shone all 1 Henry: day. We had a great time. Nick: Would you like ..... cigarette? 2 Sarah: No, thanks. I've given up smoking. It's ..... bad habit. Laura: What's your brother doing now? Has he got ..... good job? Yes, he's.... soldier. He's in ..... army. He loves it. 3 Rita: It's ..... great life, he says. I went to see Doctor Pascoe yesterday. She's ..... best doctor I've ever had. Harriet: She's very nice, isn't she? You couldn't meet ..... nicer person. 4 Rachel: supermarket. You were ...... long time at ..... Vicky: Mark: Yes, I know. There was ...... enormous queue. I was thinking of complaining to..... manager. Sarah: Why were you late for your meeting? Well, first I had to go to ...... hotel I'd booked into. I took..... taxi from ...... airport, and ..... driver got completely lost. It was ...... terrible nuisance ...... man was ...... complete idiot. 6 Matthew: Is this .....book you were telling me about? Emma: Yes, it's..... really interesting story. Matthew: What did you say it's about? Emma: I knew you weren't listening to me. It's..... science fiction story. It's about ..... beginning of ..... universe. 3 A or an? (D) Put in the abbreviations with a or an. ? a Personal Assistant a PA? a National Broadcasting Company reporter an NBC reporter 1 a Disc Jockey 2 a Very Important Person 3 an Irish Republican Army member 4 a Personal Computer 5 a Los Angeles suburb 6 an Unidentified Flying Object 7 an Annual General Meeting

## 85 A/an, one and some

#### A A/an and some

Look at this example.

Trevor has found some money in his old trousers.

There's a note and some coins.

We use a/an with a singular noun and some with a plural

or an uncountable noun (see D).

A + singular noun: a note
Some + plural noun: some coins
Some + uncountable noun: some money

#### B A/an and one

A/an and one both refer to one thing. Using one puts more emphasis on the number.

Henry gave the taxi driver **a note**, (not a coin) Henry gave the taxi driver **one note**, (not two)

We use **one** (not **a/an**) when we mean one of a larger number.

One question/One of the questions in the exam was more difficult than the others. The team wasn't at full strength. One player/One of the players was injured.

#### C A dog = all dogs

We often use a plural noun on its own to express a general meaning (see Unit 86).

**Dogs** make wonderful pets. **Oranges** contain vitamin C.

Here dogs means all dogs, dogs in general.

These sentences with a/an express the same general meaning.

A dog makes a wonderful pet. An orange contains vitamin C.

A butcher is someone who sells meat. A video recorder costs about £300.

A **dog** here is less usual than the structure with **dogs**, but we often use **a/an** when explaining the meaning of a word, e.g. **a butcher**.

#### D Some

Some with a plural noun means 'a number of, and some with an uncountable noun means 'an amount of.

Claire took some photos. We went out with some friends.

Henry bought some flowers. I had some chips with my steak.

Can you lend me some money? Andrew is doing some work.

Let's play some music. There's some milk in the fridge.

Claire took some photos means that she took a number of photos, although we may not know the exact number.

We do not use **some** when we are describing something or saying what kind of thing it is.

Vicky has blue eyes. Is this salt or sugar?

These are marvellous photos. Those people are tourists.

Compare these sentences.

*I had some chips with my steak*, (a number of chips)

I had chips with my steak, (chips, not potatoes or rice)

76 Countable and uncountable nouns 83-4 A/an and the 94 Some and any 96 All, most and some

### i A/an and some (A)

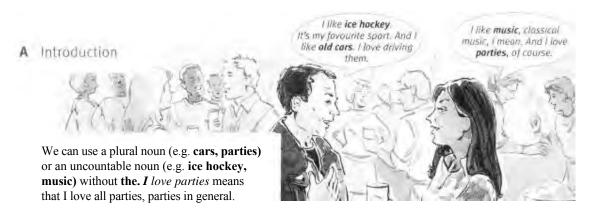
2

3

Paul has painted some pictures for a competition. Say what is in the pictures. Use a or some with these words: birds, cat, fish, flowers, fruit, luggage, people

? 1 2 3 4	some people a fish
Α/:	an and one (B)
1 2 3	t in a/an or one.  Have you only got one bedroom? I thought you had two.  Melanie wanted something to drink. She was looking for
Ma car vic que atla	Alog = all dogs (C)         atch each word with the right explanation and write sentences with a/an.         rot line of people   ► A carrot is a vegetable.         olin book of maps   1
So	me (D)
?	hat would you say in these situations? Use a noun and decide if you need <i>some</i> or not. You and your friend would like a game of cards, but neither of you has a pack. We need <i>some cards</i> . You are describing Rachel to someone. Rachel's hair is dark. Rachel has <i>dark hair</i> .
1	You are eating nuts. Offer them to your friend. Would you like?
	You want a drink of mineral water. There's a jug on the table, but you don't know what's in it Is there in this jug?
3	You've come home from a shopping trip with a few clothes. Tell your friend.  I've bought
4	You are eating some bread that Melanie baked. It's lovely.  Melanie, this is
J	Tell your visitor. The women next door are

## 86 Cars or the cars?



#### B General and specific meanings

GENERAL

A plural noun or an uncountable noun on its own has a general meaning.

Cars are expensive to buy.

Elephants are intelligent animals.

I don't understand computers.

(= all computers, computers in general)

You always need money.

Glass is made from sand.

I'm quite fond of curry.

Natasha is studying music.

(= all music, music in general)

#### **SPECIFIC**

**The** + plural noun or uncountable noun has a specific meaning.

The cars had both broken down.

We saw the elephants at the zoo.

The computers crashed at work today.

(— the specific computers at my workplace)

Laura put the money in her purse.

David swept up the broken glass.

*The curry* was delicious, thank you.

**The music** was too loud. (= the music at a specific time, at a party for example)

A phrase or clause after the noun often shows that it is specific.

Look at the oil on your sweater. The apples you gave me were nice. But the nouns in these sentences have a general meaning.

/ hate people who never say hello. Life in the old days was hard.

Life in the old days is still a general idea, not a specific life.

A phrase with of usually takes **the.** Compare these two structures. a book on **Irish history** a book on **the history of Ireland** 

#### Special uses of the

We use **the** + singular noun to make general statements about animals and about inventions and discoveries.

The tiger can swim. The fly is a common insect.

Who invented **the camera?** The electron is a part of every atom.

Here **the tiger** means all tigers, tigers in general. We use this structure mainly in written English. In speech, *Tigers can swim* is more usual.

We also use **the** with musical instruments. (But for American English see page 379.)

*Natasha can play the piano, the violin and the clarinet.* We do not use **the** with sports.

Shall we play **tennis?** NOT Shall we play the tennis? Note that we listen to the radio but normally watch television.

## 1 He likes golf (A)

Look at the pictures and say what people like. Use these objects: art, chemistry, chips, dogs, golf











2 Ge	eneral an	d specific meanings (B)
Co	omplete the	e conversations. Put in the nouns and decide if you need <i>the</i> .
$\blacktriangleright$	Tom:	Did you see the football (football) on television last night?
	Melanie:	No, I hate football (football). I was watching the news (news) on the other channel.
1	Rachel:	Did your family have a dog when you were younger?
	Vicky:	No, thank goodness. I'm afraid of
2	Melanie:	You shouldn't drive so much, Mark. You know that
-	Wicialite.	cause(pollution), don't you?
	Mark:	Yes, but
		Isn't it
		for(pollution) of the atmosphere?
3	Melanie:	I've put some bread out in the garden for
	Tom:	You like(birds), don't you?
	Melanie:	Yes, I do. I love (wildlife), in fact. I'd much rather live in the
		country if I could.
4	Laura:	You're always reading books about (history), aren't you?
	Harriet:	It was always my favourite subject. Do you know anything
		about(history) of this area?
	Laura:	No, but if you like looking round (museums) and
		(old buildings), we could find out about it together.
3	Special 1	uses of the (C)
	1	
		rrect noun and decide if you need <i>the</i> .
		uns: atom, football, guitar, radio, telescope, television
		ening to a phone-in on the radio.
1		d split in 1911.
2		his friends played in the park.
3	iviike is q	uite musical. He can play

## 87 Prison, school, bed, etc

#### A Prison or the prison?

Compare these situations.



This man is in prison. He went to prison two years ago.

We do not use **the** when we are talking about being in prison as a prisoner.

Here are some examples with other buildings. **School** is over at half past three. (= school activities) Vicky is at college. (She is a student there.) David is in hospital. (He is a patient.) Melanie is going to church. (She is going to a service.)



The young woman is in the prison. She has gone to the prison to visit her father. We use the when we mean the prison as a specific building. The young woman is in the prison as a visitor.

*The school* is a mile from here. (= the school building) The meeting was at the college.

Melanie waited in the hospital for news.

We wanted to look round the church, but it was locked.

We can also use jail and university in this way. But we do not leave out the before other nouns for buildings, e.g. the cinema, the factory, the house, the library, the office, the pub, the shop, the station.

#### B Bed, home, etc

Here are some phrases with other nouns.

in bed, go to bed (to rest or sleep) bed:

at home, go home, come home, leave home home:

sea: at sea (= sailing)

go to sea (as a sailor)

in town, go into town, leave town town: work:

at work, go to work, leave work

But sit on the bed, make the bed But in the house, to the house, in the home But on the sea, by the sea, at/to the seaside, on/to the coast

But the town centre, the city, the village

But the office, the factory

page 379 American English

## 1 Prison or the prison? (A)

Put in the words in brackets. Decide if you need *the*.

1 Not many people go to		► The four members of the gang were sent to <i>prison</i> (prison). Their wives drove together to <i>the prison</i> (prison) every week to visit their husbands.		
to				
2 A group of people came out of		1		
When my father was ill and had to go to		2		
3 When my father was ill and had to go to		_		
the ambulance. She's a doctor, and she works at		2	4 /	
4 Mark has always known what he wanted to do in life. After leaving		5		
2 Prison, school, etc (A-B)  Complete this paragraph from a magazine article about Melissa Livingstone. Put in the words with or without the.  Today Melissa Livingstone is a popular actress and star of the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she never went to (1)		1		
2 Prison, school, etc (A-B)  Complete this paragraph from a magazine article about Melissa Livingstone. Put in the words with or without the.  Today Melissa Livingstone is a popular actress and star of the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she never went to (1)		4		
Complete this paragraph from a magazine article about Melissa Livingstone. Put in the words with or without the.  Today Melissa Livingstone is a popular actress and star of the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she never went to (1)			ne took a course in business studies at(conlege).	
in the words with or without the.  Today Melissa Livingstone is a popular actress and star of the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'.  But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she never went to (1)	2	Prison, school, etc (A-B)		
But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she never went to (1)				
to(2)		But as a child she was very unhappy. She didn't do well at (>) school (school), and she		
to(3)				
at(4)				
he didn't do very much. Sometimes he spent all day in (6)				
Susan, had to get up at five o'clock every day to go to (7)		he		
job he stole a gold cup from (8)				
to (9)				
brought on the family.  3 Prison, school, etc (A-B)  Complete the sentences. Use in, at or to and these words: bed, church, college, factory, home, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work Decide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed		-		
Complete the sentences. Use in, at or to and these words: bed, church, college, factory, home, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work Decide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed		br		
Complete the sentences. Use in, at or to and these words: bed, church, college, factory, home, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work Decide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed				
Complete the sentences. Use in, at or to and these words: bed, church, college, factory, home, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work Decide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed	3	3 P	rison. school. etc (A-B)	
bed, church, college, factory, home, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work  Decide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed				
Poecide if you need the.  ? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later. ? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed			•	
<ul> <li>? We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later.</li> <li>? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.</li> <li>1 The weather was awful. We stayed</li></ul>				
? This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.  1 The weather was awful. We stayed		Decide if you need <i>me</i> .		
1 The weather was awful. We stayed		?	We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you in town later.	
2 Melanie had an early night last night. She was		?	This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.	
<ul> <li>3 Emma's friend has just had a baby. Emma is goingto visit her.</li> <li>4 Vicky's parents are religious. They goevery Sunday.</li> <li>5 Laura doesn't like her job. She just goesto earn some money.</li> <li>6 I've read these books. I'm taking them back</li></ul>		1	The weather was awful. We stayedall weekend.	
4 Vicky's parents are religious. They go		2	Melanie had an early night last night. She was at ten.	
5 Laura doesn't like her job. She just goesto earn some money. 6 I've read these books. I'm taking them back		3	Emma's friend has just had a baby. Emma is going to visit her.	
6 I've read these books. I'm taking them back		4	Vicky's parents are religious. They go every Sunday.	
7 The man who did the robbery is no longerHe was let out last month.		5	Laura doesn't like her job. She just goesto earn some money.	
		6	I've read these books. I'm taking them back	
		7	The man who did the robbery is no longerHe was let out last month.	
8 Jessica is a student. She's		8	Jessica is a student. She's	
9 It's very quietwhen they've turned all the machines off.		9	It's very quietwhen they've turned all the machines off.	

## 88 On Friday, for lunch, etc

#### Introduction

Don't forget we're meeting on Friday for lunch.

Sarah: Of course I haven't forgotten.

But remind me where we're eating.

Henry: The Riverside Restaurant. You've been there before.

Claire was with us. It was the Friday before she

went to Australia. We had a good lunch.

Phrases of time are usually without a/an or the.

We're meeting on Friday for lunch.



But we use a/an or the if there is a phrase or clause after Friday, lunch, etc.

It was the Friday before she went to Australia. We normally use a/an or the if there is an adjective. We had **a** good **lunch**.

#### B Years, seasons and months

I was born in 1974.

We play cricket in summer/in the summer.

Winter always depresses me.

I start the course in **September**.

That was the year I was born. It was the winter of 1995 when things started to go wrong

#### C Special times

We go away at Christmas.

Easter is early this year.

I'll be home for Thanksgiving.

for the company.

#### Days of the week

Yes, **Thursday** will be convenient.

I'll see you on Tuesday evening.

We had a wonderful Christmas. I started work here the Easter before last.

We went surfing at the weekend.

Parts of the day and night

I can't sleep at night. I prefer to travel by day/by night.

I must get to bed before midnight.

We were on the beach at sunset. I hope to get there before dark.

It's warmer in/during the day. Someone got up in/during the night. We're meeting in the morning. They arrived at the hotel in the evening. It was a beautiful sunset. I couldn't see in the dark.

The storm was on the Thursday of that week.

#### Meals

I'll see you at breakfast. We have supper at about eight. I'm going out after lunch.

We had a quick breakfast. The supper David cooked was excellent. The meal was very nice. We'll need an evening meal.

#### 1 On Friday, etc (B-E) Complete the conversations. Put in the words and use a/an or the if you need to. ► Rachel: Is it the pop festival on *Friday* (Friday)? Vicky: I think it's the Friday (Friday) after that. 1 Henry: Will you be in America for .......(Thanksgiving)? Claire: Oh no. That's in ......(November), isn't it? 2 Nick: Are you doing anything at.....(weekend)? Tom: 3 Ilona: Emma 4 Nick: How long have you lived here? Harriet: We came here in ......(summer) of .....(1997). 5 Laura: Trevor: 6 Mark: I like driving at ......(night) when the roads are quiet. Trevor: Oh, I don't like driving in ......(dark). I'd much rather travel during ......(day). 2 A/an or the with meals (F) Laura is talking about the food she and Trevor had on holiday. Put in the words and use *a/an* or *the* if you need to. hotel, and that wasn't too bad. We usually went out for (2)......(lunch) because (3)......(lunch) they served in the hotel was always the same. And (4)......(dinner) we had at the hotel on our first evening was pretty awful, so we tried a few restaurants. On our last evening we had (5) ......................(marvellous meal) in a Chinese restaurant. I wish we'd discovered the place a bit sooner. 3 On Friday, for lunch, etc (A-F) Put in the words. Decide if you need to use the. Claire: Hello, Henry. Come in. Henry: Oh, sorry. You're having (▶) *lunch* (lunch). It was long after (2).....(midnight) when I got in. Henry: Someone told me you're going away after (3)......(Christmas). Claire: Yes, I'm going to the Seychelles on (4).....(Wednesday). Henry: What a life you lead, Claire. What time do you leave for the airport? Claire: Oh, in (5) ......(morning) some time. About ten. It's cheaper to fly at (6)..... (night), but I decided it would be easier during (7)......(day). Henry: I can drive you to the airport. I'm usually free on (8).....(Wednesday) mornings. I'd like to see you off. Claire: That's sweet of you Henry, but I can take a taxi. Henry: I'll just check in my diary that it isn't (9).......(Wednesday) of our next board meeting. No, it's OK. I can do it. And when will you be back?

## 89 Quite a, such a, what a, etc

### A Introduction

After quite, such and what we can use a phrase with a/an, e.g. a game. There is often an adjective as well, e.g. such a good team.

#### B Very, quite, rather, etc

A/an goes before very, fairly, really, etc.

It's a very old house. It's a fairly long walk.

I made a really stupid mistake.

But a/an usually goes after quite.

It's quite an old house. There was quite a crowd.

A/an can go either before or after rather.

It's a rather old house, OR It's rather an old house.

We can also use **very**, **quite**, **rather**, etc + adjective + plural or uncountable noun.

They're **very old houses**. This is quite nice coffee.



The structure is be + **so** + adjective.

The test was so easy. NOT It was a so easy test. The hill was so steep.

It's so inconvenient without a car.

The weather is so nice.

Tom's jokes are so awful.

Note these sentences with long, far, many/much and a lot of.

It's so long since I saw you.

Why are we so far from the beach?

There were so many people.

You waste so much time.

We can use this structure with so ... (that) or such ... (that).

Emma was so angry with Matthew

I was so unlucky you wouldn't believe it.

(that) she threw a plate at him.

Vicky got **such** a nice welcome (that) she almost cried.

The structure is  $\operatorname{such} + \operatorname{a/an} (+ \operatorname{adjective}) + \operatorname{noun}$ .

It was such an easy test. NOT it was a such

easy test. It was such a steep hill. It's such a

We can also use **such** + an adjective + a plural or

We're having such nice weather.

It's such a long time since I saw you.

It's such a long way to the beach.

There were **such a lot** of people.

You waste such a lot of time.

Tom tells such awful jokes.

nuisance without a car.

uncountable noun.

I had **such** bad luck you wouldn't believe it.

#### D What a

In an exclamation we can use what a/an with a singular noun and what with a plural or uncountable noun I

SUCH A/AN

+ singular noun: What a goal! **What a** good idea!

+ plural noun: What lovely flowers! What nice shoes you've got on!

+ uncountable noun: What rubbish! What fun we had!

116 Quite and rather



### Very, quite, rather, so, etc (B-C) What do you say in these situations? ? You're telling someone about the show you saw. It was quite good. You should go and see it. It's *quite a good show*. ? You are describing Harriet to someone who doesn't know her. She is fairly tall. Well, Harriet is a fairly tall woman. 1 You're talking about the Savoy Hotel, which is very grand. Yes, I know the Savoy. It's 2 You are talking about your journey. It was quite tiring. I travelled a long way. It was 3 You are telling someone about Claire's flat. It's really big. I've been to Claire's place. It's 4 You are telling a friend about your meal with Tom. It was quite nice. We went to that new restaurant. We had 2 So and such (C) Complete the conversation. Put in so or such. Sarah: Sorry I'm ( $\triangleright$ ) so late. We had ( $\triangleright$ ) such a lot to do at work. Mark: You shouldn't do (1) ..... much. Mark: Well, you shouldn't be (4)......willing to work (5)......long hours. No wonder you're (6) ..... tired. You'll make yourself ill, you know. 3 So... that and such ... that (C) Match the sentences and combine them using so or such. ? Sarah was late home. All the tickets sold out. ? Mike hadn't cooked for a long time. He wouldn't speak to anyone. 1 The piano was heavy. He'd almost forgotten how to. 2 Tom was annoyed about United losing. It kept all the neighbours awake. 3 The band was a big attraction. Mark had already gone to bed. 4 Vicky had a lot of work to do. Mike and Harriet couldn't move it. 5 The party made a lot of noise. She was sure she'd never finish it. ? Sarah was so late home that Mark had already gone to bed. ? Mike hadn't cooked for such a long time that he'd almost forgotten how to. 1. ..... 2. ..... 5. .... 4 What (D) Put in what or what a. ► Come into the sitting-room. ~ Thank you. Oh, what a nice room! 1 Vicky believes in ghosts. ~ Oh,..... nonsense she talks! 2 Let's go for a midnight swim. ~ ...... suggestion! 3 I think about you all the time, Emma. ~....lies you tell me, Matthew.

## 90 Place names and the

#### A Introduction

Man: *Could* you tell me where the Classic Cinema is, please? Rachel:

Yes, it's in **Brook Street.** Go along here and take the second left.

Whether a name has **the** depends on the kind of place it is - for example, a street (*Brook Street*) or a cinema (*the Classic Cinema*), a lake (*Lake Victoria*) or a sea (*the North Sea*).

Most place names do not have the.

Europe California Melbourne

Brook Street Lake Victoria

Some place names have  $\ensuremath{\text{the}}$  - for example, a name

with the word cinema or sea.

the Classic Cinema the North Sea

Whether we use **the** can also depend on the structure of the name.

We do not use **the** with a possessive (\*s).

at Matilda's Restaurant

We often use **the** in structures with of, with an

adjective and with plural names.

With **of:** *the Avenue of the Americas* With an adjective: *the White House* With a plural: *the Bahamas* 

#### B Continents, countries, islands, states and counties

Most are without the.

travelling through Africa a holiday in Portugal on Jersey to Rhode Island from Florida in Sussex Words like republic and kingdom have the.

the Irish Republic

the United Kingdom (the UK)
Plural names also have the.
the Netherlands the USA
the Canary Islands

### C Regions

Regions ending with the name of a continent or

country are without the.

Central Asia South Wales
Western Australia

Most other regions have the.

the West the Middle East
the Riviera the Midlands
Phrases with of have the.
the South of France

#### D Hills and mountains

Most are without **the.** 

She climbed (Mount) Everest.

down North Hill

Hill ranges and mountain ranges have the. *skiing in the Alps over the Rockies* 

#### E Lakes, oceans, seas, rivers and canals

Only lakes are without **the.** *near Lake Michigan* 

beside Coniston Water

Seas, oceans, rivers and canals have the.

the Mediterranean (Sea) across the
Atlantic (Ocean) the (River) Thames
the Suez Canal

#### F Cities, towns, suburbs and villages

Most are without the.

Harehills is a suburb of Leeds. Houston is west of New Orleans. We live in North London. Exceptions are *The Hague* and *The Bronx*. Note also *the West End (of London)*.

#### G Roads, streets, squares and parks

Most are without the.

along Morden Road in Church Street on Fifth Avenue near Berkeley Square through Central Park There are a few exceptions.

the High Street The Avenue
The Strand The Mall Main roads
and numbered roads have the.

the Bath road (= the road to Bath) the A5 the M6 (motorway)

#### Bridges

Most are without **the.**over Tower Bridge
on Brooklyn Bridge

But there are many exceptions. across the Golden Gate Bridge the Severn Bridge (= the bridge over the River Severn)

#### Stations and airports; important buildings

We do not use **the** with most stations and airports; with religious, educational and official buildings or with palaces and houses.

to Waterloo (Station)
at Orly (Airport)
near St Mary's Church
Merton College Norwich Museum
Lambeth Palace Ashdown House

Exceptions are names with of or with a noun (science) or adjective (open).

at the University of York
in the Palace of Westminster
the Science Museum
the Open University
past the White House

#### Theatres, cinemas, hotels, galleries and centres

A possessive form ('s) is without **the.**St Martin's (Theatre)
at Durrant's (Hotel) In the US, names with **center** are without **the.**near Lincoln Center

But usually theatres, cinemas, etc have the at the Globe (Theatre) the Plaza (Cinema) outside the Dorchester (Hotel) in the Tate (Gallery) the Brunei shopping centre

### K Shops and restaurants

Most shops and restaurants are without **the.** *shopping at Bloomingdale's at Matilda's Restaurant* 

Names with a noun (body, studio) often have **the.** at the Body Shop The Studio Cafe

#### Place names and the (B-F) How much do you know about geography? Put in these names: Andes, Brussels, Irish Republic, Italy, Lake Michigan, River Nile, North, Pennsylvania, Tasmania, United Kingdom, West Indies Decide if you need the. Harrisburg is the capital of *Pennsylvania*. Dublin is in the Irish Republic. Chicago lies on the shore of 1 2 Sicily is a part of..... 3 are a mountain range in South America. 4 is England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. is an island to the south of Australia. 5 6 Jamaica is an island in 7 8 is the capital of Belgium. Roads, buildings, etc (E-J) Complete these sentences from a guide to London. Put in the words and decide if you need the. The train to Paris leaves from Waterloo Station (Waterloo Station). The National Theatre (National Theatre) is south of the river. You can take a trip by boat along ...... (Thames). 1 The Serpentine is a lake in ...... (Hyde Park). 2 3 4 Nelson's Column is in (Trafalgar Square). 5 Walk a little way along ...... (Westminster Bridge). 6 7 8 Roads, buildings, etc (F-K) Complete the conversation. Put in the words and decide if you need the. Oh, really? I was there at Christmas. Were you on holiday? Sarah: Yes, and we really needed a break. It was wonderful. We saw (4) (Metropolitan Museum of Art). And we walked along (5) ......(Broadway) and around (6) (Macy's) department store. Claire: Where did you stay? Sarah: close to (10) ..... (Broadway).

4	Roads, buildings, etc (I-J)  A woman is asking Trevor the way. Put in the words and decide if you need <i>the</i> .  Woman: Excuse me, can you tell me the way to (▶) <i>Millthorpe Station</i> (Millthorpe Station)?  Trevor: Yes, go along here and turn <i>left</i> by (1) (Little Theatre) <i>opposite</i> a building called (2)(Kingston House).		
		ss (4)(Royal Hotel), and you'll see the station in front of you.	
5	Roads, buildings, etc (G-K)		
	Look at the addresses and write the ser	ntences.	
	Useful addresses for visitors to Seapo	rt	
	Seaport Bus Station, Queen's Road	King Edward College, College Road	
	Grand Theatre, George Street	St John's Church, South Street	
	Odeon Cinema, The Avenue	Webster's department store, High Street	
	Clarendon Art Gallery, Newton Lane	Bristol Hotel, Westville Way	
	2 3	oad.	
6	Place names and the (B-K)		
		his month's edition of Holiday', a travel magazine.	
	? walk / along / Princes Street	A walk along Princes Street	
	<ul><li>? holiday / in / Bahamas</li><li>1 day / at / Blenheim Palace</li></ul>	A holiday in the Bahamas	
	1 day / at / Blenheim Palace 2 train journey / in / North Wales		
	3 tour / of / White House		
	4 beach / on / Riviera		
	5 shopping trip / to / Harrods		
	6 small town / in / France		

7 trip / across / Severn Bridge8 walk / around / Lake Windermere

9 visit / to / Tower Bridge
 10 journey / across / Rockies
 11 look / around / National Gallery
 12 boat trip / along / Oxford Canal

# **TEST 15 A/an** and **the** (Units 83-90)

## Test15A

103	tion.				
	Complete the story about the theft of a river barge. Put in a, an, one or the.				
	This is (▶) a true story about (1) man who chose (2)worst possible time for his				
	crime. It happened in London in (3) summer of 1972. (4) man stole a barge on				
	(5) River Thames (in case you don't know, (6) barge is a river boat used for				
	carrying goods). (7) owner of (8) barge soon discovered that it was missing and				
i	immediately informed (9) police so that they could look for it. Normally (10) river				
j	is quite (11)busy place, and it would be difficult to find what you were looking for. On this day,				
	however, there was (12) dock strike, and so there was only (13) barge on				
	(14) river. (15) thief was quickly found and arrested.				
,	14) livel. (13) tillel was quickly found and affested.				
Tost	: 15B				
	Decide which word or words are correct.				
	► I think that's an awful thing to say. a)				
	a awful b) an awful c) awful				
	I Judy goes toon the bus.				
	a) work b) a work c) the work				
,					
2	2 I don't know what to do. It's problem.				
	a) quite difficult b) a quite difficult c) quite a difficult				
3	3is my favourite sport.				
	a) Golf b) A golf c) The golf				
_	starts at nine o'clock.				
	a) School b) A school c) The school.				
-					
5	····· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· · · · ·				
	a) really nice b) a really nice c) really a nice				
$\epsilon$					
	a) photos b) a photos c) some photos				
7	Did you learn to play?				
	a) violin b) a violin c) the violin				
8					
	a) breakfast b) a breakfast c) the breakfast				
9	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
	a) X-ray b) a X-ray c) an X-ray				
1	0 I might listen to				
	a) radio b) radios c) the radio				
1	1 We need to protect from pollution.				
	a) environment b) some environment c) the environment				
1					
ı	2 Why do they always playmusic?				
	a) so terrible b) such terrible c) such a terrible				
Test	15C				
F	Read the story about a silly mistake and decide if a word needs to go in the space.				
	If a word is missing, write the word. If no word is missing, write X.				
	This is also $(\triangleright)$ a true story. It shows how $(\triangleright)$ X plans can sometimes go wrong and how				
	(1) people can make silly mistakes. This too happened quite (2) long time ago				
-	in (3)				
	5) small town in (6) north of England called (7) Otley. The				

owners of the home wanted to put (8) fence around it to make it more private. The work
began soon after (9) Christmas when (10)workmen arrived in
(11)lorry with planks of wood which they put up around the building. 'It was
(12) of the old people. But there was
(14) problem. The workmen forgot to leave a gap for the lorry to drive out through.
They had to come back the next day to knock down part of (15) fence. '(16) a silly
mistake!' said another resident. 'It was (17) funny we had to laugh. In fact it was
(18) most fun we've had for a long time.'

#### Test 15 D

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick  $\{V\}$ . If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ? The space capsule came down in the Pacific.
- V

? My new job starts in the April.

the

- 1 I was so tired I went to bed at nine.
- 2 We had a very good lunch in the company canteen.
- 3 The life just isn't fair sometimes.
- 4 What the clever children you have!
- 5 We went out and bought some pictures.
- 6 Tessa was still working at the midnight.
- 7 I drive past the hospital every morning.
- 8 A one boy was much taller than all the others.
- 9 It costs such a lot of money, you know.
- 10 I'll meet you outside the National Gallery.
- 11 Have you any idea who invented the fridge?

#### Test 15E

Complete the conversation. Put in the words and decide if you need fl, an, some or the.						
Martin:	Martin: I think we ought to book $(\triangleright)$ a holiday (holiday). Where shall we go? Anna:					
What ab	out (►) Scotland (Scotland)?					
	I think Edinburgh is (1)(beautiful city). I love going there.					
Martin:	(2)(weather) might not be very good.					
	We went there at (3)(Easter), and it was freezing, remember.					
Anna:	We could have a walk along (4)(Princes Street) and up to the					
	castle. And I wanted to go to (5)(Royal Scottish Museum),					
	but we never found time. Martin:					
Can't we	e go somewhere different?					
Anna:	We could spend some time in (6) (Highlands), I suppose.					
Martin:	Martin: When I go on holiday, I want to do something more relaxing than climbing					
	(7)(mountains). And I find it pretty boring.					
Anna:	How can you say such (8) (thing)?					
Martin:	Actually, I'd prefer somewhere warmer and by (9)(sea).					
	I think (10) (Corfu) would be nice.					
	We might get (11)(sunshine) there. I just want to lie on a beach.					
Anna:	Martin, you know I'm not at all keen on (12) (beach holidays).					

## 91 This, that, these and those



We use **this** and **these** for things near the speaker (*this printout here*). **This** goes with a singular or uncountable noun, e.g. **this report. These** goes with a plural noun, e.g. **these results.** 



We use **that** and **those** for things further away (*that table there*). **That** goes with a singular or uncountable noun, e.g. **that furniture. Those** goes with a plural noun, e.g. **those curtains.** 

We can leave out the noun if the meaning is clear. I'm just having a look at this. That's nice, isn't it?

Last month's figures were bad, but these are worse.

#### B Places and people

When we are in a place or a situation, we use **this** (not **that**) to refer to it. There's a wonderful view from **this** office, just come to the window. **This** party isn't much fun, is it? Shall we go home?

We can use **this** to introduce people and **that** to identify people.

*Jake, this is my friend Rita. That's Andrew over there.* On the phone we can use **this** to say who we are and **this** or **that** to ask who the other person is.

Hello? **This** is Laura speaking. Who's **this/that**, please?

#### C Time

**This/these** can mean 'near in time' and **that/those** 'further away in time'. *I'm working as a tourist guide this summer. I'm pretty busy these days. Do you remember that summer we all went to Spain? Those were the days. 1 can't see you on the third of July. I'm on holiday that week.* 

To refer back to something that has just happened or was just mentioned, we normally use **that**. What was **that** noise? ~ I didn't hear anything. Jessica is on a diet. **That's** why she doesn't want to eat out with us. I've lost my key. ~ Well, **that's** a silly thing to do.

To refer forward to something that is just going to happen or something that we are going to say, we uset *This next programme should be quite interesting. I don't like to say this, but I'm not happy with the service here.* 

13 D this week, this year, etc

## 1 This, that, these and those (A)

Write each of the words (this, that, these, those) in the correct place.

	Near	Further away
Singular	this	
Plural		

### 2 This, that, these and those (A)

Complete the sentences. Use *this, that, these* and *those*, and these nouns: *car, dog, flowers, parcel, trees* 



>	That car has crashed.		
l	Would you like	3	The house is behind
2	I must post	4	Whose is

### This, that, these and those (A-C)

Complete the conversations. Use this, that, these and those.

	Mark:	Are we going out <i>this</i> evening?
	Sarah:	I can't really. I'll be working late at the office.
1	David:	I hear you've got a new flat.
	Rita:	's right. I've just moved in.
2	Mike:	What's the matter?
	Harriet:	It'sboots. They don't fit properly. They're hurting my feet.
3	Jessica:	It's so boring here.
	Rachel:	I know. Nothing ever happens inplace.
4	Emma:	What's happened? You look terrible.
	Vicky:	You won't believe, but I've just seen a ghost.
5	Laura:	What kind of planes are?
	Trevor:	I don't know. They're too far away to see properly.
6	Matthew:	The match is three weeks from today.
	Daniel:	Sorry, I won't be able to play for the team. I'll be away all week.
7	Mark:	Zedco. Can I help you?
	Alan:	Hellois Alan. Can I speak to Fiona, please?
8	Daniel:	I've hadbump on my head ever since someone threw a chair at me.
	Natasha:	Someone threw a chair at you?wasn't a very nice thing to do.
9	Mark:	seats aren't very comfortable, are they?
	Sarah:	No, I don't think I'll want to sit here very long.

## 92 My, your, etc and mine, yours, etc

#### **A** Introduction

Mark: Why have you brought your work home? We're going out.

Sarah: /'// do it later. Let's go now. Shall we take my car?

Mark: Well, I'd rather not take mine. I think there's something wrong with it.

My, mine, your, etc express possession and similar meanings. My car means the car belonging to me; your work means the work you are doing. My comes before a noun, e.g. my car. We use mine on its own.

MY, YOUR, ETC MINE, YOURS, ETC

First person singular: It's my car. It's mine.

Second person singular: Here's your coat. Here's yours.

Third person singular: That's his room.

It's her money. It's hers.

The dog's got **its** food.

First person plural: That's our table. That's ours.

Second person plural: Are these your tickets? Are these yours?

Third person plural: *It's their camera. It's theirs.* 

#### B Its and it's

We use its before a noun to express the idea of belonging.

The street is around here somewhere, but I've forgotten its name.

It's is a short form of it is or it has.

I think it's time to go. (= it is) It's got a lot colder today, hasn't it? (= it has)

### C My, your with parts of the body and clothes

We normally use **my**, **your**, etc with parts of the body and with someone's clothes.

Emma shook **her** head sadly, NOT <del>Emma shook the head sadly</del>.

Someone came up behind me and grabbed my arm.

*You must take off your shoes before you enter a mosque.* But we usually use **the** in the following structure with a prepositional phrase.

VERB PERSON PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE

Someone grabbed me by **the** arm.

The stone hit Mike on **the** head.

#### D Own

We use **own** after **my**, **your**, etc to say that something belongs to us and to no one else. Rachel has got **her own** calculator. She doesn't borrow mine, NOT <del>an own calkulator I</del> don't share any more. I've got a flat of **my own**. NOT of <del>mine ow</del>n

#### E A friend of mine

Look at these examples.

Tom is a friend of mine. (= one of my friends) NOT a friend of me Rachel came to the party with a cousin of hers. (= one of her cousins)

*I borrowed some magazines of yours.* (= some of your magazines)

Note also 's in this example: *Rita is a friend of Melanie's*.

### 1 My, your, etc and mine, yours, etc (A)

Complete the conversation. Put in the missing words.

Laura: Did you and  $(\triangleright)$  your friends have a nice holiday?

Emma: Yes, it was wonderful. We had the best holiday of (1).....lives.

It didn't start very well, though. Daniel forgot to bring (2)..... passport.

Laura: Oh, dear. So what happened?

Emma: Well, luckily he doesn't live far from the airport. He rang (3)...... parents,

Laura: You remembered (5)...., I hope.

Emma: Yes, I had (6)....., even though I'm usually the one who forgets things.

Actually Rachel thought for a minute that she'd lost (7)

Luckily it was in (8)..... suitcase. Anyway, in the end we had a marvellous time.

#### 2 Its and it's (B)

Put in the correct form.

- ? Unfortunately, the town has lost its only cinema.
- ? The meeting won't last long. I'll see you when it's over.
- 1 You should return the book to.....owner immediately.
- 2 We'd like to go out for a walk, but..... raining.
- 3 I'm not buying this tablecloth because...... got a hole in it.
- 4 The board has decided that Zedco needs to improve..... image.

#### **3** Parts of the body and clothes (C)

Put in my, your, etc or the.

- ? I was doing keep-fit exercises when I fell down and hurt my leg.
- ? Matthew served, and the ball hit Daniel on the knee.
- 1 A wasp stung me on.....neck. It really hurt.
- 2 The mother put both ...... arms around the child.
- 3 Aunt Joan kissed Emma on..... cheek.
- 4 The fans were all shouting at the top of.....voices.
- 5 Don't just stand there with .......hands in ...... pockets.

#### My own, a friend of mine, etc (D-E)

Correct the sentences which have a mistake.

► We're lucky. We've got an own garden.

We've got our own garden.

- 1 I met some nice people. Harriet introduced me to -a friend-of-hefsetf.
- 2 My friends swim every day. They've got their only pool.
- 3 I enjoy rock-climbing, It's a favourite hobby-to-me.
- 4 I hope Matthew will be here, I've got some GDs from his.
- 5 I don't want to share. I'd like my very room

## 93 The possessive form and of

#### A Form

We use the possessive of a noun in phrases like *the boy's name* and *Vicky's room*. We form the possessive like this.

```
Singular noun: 's boy -> boy's Vicky -> Vicky's

Plural noun ending in s: 'boys --> boys' tourists ~> tourists'

Plural noun not ending in s: 's men --> men's children --> children's
```

We can use the possessive form with another noun or on its own.

I've met **Rachel's family**, but I haven't met Vicky's. (Vicky's - Vicky's family)

#### B The boy's name or the name of the boy?

Compare these structures.

THE POSSESSIVE FORM

the boy's name
the name of the boy
the boys' names
the names of the boys
the men's names
the names of the men

Sometimes we can use either the possessive (*the boy's name*) or a phrase with of (*the name of the boy*), but often only one is possible. We normally use the possessive with people and animals.

my friend's house Claire's idea Daniel's brother our neighbour's garden the dog's owner the policemen's uniforms the women's changing room the Parkers' car

We normally use of with things, and not the possessive form. the side of the house NOT the house's side the result of the match NOT the match's result the day of the meeting NOT the meeting's day

But we use of with people when there is a long phrase.

the house of one of our teachers at college the
address of those people we met in Spain

NOT those people who we met in Spain's address

We can use both structures for places and organizations. London's museums OR the museums of London the earth's atmosphere OR the atmosphere of the earth the company's future OR the future of the company the government's intentions OR the intentions of the government

#### C The possessive of time

We can use the possessive to say 'when' or 'how long'.

last week's concert today's TV programmes yesterday's news about a month's work a moment's silence ten minutes'walk

Note also:

*in two months' time* (two months from now) *a week's wages* (wages for a week)

#### The possessive form (A)

Write descriptions of the things in the photos. Use boy, girl and children and these words: bike, cat, dog, skateboards, tent, trophies













► the children's dog	3	
1	4	
2	5	

### 2 The possessive form (A)

Laura is showing Melanie her photos. Put in the possessive form of the nouns.

Laura: This was taken in (▶) my friend's (my friend) garden.

Melanie: And who are these two?

Laura: That's (4)..... (Debbie) mother.

She's talking to Monica Davis, (5) ......(her children) teacher.

And that's (6) ......(the Lanskys) dog

sitting on (7) ..... (Olivia) foot.

### 3 The boy's name or the name of the boy? (B)

Ed Buckman writes detective stories. Here are the titles of some of his stories.

Write the titles using either of or a possessive form (with s or s').

? the mistake / the policeman The Policeman's Mistake

- 1 the gun / Mr Hillman
- 2 the smell / blood
- 3 the car / the terrorist
- 4 the middle / the night
- 5 the death / someone important
- 6 the money / the gangsters

#### 4 The possessive of time (C)

Rewrite the underlined phrases using a possessive form.

- ? The prices this year are even lower. This year's prices
- ? From here it's a drive of two hours. a two hours' drive
- 1 I read about it in the paper yesterday
- 2 I just want a rest for five minutes.
- 3 It's the special offer for this month.
- 4 I'll see you in a week.

## 94 Some and any

#### A Basic use

**Some** and **any** go before a plural or uncountable noun (see Unit 85A).

There was a bowl and **some** cornflakes on the table, but there wasn't **any** milk.

We can also use **some** and **any** without a noun.

Trevor wanted some milk, but he couldn't find any.

We normally use **some** in positive sentences and **any in** negative sentences or ones with a negative meaning.

POSITIVE

NEGATIVE

There's **some** milk in the fridge. *I need some stamps.* ~ *There are some* in the drawer.

I met some interesting people last night.

We'll have some fun at Disneyland.

I haven't **any** milk. (= I have no milk.) I haven't got any stamps. Have you got any?

I never meet any interesting people nowadays. We won't have any fun without you.

We can also use **any** in a sentence with if.

If you have **any** problems, you can discuss them with your group leaders. I can answer any questions. (= If there are any questions,...)

In questions we can use either **some** or **any**, but **any** is more common.

We don't know whether the answer will be yes or no.

Have we got any butter? Will there be any food for the guests? Did you buy any clothes?

We normally use **some** in offers and requests to make them sound more positive.

Would you like **some** coffee? Could you post **some** letters for me?

We can use some in questions when we think the answer might be yes.

Did you buy some clothes? (Perhaps I know that you went out to buy some.)

### B Someone, anything, etc.

We choose between someone and anyone, something and anything, and somewhere and anywhere in the same way as between some and any.

Someone has spilt water everywhere. Would you like **something** to eat? Let's go out somewhere.

Did anyone see what happened? We haven't got **anything** to eat. Is there **anywhere** we can go?

### C Another use of any

We can use **any** in a positive sentence to mean 'it doesn't matter which'.

I'm free all day. Call any time you like.

Any student will be able to tell you where the college library is.

You can buy these maps at **any** petrol station. They all have them.

We say any petrol station because all petrol stations have the maps. It doesn't matter which one you go to. They are all equally good.

Look at these examples with anyone, anything and anywhere.

*It's a very simple puzzle.* **Anyone** *could solve it.* (= It doesn't matter who.) What shall we have for lunch? ~ Oh, anything. I don't mind. Where do we have to sit? ~ We can sit anywhere. It doesn't matter.

85A A/an and some 103 Everyone, something, etc

## i Basic use (A)

Look at the pictures and say what people have or haven't got. Use *some* or *any*. Use these words: *cats, money, petrol, poison, sandwiches* 











-	_		The second secon		
	?	They've go	ot some sandwiches.		
	?		t got any money.	2	
	1			3	
2	Ва	asic use (	A)		
	Jus	stin Coope	r is a radio disc jockey. Complete what he i	s sa	ying. Put in some or any.
	Ex We tin	press. One ell, I'm goi ne left. We	e listener says she hasn't heard (1)ing to put that right. And this will be our las	t tra	ve had (►) some letters asking for something by Express songs on this programme for months. ack because there isn't (2)
3	Sc	ome, any	, someone, anyone, etc (A-B)		
			e conversations. Put in some, any, anyone, so	те	one, something or anything.
		Trevor:	We haven't got <i>any</i> bread.		
		Laura:	You'd better go to the shop, then. We nee	ed s	ome tomatoes, too.
	1	Claire:	Would you likecho		
		Sarah:	Oh, no thank you. That was delicious, bu	t I c	couldn't eat else.
	2	Harriet:	There's at the door	ſ.	
		Mike:	Are we expecting		
	3	Melanie:	Has offered to hel		
		Rita:	No, but I'd be very grateful for		
	4	Vicky:	I was looking for, a		
		Rachel:	You said you were looking for r	nato	ches.
4	Ar	nother us	e of any (C)		
			noun, anyone or anything.		
	?		aren't reserved. You can have any seat you	like	
	?		ind what we do today. We can do anything		
	1		r party, you can invite	-	
	-	-	uses go into the town centre. Take		-
	3		et is available in lots of colours. You can have		
	4		r has the television on all the time. He'll wa		
	•		110 11 110		

5 It doesn't matter which day you phone. Ring...... you like.

## 95 A lot of, lots of, many, much, (a) few and (a) little

#### **A** Introduction

A lot of, lots of, many and much mean a large quantity.

Ron Mason owns a chain of supermarkets. He's made a lot of money. A

few and a little mean a small quantity.

I'd better hurry. My bus goes in a few minutes.

Many and a few go before plural nouns. many places many problems a few people a few buildings

Much and a little go before uncountable nouns much money much trouble a **little** sunshine a little food

A lot of and lots of go before both plural and uncountable nouns.

a lot of tourists lots of games

a lot of sugar lots of fun

We use these words without a noun if it is clear what we mean. I take photos, but not as many as I used to. At one time I took a lot. Note that we say a lot without of.

#### B A lot of, many and much

As a general rule, we use a lot of and lots of in positive statements and many and much in negatives and questions.

Positive: We get a **lot** of storms here. We get a **lot** of rain here. We don't get many storms here. We don't get much rain here. Negative: Questions: Do you get many storms here? Do you get much rain here?

How many eggs do we need? How much salt do we put in?

We use many or much (not a lot of) after too, so and as.

There are **too** many cars. I've got **so much** work. I haven't got as **much** money as you.

In formal English, we can sometimes use many and much in a positive statement.

Many students have financial problems. There is **much** enthusiasm for the idea.

But this is less usual in conversation, where we normally use a lot of or lots of.

In informal English, you may hear a lot of in a negative or a question.

I don't have many friends/a **lot** of friends. Do you eat **much** fruit/a **lot** of fruit?

#### C Few and little with and without a

With **a** the meaning is positive.

A few customers have come into the shop. It has been fairly busy.

Vicky has made a **little** progress and so is feeling quite pleased.

A few customers ~ some customers, a small number of customers

A little progress = some progress, a small amount of progress

Without a the meaning is negative.

Few customers have come into the shop. It has been quiet.

Vicky has made little progress and so is not feeling very pleased.

few customers - not many customers

*Little progress* = not much progress

Few and **little** (without a) can be rather formal. In informal speech we can use these structures. Vicky hasn't made **much** progress. **Only** a **few** customers **Not** many customers have come in. have come in. Vicky has made only a little progress.

## 1 A lot of, lots of, many, much, a few and a little (A)

Write the sentences correctly.

- ► Mark was only spending one night away. He -quickly put a little things into a bag. He quickly put a few things into a bag.
- 1 Rachel is learning to drive. She hasn't had much lessons yet.
- 2 I'm making soup for twenty people, I'll have to make a lot-of.
- 3 I feel really tired. 1 haven't got many energy.
- 4 The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add a few water.
- We're having a big party. We've invited a lots of friends.

### 2 A lot of, many and much (A-B)

### 3 A few, few, a little and little (C)

Put in a few, few, a little or little.

- ? I don't think I can lift this box on my own. I need a little help.
- ? Few tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.
- 1 The postman doesn't often come here. We receive ...... letters.
- 2 The snow was quite deep. There seemed ...... hope of completing our journey.
- 3 Trevor isn't finding it easy to fix the shelves. He's having \_\_\_\_\_\_ trouble.
- 4 Sarah is exhausted. She's having days'holiday next week.
- 6 I can speak.....words of Swedish, but I'm not very fluent.

#### 4 Many, few, much and little (B-C)

Complete this paragraph from a travel book. Put in many, few, much or little.

The main town on the i	sland is very small and does not	have (▶) many important buildings. The islanders
do not have (1)	money, and they have (2)	contact with the outside world. There is
not (3)char	nce of the place attracting large i	numbers of tourists. The roads are not very good.
There are lots of bicycle	es but not (4) cars. A	and there are hardly any of the modern facilities
which visitors expect. T	here are (5) shops, a	nd there is (6)entertainment.

## 96 All, half, most, some, no and none

#### A All, most and some

We can use all, most and some before a plural or an uncountable noun.

All plants need water. All matter is made up of atoms.

*Most people* would like more money. *Some food* makes me ill.

All plants means 'all plants in general/in the world'. Most people means 'most people in this country/in the world'. Some food means 'some food but not all food'. Here **some** is pronounced /sA.m/.

#### B All of, half of, most of and some of

Laura: Why do you keep all of these clothes? You never wear most of them. You've had some of your jackets for ten years. Why don't you throw them all out? This one is completely out of fashion. Trevor: Well, I thought if I waited long enough, it might come back into fashion.

All of these clothes has a specific meaning. Laura is talking about Trevor's clothes, not about clothes in general.

We can use all (of), half (of), most of and some of. Have all (of) the plants died? ~ No, not all of them. Most of the people who live around here are students. I've spent most of my money already. Half {of } the audience left before the end of the film. Some of that food from the party was all right, but I threw some of it away.

We can leave out of after all or half, but not before a pronoun.

all of these clothes on all the clothes BUT all of them NOT <del>all them</del> half of our group OR half our group BUT half of us NOT <del>half us</del> We can

also use all in mid position (see Unit 113B) or after a pronoun.

These cups are all dirty. I'll have to clean them all.

The guests have all gone now. I think they all enjoyed themselves.

We can use **most** and **some** on their own.

The band sang a few songs. Most were old ones, but some were new.

## C All meaning 'everything' or 'the only thing'

We can use all with a clause to mean 'everything' or 'the only thing'.

Tell me all you know. All I did was ask a simple question. Here you know and I did are clauses. We do not normally use all without the clause.

Tell me everything, NOT Tell me all.

#### D No and none

We use **no** with a noun.

We've rung all the hotels, and there are **no rooms** available. I'm afraid I've got **no money**. (= I haven't got **any** money.)

We use **none** with **of** or on its own.

**None of my friends** will be at the party. Look at these clothes. **None of them** are in fashion now. I wanted some cake, but there was **none** left, NOT There was no left.

86 Cars or the cars? 94 Some and any 103 Everyone, etc

#### 1 All, most, half, some and none (B, D)

6 Tom:

Read this advertisement for some new flats and then complete the sentences. Put in *all of them, most of them, half of them, some of them* and *none of them*.

Hartley House is an old manor house which has been converted into thirty one-bedroom and two-bedroom flats. All the flats have a fitted kitchen, bathroom and large living-room. Ten of them have a separate dining-room. Twenty-five of the flats have a view of the sea, and fifteen have a private balcony. All thirty flats are still for sale. Ring us now for more details.

▶		are modern. All of them have a fitte	d kitchen.	
1have two bedrooms.				
2	From you can see the sea.			
3		have a private balco		
4		have a large living-	room.	
5		lso a dining-room in		
6		has been sold yet.		
2	All, most	, some and none (B, D)		
Th	nere was a c	quiz evening yesterday. Six friends t	ook part, and they all answered twenty questions. Did	
the	ey get all, r	nost, some or none of them right?		
?	Natasha a	nswered all twenty correctly.	She got all of them right.	
?	Daniel's s	core was fifteen.	He got most of them right.	
1	Jessica ha	nd only eight correct answers.		
2	Matthew	got them all right except three.		
3	Andrew g	gave twenty correct answers.		
4	But poor	Vicky didn't get a single one right		
3	All, most	, no and none (A-D)		
	-		ckets with all, all the, most, most of the, no or none of the.	
		I wonder where they make this mi		
	Jessica:		v. All milk (milk) comes from animals.	
<b>&gt;</b>	Rita:	What do you usually do on a Sund		
	Mike:	Not much. We spend <i>most of the</i>		
1	Claire:	In general, people aren't interested		
	Mark:		(people) are bored by the subject.	
2	Vicky:	These new flats are supposed to b		
	Rachel:		(student) in the world could possibly afford	
		such a high rent.	, , ,	
3	Tom:	Who's paying for the new ice-rink	to be built?	
	Nick:		(money) will come from the government, but the city	
		has to pay a quarter of the cost.		
4	Melanie:		(cars) pollute the air, don't they?	
	David:	Well, except electric ones, I suppos	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5	Vicky:	What kind of fruit should you eat		

I knew there had been a power cut because it was so dark everywhere.

Harriet: Yes, ..... (lights) in our street went out.

## 97 Every, each, whole, both, either and neither

#### A Every and each

We use **every** and **each** before a singular noun to talk about a whole group.

The police questioned every person/each person in the building.

**Every room/Each room** has a number. In many contexts either word is possible, but there is a difference in meaning.

EVERY

Every person means 'all the people', 'everyone'.

Every guest watched as the President came in. I go for a walk every day.

**Every** means three or more, usually a large number.

There were cars parked along every street in town. (= all the streets)

EACH

*Each person* means all the people seen as individuals, one by one.

Each guest (in turn) shook hands with him. Each day seemed to pass very slowly.

**Each** is more usual with smaller groups and can mean only two.

There were cars parked along **each** side of the street. (= both sides)

We can use **each** (but not **every**) on its own or with of.

There are six flats. Each has its own entrance, NOT Every has...

Each of the six flats has its own entrance, NOT Every of the ...

We can also say Each one/Every one has its own entrance.

We can also use each in mid position (see Unit 113B) or after a pronoun.

We've each got our own desk. They gave us each a desk.

Compare **every** and **all** before **day, morning, week,** etc. *I* travel **every day.** (= Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday,...) *I* was travelling **all day.** (= from morning till evening)

#### B Whole

We use **whole** before a singular noun. It means 'all' or 'complete'. The baby cried **the whole time**. (= all the time) I've spent **my whole life** waiting for this moment. (= all my life) We'll need **a whole loaf** to make sandwiches for everyone.

#### C Both, either and neither

We use **both**, **either** and **neither** for two things.

I've got two bicycles. **Both** of them are quite old. I've given up cycling, so I don't ride **either** of them any more. **Neither** of them is in very good condition, I'm afraid.

**Both** means 'the one and the other'. We can use it in the following structures.

We had two letters this morning, and both letters/both the letters/both of the letters/both of them are bills We can also use both in mid position (see Unit 113B) or after a pronoun.

The letters are both bills. I've opened them both.

**Either** means 'the one or the other', and **neither** means 'not the one or the other'.

I haven't met either twin/either of the twins/either of them.

*Neither shoe fits/Neither of the shoes fit(s)/'Neither of them fit(s).* 

We can use **both**, **either** and **neither** on their own.

The store has two lifts, and both are out of order/neither is working.

#### 1 Every and each (A)

Complete the dialogue. Put in every or each. Sometimes both are possible.

It's a lot bigger than your last house, isn't it? Did you say there are four people living here? Laura:

Natasha: Yes, and we (▶)each have our own bedroom.

Laura: person pay a quarter of the rent? Does (1)..... Natasha: That's right. On the first of (2) .....month.

Laura: It must be fantastic for parties.

Natasha: Yes, it is. We don't have one (3).....week, but almost!

Laura: Isn't that rather expensive?

Not if (4)...... guest brings something to eat or drink! Anyway, there'll be no more parties Natasha:

until our exams are over. We're spending (5)..... moment revising.

#### 2 Every, all and whole (A-B)

Put in every, all or the whale and the word in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

▶ Melanie is a religious person. She goes to church *every Sunday* (Sunday).

- The weather has been awful today. It's been raining...... (day).
- 2 I just can't sleep. I spent ............................... (night) lying awake.
- Sarah gets the train at half past seven...... (morning).
- 4 It's eleven o'clock. Are you going to lie in bed.....(morning)?
- 5 Last Saturday Trevor spent ......(day) putting up some shelves.
- 6 Why are you in such a hurry..... (time) I see you?

#### 3 Both, either and neither (C)

There are two pubs in Brickfield, The White Horse and The Ship. Look at the information and then write the sentences. Use both of them, one of them or neither of them.

#### THE WHITE HORSE

MEALS BAR SNACKS FAMILY ROOM

#### THE SHIP

MEALS SEPARATE RESTAURANT BAR SNACKS NON-SMOKING AREA

- ► (serve meals) *Both of them serve meals*.
- 1 (have a separate restaurant) ...
- 2 (serve bar snacks) ...
- 3 (have a family room)
- 4 (allow pub games)
- 5 (have live music)
- 6 (have a non-smoking area)...

### 4 Every, each, whole, both, either and neither (A-C)

Complete the conversation. Put in every, each, whole, both, either or neither.

Assistant: These plain sofas come in two different styles.

Sarah: I think (▶) both styles are rather old-fashioned. (1)..... of them is

really what I want. I don't like (2)..... of them, I'm afraid.

Assistant: What about a patterned fabric? There are some lovely colours here.

Sarah: I feel more and more unsure with (3)..... new fabric I look at. Mark:

We haven't got time to look at (4)..... fabric in the shop.

We've been in here a (5)..... hour already, you know.

## **TEST 16 This, my, some, a lot of, all, etc** (Units 91-97)

#### Test 16A

Look at what people are saying and choose the correct meaning.

► Polly: Let's sit under these trees, shall we?

The trees are a) near Polly. b)a long way away from Polly.

1 Martin: My friend and I ate a whole loaf.

Martin and his friend ate a) part of the loaf, b) all the loaf.

2 Nigel: The girls' dog has gone missing.

The dog belongs to a) one girl, b) more than one girl.

3 Tessa: My brother has got his own office.

Tessa's brother a) works alone in the office, b) shares the office with another person.

4 Nancy: The weather looks a little better, I think.

How does Nancy feel about the weather? a) Hopeful, b) Not very hopeful.

5 Ben: I can't answer either of these questions.

How many questions is Ben talking about? a) One. b) Two. c) O More than two.

6 Adrian: The children can keep any tennis balls they find.

Will they find any tennis balls? a) Yes. b) No. c) Adrian doesn't know.

#### Test 16B

Decide which word is correct.

- ▶ What colour shall we have? ~ I don't mind. Pick *any* colour you like.
  - a) any b) some c) that d) what
- Peter has two brothers, but he doesn't speak to...... of them.
  - a) any b) both c) either d) neither
- 2 ...... has left a bicycle outside.
  - a) Anyone b) Anything c) Someone d) Something
- 3 I like pictures here. ~ Yes, so do I.
  - a) that b) these c) this d) those
- 4 Would you mind waiting minutes?
  - a) a few b) a little c) few d) little
- 5 ...... countries still have a king or a queen, don't they?
  - a) Any b) Half c) Part d) Some
- 6 Safety should come first..... lives shouldn't be put at risk,
  - a) People b) Peoples c) People's d) Peoples'
- 7 Nigel isn't very well. ~ Oh, I'm sorry to hear .....
  - a) so b) that c) this d) you
- 8 Mr Jones is an uncle of
  - a) Polly b) Pollys c) Polly's d) Pollys'

#### Test 16C

Tessa is walking along the street when she sees her old friend Angela.

Read the conversation and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

Tessa: Hello, Angela. How are you?

Angela: Tessa! Hello! Shall we have lunch together?

Tessa: I was just going to the bank to get (▶)some money. I have to be back at the office in

(1).....few minutes. My life's one mad rush.

Ar Te	friends (3)
	ssa: Maybe we'll need a (9)day. What about the Saturday after next?
Test 1	
	ch of the sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.
	Are you going an holiday that year?  That was a very good idea of you.  Are you going on holiday this year?
	You've got a lot books, haven't you?
3	I don't know the meeting's time.
	Nigel has hurt the leg.
	— All rooms in the house were cold. — Wear everything it doesn't matter what
	Every of the four doors was locked.
	I live my life, and my sister lives her.
	The both socks have got holes in them.
	-Here's a copy of this week magazine. -This sweater is losing it's color.
	- This sweater is tosing it's color:  - I want some paper, but there's no in here
	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Test 1	6E
	rite a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.
•	When I was on holiday, it rained all week, (whole)
	When I was on holiday, it rained the whole week.
1	I've lived here more than half my life, (most)
2	
2	All the hotels were full, (every)
3	The house on the corner is bigger than our house, (ours)
4	I've forgotten my doctor's name, (of)
_	
5	We haven't had much warning of the changes, (little)
6	Such a large number of people have applied for the job. (so)
7	I met one of your old boyfriends at a party, (an)
8	Both the chairs are uncomfortable, (neither)

9 My holiday starts ten days from now. (time)

## 98 Personal pronouns, e.g. I, you

### A The meaning of the pronouns

Vicky: Hello, Andrew. Have you seen Rachel?

Andrew: I don't think so. No, I haven't seen her today.

Vicky: We're supposed to be going out at half past seven, and it's nearly eight now.

Andrew: Maybe she's just forgotten. You know Rachel.

Vicky: We're going out for a meal. Matthew and Emma said they might come too.

I hope they haven't gone without me.

I/me means the speaker, and **you** means the person spoken to. We/us means the speaker and someone else. Here, we = Vicky and Rachel. **He/him** means a male person and **she/her** a female person. Here, **she** = Rachel. **It** means a thing, an action, a situation or an idea. Here, **it** = the time. **They/them** is the plural of **he**, **she** and **it** and means people or things.

We can also use **they/them** for a person when we don't know if the person is male or female. *If anyone calls, ask them to leave a message.* 

#### B Subject and object forms

SINGULAI	R Subject	I	you	he/she/it
	Object		me you	him/her/it
PLURAL	Subject	we	you	they
	Object		us you	them

We use the subject form (I, etc) when the pronoun is the subject and there is a verb.

*I don't think so.* Maybe she's just forgotten. We use the object form (me, etc) when the pronoun is the object of a verb or preposition.

/ haven't seen her today. I hope they haven't gone without me.

The pronoun on its own or after be usually has the object form.

Who spilt coffee all over the table? ~ Me./Sorry, it was me.

Compare this answer.

Who spilt coffee all over the table? ~ I did.

#### C You, one and they

We can use you or one to mean 'any person' or 'people in general', including the speaker.

You shouldn't believe what you read in the newspapers.

OR **One** shouldn't believe what **one** reads in the newspapers.

You don't like/One doesn't like to have an argument in public.

You is normal in conversation. One is more formal.

We can use **they** for other people in general.

They say too much sugar is bad for you.

We can also use it for people in authority.

They're going to build a new swimming-pool here. They is informal and conversational. We use the passive in more formal situations.

A new swimming-pool is going to be built here (see Unit 56B).

 $\bf 99\ There$  and  $it\ \ page\ 380\ You$  and one in British and American English

#### 1 The meaning of the pronouns (A) Read the conversation between Melanie and Rita. Then say what the <u>underlined</u> pronouns mean. Have (▶) you been in that new shop? $\triangleright$ you = RitaRita: No, not yet. Melanie: Nor have I, but (▶)it looks interesting. There's a lovely dress it = the shopin the window, and (1) it isn't expensive. 1 it =2 Rita: Laura bought some jeans there. (2) She said (3) they were she = really cheap. 3 they = (4) You ought to go along there and have a look, then. you = Melanie: 4 (5) We'd better not go now or we'll be late. (6) I told Mike Rita: 5 we = and Harriet we'd meet (7) them at half past five. 6 I= 7 them =Melanie: Oh, Tom said (8) he's coming too. he = 2 Subject and object forms (B) Complete the conversation. Put in the pronouns. Nick: Did (>)you say that you and Harriet wanted some coloured lights for your party? Yes, but $(\triangleright)$ it's OK. Melanie's neighbour Jake has got some, and (1) ......'s going to lend (2) ..... to (3) Great. Is Rita coming to the party? Nick: not. Her parents are flying somewhere on Saturday evening, and she might be taking (7)..... to the airport. Nick: And what about Laura's friend Emily? Mike: 1 expect (8)............'11 be there. And her brother. (9)............ both came to our last party. Nick: Do (10) ......mean Jason? I don't like (11) .....very much. Mike: Oh, (12)...........'s OK. But (13)................ don't have to talk to (14) 3 Subject and object forms (B) Put in the pronouns. ► There's no need to shout. I can hear you. 1 You and I work well together.....'re a good team. 2 We've got a bit of a problem. Could...... help ......, please? look .....'s next to Andrew. 5 Is this Vicky's bag? ~ No,..... didn't bring one. It can't belong to 6 .....'m looking for my shoes. Have .....seen ....?~Yes,.....re here. 4 You and they (C) Complete the conversation. Put in you or they.

Trevor: I'm not going to drive in this weather. It's too icy.

(3) .....'re better off indoors in weather like this.

Trevor: I've just heard the weather forecast and (2)

Laura: I think (4)

(►) You don't want to take any risks. (1).....can't be too careful.

ought to clear the snow off the roads more quickly.

say there's going to be more snow.

## 99 There and it

#### A There + be

Look at these examples.

I really ought to phone home.  $\sim$  Well, **there's** a phone box round the corner. Could I make myself an omelette?  $\sim$  Of course. **There are** some eggs in the fridge. **There's** an important meeting at work that I have to go to.

To talk about the existence of something, we use **there** + **be.** We usually pronounce **there**, like **the. There's** is and **there are** is . Be agrees with the following noun. *There is a phone box.* BUT *There are some eggs.* 

Here are some more examples.

There's a bus at ten to five. There'll be a meal waiting for us.

*Is there* a toilet in the building? *Were there* any bargains in the sale?

There have been some burglaries recently. There might have been an accident.

We also use there with words like a lot of, many, much, more, enough and with numbers.

There were a lot of problems to discuss. There's too much noise in here. Will there be enough chairs? There are thirty days in April.

#### B Uses of it

We use it for a thing, an action, a situation or an idea.

*You've bought a new coat. It's very nice,* (it = the coat)

Skiing is an expensive hobby, isn't it? You have to fill in

all these stupid forms. It's ridiculous. I find astrology

fascinating. I'm really interested in it.

We use it to mean 'the unknown person'.

Did someone ring? ~ It was Vicky. She just called to say she's arrived safely.

We use it for the time, the weather and distance. *It's half past five already*.

It's Sunday tomorrow. It was much warmer yesterday. It's fifty miles from here to Brighton.

We also use it in structures with a to-infinitive or a that-clause (see also Unit 67B).

It was nice to meet your friends.

It would be a good idea to book in advance.

It's important to switch off the electricity.

It's a pity (that) you can't come with us. This is much more usual than,

for example, To meet your friends was nice.

#### C There or it?

We often use **there** when we mention something for the first time, like the picture in this example.

There was a picture on the wall. It was an abstract painting.

We use it when we talk about the details. It means the picture.

Here are some more examples.

**There's** a woman at the door. ~ Oh, **it's** Aunt Joan. **There** was a dog in the field. **It** was a big black one. **There's** a new one-way traffic system in the town centre. It's very confusing.

## 1 There + be (A)

Look at the pictures and comment on what you see. Use these words: a balloon, some boxes, the car, a dinosaur, an elephant, some flowers, the garden, her hat, the sky, the water











1	rnere s a	amosaur in ine waier.	
?	There are	some flowers on her hat.	2
1			3
Th	ere + be	(A)	
Pu	t in <i>there</i> a	and a form of be, e.g. is, are, was, h	ave been or will be.
	Victor:	Are there any restaurants here th	
	Rachel:	There's a cafe in the High Street	
1	Alan:	a train at twelve thirty, isn't there	? Let's catch that one.
	Mark:	OK time to fi	
2	Vicky:	What's happened? Why	so many police cars here?
	Daniel:		
3	Tom:	Last night a party next door. I	I couldn't get to sleep.
	Melanie:	must a	lot of people there.
3 U:	ses of it	(B)	
		sentences in brackets using it.	
		times go surfing. (Surfing is really	good fun ) It's really good fun
1		a shirt in the market. (The shirt w	
2	_	`	
3			is a nuisance.)
4			very warm.)
5			newhere safe is important.)
·	2011,100	o your crouse cara. (10 moop to som	
T	here or it	? (C)	
Pı	ut in <i>there</i> c	or it.	
•	Is it the	fifteenth today? ~ No, the sixteenth	1.
1		is closed's been an acc	
2	Take a tax	i 's a long way to the s	tation.
3		was a motor bike outside	
4	Will	be any delays because of the	e strike? ~ Well, would be a good idea to ring the
_	airline an		
5			cold east wind was after midnight, and
	were few	people on the streets.	

## 100 Reflexive pronouns

#### B Form

#### A Introduction

**Myself** is a reflexive pronoun. In the sentence *I've* cut myself, the words **I** and **myself** mean the same thing. **Myself** refers back to the subject, I.

SINGULAR *myself*PLURAL *ourselves* 

yourself yourselves himself/herself/itself themselves

FIRST



Emma, you can dry **yourself** on this towel.

Vicky and Rachel, you can dry yourselves on these towels.

cut mysel

### C The use of reflexive pronouns

Here are some examples.

Mark made **himself** a sandwich. Vicky had to force **herself** to eat.

We've locked **ourselves** out. The children watched **themselves** on video.

We cannot use **me**, **you**, **him**, etc to refer to the subject. Compare these sentences.

When the policeman came in, the gunman shot **him**. (**him** = the policeman) When the policeman came in, the gunman shot **himself**, (**himself** = the gunman)

We can use a reflexive pronoun after a preposition.

The children are old enough to look after themselves. But after a

preposition of place, we can use me, you, him, etc.

In the mirror I saw a lorry behind me. Mike didn't have any money with him.

Laura thought she recognized the woman standing next to her.

#### D Idioms with reflexive pronouns

Look at these examples.

We really enjoyed ourselves. (= had a good time)

*I hope the children behave themselves.* (= behave well)

*Just help yourself to sandwiches, won't you?* (= take as many as you want)

*Please make yourself at home.* (= behave as if this was your home)

/ don't want to be left here by myself. {= on my own, alone}

#### E Verbs without a reflexive pronoun

Some verbs do not usually take a reflexive pronoun, although they may in other languages. We'd better hurry, or we'll be late, NOT We'd better hurry ourselves. Shall we meet at the cinema? I feel uncomfortable. Just try to relax.

Some of these verbs are: **afford, approach, complain, concentrate, decide, feel** + adjective, **get** up, hurry **(up), lie down, meet, remember, rest, relax, sit down, stand up, wake up, wonder, worry** 

We do not normally use a reflexive pronoun with **change** (clothes), **dress** and **wash.** 

Daniel washed and changed before going out. (See also Unit 54D.)

But we can use a reflexive pronoun when the action is difficult.

My friend is disabled, but she can dress herself.

#### 1 Reflexive pronouns (A-C)

Look at the pictures and write sentences with a reflexive pronoun.

Use these words: dry, introduce, look at, photograph, teach











<b></b>	He's photographing himself.	
1	She	3
2	They	4

#### 2 Reflexive pronouns (A-C)

Complete the conversations. Put in a reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, etc).

► Matthew: I'll get the tickets, shall I? Emma: It's OK. I can pay for *myself*.

Olivia: I've got lots of photos of my children.

Linda: Yes, but you haven't got many of ....., Olivia.

2 Rita: Did you have a good time at the Holiday Centre?Laura: Well, there wasn't much going on. We had to amuse

3 Emma: Why has the light gone off?

Matthew: It switches ..... off automatically.

### 3 Pronouns after a preposition (C and Unit 98B)

Put in the correct pronoun (e.g. me or myself).

- ? We looked up and saw a strange animal in front of us.
- ? Don't tell us the answer to the puzzle. We can work it out for ourselves.
- 1 It's a pity you didn't bring your camera with ......
- 2 Mark talked to the woman sitting next to ......
- 3 The old man is no longer able to look after ......
- 4 My mother likes to have all her family near .....
- 5 To be successful in life, you must believe in ......

#### 4 Idioms with and without reflexive pronouns (D-E)

Rachel and Vicky are at Mike and Harriet's party. Complete the conversation.

Put in the verbs with or without a reflexive pronoun.

Mike: Have you two (▶) *met* (met) before?

Rachel: Yes, we have. Vicky and I are old friends.

Mike: Oh, right. Well, I hope you (▶) enjoy yourselves (enjoy) tonight.

Vicky: Sorry, I've got this awful feeling that I have to do something very important, and I can't

(3) ..... (remember) what it is.

Rachel: Vicky, you (4) ...... (worry) too much. Come on, just

(5) .....(relax).

## 101 Emphatic pronouns and each other

#### A Emphatic pronouns

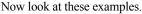
Trevor and Laura are decorating their living-room themselves.

An emphatic pronoun is a word like **myself**, **yourself**. It has the same form as a reflexive pronoun (see Unit 100B).

Here the emphatic pronoun means 'without help'. Trevor and Laura are decorating the room without help from anyone else. Compare *They're having the room wallpapered (by a decorator)* (see Unit 58A).

Here are some more examples.

I built this boat **myself.** My sister designs all these clothes **herself.** Are you doing all the painting **yourselves?** When we say these sentences, we stress **self** or **selves.** 



The manager himself welcomed us to the hotel.

(= The manager welcomed us, not someone else.)

Although she is very rich, the Queen herself never carries any money.

*The house* **itself** is *small, but* the *garden is enormous.* 

Of course the children have been to the zoo. You yourself took them there last year.

Here the emphatic pronoun comes after the noun or pronoun it relates to.

#### B Each other

Look at this example.

Andrew and Jessica help each other with their work. This means that Andrew helps Jessica, and Jessica helps Andrew. Here are some more examples.

Mark and Alan aren't really friends. They don't like each other much.

I'm still in touch with Kirsty. We write to each other.

One another has the same meaning.

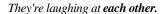
We send each other/one another Christmas cards every year.

We can also use the possessive form each other's.

Tom and Mark wrote down each other's phone numbers. This means that Tom wrote down Mark's number, and Mark wrote down Tom's number.

#### Compare each other and themselves.







They're laughing at themselves.



#### 1 Emphatic pronouns (A)

Add a sentence with an emphatic pronoun, e.g. myself.

Use these verbs: bake, clean, decorate, develop, grow, paint, service, type

- ? I don't take the car to the garage. / service it myself.
- ? Laura didn't buy those pictures. She painted them herself.
- 1 Tom doesn't have his windows cleaned......
- 2 My bread doesn't come from a shop.
- 3 My friends eat lots of fresh vegetables.
- 4 We finished the dining-room yesterday.....
- 5 Mark doesn't dictate his letters to a secretary......
- 6 I don't pay to have my photos done .....

#### 2 Emphatic pronouns (A)

Put in an emphatic pronoun, e.g. myself, yourself.

- ▶ Of course I know about Matthew and Emma. You told me *yourself*.
- 1 The princess......visited the children in hospital.
- 2 The song wasn't very good, but the title of the song became a popular phrase.
- 3 The visitors were welcomed to the school by the headmaster..........
- 4 The pilots ...... are nervous of flying because of terrorist threats.
- 5 You all know that no one can take your decisions for you. You will have to decide.

#### 3 Each other (B)

David and Melanie are in love. Write sentences about them using each other.

- ► Melanie often writes notes to David. He also often writes notes to Melanie. *They often write notes to each other.*
- 1 David is always thinking about Melanie. She's just the same. She's always thinking about him.
- 2 Melanie has got lots of photos of David. He's got lots of photos of her, too.
- 3 They love being together. David enjoys Melanie's company, and she enjoys David's company.
- 4 Melanie is crazy about David. He feels the same way. He's crazy about Melanie.

#### **4 Each other** or a reflexive pronoun? (B and Unit 100)

Put in each other, ourselves or themselves.

- ? We could all do more to keep healthy. We don't look after *ourselves* properly.
- ? The hostess introduced the two guests to *each other*.
- 1 The two boxers did their best to knock ...... out.
- 2 Wetalk to ...... in French because it's the only language we both know.
- 4 We'd better set off early to give ......plenty of time to get there.
- 5 The guards who shot a gunman claimed that they were defending.....
- 6 Luckily we managed to get two seats next to.....

## 102 The pronoun one/ones

#### Introduction

Trevor: Here's that bottle of mineral water you wanted. Laura: Oh, no, you've got a small one. I wanted a big one. Trevor: They didn't have any big ones at the shop on the corner. Laura: That shop never has what I want. Why didn't you go to the one in the High Street?

Here *a small one* means 'a small bottle', *big ones* means 'big bottles', and *the one in the High Street* means 'the shop in the High Street'. We use **one** for a singular noun and **ones** for a plural noun. We use **one** and **ones** to avoid repeating a noun.

We cannot use **one** or **ones** with an uncountable noun, e.g. water. There was no hot water. I had to wash in cold.



### B Structures with one/ones

Sometimes we can either put in **one/ones** or leave it out.

These bowls are nice. What about this (one)?

We can do this after this, that, these and those; after each or another; after which; or after a superlative, e.g. easiest.

1 don't like these sweaters. I prefer those (ones) over there.

I tried all three numbers, and each (one) was engaged.

The product is available in all these colours. Which (one) would you like?

The last question is the most difficult (one).

Sometimes we cannot leave out one/ones.

Our house is the **one** on the left, NOT <del>Our house is the on the left.</del>

We cannot leave out **one/ones** after **the** or **every** or after an adjective.

The film wasn't as good as the one we saw last week.

I rang all the numbers, and every one was engaged.

I'd like a box of tissues. A small one, please.

I threw away my old trainers and bought some new ones.

#### C A small one and one

We can say a small one, a red one, etc but NOT a one.

I've been looking for a coat, but I can't find a nice one.

I've been looking for a coat, but I can't find one. Here we use one

instead of a coat. Here are some more examples.

We decided to take a taxi. Luckily there was one waiting.

If you want a ticket, I can get one for you.

Now look at these examples with one, some, it and them.

/ haven't got a passport, but I'll need one. (one = a passport)

/ haven't got any stamps, but I'll need some. (some = some stamps)

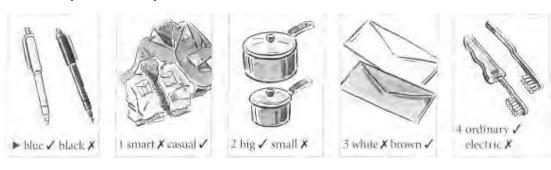
I've got my passport. They sent it last week. (it = the passport)

I've got the stamps. I put **them** in the drawer, (them = the stamps)

One and some/any are like a, but it and they/them are like the. We use one and some/any when we arent saying which, and we use it and they/them to be specific (when we know which).

#### One (A)

Look at the pictures and complete the conversations.



Emma.	Can you lend me a pen, please?				
Matthew:	Do you want a blue one or a black one ?				
Emma:	Oh, a blue one, please.				
Mark:	I might buy a new jacket.				
Sarah:	Do you mean?				
Mark:	Oh,for when I go on holiday.				
! Jessica:	Could you pass me one of those saucepans, please?				
Andrew:	Do you need?				
Jessica:	, please.				
► Sarah:	Could I have a small envelope?				
Secretary:	Yes, of course?				
Sarah:	, please. Thanks.				
4 Vicky:	I'm looking for a toothbrush, but I can't find any.				
Assistant:	Do you mean?				
Vicky:	Oh,				

#### One and ones (A-C)

Rewrite the sentences in brackets so that the noun is not repeated. Use one or ones.

- ▶ These cups are nice. Each one is hand-painted. (Each cup is hand-painted.)
- 2 I've watched all these videos. (I must get some new videos.)

- 6 This map isn't very good.....(The map in the car is better.)

#### 3 One, some, it and them (C)

Put in one, some, it or them.

- ▶ I don't know if I'll need any money. I'd better take *some*, I suppose.
- 1 If you need an umbrella, I can lend you ......
- 2 The radio isn't working. Vicky dropped...... on the floor.
- 3 I'm having a biscuit. Would you like ....., too?
- 4 I had the matches a minute ago, and now I can't find.....
- 5 I haven't got any computer disks, but Emma has got......

## 103 Everyone, something, etc

#### **A** Introduction

Look at these examples.

Everyone enjoyed the show. It was a great success.

The police searched the house but found nothing.

Let's find somewhere to eat.

*Nobody came into the shop all afternoon.* With **every, some** and **no,** we can form words ending in **one, body, thing** and **where.** 

```
everyone!everybody = all the peopleeverything = all the thingseverywhere = (in) all the placessomeone/somebody = a personsomething = a thingsomewhere — (in) a placeno one/nobody = no personno thing /nA0irj/ = no thingsno where = (in) no places
```

Words ending in **thing** can also mean actions or ideas. *Something* awful has happened. You must tell me **everything**.

#### B Someone and anyone, etc

We can also form words with any: anyone, anybody, anything, anywhere.

For some and any see Unit 94A.

Positive: There's someone in the phone box.

Negative: I looked round the shops, but I didn't buy anything.

Question: Has anyone seen today's newspaper?

Offer/Request: Could you do something for me, please?

We can also use words with **any** in a positive sentence.

This door is always left open. Anyone could just walk in here.

Where shall we go? ~ Anywhere. I don't mind.

In these sentences anyone means 'it doesn't matter who', and anywhere means

'it doesn't matter where'. For more details about any see Unit 94C.

#### C Singular and plural

We use a singular verb after everyone, something, anything, etc.

*Everywhere was very crowded.* No one knows how to start the motor. After words with one or body, we normally use they/them/their, even though the verb is singular.

**Everyone** is having their lunch. **Nobody** wants to have their coffee yet. We can also use he, she, him, her, his, etc with someone/somebody when we know the person's sex.

Someone left their/her handbag behind.

#### D Other structures

After everyone, something, etc we can use an adjective.

Let's go somewhere nice. Is there anything interesting in that magazine?

We can also use else.

We always play Scrabble. Let's play something else. {= a different game} Henry wore a suit, but everyone else had jeans on. (= all the other people)

Words ending in **one** and **body** have a possessive form (with 's).

**Someone's** cat is on our roof. I need to be informed about **everybody's** plans.

page 380 Someplace, etc in American English

#### Everyone, something, etc (A)

Complete the conversations. Put in the correct words. ▶ Melanie: Did you say you found something in the street? David: Yes, a diamond ring. Nick: We all know the man is a thief, don't we? Tom: 2 Mark: Were there any calls for me? Secretary: Yes, ......rang while you were out. It was rather strange. He refused to give his name, but he wants to discuss ...... with you. Do you have any plans for the summer? 3 Melanie: Tom: me to his villa in Portugal, so I may go there. 4 Daniel Has Matthew got a job yet? Emma: idea of sitting around doing ...... 2 Someone and anyone, etc (B) Put in someone, anyone, something, anything, somewhere or anywhere. Rachel: Have you seen my calculator? I can't find it (▶) anywhere. Vicky: No, I haven't. Perhaps (1).....'s borrowed it. Rachel: I haven't given (2) permission to borrow it. It must be (3).....in this room. Vicky: Things are in such a mess. It could be (4) Rachel: I know. I can never find (5) ...... when I want it. Vicky: We'll have to do (6).....about this mess. We'd better tidy it up.

#### 3 Singular and plural (C)

Choose the correct form.

- ▶ We had to wait because someone had lost its/their ticket.
- 1 One of the policemen had injured his/their arm.
- 2 One of the guests had brought something wrapped in brown paper. She put it/them on the table.
- 3 No one likes/like going to the dentist, do he/they?
- 4 Everyone <u>have/has</u> to leave <u>his/their</u> bags outside.

#### 4 Other structures (D)

Rewrite the sentences using a phrase with *everyone*, *someone*, *something*, *nothing* and *somewhere* instead of the phrases in brackets.

- ? I'd like to buy (a nice thing). I'd like to buy something nice.
- ? Let's go (to another place), shall we? Let's go somewhere else, shall we?
- ▶ I'll try to remember (the name of everyone). *I'll try to remember everyone's name*.
- 1 1 once met (a famous person)
- 2 (A person's car) is blocking me in.
- 3 I've got (a different thing) to tell you ......
- 4 We know (the opinions of all the people) ......
- 5 (All the other people) except you are going.
- 6 (No exciting things) ever happen here.

# TEST 17 Pronouns (Units 98-103)

## Test17A

conversation. Put in a personal pronoun ( <i>I, me, you</i> , etc) or a reflexive pronoun ( <i>myself, yourself,</i> etc Polly: Where's Martin?  Rupert: He's ill. I spoke to (▶) him yesterday. He was feeling a bit sorry for (1)	ft.
Test 17B	
Decide which word is correct.	
► I can't go to a party. I haven't got anything to wear.	
a) anything b) everything c) something d) nothing	
1 Take care, won't you, Anna? Look after	
2 Yes, would be lovely to see you again.	
a) it b) that c) there d) you	
3 If you want some apples, I'll get youat the shop.	
a) any b) it c) one d) some	
4 We've brought some food with	
a) me b) ourselves c) us d) we	
5 Who does this CD belong to? ~ I've just bought it. a) I b) Me c) Mine d) Myself	
6 The shop doesn't sell new books. It on\y sells old	
a) of them b) ones c) some d) them	
7 Isa post office near here, please?	
a) here b) it c) there d) this	
8 The two girls often wearclothes.	
a) each other b) each other's c) themselves d) themselves'  9 Have you had enough to eat, or would you like something?	
a) another b) else c) new d) other	
Test17C	
Use a pronoun instead of the words in brackets.  ► Michelle is in hospital. <i>She</i> (Michelle) isn't very well.	
1 I lost my watch, but it was only a cheap(watch).	
2 I have to make tea for	
3 Tessa took a photo of(Tessa).	
4 My flat is the (flat) at the top.	

5 The phone rang							
Test 17D							
Complete the text. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.							
(▶) It was on 20 September 1973 that Bobby Riggs met Billie Jean King on the tennis court. Of all the tennis matches until then, this was probably the (1)							
Test 17E							
Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence. ►  I didn't want the fridge so I sold him. I didn't want the fridge, so I sold it.  I ti's a train leaving in ten minutes,							
2—I think someone are coming up the stairs.							
3 Let's meet ourselves at-eight-o'clock shall-we?							
4 We haven't get-a-cameorder-but -we'd-like a.							
5 Let's do a different something today.							
6—One is going to build a new motorway-through here.							
7 I'm-afraid I haven't done something-all day.							
8 Everyone enjoyed themself at the barbecue.							
9 If youre buying a loaf of bread, get a nice fresh							
10 10 I've looked in all places for my credit card.							

11 The two friends-still- see themselves-occasionally.

## 104 Adjectives

#### A Introduction

Henry and Claire are having dinner in a quiet restaurant. It's a warm evening. The food is delicious. Henry is feeling romantic.

An adjective is a word like **quiet, warm, delicious, romantic.** The word **quiet** describes the restaurant. It tells us what the restaurant is like.



### B Word order

There are two places where we can use an adjective: before a noun (a quiet restaurant) and after a linking verb (feeling romantic).

BEFORE A NOUN

Claire's got a **new car**. It was a **dark night**. This is **good coffee**. AFTER A LINKING VERB

Claire's car is new.

It was getting dark.

This coffee tastes good.

Some linking verbs are: appear, be, become, feel, get, look, seem, smell, stay, taste

We can use two or more adjectives together (see Unit 105).

It's a quiet little restaurant. Mike was wearing a dirty old coat.

We can put a word like **very** or **quite** before an adjective.

It was a **very dark** night. Henry was feeling **quite romantic**.

Very and quite are adverbs of degree (see Unit 115).

### c Adjectives used in one position only

We can use most adjectives in both positions - before a noun or after a linking verb. But a few adjectives can go in one position but not in the other.

Here are some examples of adjectives which can only go before a noun. Be careful crossing the main road. The only problem is I've got no money. Chess is an indoor game. The former footballer now trains young players.

Some more examples are: **chief** (= main), **elder** (= older), **eldest** (= oldest), **inner**, **outdoor**, **outer**, **principal** (= main), **upper** 

Here are some examples of adjectives which can only go after a linking verb. At last the baby is asleep. Emma's two brothers are very alike. I'm really pleased to see you. Vicky looked ill, I thought.

Some more examples are: **afraid, alone, ashamed, awake, alive, content** (= happy), **fine** (= in good health), **glad, unwell, well** 

82 Two nouns together, e.g. a colour photo 108 Adjective or adverb?

### 1 Adjectives (A)

Look at the pictures and write a phrase with an adjective and noun. Use these nouns: building, car, cat, chairs, music, power, skirt, weather

















?	a long skirt	3	
?	cold weather	4	
١.		5	
2.		6	

### Adjectives (A-B)

Underline all the adjectives in this description of a hotel.

This comfortable hotel with its pleasant gardens is ideal for people who want a quiet holiday, yet it is only a short distance from the highly popular attractions of the area. There are lovely views from every room. The atmosphere is very friendly, and the staff are always helpful. A holiday here is very good value for money. You can eat your meals at the hotel, where the food tastes marvellous. Or you can of course try some of the excellent local restaurants.

### 3 Adjectives used in one position only (C)

Look at the notes and write the song titles. Sometimes the adjective comes before the noun, and sometimes you need to use ;5 or *are*.

? your sister / elder? this boy / alone

Your elder sister This boy is alone

- 1 the world / asleep
- 2 my desire / chief
- 3 my heart / content
- 4 the thing to remember / main
- 5 the night / alive
- 6 secrets / inner

the girl tor me / only

## 105 The order of adjectives

### A Introduction





It's beautiful sunny weather.

Nick has got a **big black** dog.

We can use more than one adjective before a noun. There is usually one correct order. We cannot say *summy beautiful weather* or *a black big dog* 

### B Adjectives and nouns

We sometimes use two nouns together (see Unit 82).

a glass door a computer program

Here we use glass like an adjective, to describe the door. When we use another adjective as well (e.g. heavy), it comes before both the nouns.

a heavy glass door a useful computer program

### C Word order

We order adjectives according to their meaning. This is the normal order:

	GROUP Opinion (how good?) Size (how big?)	EXAMPLES  wonderful, nice, great, awful, terrible large, small, long, short, tall	Adjectives that say how good and how big come first.
3	Most other qualities	quiet, famous, important, soft, wet, difficult, fast, angry, warm	Most adjectives come next if they do not belong to another group.
5 6 7	Age (how old?) Colour Origin (where from?) Material (made of?) Type (what kind?)	new, old red, blue, green, black American, British, French stone, plastic, steel, paper an electric kettle, political matters, road transport a	Some of these are nouns.
9	Purpose (what for?)	<b>bread</b> knife, a <b>bath</b> towel	

#### Here are some examples.

a small green insect (size, colour)

Japanese industrial designers (origin, type) a wonderful new face cream (opinion, age, purpose)

awful plastic souvenirs (opinion, material) a long boring train journey (size, quality, type)

some nice easy quiz questions (opinion, quality, purpose) a beautiful wooden picture frame (opinion, material, purpose)

We sometimes put commas between adjectives in Groups 1-3 a horrible, ugly building a busy, lively, exciting city

### 1 The order of adjectives (A-C)

Describe the pictures. Use these words: boots, building, car, seat, singer











•	big leather boots		
1.		3	
2.		4	

### 2 The order of adjectives (A-C)

Write a list of things to be sold at an auction.

- ► basin / sugar, antique, silver
- an antique silver sugar basin
- 1 vase / glass, old, lovely
- 2 mirror / wall, attractive
- 3 desk / modern, office
- 4 chairs / kitchen, red, metal
- 5 boat / model, splendid, old
- 6 stamps / postage, valuable, Australian
- 7 table / small, coffee, wooden

### 3 The order of adjectives (A-C)

Look at each advertisement and write the information in a single sentence.

- ► This game is new. It's for the family. And it's exciting. *This is an exciting new family game.*
- 1 This computer is for business. It's Japanese. And it's powerful.
- 2 This fire is electric. It's excellent. And it's small.
- 3 This is a chocolate bar. It's new. And it's a big bar.
- 4 This comedy is American. It's for television. And it's terrific.
- 5 These doors are aluminium. They're for your garage. And they're stylish.
- 6 These shoes are modern. They're for sports. And they're wonderful.

This phone is a mobile. It's German. And it's very good.

## 106 The old, the rich, etc



There are some adjectives that we can use with **the** to talk about groups of people in society, e.g. **the disabled, the blind.** Here are some more examples.

What can we do to feed the hungry? The

The rich can afford to pay more taxes.

The young are usually keen to travel.

It is our duty to care for the sick.

### B What adjectives can we use?

These are some of the adjectives and other words that we can use in a phrase with the.

To do with social or economic position:

the disadvantaged, the homeless, the hungry, the poor, the privileged, the rich, the starving, the strong, the underprivileged, the unemployed, the weak

To do with physical condition or health:

the blind, the deaf, the dead, the disabled, the handicapped, the living, the sick

To do with age:

the elderly, the middle-aged, the old, the over-sixties, the under-fives, the young

We can sometimes use an adverb before the adjective.

**The very poor** are left without hope. **The severely disabled** need full-time care.

There are some adjectives in this structure that normally have an adverb.

The less fortunate cannot afford to go on holiday.

Should **the mentally ill** be allowed to live in the community?

### C The young or the young people?

The young means 'young people in general'.

**The young** have their lives in front of them. When we mean a specific person or a specific group of people, then we use **man, woman, people,** etc.

There was a young man standing on the corner.

I know the young woman in reception. She lives in our street.

None of the young people in the village can find jobs here.

### 1 The old, the rich, etc (A)

Write in the missing words. Use the and these adjectives: homeless, hungry, old, sick, unemployed, young



- ▶ Better education for the young
- 1 Food for
- 2 Homes for

- 3 Better hospitals for
- 4 Jobs for
- 5 Better pensions for

### The old, the rich, etc (A-B)

Rewrite the sentences using a phrase with the and an adjective instead of the <u>underlined</u> phrases.

- ► People who have lots of money have comfortable lives. The rich have comfortable lives.
- 1 We live near a special school for people who can't hear.
- 2 The old soldiers were holding a service for those who had died.
- 3 The government should do more for <u>people who do not have enough money</u>.
- 4 I'm doing a course on caring for people who are mentally handicapped.

### 3 The young or the young people? (C)

Complete these sentences from a newspaper. Use the adjectives in brackets.

Put in e.g. the hungry or the hungry people.

- ? Rich nations can afford to feed *the hungry* (hungry).
- ? The homeless people (homeless) whose story appeared in this paper last week have now found a place to live.
- 1 ...... (sick) need to be looked after, so money must be spent on hospitals.
- 2 Some of ......(young) at the youth club here are running in a marathon.
- 3 Life must be hard for...... (unemployed) in our society today.
- 4 What is the government doing to help.....(poor)?

- 7 There is a special television programme for......(deaf) every Sunday morning.

## 107 Interesting and interested



INTERESTING

The book is full of information. It's very interesting.

The word **interesting** tells us what the book does to Mike — it interests him. A book can be **interesting**, **boring**, **exciting** or **amusing**, for example.

### B Adjective pairs

Here are some more examples.

ING

Tom told us an **amusing** story. The twohour delay was **annoying**. I didn't enjoy the party. It was **boring**. This computer has some very **confusing** 

instructions.

This wet weather is so depressing. It was very disappointing not to get the job. The game was really exciting. Going for a jog with Matthew is exhausting. I thought the programme on wildlife was

fascinating. For one
frightening/terrifying moment 1
thought I was going to fall. I just don't
understand. I find the whole thing
rather puzzling. Lying in a hot bath is
relaxing. I think the way Jessica behaved
was quite

#### shocking.

The test results were **surprising**. What **thrilling** news this is! Congratulations! The journey took all day and night. They found it very **tiring**.

INTERESTED

Mike is very interested in UFOs.

The word **interested** tells us how Mike feels. A person can feel **interested**, **bored**, **excited** or **amused**, for example.

ED

We were **amused** at Tom's story.
The passengers were **annoyed** about the delay.
I went to the party, but I felt **bored**.
I got very **confused** trying to make sense of the instructions.

This weather makes me so depressed. I was very disappointed not to get the job. The United fans were excited. I'm exhausted after jogging all that way. I watched the programme on wildlife. I was

absolutely **fascinated.** When I got onto the roof I felt

frightened/terrified. I must say I'm puzzled. I just don't understand

I feel **relaxed** when I lie in a hot bath. I was quite **shocked** to see Jessica behaving like that.

I was **surprised** at the test results. We were **thrilled** to hear your good news. After travelling all day and night they were very **tired**.

### 1 Interesting and interested (A-B)

What are they saying? Put in these words: depressing, exciting, exhausted, fascinating, interested











► Inis	is a <i>aepressing</i> place.		
1 I'm a	absolutely	3	Chess is a game.
2 I'm	in astronomy.	4	This is really!
2 Intere	esting and <b>interested</b> (A-B)		
Compl	lete the conversation. Write the con	nplete word in eac	h space.
Vicky:	That was an (▶) exciting (excit	) film, wasn't it?	
Rachel	: Oh, do you think so? I'm (1)	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	.(surpris) you liked it.
	I thought it was rather (2)	(d	isappoint).
Vicky:	Well, I was (3)	(puzzl) onc	e or twice. I didn't understand the whole story.
	It was (4)		
Rachel:	I was (5)	(bor) most	of the time.
	I didn't find it very (6)	(inter	rest).

### 3 Interesting and interested (A-B)

Complete the conversations using a word ending in ing or ed.

Pavid: I'm surprised how warm it is for March.Melanie: Yes, all this sunshine is quite *surprising*.

? Vicky: I'm not very fit. I was pretty tired after climbing the mountain.

Natasha: Yes, I think everyone felt tired.

1 Trevor: I think I need to relax.

Laura: Well, lying by the pool should be .....

2 Vicky: It was annoying to lose my ticket.

Emma: You looked really..... when you had to buy another one.

3 Sarah: The cabaret was amusing.

4 Daniel: The museum was interesting, wasn't it?

Rachel: It was OK. I was quite ......in those old maps.

5 Matthew: I'm fascinated by these old photos.

Emma: I always find it...... to see what people looked like as children.

6 Rachel: Was it a big thrill meeting Tom Hanks?

Vicky: You bet. It was just about the most......moment of my life.

I Sarah: You look exhausted. You should go to bed.

Mark: Driving down from Scotland was pretty .....

## 108 Adjective or adverb? (1)

#### A Introduction

Vicky: / like that song that Natasha sang.

Rachel: Yes, it's a nice song. And she sang it nicely, too.

An adjective (nice) describes a noun (song).

The man had a quiet voice. Claire wears expensive clothes. The runners made a slow start. An adverb (nicely) describes a verb (sang).

The man spoke quietly.
Claire dresses expensively.
They started the race slowly.
We do NOT say She sang it nice.

We can use adverbs in other ways. An adverb like **really** or **very** can be combined with an adjective **(hot)** o another adverb **(carefully)** (see Unit 115).

*It was really hot in the sun.* Andrew checked his work very carefully. An adverb like **fortunately** or **perhaps** says something about the whole situation.

Fortunately nothing was stolen. Perhaps Sarah is working late.

### B The ly ending

We form many adverbs from an adjective + ly. For example **politely**, **quickly**, **safely**. But there are some special spelling rules.

- 1 We do not leave out *e*, e.g. *nice* —> *nicely* Exceptions are *true* —> *truly*, *whole* —> *wholly*.
- 2 y—> ily after a consonant, e.g. easy —> easily, lucky —> luckily Also angrily, happily, heavily, etc.
- 3 le —> ly, e.g. possible —> possibly Also comfortably, probably, reasonably, sensibly, terribly, etc.
- 4 *ic* —. *ically*, e.g. *dramatic* —> *dramatically*Also *automatically*, *scientifically*, etc. (Exception: *publicly*)

### C Looked nice and looked carefully

Compare these two structures.

LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVE

Tom was hungry.
The children seemed happy.

My soup has **got cold.** 

An adjective can come after a linking verb such as be (see Unit 104B).

ACTION VERB + ADVERB

Paul ate hungrily.

The children played happily. The man stared coldly at us.

We use an adverb when the verb means that something happens.

Some verbs like look, taste and appear can be either linking verbs or action verbs.

LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVE

Mike looked angry.

The medicine tasted awful.

The man appeared (to he) drunk.

page 380 American English

ACTION VERB + ADVERB

He looked carefully at the signature.
Emma tasted the drink nervously.
A waiter appeared suddenly.

### 1 Adverbs (A-B)

This is part of a story about a spy called X. Put in adverbs formed from these adjectives: bright, careful, fluent, immediate, patient, punctual, quiet, safe, secret, slow

The journey took a long time because the train travelled so ( ) slowly. It was hot, and the sun shone (1) for many clear sky. X could only wait (2) for the journey to end. When the train finally arrived, he had no time to spare, so he (3) took a taxi to the hotel. Y was on time. She arrived (4) at three. No one else knew about the meeting - it was important to meet (5) 'I had a terrible journey,' said Y. 'But luckily the pilot managed to land (6) 'I her English was good, and she spoke very (7) X was listening (8) to every word. They were speaking very (9) in case the room was bugged.

### 2 The ly ending (B)

Look at the information in brackets and put in the adverbs. Be careful with the spelling.

- ► (Emma's toothache was terrible.) Emma's tooth ached *terribly*.

- 3 (The switch is automatic.) The machine switches itself off
- 4 (The debate should be public.) We need to debate the matter.....
- 5 (Everyone was enthusiastic.) Everyone discussed the idea .....
- 6 (We should be reasonable.) Can't we discuss the problem......?
- 7 (The building has to be secure.) Did you lock all the doors.....?

### 3 Adverb or adjective? (A-B)

Decide what you need to say. End your sentence with an adverb ending in ly.

- ► Tell the police that you can't remember the accident. It isn't very clear in your mind. I can't remember the accident very clearly.
- 1 Tell your friend that United won the game. It was an easy win.
- 2 Tell your boss that you've checked the figures. You've been careful.
- 3 Tell your neighbour that his dog barked at you. It was very fierce.
- 4 You are phoning your friend. Tell him about the rain where you are. It's quite heavy.

### 4 Adverb or adjective? (A-C)

Vicky is telling Rachel about a dream she had. Choose the correct forms.

- l had a (►)strange/st<del>rangely</del> dream last night. I was in a garden. It was getting (1) dark/darkly, and it was
- (2) terrible/terribly cold. My head was aching (3) bad/badly. I was walking out of the garden when
- (4) <u>sudden/suddenly</u> I saw a man. He was sitting (5) quiet/<u>quietly</u> on a seat. He seemed very
- (6) unhappy/unhappily. He looked up and smiled (7) sad/sadly at me. I don't know why, but I felt
- (8) <u>curious/curiously</u> about him. I wanted to talk to him, but I couldn't think what to say. I just stood there (9) foolish/foolishly.

## 109 Adjective or adverb? (2)

### A Friendly, likely, etc

The ending ly is the normal adverb ending (see Unit 108). But a few adjectives also end in ly. *Melanie was very friendly.* It was a lively party. We had a lovely time.

Some more examples are: elderly, likely, lonely, silly, ugly

The words are adjectives, not adverbs (NOT She spoke to us friendly). And we cannot add ly.

There is no such word as *friendlily*. But we can say in a friendly way/manner.

She spoke to us in a friendly way. If we need to use an adverb, we often choose another word of similar meaning.

It was lovely. Everything went beautifully.

### B Hard, fast, etc

Compare these sentences.

ADJECTIVE ADVERB

We did some **hard** work. We worked **hard**.

I came on the fast train. The train went quite fast.

We can use these words both as adjectives and as adverbs:

deep, early, fast, hard, high, late, long, low, near, right, straight, wrong (For hardly, nearly, etc, see C.

In informal English, the adjectives **cheap**, **loud**, **quick** and **slow** can be adverbs.

ADJECTIVE ADVERB

They sell **cheap** clothes in the market. They sell things cheap/cheaply there. Back already! That was **quick**. Come as quick/quickly as you can.

### C Hard, hardly, near, nearly, etc

There are some pairs of adverbs like **hard** and **hardly** which have different meanings. Here are some examples.

/ tried hard, but I didn't succeed.

I've got **hardly** any money left, {hardly any = very little, almost none)

Luckily I found a phone box quite **near**. **I nearly** fell asleep in the meeting, {nearly = almost) Rachel arrived **late**, as usual. I've been very busy **lately**, {lately = in the last few days/weeks)

The plane flew **high** above the clouds. The material is **highly** radioactive, {highly = very}

We got into the concert free, {free = without paying}

*The animals are allowed to wander freely, {freely = uncontrolled}* 

#### D Good and well

ADJECTIVE

Good is an adjective, and well is its adverb. The opposites are bad and badly.

our is an adjective, and well is its develor. The opposites are but and but

Natasha is a **good** violinist.

Our test results were **good**.

I had a **bad** night.

She plays the violin very **well**.

We all did **well** in the test.

I slept **badly** last night.

Well can also be an adjective meaning 'in good health', the opposite of ill.

My mother was very ill, but she's quite well again now. How are you? ~ Very well, thank you.

ADVERB

### Friendly, hard, hardly, etc (A-C)

Decide if each underlined word is an adjective or an adverb.

- ? That new building is rather ugly.
- adjective
- ? I'd like to arrive <u>early</u> if I can.
- adverb
- 1 1 haven't seen you for a long time.
- 2 Why are you wearing that <u>silly</u> hat?
- 3 Very young children travel free.
- 4 The temperature is quite high today.
- 5 We <u>nearly</u> missed the bus this morning
- 6 Do you have to play that music so <u>loud</u>?

### 2 Friendly, hard, hardly, etc (A-C)

Complete the conversation. Decide if you need *ly* with the words in brackets.

Mark: How did you get on with Henry today?

Mark: What do you mean?

Sarah: Well, we'd sat a bit too (3)...... (long) over our meal, and we were

Mark: Well, I'm glad you did. And next time you'd better take a taxi.

### 3 Good and well (D)

Complete the conversation. Put in good, well (x2), bad, badly and ill.

Rachel: How did you and Daniel get on in your tennis match?

Matthew: We lost. I'm afraid we didn't play very (►) well. Daniel made some (1).....mistakes.

It wasn't a very (2)......day for us. We played really (3).....

### 4 Friendly, hard, hardly, etc (A-D)

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form.

Daniel: Is it true you saw a ghost last night?

Vicky: Yes, I did. I went to bed (▶) <u>late/lately</u>, and I was sleeping (1) <u>bad/badly</u>. I suddenly woke up in the middle of the night. I went to the window and saw the ghost walking across the lawn.

Daniel: Was it a man or a woman? Vicky: A woman in a white dress. I had a (2) good/well view from the window, but she walked very (3) fast/fastly. She wasn't there very (4) long/longly. I'd (5) hard/hardly caught sight of her before she'd gone. I (6) near/nearly missed her. Daniel: You don't think you've been working too (7) hard/hardly? You've been looking a bit pale (8) late/lately.

Vicky: I saw her, I tell you. Daniel: It isn't very (9) <u>like/likely</u> that ghosts actually exist, you know. I expect you were imagining it.

## Test 18 Adjectives and adverbs (Units 104-109)

### Test 18A

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- ► We walked <u>stew/slowly</u> back to the hotel.
- We could walk <u>free/freely</u> around the aircraft during the flight.
- 2 The young/The young man with dark hair is my sister's boyfriend.
- 3 I'm getting quite <u>hungry/hungrily</u>.
- 4 The man looked thoughtful/thoughtfully around the room.
- 5 Have I filled this form in <u>right/rightly</u>?
- 6 I think Egypt is a <u>fascinated/fascinating</u> country.
- 7 The two sisters do <u>alike/similar jobs</u>.
- 8 I'm pleased the plan worked so good/goodly/well.
- 9 She invented a new kind of wheelchair for the disabled/the disabled people.
- 10 I'm very confused/confusing about what to do.
- 11 They performed the experiment <u>scientifically/scientificly</u>.
- 12 The hostages must be very afraid/frightened people.

### Test 18 B

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

- ► a / bought / coat/ I I new / red / bought a new red coat.
- 1 a / is / nice / place / this
- 2 biscuit / can't / find /1 / large / the / tin
- 3 a / behaved / in / silly / Tessa / way
- 4 coffee / cold / getting / is / your
- 5 a / house / in / live / lovely / old / stone / they
- 6 for / hospital / ill / is / mentally / the / this

### Test 18C

Write tl	he words in brackets and add <i>ly</i> , <i>ing</i> or <i>ed</i> only if you need to.
Janet:	Is this the (▶) <i>new</i> (new) car you've just bought?
Nigel:	That's right. Well, it's second-hand of course.
Janet:	It's (►) exciting (excit) buying a car, isn't it?
Nigel:	Well, it was a bit of a problem actually because I didn't have much money to spend. But I managed
	to find one that wasn't very (1) (expensive).
Janet:	It looks very (2) (nice), I must say.
Nigel:	It's ten years old, so I was (3) (surpris) what good condition it's in. The mar
	I bought it from is over eighty, and he always drove it very (4)(careful),he
	said. He never took it out if it was raining, which I find (5) (amus).
Janet:	I think (6) (elder) people look after their cars better than young people
Nigel:	He was a (7) (friend) old chap. He even gave me all these maps
	(8)(free).

### Test 18 D

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► Jonathan was stupid, (behaved) *Jonathan behaved stupidly.*
- 1 The drink had a strange taste, (tasted)
- Obviously, sick people need to be looked after, (the)
- 3 The dog slept, (asleep)
- 4 The young woman was polite, (spoke)
- 5 The train was late, (arrived)
- 6 The film's ending is dramatic, (ends)
- 7 Polly gave an angry shout, (shouted)
- 8 Billiards is a game for indoors, (indoor)
- 9 The clown amused people, (amusing)
- 10 There was almost no time left, (any)

### Test 18 E

Some of these sentences are correct, but most have a mistake. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/"). If it is incorrect, cross the sentence out and write it correctly.

- ? Your friend looked rather ill. V
- ? It was a long steel pipe. It was a long steel pipe.
- 1 I tasted the soup careful.
- 2 It's a beautiful old English church.
- 3 Are they asleep children?
- 4 It's a school for the deaf people.
- 5 It's a leather new nice jacket.
- 6 The riches are very lucky.
- 7 You handled the situation well.
- 8 He used a green paper thick towel.
- 9 Our future lies with the young.
- 10 The course I started was bored.
- 11 I often talk to the two old next door.
- 12 The smoke rose highly into the air.
- 13 It feels warm in here.
- 14 We felt disappointing when we lost
- 15 Everyone seemed very nervously.
- 16 Tessa drives too fastly.
- 17 This scenery is really depressing.

## 110 Comparative and superlative forms



We form the comparative and superlative of short adjectives (e.g. **cheap**) and long adjectives (e.g. **expensive**) in different ways.

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

Short word, e.g. *cheap:*Long word, e.g. *expensive:* 

cheaper more expensive (the) cheapest

(the) most expensive

For less and least, see Unit 112A.

There are some **less expensive** ones here, look.

### B Short and long adjectives

One-syllable adjectives (e.g. small, nice) usually have the er, est ending.

Your hi-fi is **smaller**. Emma needs a **bigger** computer.

This is the nicest colour. This room is the warmest.

But we use more, most before words ending in ed.

Everyone was pleased at the results, but Vicky was the most pleased.

We also use **more**, **most** with three-syllable adjectives (e.g. **ex-cit-ing)** and with longer ones.

The film was **more exciting** than the book. This dress is **more elegant**. We did the **most interesting** project. This machine is the **most reliable**.

Some two-syllable adjectives have **er**, **est**, and some have **more**, **most**. Look at this information.

#### TWO-SYLLABLE ADJECTIVES

- 1 Words ending in a consonant + y have er, est, e.g. happy \* happier, happiest. Examples are: busy, dirty, easy, funny, happy, heavy, lovely, lucky, pretty, silly, tidy
- 2 Some words have er, est OR more, most, e.g. narrow ▶ narrower, narrowest OR more narrow, most namt Examples are: clever, common, cruel, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, quiet, simple, stupid, tired
- 3 The following words have more, most, e.g. useful \*more useful, most useful.
  - a Words ending in ful or less, e.g. careful, helpful, useful; hopeless
  - b Words ending in ing or ed, e.g. boring, willing; annoyed, surprised
  - c Many others, e.g. afraid, certain, correct, eager, exact, famous, foolish, frequent, modern, nervous, normal, recent

### C Spelling

There are some special spelling rules for the **er** and **est** endings.

- 1 e-> er, est, e.g. nice ~> nicer, nicest, large ~> larger, largest.
  - Also brave, fine, safe, etc
- 2 y-> ier, iest after a consonant, e.g. happy -> happier, happiest. Also lovely, lucky, pretty, etc
- 3 Words ending in a single vowel letter + single consonant letter -> double the consonant e.g. hot -> hotter, hottest, big -> bigger, biggest.

  Also fit, sad, thin, wet, etc (but w does not change, e.g. new -> newer)

For more details, see page 371.

### D The comparison of adverbs

Some adverbs have the same form as an adjective, e.g. early, fast, hard, high, late, long, near.

They form the comparative and superlative with er, est.

Can't you run faster than that? Andrew works the hardest.

Note also the spelling of earlier and earliest.

Many adverbs are an adjective + ly, e.g. carefully, easily, nicely, slowly.

They form the comparative and superlative with **more**, **most**.

We could do this more easily with a computer.

Of all the players it was Matthew who planned his tactics the most carefully.

In informal English we use **cheaper**, **cheapest**, **louder**, **loudest**, **quicker**, **quickest** and **slower**, **slowest** rather than **more cheaply**, **the most loudly**, etc. *Melanie reacted the quickest. You should drive slower in fog*.

Note the forms sooner, soonest and more often, most often.

### E Irregular forms

Good, well, bad, badly and far have irregular forms.

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE

good/well better best
bad/badly worse worst
far farther/further farthest/furthest

You've got the best handwriting. How much further are we going?

We can use **elder**, **eldest** + noun instead of **older**, **oldest**, but only for people in the same family. *My elder/older sister got married last year*.

### F Comparing quantities

We use **more**, **most** and their opposites **less** and **least** to compare quantities. *I haven't got many books. You've got more than I have.* The Hotel Bristol has the most rooms. Trevor spends less on clothes than Laura does. Emma made the least mistakes.

### 1 The comparison of adjectives (A-B)

Complete the sentences. Use these adjectives: beautiful, expensive, high, interesting, tall











- ? The giraffe is taller than the man.
- ? The CD is more expensive than the cassette.
- 2 The top of the mountain than the clouds.
- 3 The acrobat than the clown.

### 2 The comparison of adjectives (A-B)

Tom is a United fan. He never stops talking about them. Put in the superlative form of the adjectives.

- ? Everyone's heard of United. They're the *most famous* (famous) team in the world.
- ? They've got a long history. They're the *oldest* (old) club in England.

- 4 And what a team! It's the ...... (exciting) team ever.
- 6 United have won everything. They're the .................................(successful) team ever.

### 3 The comparison of adjectives (A-C)

Complete the advertisements with the comparative form of the adjective.

- ? Use Get-It-Clean and you'll get your floors *cleaner*
- ? Elegant Wallpapers simply look *more elegant*
- 1 Watch a Happy Video and you'll feel.
- 2 Wear a pair of Fast Shoes and you'll be a runner.
- 3 Helpful Cookbooks are a..... guide to cooking.
- 4 Wash your hair with Lovely Shampoo for...... hair.
- 5 Try a Big-Big Burger and you'll have a ..... meal.
- 6 Restful Beds give you a..... night.
- 7 Wear Modern Fashions for a ...... look.

4	The comparison of adverbs (D)	
	Put in the comparative form of these adverbs: carefull?  I was too nervous to go higher than halfway up th?  We could have found the place more easily with a  Do you have to wear those old jeans, Mike? Can't  You needn't go yet. You can stay a bit	ne tower.  map. you dress
	minutes	
5	Irregular forms (E)	
	easier. It goes downhill from here. I hope y Emma: I feel dreadful, actually, (3)	(1) further is it? (1) part. Look, the path gets you're feeling (2) now, Emma. than before.  Dould be to get home as soon as we can. I'm not very fit
6	Comparing quantities (F)	
7	Comparative and superlative forms (A-F)	
	<ul> <li>Write the correct forms.</li> <li>? You're the lac-kyest person I know.</li> <li>? The situation is getting difficulter.</li> <li>1 I was happyer in my old job.</li> <li>2 I've got the most small office.</li> <li>3 This photo is the goodest.</li> <li>4 Last week's meeting was mere-sheFt.</li> <li>5 Money is the importantest thing.</li> <li>6 Is Rachel elder than Vicky?</li> <li>7 This game is exciteger than the last one.</li> <li>8 Of all the students, Andrew does the mere work.</li> </ul>	luckiest more difficult
	9 This month has been weter than last month.  10 The prices are more low here.	

11 I feel mere-bad than I did yesterday.

## 111 Comparative and superlative patterns (1)

#### A Introduction

There are a number of different sentence patterns with comparative and superlative forms, e.g. **older than me, the sweetest man in the world.** 

### B The comparative and than

We often use a phrase with **than** after a comparative. *This* restaurant is **nicer than** the Pizza House. I had a **bigger** meal **than** you. The steak is **more expensive than** the fish.

### C The superlative

We normally use **the** before a superlative.

The quickest way is along this path. The last question is the most difficult. Note the pattern with one of.

Michael Jackson is one of the most famous pop singers ever.

After a superlative we can use in or of. We use in with places and with groups of people, e.g. team.

It's the most expensive hotel in Oxford.

Who is the **best** player **in the team?**August is the **wettest** month **of the year.** 

This question is the **most difficult of all.**We often use a clause after a superlative.

That was the most delicious meal (that) I've ever eaten.

Melanie is the nicest person you could meet.

#### D As... as

We use as ... as to say that things are equal or unequal. Our house is as big as yours. They're the same size, NOT It is so big as yours. It's warmer today. It isn't as cold as yesterday.

In a negative sentence we can also use so ... as, but this is less common than as ... as. *This flat isn't as big as/so big as our old one.* 

Here are some more examples of as ... as.

The chair is **as expensive as** the table. We cant do crosswords **as quickly as** you do. I don't earn **as much** money **as** I'd like.

Note also the same as.

The result of the match was **the same as** last year.

#### E Than me/than I am

Compare than me and than I am. Both are correct, and they have the same meaning.

You're twenty years older than me. Harriet's husband isn't as tall as her. After than or as, a personal pronoun on its own has the object form, e.g. me. You're twenty years older than I am. Her husband isn't as tall as she is. But if the pronoun has a verb after it, then we us the subject form, e.g. I.



### 1 The comparative and than (B)

Comment on these situations. Write sentences with a comparative and *than*. Use these adjectives: *big, expensive, long, old, popular, strong, tall* 

- ? The film lasts two and a half hours, but the videotape is only two hours long. *The film is longer than the videotape.*
- ? The water-colour is £85, and the oil-painting is £100. The oil-painting is more expensive than the water-colour.
- 1 The church was built in 1878 and the library in 1925.
- 2 Daniel can lift 90 kilos, but Matthew can lift 120 kilos.
- 3 Mike is 1.7 metres tall, but Harriet is 1.8 metres.
- 4 Andrew hasn't many friends. Claire has lots of friends.
- 5 Mark's car has room for five people, but Sarah's has room for only four.

2	The	super	lative	(C)
---	-----	-------	--------	-----

Write sentences from the notes. Use the superlative form of the adjective. ► Melanie / kind person /1 know *Melanie is the kindest person I know.* 1 Friday / busy day / week ... of the week. 2 the Metropole / nice hotel / town ...... 3 this watch / one / cheap / you can buy ..... 4 this Beatles album / good / they ever made ...... 5 Alan / successful salesman / company ..... 3 As... as (D) Use the notes and add sentences with isn't as ... as. ► a car / a motor bike / expensive Why don't you buy a motor bike? A motor bike isn't as expensive as a car. 1 metal / plastic / strong I don't like these plastic screws. 2 the armchair / the stool / comfortable Oh, don't sit there. 3 surfing / swimming / exciting I prefer surfing to swimming. ..... 4 the post / e-mail / quick

### 4 Than me/than I am (E)

Choose the correct pronoun.

Tom: Why is Luke in our basketball team and not me? Aren't I as good as (▶) <u>he/him</u>? Is he taller than (1) <u>I/me</u>? Is he a better player than (2) <u>I am/me am</u>?

Nick: I don't know. I can't understand why I'm in the team. You and Luke are both better than (3) I/me.

Tom: Carl's in the team too, but I've scored a lot more points than (4) he has/him has.

A letter will take two days.

## 112 Comparative and superlative patterns (2)

### A Less and least

Less and least are the opposites of more and most. We use less and least with both long and short words.

A bus is less expensive than a taxi.

(= A bus is cheaper than a taxi./A bus isn't as expensive as a taxi.) I feel better today,

less tired. I'm the least musical person in the world, I'm afraid. We go out less often

these days. You should do less work. You do too much.

### B Much faster

We can put a word or phrase (e.g. **much**, **far**, **a bit**) before a comparative to say how much faster, cheaper, etc something is. Look at these examples.

It's much faster by tube. A bus is far cheaper than a taxi.

This bed is a bit more comfortable. Business is rather better this year.

I got up a little later than usual. This month's figures are slightly less good.

I'll need a lot more water. A computer will do it much more efficiently. Before

a comparative we can use much, a lot, far; rather; slightly, a bit, a little.

We can also use **no** and **any.** No has a negative meaning.

Your second throw at the basket was no nearer than your first.

We can use any in negatives and questions and with if.

Your second throw wasn't any nearer than your first.

Are you sleeping **any better** since you've been taking the pills?

If we leave **any later** than seven, we'll get caught in the rush hour.

### C Faster and faster

We use expressions like **faster and faster** and **more and more expensive** to say that something is increasing all the time.

say that something is mercasing an the time.

The caravan was rolling faster and faster down the hill.

The queue was getting longer and longer.

Prices go up and up. Everything gets more and more expensive.

The crowd are becoming more and more excited.

The country is rapidly losing its workers, as **more and more** people are emigrating.

The form depends on whether the comparative is with **er** (e.g. **louder**) or with **more** (e.g. **more** expensive (see **Unit 110B**).

We can also use **less and less** for something decreasing.

As each new problem arose, we felt less and less enthusiastic.

### D The faster, the better

We use this pattern to say that a change in one thing goes with a change in another. Look at these example— There's no time to lose. **The faster** you drive, **the better. The higher** the price, **the more reliable** the product.

The more the customer complained, the ruder and more unpleasant the manager became.

*The sooner* we leave, the sooner we'll get there. Are you looking for a cheap holiday? ~ Yes, the cheaper the better.

### 1 Less (A)

Complete the sentences. Use *less* with these words: *attractive*, *busy*, *convenient*, *nervous*, *optimistic*, *painful*, *seriously* 

- ► Laura once hated flying, but now she feels *less nervous* about it.
- 1 David says his leg really hurt at first, but now it's.....
- 2 Mark and Sarah normally have lots to do, but they're this week.
- 3 Rita's old flat was near the shops. Her new place is \_\_\_\_\_\_ for shopping.
- 4 Claire used to think Henry was very handsome, but now she finds him.....
- 5 Matthew is always exercising. Maybe he should take his fitness.....

### 2 Much faster (B)

Decide what to say. Use a phrase like a bit better or a lot colder.

- ➤ You were feeling unwell earlier. Say that you feel better now. A bit, anyway. *I feel a bit better now.*
- 1 Mention that yesterday was colder than today. A lot colder, in fact.
- 2 Say that your coat is longer than is fashionable. A bit, anyway.
- 3 You left work earlier than usual this afternoon. Slightly, anyway. Tell your friend.
- 4 Say that the shop is more expensive than the supermarket. Much more.
- 5 Ask if the new machine is reliable any more so than the old one.

### 3 Faster and faster (C)

Vicky works very hard at her studies, but she's worried that she's making no progress. Complete her sentences.

- ? This subject gets harder and harder (hard) all the time.
- ? I'm just getting more and more confused (confused).

- 3 I spend ...... (more) time on my work.
- 5 My problems are just getting (bad).

### 4 The faster, the better (D)

Complete each sentence using the information in brackets.

- ? (The rent is high.) The bigger a flat is, the higher the rent is.
- ? (You learn quickly.) The younger you are, the more quickly you learn.
- 1 (The roads are quiet.) The earlier you leave, .....
- 2 (The choice is wide.) The bigger a supermarket is,.....
- 3 (I get confused.) The more I try to work this out,.....
- 4 (You can speak fluently.) The more you practise, .....
- 5 (The beaches get crowded.) The better the weather is,.....

## TEST 19 Comparative and superlative (Units 110-112)

#### Test 19A

Write the comparative form of the words in brackets.

- ? They've made these chocolate bars *smaller* (small).
- ? Sport is *more interesting* (interesting) than politics.
- 1 Can't you think of anything ...... (intelligent) to say?
- 2 Well, the place looks.....(clean) now.
- 3 Janet looks ...... (thin) than she did.
- 4 You need to draw it.....(carefully).
- The weather is getting ..... (bad).
- 7 I can't stay .....(long) than half an hour.
- 8 A mobile phone would be a ...... (useful) present.
- 9 I'll try to finish the job ...... (soon).
- 10 It was ...... (busy) than usual in town today.
- 11 I'll be even ...... (annoyed) if you do that again.

### Test 19B

Write the superlative form of the words in brackets.

- ? It's the *shortest* (short) day of the year.
- ? It's the *most beautiful* (beautiful) building in the world.
- 1 That was the .......(funny) film I've ever seen.
- 2 It was the ......(horrible) feeling I've ever had.
- 3 Have you read her ...... (recent) book?
- 4 It's the ......(large) company in the country.
- 5 It was the ......(boring) speech I've ever heard.
- 6 You've got the ...... (far) to travel.
- 8 The factory uses the ......(modern) production methods.
- 9 This is the ...... (early) I've ever got up.
- 10 It was the ......(sad) day of my life.

### Test 19C

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a sentence is correct put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

V

- ? I've got the least powerful computer in the world.
- ? London is mere bigger than Birmingham. *more*
- 1 Silver isn't as expensive as gold.
- 2 Indian food is the nicer than Chinese, I think.
- 3 The telephone is one of the most useful inventions ever
- 4 I feel a much better now, thank you.
- 5 The longer you wait, so the harder it'll be.
- 6 The piano is heavier than the sofa.
- 7 This is the most quickest way to the hotel.
- 8 You're taller than he is.
- 9 Who is the cleverest student in of the class?
- 10 The weather is getting hotter and more hotter.

### Test 19 D

			letter and write t			ce.	
(1) (2) (3) (4)	))	than l my o frier	nuch better than m expected. Lucki ld boss, Mrs Cros adly person I've ev tt I'm the younges	ly my new boss sley, was. I hat ver met. Everyo	isn't as rude ed her. She was ne here is older	s the	the office. But
in wo	ore than I did be my old job, whe	fore. The bad there the bus took	at I get a (6) ing is that the jou me straight there e, (8)	rney isn't (7)  Now I have to	change buses	 . But I'm all	simple as it was lowed to start
<b>&gt;</b>	a) more	b) most	c) much	d) very			
1	a) more nice	b) most nice	c) nicer	d) nicest			
2	a) as	b) so	c) than	d) that			
3	a) least	b) less	c) less and less				
4	a) as I	b) as me	c) than I	d) than me			
5	a) from	b) in	c) of	d) out of			
6	a) bit	b) less	c) lot	d) much			
7	a) as	b) less	c) more	d) same			
8	a) more easier	b) more easy	c) the easier	d) the easy			
Test 1	9 E						
Co	mnlete the seco	nd sentence so t	hat it has a simila	or meaning to th	e first. Use the	word in br	ackets
			han all the others		ie mst. Ose me	word in ore	ackets.
		e most convenier		, (111031)			
1			the kitchen, (bigg	per)			
•	The kitchen		(018)	501)			
2	I'm not as fit as				•••••		
_		, ,					
3	The table and t				•••••		•••••
_							the desk
4	Prices just get						
		-					
5			kirt, (expensive)				
							the dress.
6		is the easiest, (c					
		L					
7			g all the time, (ex	cited)			
8		a more romant					
	It's the		2/( /				road

### 113 Adverbs and word order

### A Where do adverbs go?

There are three places in the sentences where an adverb can go. They are called front position (at the beginning of a sentence), mid position (see B) and end position (at the end of a sentence). (But for adverbs of degree see Unit 115.)

```
FRONT MID END

Then the ship slowly sailed away.

Outside it was obviously raining hard.
```

### **B** Mid position

Mid position means close to the verb. Here are some examples of adverbs in mid position.

	AUXILIARY	ADVERB	AUXILIARY	MAIN VfcRB	
The visitors	are	just		leaving.	
Andrew	has	always		liked	Jessica.
We	don't	often		go	out in the evening.
You	should	never		take	unnecessary risks.
The pictures	have	definitely	been	stolen.	
I		really		hate	housework.
You		probably		left	the bag on the bus.

The adverb comes after the first auxiliary, e.g. are, has, don't.

If there is no auxiliary, then the adverb comes before the main verb, e.g. hate, left.

Note the word order in questions.

Has Andrew **always** liked Jessica? Do you **often** go out in the evening?

When the verb be is on its own, the adverb usually comes after it.

The boss is **usually** in a bad temper. You're **certainly** a lot better today.

When there is stress on the main verb be or on the auxiliary, then the adverb usually comes before it. *You certainly* are a lot better today. *I really* have made a mess, haven't *I*?

### C Verb and object

An adverb does not usually go between the verb and the direct object. We put it in end position, after the object.

```
VERB OBJECT ADVERB

Tom ate his breakfast quickly. NOT Tom-ate-quickly his' breakfast.

We played volleyball yesterday, NOT We played yesterday volleyball.

I like classical music very much, NOT Hike very much classical music.
```

But an adverb can go before a long object.

Detectives examined carefully the contents of the dead man's pockets.

#### D Adverbs of manner

An adverb of manner tells us how something happens, e.g. noisily, quickly. It usually goes in end position, but an adverb which ends in ly can sometimes go in mid position. We asked permission politely. We politely asked permission.

### E Adverbs of place and time

Adverbs and adverbial phrases of place and time usually go in end position.

*Is there a phone box nearby?* People didn't have cars then.

We're meeting by the entrance. Trevor wasn't very well last week.

Did you have a nice time in New York? I'll see you before very long.

Sometimes they can go in front position.

We're really busy this week. Last week we had nothing to do.

Some short adverbs of time can also go in mid position.

*I'll soon* find out. The train is **now** approaching Swindon.

For yet, still and already see Unit 114.

### F Adverbs of frequency

An adverb of frequency tells us 'how often'. It usually goes in mid position (see B).

Mark is always in such a hurry. I sometimes feel depressed.

I've often thought about getting married. Do you usually work so late? Normally,

usually, often, sometimes and occasionally can also go in front or end position.

Normally Sarah goes by train. 1 feel depressed sometimes.

Phrases like every day, once a week or most evenings go in front or end position.

**Every day** we go logging. Rachel has a driving lesson three times a week. There's a news summary every hour. We watch television most evenings.

### **G** Sentence adverbs

A sentence adverb is a word or phrase like **certainly**, **perhaps**, **luckily**, **of course**. It says something about the situation described in the sentence. The adverb can go in front, mid or end position. Sometimes we put a comma after or before the adverb, especially in front or end position.

Fortunately, the weather stayed fine. Maybe you'll win a free holiday.

We'll **probably** have to queue for tickets. Rachel was late, **of course.** In a

negative sentence, **probably** and **certainly** come before **won't**, **didn't**, etc.

We probably won't get there in time. I certainly didn't expect a present!

Also usually goes in mid position, but too and as well go in end position.

Melanie bakes lovely cakes. She also makes bread./She makes bread, too/as well.

### H End position

There can be more than one adverb or adverbial phrase in end position. Usually a single-word adverb (e.g. **safely**) comes before a phrase (e.g. **on a small airfield**).

They landed safely on a small airfield. I always eat here at lunch-time.

When there is a close link in meaning between a verb and an adverb, then that adverb goes next to the verb. For example, with verbs of movement like **go, come** and **move**, a phrase of place comes before time.

I usually go to bed early.

Tom came here yesterday.

My parents moved to London in 1993.

But often two adverbial phrases can go in either order.

The concert was held at the arts centre last night. The concert was held last night at the arts centre.

### 1 Adverbs (A-B)

Read each sentence and write down the word which is an adverb.

- ► I'm just finishing an interesting article in this magazine, just
- 1 We have to leave our dirty shoes outside.
- 2 Perhaps you have to type a password into the computer.
- 3 Someone always leaves this door open.
- 4 Obviously we aren't going to go for a walk in the rain.
- 5 The car rolled silently down the hill.
- 6 Your friend Andrew works hard, doesn't he?

### 2 Adverbs and their position (A-B)

Read this true story. Some adverbs are underlined. Say if their position is front, mid or end.

Once a man called Alvin decided to rob a bank in Montgomery, Alabama. Alvin's parents had often told him that good manners were important. So Alvin went to the bank and stood in line. He waited patiently Soon it was his turn. He dramatically pulled out a gun and threatened the cashier. She politely told him to he was in the wrong line and should go to another counter. Alvin immediately went to the correct place a stood in line again. Suddenly the police rushed in and arrested him. Alvin was amazed. They'd caught hir before he'd even done the robbery. The moral of the story is that you shouldn't always do what your pare: tell you.

	ADVERB	POSITION		ADVERB	POSITION
$\blacktriangleright$	once	front			
1	often		6	immediately	
2	patiently		7	again	
3	soon		8	suddenly	
4	dramatically		9	even	
5	politely		10	always	

### 3 Mid position (B)

Complete the conversations using the words in brackets. Put the adverbs in the best place.

	Emma:	Did you know the man who tried to steal your bag? (certainly / recognize / would		
	Vicky:	No, but I would certainly recognize him again.		
1	David:	That was a goal, wasn't it? (clearly / crossed)		
	Tom:	Yes, the ball the line.		
2	Mark:	The weather is a lot better today, (probably / rain / will)		
	Sarah:	It said on the radio it		
3	Tom:	How do we get to Mike's place? (didn't / fully / understand)		
	Nick:	I don't know. I the directions.		
4	Harriet:	It's quiet here today, isn't it? (usually / are)		
	Laura:	Yes, the neighboursout on a Sunday		
5	Emma:	Have you been to this place before? (it / occasionally / visited)		
	Matthew:	Yes, I asachild		
6	Alan:	Did the computers crash this morning? (soon / were / working)		
	Mark:	Yes, but theyagin		
7	Melanie:	Your friend's late, Vicky, (forgotten / has / obviously)		
	Vicky:	Rachel that we arranged to go out.		

### 4 Adverbs of frequency (B, F)

Look at what people are saving and write the information in one sentence.

Put the adverb or adverbial phrase in mid or end position. Choose the best position.

- ? Vicky: I lose my way in London. It always happens.
  - Vicky always loses her way in London.
- ? Laura: The birds wake me up. It happens every morning.

The birds wake Laura up every morning.

- 1 David: It rains when I'm on holiday. Well, usually.
- 2 Rita: My friend visits me. She comes most weekends.
- 3 Mark: I get a pay rise. I get one every year.
- 4 Rachel: I don't check my work. 1 never do that.

### 5 Adverbs and word order (A-G)

Put the words in the right order and write the statements. Sometimes there is more than one possible order.

- 1 always / I've / known / your secret
- 2 afford / can't / certainly / a new car / we
- 3 didn't / far / the tourists / walk
- 4 carefully / cut / the paper / Tom
- 5 also / can / Natasha / play / the violin
- 6 I / most days / read / the newspaper

### 6 Adverbs in end position (H)

Complete these sentences from a newspaper. Put the words and phrases in the best order.

- ▶ The Queen has visited the show *regularly since 1985* (regularly / since 1985).

### 7 Adverbs and word order (A-H)

Read the postcard from Olivia to her friend Kirsty and write the sentences. Put the adverbs in the best place.

- (►) Thank you for having us (last weekend). (1) We had a lovely time (in the country). (2) We arrived home at about eight (safely). (3) You must come and visit us (before too long). (4) It's nice to see you and Tony (always). (5) You'll be able to come in the new year (maybe). (6) We'll see you (sometime).
- ► Thank you for having us last weekend.

2

3

4

5

6

## 114 Yet, still and already



Yet means that we are expecting something. (It's the time to book a holiday.)

Still means 'going on longer than expected'. (It's late to be thinking about a holiday.)

Already means 'sooner than expected'. (It's early to have had a holiday.)

### B Yet

**Yet** usually goes at the end of a negative statement or a question.

Vicky has got a present, but she hasn't opened it yet. Wait a minute. I'm not ready yet. Have they sent you your cheque yet? ~ No, not yet. I should get it next week.

### C Still and already

In a positive statement, **still** and **already** usually go in mid position (see Unit 113B). Sarah isn't home yet. She's **still** at work. We wrote a month ago, and we're **still** waiting for a reply. I've only been at work an hour, and I'm **already** exhausted. There's no need to tell me. I **already** know.

We can also use still in a negative statement. It goes before haven't, can't, etc.

It's nearly lunch-time, and you still haven't opened your mail.

My friend is sixteen, and she still can't swim.

Compare these sentences. The meanings are similar.

*Rita hasn't booked a holiday* **yet.** *Rita still hasn't booked a holiday.* **Still** is stronger than **yet.** It often expresses surprise that the situation has gone on for so long.

In a question **still** and **already** usually go after the subject.

Are you **still** waiting after all this time? Has Tom **already** been on holiday?

### D No longer and any longer/any more

**No longer** means that something is finished. It goes in mid position (see Unit 113B). *You can't buy these bikes now. They no longer make them. I used to belong to the sports club, but I'm no longer a member.* 

No longer can be a little formal. In informal speech we use not... any longer or not... anymore. They don't make these bikes any longer/any more.

Rita has moved. She doesn't live here any longer/any more.

Any longer/any more comes at the end.

12A Yet and already with the present perfect

### 1 Yet, still and already (A) Put in yet, still or already. ► Mark: I know it isn't lunch-time yet, but I'm really hungry. Sarah: It's only eleven. And you've already had two coffees since breakfast. You've ..... got this library book, and it was due back ten days ago. 1 Vicky: Rachel: Well, I haven't finished it..... 2 Nick: Tom is a very slow eater, isn't he? He's ......having his soup. David: And we've .....started our pudding. 3 Trevor. Has the postman been ..............? I'm expecting a letter from the bank. Yes, he has, but that letter..... hasn't arrived. Laura: 2 Word order with yet, still and already (A) Put the word in brackets into one of the sentences. ? I've bought some CDs. I haven't played them, (yet) / haven't played them yet. ? This calculator works. I've had it for ages, (still) This calculator still works. 1 I owe Emma £20.1 can't ask her for more, (already) 2 We've spent all our money. And we're only halfway through our holiday, (already) 3 I've cleaned this window. But it looks dirty, (still) 4 Our friend took some photos. We haven't seen them, (yet) 5 I can't understand the rules. I know you explained them to me. (still) 3 Still and any more (C-D) Two people are talking about the place they live in. Write the replies using still or not... any more. Old man: Young man: ? There was a church. Well, there's still a church. ? You could see fields. You can't see them any more. Now it's just houses. ~ Not now ..... 1 Children played there. 2 Boats came along the river. ~ Oh, ......................... Look at them. 3 The view was beautiful. Well. It's awful. 4 It was our home. And..... Yet, still, already, no longer and any longer/any more (A-D) Put in already, any more, no longer, still and yet. ► It's *still* raining, look. How much longer can it go on? 1 The railway closed down years ago, so there's..... a railway station here. 2 They want to build a new hotel here, but they haven't got permission ...... 3 Rita isn't going out with Nick. She told him she didn't want to see him......

4 Those people moved here only three months ago, and they're.....leaving.

## 115 Adverbs of degree, e.g. very, quite

### A Very, quite, a bit, etc.





Mark is quite tired. He's been



Laura is **a bit** tired. She's been

working all day.

Sarah is **very** tired. She's had to work late at the office.

working all morning.

An adverb of degree makes the meaning weaker or stronger. Here are some more examples.

SMALL DECREE (weaker)

a little late slightly complicated MEDIUM DEGREE

fairly unusual
pretty good
rather nice

LARGE DEGREE (stronger)

absolutely sure really ill completely mad extremely cold

### B Very cold, quite quickly, etc

An adverb of degree (e.g. very) goes before an adjective (e.g. cold) or an adverb (e.g. quickly).

ADVERB + ADJECTIVE

It's very cold today. Rita looked rather upset. This dress is absolutely marvellous. ADVERB + ADVERB

The time passed quite quickly. We go on holiday fairly soon. United played extremely well.

Before a comparative we can use **a bit, a little, a lot, far, much, rather** and **slightly.** See also Unit 112B. *I'm feeling a lot better today.* These new trains go **much faster**.

### C Really hurting, quite enjoys, etc

Some adverbs of degree can describe a verb.

They usually go in mid position (close to the verb — see Unit 113B).

My foot is **really hurting**. Laura **quite enjoys** shopping. I **rather like** this cake. Some adverbs of degree go at the end of a sentence when they describe a verb. They are **a bit, a little, a lot, awfully, much** and **terribly.** 

Mark travels a lot. I'll open the window a little. The animals suffer terribly.

**Absolutely, completely** and **totally** can go in mid position or at the end. We completely lost our way/We lost our way completely. I'm afraid I totally disagree/I'm afraid I disagree totally.

#### D Much

Now look at these sentences.

Positive: I like this town very much, NOT Hike this town much

Negative: / don't like this town very much, OR I don't like this town much.

In a positive statement we use very much. In a negative statement we can use either very much or much.

116 More about quite and rather 117 Too and enough

### 1 Very, quite, a bit, etc (A)

Write sentences using one of the phrases in brackets.











$\blacktriangleright$	(quite hungry or very hungry?) He's quite hungry.	3 (quite strong or very strong	?)
1	(a bit busy or very busy?)	4 (fairly happy or extremely happy	r?)
2	(a bit thirsty or really thirsty?)		

### 2 Very, quite and a bit (A)

Put in very, quite or a bit.

- ► The bus service is all right. The buses are *quite* frequent.
- 1 I couldn't sleep because of the awful noise. The disco was..... noisy.
- 2 The weather was OK at least it didn't rain. It was ...... good.
- 3 The train was almost on time. It was just..... late.
- 4 Someone paid a great deal of money for the house. It was..... expensive.
- 5 There were some very small traces of mud on the boots. They were............ dirty.
- 6 There was a medium amount of traffic on the road. It was.....busy.

### 3 Very cold, really hurting, etc (B-D)

Put the adverbs in the right place. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

- ? These books are old (very).
- These books are very old.
- ? I hate travelling by air (really).

I really hate travelling by air.

- 1 That radio is loud (a bit).
- 2 1 like my new job (quite).
- 3 Why don't you slow down (a little)?
- 4 The rain spoilt our day (completely).
- 5 We did the job quickly (fairly).
- 6 I feel better now (a lot).
- 7 We enjoyed the concert (very much).
- 8 My arms ached (terribly).

### 4 Adverbs of degree (A-D)

Complete the advertisement for holiday apartments by choosing the correct words.

Why not take this opportunity to buy a wonderful Interlux Timeshare apartment in San Manila? These are ( $\triangleright$ ) a bit/rather/really luxurious apartments set in this (1) absolutely/slightly magnificent seaside resort, a (2) fairly/really beautiful and unspoilt place, which you'll like (3) much/very/very much. The apartments are (4) extremely/pretty/quite good value. And we are a company with a (5) fairly/quite/very good reputation. This is a (6) bit/slightly/totally safe way of investing your money. But hurry! People are buying up the apartments (7) a lot/very/very much quickly.

## 116 Quite and rather

### A Quite meaning 'fairly'

Quite usually means 'fairly' or 'a medium amount' (see Unit 115A).

I jeel quite hungry now. Repairing the machine is quite difficult.

The talk was **quite** interesting. We were **quite** surprised at the result.

(But see D for another meaning of quite.)

### B Stress with quite

In speech, whether we stress **quite** or the adjective makes a difference to the meaning.

If we stress **quite**, it means 'fairly but not very'. The meaning is negative.

The exhibition was <u>quite</u> good, but I've seen better ones.

I get up quite early, but not as early as you do.

If we stress the adjective, the meaning is positive (but not as positive as **very**).

The exhibition was quite <u>good</u>. I enjoyed looking round it.

I got up quite <u>early</u>. I had a lot of jobs to do.

### C Quite or rather?

When we make a favourable comment, we usually say quite, not rather.

The book was quite interesting. It's quite warm now. It was quite nice walking through the park.

In unfavourable comments, we usually say **rather**, but **quite** is possible. *The book* was **rather** boring/quite boring. It was **rather** awkward/quite awkward taking my suitcase on the underground.

Rather in a favourable comment means 'to a surprising or unusual degree'. It's rather warm for October. (It isn't usually so warm.) / didn't know David can cook. He's rather good at it. I expect Tom's jokes were awful. ~ Actually they were rather funny.

We can use rather with a comparative but not quite.

The meal took rather longer than we expected.

For quite and rather with a/an, see Unit 89B. *It was quite an interesting book.* 

### D Quite meaning 'completely'

With some adjectives, **quite** means 'completely' or 'totally'. What you said is **quite wrong**. {= completely wrong) The idea is **quite absurd**. (= totally absurd) The situation is **quite hopeless**.

Quite means 'completely' with these adjectives: absurd, alone, amazing, awful, brilliant, certain, dead, different, dreadful, extraordinary, false, hopeless, horrible, impossible, perfect, ridiculous, right, sure, true, useless, wrong

Compare the uses of quite.

I'm quite tired. (= fairly)
The advice was quite useful. I got one or two tips.

I'm quite exhausted. (= completely)
The advice was quite useless. It was absolutely no good at all.

### 1 Stress with quite (B)

Which word do we stress, *quite* or the adjective? Underline the stressed word.

- ? These pens are quite good but not as good as the ones I usually buy.
- ? This book is quite exciting. I can't put it down.
- 1 These fashions are quite new but not the very latest thing.
- 2 It's quite late. We'd better be going.
- 3 The sums are quite easy. I can do them in my head.
- 4 The music was quite good, but I wasn't really impressed.
- 5 The sun is quite bright. You'll need your sunglasses.

### 2 Quite or rather? (C)

### 3 Quite or rather? (C)

Add a sentence expressing the idea in brackets.

Use *quite* or *rather* in your sentence. Sometimes either is possible.

► (It's pleasant by the river.)

Let's walk along by the river. *It's quite pleasant there*.

► (You think Nick is aggressive.)

I don't like Nick much. I think he's rather aggressive.

1 (Changing trains twice is complicated.)

We have to change trains twice

2 (Your car is big.)

I can give you all a lift

3 (The show went on longer than you expected.)
It was a good show, but......

4 (You made your decision quickly.)

It wasn't a difficult decision

### 4 The meanings of quite (A, D)

Does quite mean 'fairly' or 'completely'?

- ? Try one of these sweets. I think they're <u>quite nice</u>. = fairly nice
- ? The driver walked away unhurt. It was <u>quite amazing</u>. = completely amazing
- 1 I couldn't agree to the idea. It was <u>quite ridiculous</u>. =
- 2 I need some help with this crossword. It's <u>quite difficult</u>. =
- 3 That isn't the same thing at all. It's <u>quite different</u>. =
- 4 I wasn't expecting to get a postcard. I was quite surprised. =
- 5 I bought this guidebook. It looks quite useful. =
- 6 Are you sure you want the job? ~ Yes, I'm <u>quite certain</u>. =

# 117 Too and enough



Too short and not long enough both mean the same thing.

## **B** Word order with too and enough

Too goes before an adjective or adverb.

Claire doesn't want to marry Henry. She thinks he's too old.

Zedco are in trouble. The company reacted too slowly to the rise in prices.

**Enough** goes after an adjective or adverb.

The water isn't **hot enough**. It needs to be boiling, NOT <del>enough hot</del> You didn't put the screws in **tightly enough**, NOT enough <del>tightly</del>

#### Too many, too much and enough go before a noun.

No wonder you're tired. You've been going to too many parties.

Andrew spends too much time working.

There'll be fifteen people for coffee. Have we got enough cups?

Everything is so expensive. Did you bring **enough** money? We use **many** with a plural noun and **much** with an uncountable noun (see Unit 95A).

Compare these examples with enough.

After an adjective: *The coffee isn't strong enough.*Before a noun: *You didn't put enough coffee in.* 

We leave out the noun if the meaning is clear without it.

Just add a little water. Not **too much.** We'll need fifteen cups. Have we got **enough?** 

## C Other structures with too and enough

We can use a phrase with **for** after **too** or **enough.** 

These puzzles are too difficult for children. This coat isn't warm enough for winter. Have we got enough cups for everyone?

We can also use a to-infinitive.

It's too dangerous to walk home at this time of night.

There are too many museums here to visit in a single day.

Are you fit enough to run a marathon?

I couldn't get close enough to see properly.

Vicky didn't bring enough money to buy two CDs.

## 1 Too and enough (A-B)

Look at the pictures and write sentences with *too* and *enough*. Use these nouns and adjectives: *big, gate, long, low, plane, sweater, ruler, warm, water, wide* 



3

? The sweater is too bi	?	The swe	eater is	too	big
-------------------------	---	---------	----------	-----	-----

1	 
2	 

## Too and enough (A-B)

Look at what people are saying and complete the sentences. Use *too, too many, too much* or *enough* with these words: *clearly, complicated, difficult, expensive, food, hastily, mistakes, rain, sweet, traffic* 

- ? You should have stopped to think first. You acted *too hastily*.
- ? This quiz is rather easy. The questions aren't difficult enough.
- 1 Can I have some more sugar in my coffee, please? It isn't
- 2 I can't afford a new stereo. It would be .
- 3 There's a water shortage. There just hasn't been
- 4 I can't read your writing. You don't write
- 5 Try to be more careful, please. You're making
- 6 The roads are very crowded. There's simply
- 7 I can't understand these instructions. They're
- 8 Thousands of people are starving because they can't get

### Other structures with **too** and **enough (C)**

Comment on the situations. Use *too* or *enough* and a phrase with *jor* or a to-infinitive.

- ? A taxi would have been best. But you didn't have the money. *I didn't have enough money for a taxi*.
- ? Sarah can't take a day off. She's very busy. Sarah is too busy to take a day off.
- 1 A picnic would be nice. But it's wet.
- 2 All your guests will need chairs. But you haven't got very many.
- 3 You couldn't carry the equipment. You had such a lot.
- 4 Natasha wants to be a professional musician. You think she's very good.

<sup>?</sup> The ruler isn't long enough.

# TEST 20 Adverbs and word order (Units 113-117)

#### Test 20A

Put each word in brackets into the sentence.

- ► Anna arrives for work, (late) *Anna arrives late for work.*
- 1 I like old cowboy films, (quite)
- 2 Have you finished this magazine? (yet)
- 3 This coat is big. (too)
- 4 Have the children had their tea? (already)
- 5 You don't look ill. (certainly)
- 6 We don't go out. (much)
- 7 I think everyone works hard, (fairly)
- 8 I don't know the date of the meeting, (still)
- 9 The others are getting ready, (just)
- 10 I have to go to work, (on Saturdays)

#### Test 20B

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

- ► I / love / really / these trousers I really love these trousers.
- 1 is / rather / silly / this game
- 2 already / I've / paid / the bill
- 3 enough / isn't / loud / the alarm
- 4 easily / Jonathan / passed / the test
- 5 a lot / cards / play / the children
- 6 didn't / enough / sell / they / tickets
- 7 ask / many / questions / too / you
- 8 a member / any more / of the club / I'm / not
- 9 enough / it's / outside / to sit / warm

#### Test 20C

Read the conversation. Then look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space.

				you? Have y					lamaan
INa									longer
				m is there ju		` /		obs.	
	And	d there are to	0 (5)		people lo	oking for jo	bs.		
Ma	rtin: I'm	old enough (	(6)		remembe	r when ther	e was plent	y of work.	
Nai	ncy: The	ere used to b	e lots of wo	rk, but there	isn't (7).		more	·	
	I'm	afraid I'm (8	3)	lon	iger as op	timistic as I	was a few	weeks ago.	
	In f	act I feel a (9	9)	dep	ressed ab	out it somet	imes.		
Ma									
<b>•</b>	a) How	b) What	c) Who	d) Why	6	a) for	b) of	c) that	d) to
1	a) longer	b) soon	c) still	d) yet	7	a) any	b) no	c) now	d) some
2	a) already	b) more	c) still	d) yet	8	a) any		c) no	d) not
3	a) more	b) quite	c) rather	d) some	9	a) bit	b) piece	c) quite	d) slightly
4	a) enough	b) plenty	c) right	d) several	10	a) already	b) yet	c) soon	
5	a) big	b) lot	c) many	d) much		d) before v	ery long		

#### Test 20 D

Each of these sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence.

► My friend calls always for me.

My friend always calls jor me.

- 1 I didn't last night sleep very well.
- 2 1 think I need to rest little.
- 3 I don't work for the company-longer.
- 4 The article is fair interesting.
- 5 Tessa locked carefully the door.
- 6 You aren't enough tall to play basketball.
- 7 We went yesterday to town.
- 8 Hike this music much.

#### Test 20E

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► It's probable that the strike will be over soon, (probably) *The strike will probably be over soon.*
- 1 We often go to the cinema, (a lot)
- 2 Adrian wears jeans all the time, (always)
- 3 These shoes are too small, (big)
- 4 I don't live in Birmingham any more, (no)
- 5 Polly spent more money than she should have done in the sales, (too)

# Prepositions of place

## A Meanings



The bird is **in/inside** the cage.



Sarah is diving **in/into** the water.



Tom is getting **out of** the car.



They're waiting **outside** the bank.



The jug is **on** the table.



The case is **on top of** the wardrobe.



Emma is putting her luggage **on/onto** the trolley.



Henry is falling off the horse.



Rachel is at the bus stop.



The table is **by/beside** the bed.



Jessica is sitting **next to** Andrew.



The airport is **near** Manchester.



The coach is going **to** London.



The letter is **from** Chicago.



Matthew is walking towards the sun.



Vicky is running away from the fire.



There's a bridge **over** the river.



Tom is **under** the car.



The plane is **above** the clouds.



The temperature is **below** zero.



The cyclist is **in front of** the bus.



The cyclist is **behind** the tractor.



Rita is going **up** the stairs.



Daniel is coming down the stairs.



Melanie is running across the road.



The cars are going through the tunnel.



Trevor is walking along the street.



The car is going **past** the house.



The house is **among** the trees.



Jackson is **between** Memphis and New Orleans.



Jessica is sitting **opposite** Andrew.



They're running around/round the track.

#### B Position and movement.

Most of these prepositions can express either position (where something is) or movement (where it is going). Position: *The coin was under the sofa.* 

Movement: The coin rolled under the sofa.

Now look at these examples with in and on expressing position.

The manager was in the office. The papers were on the floor. To express movement, we use into and onto, but we can also use in and on, especially in informal English.

The manager came **in/into** the office. The papers fell **on/onto** the floor.

At expresses position, and to expresses movement.

Position: Vicky was at the doctor's. Movement:

Vicky went to the doctor's.

<sup>&</sup>gt; page 380 British and American English

## 1 Prepositions of place (A)

Put in the prepositions. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.



Sarah is getting out of the taxi



1 David is going.....the ladder.



The furniture is......



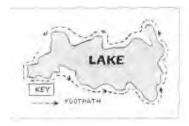
3 My friend lives in a flat ...... a shop.



4 The boss is coming .....the corridor.



5 There's a garage...... the house.



6 We walked ......the lake.



7 There's a statue ...... the museum.



Tom and Nick are walking .....the stadium.

## 2 Prepositions of place (A)

Complete the conversations. Choose the correct preposition.

1 Vicky: I felt really afraid when I was walking home <u>from/off</u> the club. All the time I could hear someone <u>behind/in front of</u> me, but I didn't dare turn round.

Rachel: I expect you were imagining it.

Vicky: No, I wasn't. I saw him after I'd come in across/through the gate. He was wearing a long

black coat that came down well below/under his knees.

2 Daniel: You know Adam, don't you? He's very strange. He walked right <u>along/past</u> me yesterday as I

was coming among/down the stairs, but he didn't say hello.

Matthew: The other day he was sitting beside/opposite me at lunch, so I couldn't help looking at him, I

said hello, but he didn't speak.

## 3 Between, next to and opposite (A)

Look at the plan and explain where things are. Use between, next to or opposite.



- ► The bank is *next to* the gift shop.
- 1 The sports shop is .....the bank.
- 2 The travel agency is ......the sports shop and the art gallery.
- 3 The restaurant is..... the art gallery.
- 4 The gift shop is ......the bank and the restaurant.
- 5 The art gallery is..... the travel agency.

## 4 Prepositions of place (A-B)

Where did the fly go? Put in these prepositions: around, into, on, out of, through, under, up



- ► The fly came in *through* the door.
- 1 It flew ..... the chair.
- 2 It crawled ..... the chair leg.
- 3 It stopped.....the desk for a moment.
- 4 It went..... the telephone.
- 5 It flew.....the drawer.
- 6 It went..... the window.

## ; Prepositions of place (A-B).

Put in the correct preposition.

- ► Rachel was lying *on* the grass reading a book.
- 1 It's my holiday next week. I'm going ......Spain.
- 2 There was a big crowd ...... the shop waiting for it to open.
- 3 That man is an idiot. He pushed me ......the swimming-pool.
- 4 I went ...... the chemist's just now, but I didn't notice if it was open.
- 5 David hurt himself. He fell ...... his bike.
- 6 There's a cafe......top of the mountain. You can have a coffee there before you go down.
- 8 Pompeii is quite......Sorrento. It's only a short train ride.
- 9 There's such a crowd. You won't find your friend ...... all these people.

# 119 In, on and at (place)

## A Meanings



Emma is in the phone box.

IN

in the phone box
in the kitchen
work in the garden
swim in the pool
In a town/country
Kate lives in York.
Atlanta is in Georgia.
In a street (GB)
in Shirley Road



Nick's dog is on the rug.

ON

sit on the floor
walk on the pavement
a number on the door
egg on your shirt
On a floor (1st, 2nd, etc)
on the first floor

On a street (US)
on Fifth Avenue
On a road or river
a village on this road
Paris is on the Seine.



There's someone at the door.

AT

sit at my desk
wait at the bus stop
at the crossroads
wait at the traffic lights
At a place on a journey
Does this train stop at York?

At a house/an address at Mike's (house) at 65 Shirley Road At an event at the party

## B In and at with buildings

IN

There are 400 seats in the cinema.

It was raining, so we waited in the pub.

We use in when we mean inside a building.

ΑT

I was at the cinema. (= watching a film)
We were at the pub. (= having a drink)
But we normally use at when we are talking about what happens there.

## C Some common phrases

IN

in prison/hospital in the lesson in a book/newspaper in the photo/picture in the country in the middle in the back/front of a car in a queue/line/row ON

on the platform
on the farm
on the page/map
on the screen
on the island/beach/coast
drive on the right/left
on the back of an envelope

AT

at the station/airport at home/work/school

at the seaside at the top/bottom of a hill at the back of the room at the end of a corridor

87 In bed, at home, etc 123C In the car, on the train, etc

### 1 Meanings (A)

Look at the pictures and write the sentences. Use *in*, *on* or *at* and these words: *the bath, the disco, the lights, the roof, the table* 











	He's on the table.		
1		3	
2		4	

## 2 In and at with buildings (B)

Complete each sentence. Use *in* or *at* and these words:

the petrol station, the restaurant, the stadium, the station, the theatre, the zoo

- ▶ There's a huge crowd *in the stadium* waiting for the Games to start.
- 1 Sarah's just rung. She's getting some petrol.
- 2 The children like wild animals. They'd love to spend an afternoon ......
- 3 It was so hot ...... that I didn't really enjoy the play.
- 5 I saw Daniel while I was...... waiting for a train.

### 3 In, on and at (A, C)

Put in the preposition in, on or at.

- ▶ We spent the whole holiday *on* the beach.
- 1 I read about the pop festival ......a magazine.
- 2 My parents' flat is ..... the twenty-first floor.
- 3 Melanie was holding a small bird ......her hands.
- 4 I'll meet you.....the airport.
- 5 Natasha now lives ......32 The Avenue.
- 6 I was standing.....the counter in the baker's shop, waiting to be served.
- 7 London is .....the Thames.
- 8 There weren't many books .....the shelves.
- 9 The passengers had to stand ...... a queue.

# 120 In, on and at (time)

### A Saying when

Look at these examples.

IN ON AT

We bought the flat in 1994. The race is on Saturday. The film starts at seven thirty.

In + year/month/season On + day/date At + clock time/meal time

in 1988on Wednesdayat three o'clockin Septemberon 15 Aprilat lunch (-time)in winteron that dayat that timein the 21st centuryat the moment

In + a week or more

In + a week or more

In + a single day

In + a week or more

In + a single day

In + a week or more

In + a single day

In + a week or more

In + a single day

In + a week or more

In + a single day

In + a week or more

in the evening on Tuesday evening on Tuesday evening

Look at these examples with **night**.

/ woke up in the night.

I cant sleep at night.

(= in the middle of the night) It happened on Monday night. (= when it is night)

But we do not use in, on or at before every, last, next, this, tomorrow and yesterday.

We go to Greece every summer. My brother came home last Christmas. I'll see you next Friday. I leave school this year. The party is tomorrow evening. The group set off yesterday morning.

#### B In time or on time?

IN TIME ON TIME

In time means 'early enough'. On time means 'at the right time', 'on schedule'.

We'll have to hurry if we want to be **in time** for the show.

The plane took off **on time**.

I hope the meeting starts **on time**.

We got to the airport **in time** to have a coffee Rachel is never **on time**. She's always late. before checking in. I was about to close the

remembered my key. (= at the last moment)

### C Other uses of in

We can use **in** for the time it takes to complete something.

/ did the crossword **in** five minutes. Could you walk thirty miles **in** a day'?

We can also use in for a future time measured from the present.

*Your photos will be ready in an hour.* (= an hour from now)

The building will open in six weeks/in six weeks' time.

88 On Friday, etc without the

door when just in time I

## 1 Saying when (A)

Read the information about John F. Kennedy and then answer the questions.

Begin each answer with in, on or at.

John F. Kennedy was born into a famous American family. His date of birth was 29 May 1917. The year 1961 saw him become the 35th President of the US. Kennedy was killed as he drove in an open car through the streets of Dallas, Texas. Friday, 22 November 1963 was a sad day for America. It was 12.30 when a gunman opened fire and shot the President dead.

	1 V 2 V	Vhen die Vhen wa	s John F. Kennedy born? On 29 May 1917.  d he become President?
2	Mark If you Mark Alice	u do not :: I'm fiftee :: I'm	en (A)  nging a business meeting. Decide if you need <i>in, on</i> or <i>at</i> .  It need a preposition, put a cross (X).  sorry I was out when you called (►)/ yesterday afternoon, Alice. Look, I'm free (►)o« the enth of March. Can we meet then?  pretty busy (1)next week, I'm afraid. I can't see you (2)Friday. like to have a meeting (3)this month if possible.
	Alice	I'll be I'm g Shall I've	e very busy (4)
3	Put ii  If  V  H  T  T  T  T  T  T  T  T  T  T  T  T	n the rig the pla Ve were low can the post	con time? (B)  ght phrase: in time or on time.  the is late, we won't get to Paris in time for our connecting flight.  up very early,to see the sun rise.  the buses possibly runwith all these traffic jams?  goes at five. I'm hoping to get this letter written  the will be here at 12.13 if it's
4	Com.  Jet  V  D  S  N  S  N  T  T  H  H  L  L  L  L  L  L  L  L  L  L  L	plete the indrew: essica: ficky: Daniel: arah: Mark:	e conversations using <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> or <i>at</i> .  You only bought that book <i>on</i> Saturday. Have you finished it already?  I read it <i>in</i> about three hours yesterday evening.  Will the bank be open

# 121 For, since, ago and before



FOR

Mark has spent three hours playing a computer game. He's been sitting there for three hours.

SINCE

It was two o'clock when Mark started the game. He's been playing since two o'clock. AGO

Three hours have passed since Mark and Sarah got up from the lunch table. They finished their lunch three hours ago.

## B For and since with the present perfect

We often use **for** and **since** with the present perfect to talk about something continuing up to the present.

FOR

We use **for** to say <u>how long</u> something has continued.

I've been waiting **for forty minutes.**We've known about it **for two days.**Melanie has been living here **for a year** now.

SINCE

We use since to say when something began,

I've been waiting since ten past six. We've known about it since Monday. Melanie has been living here since last year.

We can also use **for** with other tenses.

I'm staying in England for a year. We swam for quite a long time.

We can often leave out **for** (but not from some negative sentences).

We've had this car (for) six months. I haven't seen Vicky for a day or two.

## C Ago with the past

We can use the adverb **ago** to talk about a past time measured from the present.

Six months ago means six months before now.

I passed my driving test six months ago. NOT since six months

Vicky wrote to the company weeks ago. David first met Melanie a long time ago.

Have you seen Emma? ~ Yes, just a few minutes ago.

We put ago after the phrase of time, NOT ago six months

## D Before with the past perfect

We use **before** (not **ago**) with the past perfect, e.g. **had done**.

I bought a car in August. I'd passed my driving test three months before.

(= in May, three months before August)

Vicky finally received a reply to the letter she had written weeks before.

## 1 For and since (A-B) Put in for or since. Daniel: How long have you been learning English? Well, I studied it ->for five years at school, and I've been having evening classes (1) ......last summer. That's when I left school. And you're staying here (2).....three months? Daniel: Ilona: That's right. I've been here (3)..... the end of April. I'm going to London (4) ..... a week before I go home. 2 For and since (A-B) Look at the pictures and say how long people have been there. Use these phrases: at his desk, in bed, in the garden, in the shop, on the road 3 nine o'clock 4 five bours half an hour 1 three days 2 breakfast She's been in the shop for half an hour. 2 3 3 For, since or ago? (A-C) Put in a phrase with for, since or ago. ▶ I got here an hour ago. ~ What! You mean you've been waiting for an hour? The phone last rang at four o'clock. ~ So you've had no calls .....? 2 I haven't been to the dentist for ten years. ~ You last went to the dentist. ......? 3 I last saw Rachel on Monday. ~ Haven't you seen her ......? 4 We've had six weeks without rain. ~ Yes, it hasn't rained..... 5 It's three years since Laura got married. ~ Really? Has she been married. ....? It's eight months since my brother had any work. ~ He lost his job......? Mrs Miles was taken ill three weeks ago. ~ You mean she's been ill...., and nobody's told me! 4 Ago or before? (C-D) Put in ago or before. ► This film looks familiar. Didn't we see it at the cinema about two years ago? 1 The road was wet when the accident happened. It had stopped raining only half an hour......

2 My telephone is working now. They repaired it a week ......

3 A young man threw himself off this bridge last year. His girlfriend had left him two days ......

# 122 During or while? By or until? As or like?

## A During or while?

Compare these examples.

1 often read **during** a meal. It happened **during** the night.

You'll have to be quiet **during** the performance.

**During** is a preposition (like in). It comes before a phrase like **a meal** or **the night**.

I often read while I'm eating.
It happened while they were asleep.
Were there any phone calls while I was out?
While is a linking word (like when). It comes before a clause, e.g. I'm eating.

## B By or until?

Compare these examples.

I'm very busy this week. I have to finish this report by Thursday.

Trevor will be home by half past six.

The vor will be nome by nail past six.

They hope to build the new bridge by next July.

The post should be here by now.

I'll be busy for most of this week. I won't have any time **until** Friday.

He'll be at work **until** half past five.

We won't have another holiday **until** next

**Till** is more informal than **until.** / slept **till** ten o'clock.

We can use by the time or until before a clause, e.g. we arrived.

There was no food left by the time we arrived.

I'll wait **until** you're ready.

NOT by we arrived

See Unit 27B for the present simple after **until**, etc.

### C As, like and as if

Compare these examples.

She works as a fashion model.

(= She is a model.)

As a beginner you simply have to learn the

basics.

I'm using this tin **as** an ashtray.

We use as to talk about a job or function.

She dresses **like** a fashion model.

(= Her clothes are similar to a model's.)

Mark is a good golfer, but today he played **like** a beginner.

beginner.

You look **like** your brother.

We use like to talk about things being similar.

We can also use **as** or **like** before a clause.

We drive on the left here, as/like you do in Britain.

Mike and Sarah are going to Paris for the weekend, as/like they did last year.

**Like** is more informal than **as** before a clause.

We also use as with verbs of speaking and knowing, e.g. say, know, expect. As I said

before, I'm sorry. (= I'm sorry, and I said so before.) I haven't much money, as you

know. (— I haven't much money, and you know it.) Rachel arrived late, as we

expected. (= We expected her to arrive late, and she did.)

We use **as** if before a clause to say how something seems. *Tom looks really awful. He looks as* if he's been up all night. Nick can be a difficult person. He sometimes behaves as if he's the only one with problems.

## 1 During or while? (A)

Put in during or while.

- ▶ Did you take notes *during* the lecture?
- 1 Shall we have a coffee ..... we're waiting?
- 2 Try not to make any noise..... the baby is asleep.
- 3 The fire alarm rang ...... yesterday's meeting.
- 4 Trevor tried to fix the shelves ...... Laura was out shopping.

## 2 By or until? (B)

Rachel is talking to her teacher. Put in by or until.

Mrs Lewis: You'll need to hand your project in  $(\triangleright)$  by the end of the week.

I'd like to have it (1)..... Friday, ideally.

Rachel: 

The project will probably take me (3)..... the middle of next week.

I can't finish it (4)..... the end of this week.

Mrs Lewis: Well, let me have it (5)......Wednesday of next week, please.

## 3 As or like? (C)

Put in as or like.

- ► Sarah works in here. She uses this room as her study.
- 1 Matthew worked ...... a waiter last summer.
- 2 The way your sister plays the violin sounds ...... two cats fighting.
- 3 Do you mind using this saucer..... a plate?
- 4 The body sank..... a stone to the bottom of the river.

## | As or as if? (C)

Put in as or as if.

- ► That poor dog looks as if it never gets fed.
- 1 Rachel failed her driving test,....she expected.
- 2 Daniel spends money..... it grows on trees.
- 3 We shall deliver the goods on the twenty-seventh, ...... we promised.
- 4 From what Emma said, it sounds...... she and Matthew are going to get married.

## S While, by the time, until, as and like (A-C)

Decide what to say. Use the word in brackets to join the two ideas together.

- ▶ Tell Matthew he needs to click on the box. You showed him. (like)
  - You need to click on the box, like I showed you.
- 1 Tell Tom that you arrived at his flat, but he'd left, (by the time)
- 2 Tell your friend that Rita went to the party with Tom. Your friend predicted this, (as)
- 3 Tell Claire that you saw her sister. You were shopping in London, (while)
- 4 Tell Vicky she can keep the book. She can finish it. (until)

# 123 Preposition + noun, e.g. on holiday

## A Some useful phrases

#### on holiday, on business, on a journey/a trip/a tour

I'm travelling on business. We're on a coach tour of Europe. in

#### cash, by cheque/credit card

It's cheaper if you pay in cash. Can I pay by credit card? in

#### writing, in pen/biro/felt-tip/ink/pencil

Could you confirm that in writing? I'll write the names in pencil. on

#### television, on the radio/the phone/the Internet

/ saw the programme on TV. Mark is on the phone at the moment. for

#### sale, on the market

The house next door is **for sale**. It's the best hi-fi **on the market**.

#### on the whole, in general

*On the whole* it's a good idea, but there are one or two problems.

People in general aren't very interested in politics. in

#### advance, up to date, out of date

The company wants us to pay for the goods in advance.

Oh no! My passport is **out of date**. These latest figures are **up to date**. in

#### my opinion, from my point of view

All sport is silly in my opinion.

Matthew never sees things from Emma's point of view.

### on purpose, by mistake/chance/accident

/ didn't spill my drink on purpose. I pressed the wrong button by mistake.

We didn't arrange to meet. We met by chance in the street.

## B Way and end

#### On the way = during the journey.

I'm driving into town. I'll get some petrol **on the** way.

#### In the end = finally, after a long time.

It took Claire hours to decide. In the end she chose a long blue dress.

#### In the way = blocking the way.

We couldn't get past because there was a parked car **in the** way.

#### At **the end** = when something stops.

We all left quickly at the end of the meeting,

#### C Transport

We use by without a/the when we talk about a means of transport.

We decided to go to Brussels by train, NOT go by the train

We can also use in and on.

It'll be quicker to go in the car. Richard came on the train.

#### Note that on foot means 'walking'.

We came all the way on foot, NOT by foot

BY: air, bicycle/bike, boat, bus, car, coach, ferry, helicopter, hovercraft, plane, rail, sea, ship, taxi, train, tube

IN: the/my/your car, a helicopter, a taxi

ON: my bicycle/bike, the boat, the bus, the ferry, the hovercraft, the plane, the ship, the train

1 Preposition + noun (A-B)
Put in by, from, in or on.  There's something I want to listen to on the radio.  They've promised me more money, but I haven't got it
2 Preposition + noun (A-B)
What would you ask? Use the word in brackets with the correct preposition.
You may also need to use <i>the</i> or <i>your</i> .
► Ask if you can book a cabin before you travel, (advance)  Can / book a cabin in advance?
1 Ask if you can pay in notes, (cash)
Can
2 Ask if the information is current, (date) Is
3 Ask your friend if he dropped the ball deliberately, (purpose) Did
4 Ask if there is anything to watch tonight, (television) Is
5 Ask your teacher if he or she will be here on the last day of July, (end) Will
6 Ask Melanie if she thinks nuclear power is a good idea, (opinion) Is
7 Ask Nick if he is selling his car. (sale) Is
8 Ask Sarah if she approves of the plan in general, (whole) Do
2. Transmort (C)
3 Transport (C) Complete the conversation. Put in <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> or <i>on</i> .
Sarah: It's a long way to Glasgow. Why don't you go $(\triangleright)$ on the train?
Mark: I don't know. I think I'd rather go (1) car.
Sarah: How far is your hotel from the station?
Mark: Oh, it's only five minutes (2) foot, but with all my luggage, I'd probably go (3) a taxi.
Sarah: Well, why not? It's less tiring going (4)train, isn't it?
Mark: I could go (5) air. That would be quickest.

# 124 Noun + preposition, e.g. trouble with

#### A Introduction

Read this true story about a prison escape.

Prisoners at a jail in Iowa in the US were trying to think of a way of escaping. At last they found an answer to their problem. They told the governor about their interest in drama and their need for creative activities. They put in a request for some tunnel-digging equipment for a play about coalminers. They knew that the governor felt sympathy for his prisoners and wanted a good relationship with them, but they weren't surprised when he said no. But later, when the prisoners mentioned the importance of physical fitness, the governor agreed to let them use a trampoline. Their skill at trampolining was put to good use when six prisoners bounced over the prison wall and escaped.

Some nouns can have a preposition after them, e.g. way of, answer to, interest in.

The preposition often has a phrase with a noun after it.

the answer to the problem their interest in drama And the preposition can sometimes have an ing-form after it.

a way of escaping their skill at trampolining

### **B** Noun + preposition

Here are some more examples.

your ability in maths
a cheap alternative to leather
an attack on the government
my attitude to/towards him
a belief in God
the cause of the accident
the cost of living
some damage to the car
a difficulty over/with visas

an example of this
some experience of selling
an expert on computers
no hope of winning
an invitation to a party
some knowledge of Italian
a lack of money
something the matter with you
a new method of storing data

your opinion of the film the price of food the reason for the delay respect for the environment a student of chemistry a substitute for meat success at golf/in my search a tax on alcohol having trouble with my teeth

### C Connection, difference; increase, reduction, etc

One thing has a link with another.

a connection with another crime

Matthew's relationship with Emma
the contrast with yesterday's weather

There is a link <u>between</u> two things.

a connection between the two crimes
the relationship between Matthew and Emma
the contrast/difference between town and
country

Look at these words for increases and decreases. We use **in** before the thing that is increasing or decreasing and **of** before the amount of the increase or decrease.

an increase/rise in the price a reduction/fall in the number of unemployed an increase/rise of £10 a reduction/fall of 3%

#### D Need, wish, etc

Nouns meaning 'need', 'wish' or 'request' can have **for** after them.

There's a **need for** more houses. There was no **demand for** the product.

Here are some examples: appetite for, application for, demand for, desire for, need for, order for, preference for, request for, taste for, wish for

1	Noun + preposition (A-B)	
	Complete the conversation. Put in <i>at, in</i> or <i>of</i> .  Daniel: What's the job you've applied for?  Vicky: It's with a travel company. But the advert says that you need some experience (▶) <i>of</i> work in tourism. I haven't got that. And I don't think my knowledge (1) foreign languages will be good enough. I'm having no success at all (2)	
	the soft of thing employers are looking for.	
2	Noun + preposition (A-B)	
	Complete the sentences. Use a preposition after these nouns:	
	answer, cause, damage, difficulty, invitation, matter, tax, way	
	► I've had an <i>invitation to</i> Laura's barbecue.	
	1 The accident caused some the car.	
	2 I'm trying to think of the best getting this piano upstairs.	
	3 I can't think of an the problem, I'm afraid.	
	4 The the accident is still unknown.	
	5 The government has introduced a new luxury goods.	
	6 Unfortunately there was some	
	The television won t come on, what's the	
2	Noun   proposition (D.C)	
3	Noun + preposition (B-C)	
	Complete the advertisement for a supermarket. Put in between, for, in, of or with.	
	Why not shop at Greenway Supermarket? You'll find the cost (▶) of your weekly shopping is much lower. There's quite a contrast (1)	
4	Noun + preposition (A-D)	
	What are they saying? Read about each situation and complete the sentence.	
	► A motorist has rung the garage and requested a breakdown truck.	
	Mechanic: I've just had a request for a breakdown truck.	
	1 Claude can answer all the quiz questions.	
	Claude: I can tell you the	
	2 Matthew doesn't know any French.	
	Matthew: Unfortunately I have no	
	3 The Prime Minister greatly desires progress.	
	Prime Minister: I have a great	
	4 Vicky thinks the two colours are the same.	
	Vicky: I can't see any	
	5 Most people say they prefer Zedco products.	
	Zedco: Most people express a	

# 125 Adjective + preposition, e.g. **proud of**

#### A Introduction

Matthew: Why are you angry with me, Emma?

Emma: I'm tired of talking to myself. You never listen. I get annoyed at the way you behave.

Matthew: Sorry, but I have to go now or I'll be late for the basketball game.

Emma: You aren't interested in us, are you? You never worry about our relationship, do you?

Some adjectives can have a preposition after them, e.g. angry with, tired of, late for.

The preposition often has a phrase with a noun or pronoun after it.

annoyed **at the way** you behave late **for the game** angry with me

The preposition can sometimes have an ing-form after it.

tired of talking to myself

## **B** Feelings

Here are some examples of adjective + preposition which are to do with feelings.

afraid of the dark amazed at/by the changes ashamed of myself bored with doing nothing disappointed with/about the

poor figures eager for action

excited about the holiday fed up with waiting **fond of** my sister happy about/with the arrangements keen on sport

nervous of flying

proud of our work satisfied with the result shocked at/by the violence surprised at/by the reaction tired of housework worried about money

Compare these examples.

I'm sorry about the mistake. We were angry at/about the delay. We were annoyed at/about the delay. I was pleased about winning. Vicky is **anxious about** her exam.

I feel sorry for poor Melanie. Sarah was **angry with** Henry. Emma was annoyed with Matthew. The winner was **pleased with** himself. People are anxious for news.

#### C Good, bad, etc

To talk about a person's ability, we use **good at, bad at,** etc.

good at tennis brilliant at crosswords bad at games hopeless at cooking To talk about whether something makes you healthy or ill, we use **good for** and **bad for**.

Oranges are **good for** you. Smoking is **bad for** you. For behaviour towards another person, we use good to, kind to, nice to, polite to and rude to.

My friends have been **good to** me. You were very rude to the waitress.

### D Other adjectives

Here are some more expressions with other adjectives.

accustomed to the noise aware of the facts capable of looking after myself different from our usual route (see page 381) famous for her film roles

fit for work full of water guilty of murder involved in a project prepared for action **ready for** the big day

responsible for running a business safe from attack the same as before similar to my idea typical of David used to the traffic

71 Afraid, anxious, ashamed, interested, sorry 72 Used to

1	Feelings (A-B)
	Say what these people's feelings are. Use the adjectives in brackets and a preposition.  The children are leaving on a trip to the zoo. (excited) They're excited about the trip to the zoo.
	1 Vicky doesn't like the dark, (afraid)
	She's
	3 Emma is reading about computers, (interested)
	She's
	5 United have won a victory, (proud) They're
	6 Olivia's children are being very silly, (annoyed) She's
	7 The Zedco staff don't think their pay increase is big enough, (not satisfied)
	Good, bad, etc (C)  Complete the conversation. Put in at, for or to.  Sarah: You were very rude (▶) to Henry when you said he needs to lose weight.  Claire: Well, it's true. Exercise would be good (1)
3	Other adjectives (A, D)  Complete these paragraphs from a letter Emma has received from her brother. Use these adjectives and put a preposition after each one: aware, different, famous, full, interested, late, ready, responsible, similar, used
	Everything was strange here at first because this new job is () different from any I've had before. But I've got () used to it now, and I'm really enjoying it. I'm mainly (1)
	I've got a nice flat, which is very (4)

# TEST 21 Prepositions (Units 118-125)

#### Test 21A

Write the sentences correctl
------------------------------

- ► I'll see you at Monday. I'll see you on Monday.
- 1 The doctor has been working since twelve hours.
- 2 We had a great time in the disco.
- 3 The woman was getting from the car.
- 4 The players had-numbers at their shirts.
- 5 The new manager takes over at two weeks' time.
- 6 Anna drove at the garage to get some -petrel.
- 7 We were sitting in the back of the room.

### Test 21B

Read Polly's postcard and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

This is our first real holiday ( $\triangleright$ ) for ages, and I'm enjo	bying it tremendously. I love being (1)an
island. We arrived here almost a week (2), as	nd I can't believe the time is going so fast. We finally
completed the journey here (3)Friday ev	ening (4) about eleven o'clock. The journey
wasn't too bad, but we had to wait ages (5)	the airport for our flight.

Our apartment here is fine. It's (6)...... the top floor. The beach isn't far away- we can walk there (7)..... five minutes. The only problem is that we have to get (8).....a busy main road, which can be difficult.

We don't do much (9) ......the day, but we go out every evening. Last night's disco went on very late, and today we slept (10).....eleven.

V

#### Test 21C

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (V). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- The cat was sitting on top of the shed.
- ? Coventry is near by Birmingham. by
- 1 Luckily our train arrived on the time.
- 2 People were running away from the gunman
- 3 It sounds as if the company is in trouble.
- 4 The car was in the front of a bus.
- 5 There's a meeting on next Tuesday.
- 6 Lisa drew a plan on the back of an envelope
- 7 I'll be exhausted by the time I get home.

### Test 21D

Decide which word is correct.

$\blacktriangleright$	I saw a really funny programme <i>on</i> television.	a) at b) from c) in d) on
1	You can see all the information the screen.	a) at b) in c) inside d) on
2	Are these pictures sale?	a) at b) for c) in d) to
3	Could you let me know Friday at the latest?	a) by b) to c) up to d) until
4	The audience clappedthe end of the show.	a) at b) for c) in d) to
5	I've lived herelast year.	a) after b) by c) for d) since
6	What's the matter your car?	a) by b) for c) on d) with
7	We could see the balloon high the town.	a) above b) on c) onto d) up
8	There was a fall ten per cent in prices.	a) at b) by c) in d) of
9	The house was burgled we were out.	a) at b) during c) time d) while
10	What's the difference a boat and a ship?	a) between b) from c) under d) with
11	Rupert's new car looks more an aeroplane.	a) as b) like c) near d) similar
12	We're all bored this game.	a) about b) at c) for d) with
13	I can't find my keys. I had them a minute	a) ago b) before c) behind d) back
14	We get lots of requests help.	a) at b) for c) of d) on
15	The babysitter will stay there we get home.	a) by b) for c) to d) until
16	I'm going to be late the meeting.	a) at b) for c) in d) to
17	We do most of our businesssummer.	a) along b) at c) in d) on
18	The job is similar my old one.	a) as b) at c) to d) with

### Test 21E

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

- ► This is the Glasgow train, (going) *This train is going to Glasgow.*
- 1 Scott is a resident of Washington, (lives)
- 2 I'm travelling to Italy as part of my job. (business)
- 3 Friday morning is a busy time for me. (I'm)
- 4 They started playing an hour ago. (been)
- 5 Jonathan can play tennis very well, (good)
- 6 I'm rather busy now. (moment)
- 7 We took a plane to Budapest, (air)
- 8 Nigel passes the newsagent's every day. (goes)
- 9 The company is planning to reduce the workforce, (reduction)
- 10 We got to our guest-house early enough for a meal, (time)

# 126 Prepositional verbs, e.g. wait for

#### A Introduction

A prepositional verb is a verb + preposition.

I'm waiting for you. The dog belongs to our neighbours. The

preposition always goes before the object.

NOT *I'm waiting you for*. In questions the preposition usually goes at the end of the sentence (see Unit 38).

Who are you waiting for?

Some verbs can go with a number of different prepositions.

I'm looking at these photos. They're really good. I'm looking for my ticket. I can't find it anywhere. I'm looking after the children while their parents are out. The police are looking into the matter.

## B Some common prepositional verbs

Here are some more examples.

Yes, I agree with you. Tom's neighbours apologized for the noise.

I approve of the new scheme. I think it's a good idea.

Have you applied for the job? The patient asked for a glass of water.

Do you believe in God? I'm sorry, but I don't care about your problems.

Lots of people care for elderly relatives. (= look after)

/ didn't care for the film. (= like) Please concentrate on your work.

The US consists of fifty states. I can deal with any enquiries.

Claire finally decided on a holiday in Turkey.

Whether we go out will **depend on** the weather. I **feel like** a drink. (= want)

Everyone **laughed at** the joke. I was **listening to** the radio.

Did you pay for the coffee? You can't rely on the weather forecast.

I'll see to the matter at once. Vicky suffers from headaches.

We do not normally use a preposition after these verbs:

#### answer, approach, control, demand, enter, expect, leave, reach, request

The President is entering the building, NOT He is entering into the building.

#### C About, of and to

We can use **about** after many verbs. Here are some of them:

ask, complain, dream, enquire, hear, know, learn, protest, speak, talk, think, wonder

Did you hear about the accident? Mark was talking about golf.

We do not use about after discuss.

We discussed the problem, NOT We discussed about the problem.

Note the meaning of dream of, hear of and think of.

I'd never tell you a lie. I wouldn't dream of it.

Who's Ron Mason? ~ I don't know. I've never heard of him.

Did you like the play? What did you think of it?

We can apologize to, complain to, talk to and write to a person.

I'm writing to my sister. We talked to Natasha about classical music.

We do not use to after phone.

I'm phoning the office, NOT-I'm phoning to the office.

70 Verb + preposition + ing-form

1	Prepositions with <b>look</b> (A)
	Complete the conversation between Laura and her friend Olivia. Put in after, at, far and into.
	Laura: Did you say you were looking (▶) for an au pair?
	Olivia: Yes, I was just looking (1)this advertisement.
	We need someone to look (2) our children.
	Laura: Do you have to pay an au pair?
	Olivia: I'm not sure. I'll have to look (3)how it all works.
2	Some common prepositional verbs (B)
	This is part of a letter that Melanie has received from an old friend. Put in these verbs and add a preposition after each one: agree, applied, ask, care, caring, concentrate, decided, pay, suffering
	I'm working in a hospital now. I (▶) applied for a nurse's job last July and started in August. I don't earn much money, and I even had to (1)
3 5	Some common prepositional verbs (B)
	Put in the verbs and add a preposition if necessary.
	Mark and Sarah had accepted an invitation to Mike and Harriet's party. Sarah had to stay late at work to (▶)see to (see) one or two things. Her boss really (1)
	being late. At the party Mark talked to a strange woman who (7)
	Sarah met a man who kept (8)
	from him but couldn't avoid a woman who wanted to (9)
	Mark and Sarah (10)
4	About, of and to (C)
	Complete the conversation. Put in about, of or to.
	David: Did you hear about my experience at the Quick Burger cafe?
	Harriet: No. And I've never heard (▶) of the Quick Burger cafe.
	David: Oh, it's near the station. I was just talking (1) Melanie about it. They took at least
	twenty minutes to bring me a burger. I don't call that quick. I complained (2) the
	waitress, and she poured a can of cola over me.
	Harriet: Really? She must have had a bad day.
	David: The manager wasn't there, so I've written (3)
	Harriet: I wouldn't dream (5) going there. I hate those burger places.

# 127 Verb + object + preposition

#### A Introduction

We can use some verbs in the structure: verb + object + preposition.

VERB OBJECT PREPOSITION

People admired Cleopatra for her beauty.

The trees protect the garden from the wind.

In the passive, the preposition comes after the verb.

Cleopatra was admired for her beauty. The garden is protected from the wind.

## B Verb + object + preposition

Here are some more examples.

Tom accused Nick of cheating at cards. Can 1 add something to your list?

You should never aim/point a gun at someone.

The player was arrested/punished for hitting an opponent. Let's ask someone for directions.

*The passengers blamed/criticized the airline for the delay.* 

I'll have to **borrow** the money **from** my parents.

If you compare these figures with/to last year, you can see the improvement.

1 congratulated Andrew on his excellent exam results.

Melanie cut/divided/split the pudding into four portions.

The cameras discourage/prevent motorists from speeding.

You should **insure** your camera **against** theft. It might get stolen.

Harriet has invited us to a party. 1 prefer hot weather to cold. I hate the cold.

The hotel provided/supplied us with a packed lunch. Most people regard Picasso as a great artist.

The two men **robbed** the woman **of** her savings. They **stole** £2,000 **from** her.

The restaurant was full. We **shared** a table **with** a young Swedish couple.

Mike doesn't spend much money on clothes.

Zedco suspected one of their managers of selling commercial secrets.

Don't forget to thank Tom for his help. Victor translated the letter into English.

#### C About, of and to

We can use about with tell and ask.

Did I tell you about my operation? Ask your travel agent about cheap flights.

With inform we can use about or of.

You should inform everyone about/of the decision.

Look at these examples with warn.

A sign warned motorists about/of the danger, (warn of/about a danger)

A sign warned motorists about the hole in the road, (warn about something that might be dangerous)

With **remind**, there is a difference in meaning between **about** and **of**.

Emma **reminded** me **about** my appointment. (= Emma told me not to forget.)

Emma reminds me of my sister. (= Emma is like my sister.)

We can write, describe or explain something to a person.

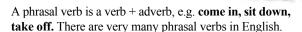
I've written several letters to the company. The woman described her attacker to the police.

3 Give something to someone 126 Wait for, belong to, etc

#### 1 Verb + object + preposition (B) This is a sports commentary at the Olympic Games. Put in the correct prepositions, e.g. for, from. So Australia's Steve Brearley wins the gold medal ahead of Germany's Klaus Schliemann and Ivan Podorosky of Bulgaria. They're just congratulating Brearley ( $\triangleright$ ) on his victory. His speed over the first kilometre split the runners (1) ...... two groups, and in the end it was a race between the three leaders. Brearley prevented Schliemann (2)...... overtaking him in a sprint finish. I've always regarded Brearley (3)...... a great athlete, and look how well he's done today. I would even compare him (4)..... the great Emil Kristo himself. There's no doubt now that Brearley will be invited (6).....his collection. And Australia are doing really well in the medals table. In fact, they share second place (7)..... the United States. Verb + object + preposition (B) People are saying some surprising things. Complete the replies using a verb + object + preposition. ► Andrew: I've bought a lot of books. I've spent £300. What? Have you really spent £300 on books? Emma: I don't like wine. I prefer water. 1 Jessica: I don't believe that. Do you really..... Daniel: 2 Melanie: You heard about David's accident. Well, he's blaming Tom. Rita: But why? Why is he I gave Claire a present, but she didn't thank me. 3 Henry: Sarah: Did you say she didn't 4 Tom: The police say it's murder. They're accusing the head teacher. Rita: What evidence do they have? How can they..... 3 Vicky: We had no towels. The hotel didn't provide them. Really? Why didn't they..... Rachel: 6 Natasha: It's my sister's wedding today, but she didn't invite me. Emma: What! Do you mean she didn't..... 7 Nick The team won a great victory, but no one congratulated them. Trevor: Oh? And why didn't anyone..... 8 David: A man pointed a gun. Melanie was terrified. You mean someone..... Harriet: 13 About, of and to (C) Put in about, of or to. ► The interviewer asked Mrs Miles *about her* parachute jump. 1 I've told the police ...... people throwing stones at our windows. 2 That man over there reminds me ...... someone I know. 3 The man explained ..... the court that he had some personal problems. 4 Vicky is writing a letter.....her friends in Toronto. 5 There was a poster warning young people ...... the dangers of drugs. 6 Melanie had to remind Nick..... the money he owed her. 7 We would like to inform our customers ..................... a number of improvements in the service we offer.

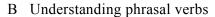
# 128 Phrasal verbs (1)

#### A Introduction



Here are some adverbs which are used in phrasal verbs: about, along, around, away, back, behind, by, down, forward, in, off, on, out, over, round, through, up

Some of these words can also be prepositions. For prepositional verbs see Unit 126.



Some phrasal verbs are easy to understand.

Tom asked Melanie to **come in.** The man in front **turned round** and stared at me. The meanings are clear if you know the words **come, in, turn** and **round.** 

Hello, Tom.

Hella, Melanië. Gaod to see you.

Come in and sit down

Take your coat off

But many phrasal verbs are idiomatic. The verb + adverb has a special meaning. Fortunately the plan came off. (= succeeded) Why did you turn down such a good offer? (= refuse) I can't make out if it's a man or a woman over there. (= see clearly)

Sometimes a phrasal verb has the same meaning as a one-word verb.

```
find out — discoverleave out — omitsend out — distributego back = returnmake up = invent (a story)throw away = discardgo on = continueput off— postponeturn up — arrive
```

The phrasal verb is usually more informal than the one-word verb.

## C Word order with phrasal verbs

When a phrasal verb has an object, the object can go either before or after the adverb.

	VERB	OBJECT	ADVERB			VERB	ADVERB	OBJECT
Melanie	took	her coat	off.	OR	Melanie	took	off	her coat.
I	wrote	the number	down.	OR	I	wrote	down	the number.
Who	let	the cat	out?	OR	Who	let	out	the cat?

A long object goes after the adverb.

The gang have carried out a number of bank raids in the last few months. Why don't you try on that dress in the window?

A pronoun (e.g. it, them) always goes before the adverb.

Melanie felt hot in her coat, so she **took it off.** NOT <del>She too</del>

There have been a number of raids. The police know who carried them out.

NOT The police know who caried out them.

## 1 Understanding phrasal verbs (A-B) Work out the meaning of these phrasal verbs and put them in the right sentences: come back, come in, cut out, fall over, get on, give away, go away, let in, lie down, pay back, stay in, take back (Use a dictionary if you need to.) ? Hello. Nice to see you. Come in and sit down. ? I didn't have a key, but luckily someone was there to *let* me *in*. 1 Can't we go out somewhere? I don't want to ...... all evening. 2 Could you lend me ten pounds? I'll.....you .......... on Friday. 3 The pavement is very icy. Be careful you don't 4 I was feeling so tired I had to ..... on the bed for a while. 6 Mark's gone out, and I don't know when he's going to ...... 7 The driver unlocked the coach so that the passengers were able to 8 I'll have to ...... to the library. 9 Your brother was being a nuisance, so I told him to..... 10 In order to get publicity, the company decided to ....... some of the new sweets free to children. 2 One-word verb and phrasal verb (B) Put in a phrasal verb that means the same as the verb in brackets. Use the correct form of the phrasal verb. Rachel: I've (▶) *found out* (discovered) what the problem is with the exam. Vicky: Oh, good. Tell me. until the papers had all been (2) ...... (distributed). Now they'll have to (3) ...... (discard) all the papers and (4) ..... (postpone) the exam. Vicky: Are you sure you haven't (5) ...... (invented) this whole story? Rachel: It's true, I tell you. And isn't it good news? Vicky: I don't know about that. It means we'll have to (6)................(continue) revising. 13 Word order with phrasal verbs (C) Complete the sentences by putting in the phrasal verbs. Some of the spaces you have to leave empty. Sometimes more than one answer is correct. ? The sweater was full of holes, so I threw it away (threw away). ? I've put up (put up) that picture we bought last week. 3 I haven't heard from Rita lately. I might ...... her ...... (ring up). 4 Daniel has to go into college to...... his project .......... (hand in). 5 I can't remember the address. I wish I'd...... it .......(writedown). 9 There was an accident which....... all the traffic coming into town...... (held up).

# 129 Phrasal verbs (2)

### A Everyday situations

Here are some phrasal verbs in everyday situations.

Come on, we're going now. Trevor dug up an old coin in the garden. You have to fill in your name and address. How did you get on in the test? I usually get up late on Sundays. I'm going out for the evening.

Melanie poured tea for the guests and handed the cakes round. Hurry up. We haven't got much time. David hit his head on a lamppost and knocked himself out. Mark picked up the cassette and put it in the player. You have to plug the machine in first. I'm going to throw these old clothes away. We were too tired to wash up after the meal. Sarah woke up suddenly in the night.



#### B Phrasal verbs and one-word verbs

Here are some phrasal verbs with the same meaning as a one-word verb (see also Unit 128B).

They're going to bring in a new law against drinking and driving. (= introduce) How did the argument come about? (= happen) Emma isn't speaking to Matthew. They've fallen out. (= quarrelled) We've fixed up a meeting for next Tuesday. (= arranged) Trevor gave up playing football years ago. (= stopped) / had a pain in my arm, but it's gone away. (= disappeared) We heard the bomb go off jive miles away. (= explode) The traffic was held up by road works. (= delayed)

The United Nations was **set up** to settle conflicts peacefully. (= established) I'm trying to **work out** how much money I've spent. (= calculate)

### C Business situations

Here are some examples of phrasal verbs in business situations.

If we're spending too much money, we'll have to cut back. (= spend less)

Our lawyers will **draw up** a new contract. (= write)

We mustn't **fall behind** in the race to develop new products. (= be slower than others)

*The two sides were close to an agreement, but it fell through.* (= didn't happen)

The company fought off a takeover by ICM Computers. (= managed to stop)

/ tried to ring Santiago, but I couldn't **get through.** (= make contact)

The company has **laid off** two hundred workers because of a lack of new orders.

The computer will **print out** the details.

*The consultants put forward a proposal to reorganize the company.* (= suggested)

I'll get the information for you. Can I ring you back in half an hour? (= phone again)

Sarah paid a visit to the client to try to **sort out** the difficulties. (= put right)

The company boss has **stepped down** after ten years in charge. (= left the **job**)

We are taking on the challenge of expanding overseas. (= accepting)

Large companies sometimes take over smaller ones. (= take control of)

## 1 Phrasal verbs in everyday situations (A)

Look at the pictures and say what is happening.

Use these phrasal verbs: dig up, pick up, plug in, throw away, wash up Use these objects: the armchair, litter, the plates, the road, the television











	They re throwing the armchair away.			
1.		3	 	
2.		4	 	

## Phrasal verbs and one-word verbs (B)

Rewrite the sentences replacing each <u>underlined</u> verb with a phrasal verb.

- ► We're trying to <u>arrange</u> a holiday together. We're trying to fix up a holiday together. Nick says he's <u>stopped</u> smoking.
- 1 How did the accident <u>happen</u>?
- 2 I think Matthew and Emma have quarrelled.
- i The problem isn't going to just disappear.
- 5 The government is <u>introducing</u> a new tax on computers.
- 6 Zedco want to establish a new sales office in Germany.

## Business situations (C)

Complete the news article about Zedco. Put in these words: fallen behind, fell through, fight off, laying off, put forward, sort out, step down, taking over, taken on

Zedco Chief Executive Barry	y Douglas has $(\triangleright)$ put forward a new plar	n designed to
(1)	the company's problems. It is only twe	lve months since Zedco tried to
strengthen its position by (2)	Alpha Plastic	s. But the deal
(3)	, and Alpha managed to (4)	Zedco's attempts to
take control. Since then Zedo	co has performed poorly and has (5)	in the race for
market share. Managing Dire	ector James Ironside has had to (6)	, and Barry
Douglas has (7)	the task of rescuing the	e company. There are fears that the new
plan will mean (8)	staff in order to reduce	expenditure.

# 130 Phrasal verbs (3)



Here up has the sense of 'increasing', and on has the sense of connected'.

### B Adverb meanings

Look at these adverbs and their meanings. Remember that an adverb can have a number of different meanings.

down = becoming less turn down the music bring down the cost oj living down = completely to the groundknock a house down cut down a tree **down** = stopping completely the car broke down a factory closing down down = on papercopy down the words write down the message note down the details off = away, departing set off on a journey jump in the car and drive off see Emma off at the station the plane took off the pain is wearing off off = disconnected switch off the heater cut off our electricity the caller rang off on = connected switch on the kettle turn on the TV leave the lights on all night on = wearingput a coat on try the sweater on

on = continuing carry on working drive on a bit further hang on/hold on a minute out = away, disappearing wash out the dirt cross out a mistake blow out the candle **out** = to different people hand out free tickets share out the winnings out = aloud read out the article call out anxiously **out** = from start to finish write out the whole list work out the answer **over** = from start to finish check your work over think the problem over **up** = increasing prices are going up put up taxes speak up so we can hear  $\mathbf{up} = \text{completely}$ eat up these chocolates fill up with petrol count up the money tear up the paper

#### i Adverb meanings (B)

Look back at B and then write the meaning of the <u>underlined</u> words in these sentences.

► I must get these ideas <u>down</u> in writing.

on paper

- 1 Daniel finished all the cake ug.
- 2 I'm writing in pencil so I can rub out my mistakes.
- 3 Vicky didn't answer. She just went on reading.
- 4 I'll just read over what I've written.
- 5 A woman in the audience shouted something out
- 6 The water was turned off for about an hour today.
- 7 Nick's aggressive manner frightens people off.
- 8 The company wants to keep its costs down.
- 9 The embassy was burnt down by terrorists.
- 10 Someone will have to type all these figures out.
- 11 Social workers were giving out soup to the hungry.
- D Luckily Zedco's sales figures are moving up again.
- B The man was tall and dark. He had a blue jacket on.
- 4 Business is so bad that many firms have shut down.

#### 2 Adverb meanings (B)

Put in the correct adverb.

► Melanie: Everything is so expensive. Prices seem to be going up all the time. David: Yes, and the government is supposed to be bringing inflation down. 1 Laura: You shouldn't leave the television....all night. Sorry, I forgot. I usually turn it ..... Trevor 2 Vicky: I've written the wrong word here. Well, rub it Rachel: Vicky: I can't. It's in biro. I'll have to write the whole thing ...... again. They're going to pull ...... this beautiful old building. 3 Sarah: Mark: I know. Some protesters were handing ...... leaflets about it. Hold...... a minute. I thought I heard someone call 4 Emma:

#### 3 Adverb meanings (B)

What are they saying? Put in the phrasal verbs.

Matthew: I think you must have imagined it.











► I'm afraid the car has broken down	
1 Why don't you this coat?	3 I can't hear. Please
2 Look, the plane is	4 We're just on holiday.

# 131 Verb + adverb + preposition

#### A Simple meanings

Look at these examples.

	VERB	ADVERB	PREPOSITION	
So you've	come	in	from	the cold.
The old man	fell	down	on	the pavement.
I couldn't	get	through	to	directory enquiries.
David decided to	get	ир	onto	the roof.
It was nice to	go	out	into	the fresh air.
We	look	out	over	the sea.
Everyone	looked	ир	at	the aeroplane.
Vicky	ran	away	from	the fire.

## B Idiomatic meanings

A verb + adverb + preposition often has a special, idiomatic meaning which isn't clear from the individual words. Look at these examples.

Tom often calls in on/drops in on us without warning. (= pays short visits)

You go on ahead. I'll soon catch up with you. (= reach the same place as)

The police are going to clamp down on drug dealers. (= take strong action against)

I'm afraid we've **come up against** another difficulty. (= be stopped by)

Did Claire's trip come up to/live up to her expectations? (= Was it as good as she expected?)

The country is **crying out for** a new leader. (= in great need of)

We need to **cut hack on** our spending. (= reduce)

I'm trying to lose weight. I have to **cut down on** puddings. (= reduce)

They should **do away with** these useless traditions. (= abolish)

You've got to face up to your responsibilities. You can't just ignore them. {- not avoid}

If plan A doesn't work, we've got plan B to fall back on. (= use if necessary)

I'm tired, Mark. I don't really **feel up to** going out. (= have enough energy for)

We can't go on holiday together if your dates don't fit in with mine. (= go together with)

The thief managed to **get away with** about £2,000 in cash. (= steal and take away)

The goods are damaged. We'll have to **get on to** our suppliers. (= contact)

You haven't packed your suitcase yet. You'd better get on with it. (= start, continue)

Mark doesn't really get on with Alan. They're always arguing. (= have a good relationship with)

/ have lots of little jobs to do, but I can never get round to actually doing them. (= find the right time for)

I can't make a promise and then **go back on** it, can I? (= break, fail to keep)

Matthew has decided to go in for the ten-mile 'Fun Run this year. (= enter, compete in)

Most of the audience had left in the interval, but the actors decided to go on with the show. (= continue)

If you hold on to the rope, you'll be perfectly safe. (= keep your hands around)

Daniel was walking so fast I couldn't keep up with him. (= go as fast as)

*I'm looking forward to the trip.* (= thinking ahead with pleasure about)

If you're going barefoot, look out for/watch out for broken glass. (= be careful about)

I got some money from the insurance company, but nothing could make up for losing

my wedding ring. (= compensate for) I'm not going to put up

with this nonsense. (= tolerate) We've run out of milk, I'm

afraid. (= We have none left.) Are you going to send away for

*your free gift?* (= write to ask for)

### 1 Simple meanings (A)

Put in these words: away from, down on, in from, out into, through to, up at, up onto

- ► To reach the light bulb, Trevor had to get *up onto* the table.
- 1 Nick hurt himself when he was skating. He fell ...... the ice
- 2 It was a very long tunnel, but we finally came ...... the sunshine.
- 3 Wondering if it was going to rain, Vicky looked ..... the clouds
- 4 People were running ...... the gunman as fast as they could.
- 5 I'm trying to phone my secretary, but I can't get...... the office.
- 6 When I've come..... the cold, I just want to sit by the fire.

### 2 Idiomatic meanings (B)

Put in a verb + adverb + preposition which means the same as the expression in brackets.

- ▶ I'm afraid this product doesn't *live up to* (be as good as) the claims made in the advertisement.
- 1 I'll just call at the garage. I don't want to.............. (have none left) petrol.
- 2 If you want a catalogue, I'll ...... (write to ask for) one.
- 3 We'd better ...... (be careful about) sheep in the road.
- think ahead with pleasure about) seeing you again soon, Emma.
- 6 Why should we have to ...... (tolerate) this awful noise?
- 7 It's half past twelve. I'd better ......(start) making lunch.
- 8 Do you think the committee will ...... (change) their earlier decision?
- 10 I always like to ......(enter) quiz competitions.
- 11 I'm trying to.....(reduce) the amount of coffee I drink.
- 2 I might lose my job. And I haven't got any savings to ....................... (use if necessary).
- B I've been meaning to reply to Rachel's letter, but I haven't managed
  - to .....(find the right time for) it yet.
- 4 An apology alone cannot ......(compensate for) all the inconvenience.

## Idiomatic meanings (B)

What might you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

- ➤ You're tired. You can't go jogging, (don't feel up) *I don't feel up to jogging.*
- 1 You like Melanie. The two of you are very friendly. (I get)
- 2 You might go and see David. It would be a short visit, (might drop)
- 3 You don't mind what you do. You'll do the same as everyone else. (I'll fit)
- 4 You are too slow. Matthew is too far ahead of you. (can't catch up)
- 5 The sunny weather is nice. Last week was terrible, (is making up)

# TEST 22 Verbs with prepositions and adverbs (Units 126-131)

### Test 22A

Put the words in the right order to form a statement.

- ► I won't forget the titles of the books, down / I've / them / written I've written them down.
- 1 I'll give you the money, for I I I must / my ticket / pay
- 2 I have to look smart, going to / I'm / on / put / that expensive grey coat 1 bought
- 3 Anna rang, invited / lunch / she's / to / us
- 4 Peter's got the photos, at / he's / looking / them
- 5 I wasn't allowed to go. from / leaving / me / prevented / the police
- 6 This programme is boring, going to / I'm / it / off / turn

### Test 22 B

Decide which word is correct.

- I'm not speaking to Oliver. I've fallen *out* with him.

  a) away
  b) back
  c) out
  d) through

  Everyone complained ....... the awful food.

  a) about
  b) for
  c) on
  d) over

  You don't need this word. You should cross it

  a) down
  b) out
  c) over
  d) up

  It's late. How much longer are you going to go ..... working?

  a) along
  b) on
  c) through
  d) with
- 4 My shoes are dirty. I'd better take them ...... before I come in. a) away b) off c) on d) up
- 6 We all laughed ..... the cartoon.
  - a) at b) for c) on d) to
- 7 We'd all decided to go on holiday together, but the plan fell....., I'm afraid. a) away b) back c) out d) through
- 8 I suppose you're being nice to make ...... the awful way you behaved yesterday, a) away of b) down on c) in with d) up for

#### Test 22C

Write the correct sentence.

- ► Could you be a little quieter, please? I'm trying to concentrate at my work.

  I'm trying to concentrate on my work.
- 1 You haven't answered all the questions. You've left one away.
- Where is Bigbury? I've-never heard about it.

- 3 The children were frightened of the dog. They ran out of it.
- 4 Michelle has got the job. You must congratulate her for her success.
- 5 My sister is in computers. She's going to set out her own company.
- 6 I like Peter. He reminds me about an old school friend of mine.
- 7 Adrian has a suggestion. He wants to put it ahead at the meeting.

### Test 22 D

Read the story and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.

### Test 22E

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets. \rightarrow I'm trying to find my diary, (looking) I'm looking for my diary.

- 1 You're too young to stop working, (give)
- 2 This bag is Janet's, (belongs)
- 3 Everyone continued working as usual, (carried)
- 4 They talked about the plan, (discussed)
- 5 I haven't got any money left, (run)
- 6 I told the police what the problem was. (explained)
- 7 I wouldn't tolerate such terrible conditions, (put)
- 8 They'll have to postpone the game, (off)

### 132 Direct speech and reported speech

### Direct speech

Look at these examples of direct speech.

Trevor: I'm tired.

Wasn't it Greta Garbo who said, 7 want to be alone'?

'But I don't love you, Henry,' replied Claire.

We can show that words are direct speech by putting them in quotation marks ("). See page 373. Sometimes the words are put after the speaker's name, in the script of a play or film, for example. In a picture we can put the words in a speech bubble.



supermarket owner Ron Mason

have announced that they are

getting married next month. Melissa is sure they will be happy

together, she told reporters.

### B Reported speech

In reported speech we give the meaning of what was said rather than The actress Melissa Livingstone and the exact words.

Trevor says he's tired.

Wasn't it Greta Garbo who said that she wanted to be alone?

Claire replied that she didn't love Henry.

In reported speech we often change the actual words, e.g. 'I'm tired' -> he's tired. Sometimes the verb tense changes, e.g. / want —> she wanted (see Unit 134).

In reporting we use verbs such as announce, answer, explain, mention, promise, reply, say, suggest, tell. warn. The most common of these are say and tell (see C). We can also report thoughts. We think the Nick knew Rita wanted to be with someone else.

When we report statements, we often use **that**, but we can sometimes leave it out. You promised (that) you wouldn't be late. Sarah was saying (that) there's a problem.

### C Tell or say?

TELL

We use **tell** if we want to mention the hearer (the person spoken to).

Sarah's boss told her she could leave early. NOT -Sarah's boss told she could leave early. Daniel tells me he's ready. We use tell without an indirect object (e.g. her, me) only in the expressions tell a story, tell the truth and tell a lie.

SAY

When we do not mention the hearer, we use say.

Sarah's boss said she could leave early. NOT Sarah's boss said her she could leave early. Daniel says he's ready.

We sometimes use to after say, especially when the words are not reported.

The boss wanted to say something to Sarah. What did Matthew say to you?

### 1 Reported speech (B)

Why are these people at the doctor's? What do they say is wrong with them?



4 .....

### Reported speech (B)

Who said what? Match the words to the people and report what they said. If you can't match them, look at the answers at the bottom of the page.

- ▶ Mrs Thatchera) 'All the world's a stage.'1 Stokeley Carmichaelb) 'Black is beautiful'2 Galileoc) 'Big Brother is watching you.'3 Shakespeared) 'There is no such thing as society.'4 George Orwelle) 'The earth moves round the sun.'
- ► Mrs Thatcher said that there is no such thing as society.

2 He says .....

2

3

4

### Tell or say? (C)

Put in tell or say.

- ? All the experts say the earth is getting warmer.
- ? Did you tell Mark and Sarah how to find our house?
- 1 The Sales Manager is going to..... everyone about the meeting.
- 2 Vicky, why don't you just..... what the matter is?
- 3 They.....they're going to build a new Disney World here.
- 4 What did Natasha.....about her holiday plans?
- 5 Could you..... me the way to the train station, please?
- 6 The company should..... its employees what's going on.
- 7 You shouldn't.....lies, you know, Matthew.
- 8 Did you ...... anything to Melanie about the barbecue?

### 133 Reported speech: person, place and time

### A Introduction



It's Friday afternoon. David is at Tom's flat. Tom has decided to have a party for all his friends.



A few minutes later Nick has arrived at the flat. Now David is reporting what Tom said. So instead of Tom's words **I'm having**, David says **he's** having.



The next day David is talking to Harriet. Now David is in a different place from where Tom first told him about the party. So instead of **here**, he says **at his flat**. And a day has passed since he first heard about it. It is now the day of the party. So instead of **tomorrow evening**, David says **this evening**.

### B Changes in reported speech

Changes from direct speech to reported speech depend on changes in the situation. We may have to make changes when we are reporting something another person has said, or when we report it in a different place or at a different time. Here are some typical changes.

Person 1 he/she my his/her

Place: here there, at the flat

Time: now then, at the time

today that day, on Monday, etc

yesterday the day before, the previous day

tomorrow the next/following day, on Saturday, etc

this week that week

last week an the week before, the previous week

hour ago an hour before/earlier

### 1 Changes in reported speech (A-B)

Read what each person says and then complete the sentences.

- ► Vicky: Daniel told me on Friday that he'd had a job interview the previous day. Daniel had a job interview on *Thursday*.
- 1 Trevor: Laura tells me I need a haircut.
  - ..... needs a haircut.

### 2 Changes of person (A-B)

Put in the missing words.









### 3 Changes of place and time (A-B)

Put in here, that day, the day before, the next day, the week before. Rachel (a week ago): I'm taking my driving test tomorrow.

You (today): When I saw Rachel, she said she was taking her driving test *the next day* 

Emma (two days ago): I've only had this new computer since yesterday.
 You (today): Emma said she'd only had the new computer since
 Matthew (a week ago): I'm meeting a friend at the station later today.

You (today): Matthew said he was meeting a friend at the station later

Mark (in the street): You (in the office):
 You (in the office): Mark said he would see me
 Sarah (a month ago): The conference was last week.

You (today): Sarah told me the conference had taken place

### 134 Reported speech: the tense change

### A When do we change the tense?

After a past-tense verb (e.g. said), there is often a tense change. 'It really is cold today.' —> Vicky said it was cold.

If the statement is still up to date when we report it, then we have a choice. We can either leave the tense the same, or we can change it.

You said you like/liked chocolate. Claire told me her father owns/owned a racehorse.

Sarah said she's going/she was going to Rome in April. We can say that Sarah is going to Rome because it is still true that she will go there.

If the statement is no longer up to date, then we change the tense.

Claire once told me that her father **owned** a racehorse. (He may no longer own one.) Sarah said she **was** going to Rome in April (Now it is May.) Now Sarah's

trip is over, so it is no longer true that she is going to Rome.

We usually change the tense if we think the statement is untrue or may be untrue.

You said you **liked** chocolate, but you aren't eating any. The Prime Minister claimed that the government **had** made the right decision.

### B Is -> was, like -> liked, etc

Look at these examples of the tense change.

DIRECT SPEECH REPORTED SPEECH

Andrew is working.' Jessica said Andrew was working.

'The windows aren't locked.' Mark told me the windows weren't locked.

'I've fixed the shelves.'

Trevor said he'd fixed the shelves.

We noticed it had been raining.

We've got blenty of time.'

Packel invisted they had plenty of

'We've got plenty of time.' Rachel insisted they **had** plenty of time. 'We **like** the flat.' The'couple said they **liked** the flat.

If the verb phrase is more than one word (e.g. **is** working), then the first word changes, e.g. **is** workings\* **was** working, **have** fixed **had** fixed, **don't** know ~\* **didn't** know.

If the verb is already in the past tense, then it can stay the same or change to the past perfect.

'We came by car.' They said they came/they had come by car.

'Sorry. I wasn't listening! / admitted I wasn't listening/hadn't been listening. If the

verb is past perfect, it stays the same.

'My money had run out' Daniel said his money had run out.

### C Modal verbs: can - ▶ could, etc

Can, may and will change to could, might and would.

You can sit over there.' The steward said we could sit here.

I may go to Bali again.' Claire said she might go to Bali again.

'I'll help if you like.' Tom said he would help.

Could, might, ought to, should and would stay the same. But must can change to have to.

'Sarah **would** love a holiday.' Mark thought Sarah **would** love a holiday.

'I must finish this report.' Sarah said she must finish/had to finish the report.

### 1 When do we change the tense? (A)

Put in is or was. Sometimes both are possible.

- I heard today that the house is for sale. I wonder who will buy it.
- I saw David yesterday. He said he was on his way to visit his sister.
- This wallet is made of plastic not leather. Why did you tell me it.....leather?
- 2 We had to hurry yesterday morning. Just as we arrived at the station, we heard an announcement that the train.....about to leave.
- 3 I saw Emma just now. She said her tooth .....still aching.
- 4 I'm surprised Matthew lost. I thought he ...... much better at tennis than Daniel.
- 5 When he spoke to reporters yesterday, Mr Douglas said that Zedco ...... now in a much better financial position.

### 2 The tense change (B)

Complete the replies. The second speaker is surprised at what he or she hears.

Emma and I are getting married.

Rachel: Really? But you said last week you weren't getting married.

▶ Rita: I like pop music more than classical music.

Laura: I'm sure you told me you liked classical music best.

1 Vicky: I haven't finished my project.

Haven't you? I thought you said Emma:

! Rachel: I'm on a diet. Natasha:

But you told me

i Andrew: I enjoy parties.

Surely I remember you saying ..... Daniel.

1 Matthew: I'm applying for the job. Rachel: I thought you told me.....

#### 3 The tense change (B-C)

A comedy show called 'Don't Look Now!' has just closed after five years in London's West End. Here's what the critics said when it opened five years ago.

- ? 'It's a marvellous show.' The Daily Mail
- ? 'You'll love it.' The Guardian
- 1 'The production is brilliant.' The Sunday Times
- 2 '1 can't remember a funnier show.' Edward Devine
- 3 'It made me laugh.' Robert Walsh

- 4 'You must see it.' The Evening Standard
- 5 'It will be a great success.' The Telegraph
- 6 'You might die laughing.' The Express
- 1 'It's the funniest show I've ever seen.' Susan Proctor
- 8 'You shouldn't miss it.' Time Out

Now report what the critics said.

- The Daily Mail said it was a marvellous show.
- The Guardian said people would love it.
- 1 2
- 3
- 4 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

### 135 Reported questions

### A Wh-questions

We can report questions with verbs like ask, wonder or want to know. Look first at these wh-questions.

DIRECT QUESTION

'When did you start acting, Melissa?'

'What's the time?'

**'Which** way is the post office?'

**How** can we find out?'

'Where can we eat?'

REPORTED QUESTION

Guy **asked** Melissa **when** she started acting.

I just asked what the time is.

Someone wants to know which way the post office is.

I was wondering how we can find out.

They're asking where they can eat.

Wh-questions have a word like **when**, **what**, **which** or **how** both in direct speech and in reported speech.

### B Yes/no questions

DIRECT QUESTION

'Has the taxi arrived yet?'~ 'No, not yet' 'Can we take photos?'~

'Yes, of course.' 'Is there a

cafe nearby?' ~ 'No.'

REPORTED QUESTION

Someone was wondering if/whether the taxi has arrived yet. The visitors want to know

if/whether they can take

photos. Daniel asked if/whether there was a cafe nearby.

Reported yes/no questions have if or whether.

### Word order

In a reported question the subject comes before the verb, as in a statement.

Guy asked Melissa when she started acting. NOT Guy asked Melissa when did she start acting. Someone was wondering if the taxi has arrived yet. NOT

Someone was wondering if has the taxi arrived yet.

### Asking for information

To ask politely for information, we sometimes use a reported question after a phrase like

Could you tell me ...? or Do you know ...?

Could you tell me what time the concert starts?

**Do you know** if there's a public phone in the building?

Have you any idea how much a taxi would cost?

Note the word order a taxi would cost (see C).

The tense change: is —▶ was, etc

In reported speech there are often changes to the tense, to pronouns and so on.

This depends on changes to the situation since the words were spoken.

For details see Units 133 and 134. Here are some examples of the tense change.

'Whafs the problem?' 'How much money have you

got, Vicky?'

'Does Nick need a lift?'

'Can you type?'

We asked what the problem was.

I was wondering how much money Vicky had.

Tom asked if Nick needed a lift.

They asked me if I could type.

### Reported questions (A-C)

These people are at the tourist information centre. What do they want to know?



?	She wants to know what the most interesting sights are
?	He wants to know if the centre has got a town plan.
1	
2	
3	
1	

### Asking for information (D)

You need information. Ask for it using Could you tell me ...? or Do you know ...?

- ▶ Where are the toilets? (tell)
- Could you tell me where the toilets are?
- 1 Can I park here? (know)
- 2 How long does the film last? (tell)
- 3 How often do the buses run? (know)
- 4 Are we allowed to smoke? (know)
- 5 What time is the flight? (tell)
- 6 How much does a ticket cost? (tell)

### The tense change (E)

Barry Douglas, Zedco Chief Executive, is talking to a reporter about his business career.

Interviewer:

He can still remember his first job interview after leaving school.

- ? 'Where do you live?'
- ? 'Have you worked before?'
- 'Why do you want the job?'
- 2 'How did you hear about it?'
- 3 'Are you fit?'
- 4 'Can you work on Saturdays?'
- 5 'How will you travel to work?'
- 6 'Have you got a bicycle?'
- 'How much do you hope to earn?' And finally she asked
- 'When can you start?'

#### Barry:

The interviewer asked me where I lived. She asked me if I had worked before. She wanted

to know I remember she asked

She wondered

Then she asked me She

wanted to know And she

asked me She also asked

### 136 Reported requests, offers, etc

### A Reported orders and requests

We can use the structure tell/ask someone to do something.

DIRECT SPEECH REPORTED SPEECH

'Please move this car.' A policeman **told me to move** the car.

'You really must be careful! Melanie is always **telling David to be** careful. 'Would you mind turning the music down?' We **asked our neighbours to turn** the music down.

The negative is tell/ask someone not to do something.

'You mustn't leave the door unlocked! Mr Atkins told Mark not to leave the door unlocked.

'Please don't wear those boots in the house.' 1 asked you not to wear those boots in the house.

We can also use the structure ask to do something.

'Can I see your ticket, please?'

The inspector **asked to see** my ticket.

We use **ask for** when someone asks to have something.

'Can I have some brochures, please?' I asked (the travel agent) for some brochures.

It is also possible to report an order or request like this. A policeman told me (that) I had to move the car. We asked our neighbours if they would mind turning the music down.

### B Reported offers, suggestions, etc

We can use agree, offer, promise, refuse and threaten with a to-infinitive.

DIRECT SPEECH REPORTED SPEECH

'We'll pay for the damage! We **offered to pay** for the damage.

T'll definitely finish it by the end of next week! You promised to finish the work by the end of this

week.

We can also use an object + to-infinitive after advise, invite, remind and warn.

7 think you should take a taxi! Mark advised us to take a taxi. 'Don't forget to ring me! 1 reminded David to ring me.

We can use an ing-form after admit, apologize for, insist on and suggest.

7 really must have a rest! Emma insisted on having a rest.

'Shall we go to a nightclub?' Claire suggested going to a nightclub.

### C Admit that, insist that, etc

We can use a clause with **that** after **admit, advise, agree, insist, promise, remind, suggest** and **warn.**Trevor **admitted** (**that**) he had forgotten the shopping. Claire **insisted** (**that**) we all went round to her flat for coffee. You **promised** (**that**) you would finish the work by the end of this week. I **warned** you (**that**) Nick's dog is very fierce.

62 Verb + to-infinitive/ing-form 65 Verb + object + to-infinitive

### 1 Tell/ask someone to do something (A)

Trevor isn't feeling very happy. Everyone has been telling him what to do. Report the orders and requests.

- ▶ His mother: Can you dig my garden, please, Trevor? His mother asked him to dig her garden.
- 1 The doctor: You must take more exercise.
- 2 His boss: Would you mind not playing computer games in the office?
- 3 A traffic warden: You can't park your car in the High Street.
- 4 Laura: Could you put some shelves up, please, Trevor?

### 2 Reported offers, suggestions, etc (B)

Complete the sentences. Report what was said.

Would you like to stay for lunch, Claire?	All right. I won't talk about football.	1 You ought to take a break, Andrew.	2 /'m sorry / forgot the shopping.
Why don't we sing a few songs?	4 You're going to post the letter, don't forget, Vicky.	5 Yes, I made a mistake.	6 Laural Don't touch the electric wires!

- ? Sarah invited Claire to stay for lunch.
- ? Tom agreed not to talk about football.
- 1 Matthew advised .....
- 2 Mike apologized .....
- 3 Tom suggested .....
- 4 Rachel reminded.....
- 5 Mr Atkins admitted .....
- 6 Trevor warned.....

### Admit that, insist that, etc (C)

Combine each pair of sentences using that.

- ► The roads were dangerous. The police warned us. *The police warned us that the roads were dangerous.*
- 1 Everything will be ready on time. The builders have promised.
- 2 We have to check the figures carefully. The boss insists.
- 3 Tom's story wasn't completely true. He's admitted it.
- i Emma's train was about to leave. Matthew reminded her.

### TEST 23 Reported speech (Units 132-136)

### Test 23A

Some of these sentences are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, put a tick (/). If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary word out of the sentence and write it in the space.

- ? You promised you wouldn't be late.
- ? Susan thought 'That I can't understand what's happening.' that
- 1 Do you know me what time the coach leaves?
- 2 Robert wanted to know if did the price included breakfast.
- 3 Anna insisted on showing us her photos.
- 4 Someone asked us whether that we had eaten lunch.
- 5 Nancy told me she had started the job the week before.
- 6 Nigel said me he wanted to come with us.
- 7 My friend said she did liked her new flat.
- 8 Martin asked us for not to wake the baby.

#### Test 23 B

Decide which word is correct.

- ▶ What did that man say to you?
  - a) at you b) for you c) to you d) you
- 1 I rang my friend in Australia yesterday, and she said it..... raining there.
  - a) is b) should be c) to be d) was
- 2 The last time I saw Jonathan, he looked very relaxed. He explained that he'd been on holiday the..... week.
  - a) earlier b) following c) next d) previous
- 3 I wonder..... the tickets are on sale yet.
  - a) what b) when c) where d) whether
- 4 I told you..... switch off the computer, didn't I?
  - a) don't b) not c) not to d) to not
- 5 Someone.....me there's been an accident on the motorway.
  - a) asked b) said c) spoke d) told
- - a) that b) the c) then d) this
- 7 When he was at Oliver's flat yesterday, Martin asked if he..... use the phone.
  - a) can b) could c) may d) must
- 8 Judy ...... going for a walk, but no one else wanted to.
  - a) admitted b) offered c) promised d) suggested

### Test 23C

Read the news report and write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

Police have warned people	(►) to watch out for two men who have tricked their w	vay into an old woman's
home and stolen money. The	ne men called on Mrs Iris Raine and said (1)	were from the
water company and wanted	to check (2) her water was OK	, <b>-</b> •
They asked if (3)	would mind letting them into her house.	
The woman didn't ask (4)	see their identity cards.	
She said she (5)	know about any problem with the water.	

#### Test 23D

Complete each sentence by reporting what was said to you yesterday.

Use said and change the tense in the reported speech.

► Polly: I'm really tired.

When I saw Polly yesterday, she said she was really tired.

1 Tessa: I feel quite excited.

When I saw Tessa yesterday, .

2 Nigel: I can't remember the code word.

When I saw Nigel yesterday,

3 Robert: I won't be at the next meeting.

When I saw Robert yesterday,

4 The twins: We've got a problem.

When I saw the twins yesterday,

5 Michelle: I've been swimming. When I saw Michelle yesterday,

6 Your friends: We would like to be in the show.

When I saw my friends yesterday,

7 Adrian: I don't need any help.

When I saw Adrian yesterday, .

8 Susan: My sister is coming to see me.

When I saw Susan yesterday,

### Test23E

Report the sentences. They were all spoken last week. Use the verbs in brackets.

- ? Anna to Janet: Don't forget to sign the form, (remind)
  - Anna reminded Janet to sign the form.
- ? Robert: What time will the office close this evening? (ask) Robert asked what time the office would close that evening.
- 1 A policeman to Christopher: Stop shouting, (tell)
- 2 Tessa: It was me. I ate all the cake yesterday, (admit)
- 3 Adrian: I'm sorry I was rude, (apologize)
- 4 Simon to Susan: Would you like to join me for lunch? (invite)
- 5 Martin to Nancy: Did someone ring you an hour ago? (ask)
- 6 Peter: I really must leave, (insist)

### 137 Relative clauses with who, which and that

### A Introduction

Emma: / saw Natalie the other day.

Melanie: Natalie? The girl who plays the piano? Emma: No, that's Natasha. Natalie is the student

who dropped out of college, the one who never did any studying. She's working in Davidson's now, the shop that sells very

expensive clothes.

The relative clauses in this conversation identify which person or thing we are talking about. The clause **who plays the piano** tells us which girl Melanie means. The clause **that sells very expensive clothes** tells us which shop Emma means.



Sometimes we can use an adjective or a phrase to identify someone or something.

Adjective: the tall girl the new student the red car

Phrase: the man in the suit the shop on the corner the woman with red hair

But when we need a longer explanation, we can use a relative clause. Relative clause: the woman who gets up early the car that broke down

### B Who, which and that

The relative pronouns who, which and that go after the noun and at the beginning of the relative clause.

### Who refers to people.

Nick is the man who owns that enormous dog. I don't like people who tell jokes all the time.

The little **girl who** sat next to me on the coach ate sweets the whole way.

Sarah is pretty annoyed with the **person who** stole her mobile phone. We

can also use **that**, but it is less usual.

Jake is the **man that** plays the guitar.

The woman that lived here before us is a romantic novelist.

That and which refer to things. That is more usual than which, especially in conversation.

The car that won the race looked very futuristic, didn't it? They've recaptured all the animals that escaped from the zoo. The children saw the actual spacecraft that landed on the moon.

#### Which can be a little formal.

There are several **restaurants which** do Sunday lunches. Is Zedco the **company which** was taken over last year?

We do not use another pronoun like **he** or **it** with the relative pronoun.

NOT the man whohe owns that enormouts dog NOT the actual spacecraft that it landed on the moon

In all these sentences **who, which** and **that** are the subject of the relative clause. For **who, which** and **that** as object, see Units f 38 and f 39.

### 1 Identifying (A)

Look at the information and identify which one is meant.

Use the shortest way of identifying where possible, e.g. the tall boy, not the boy who is tall.

? the boy (he is tall) the tall boy

? the man (he has a beard) the man with a beard

? the woman (she plays golf) the woman who plays golf

- 1 the young man (he is at the door)
- 2 the man (he plays his stereo at night)
- 3 the woman (she is very thin)
- 4 the girl (she has green eyes)
- 5 the young woman (she is in the office)
- 6 the man (he drives a taxi)
- 7 the young man (he is smart) ......
- 8 the student (she failed all her exams)

### 2 Who, which and that (B)

Complete the conversation. Put in who, which or that. There is always more than one possible answer.

Emma: Shall we have something to eat?

Matthew: Yes, but not here. I don't like cafes (▶) that don't have chairs. I'm not one of those people

(▶)who can eat standing up.

Emma: There's another restaurant over there.

Matthew: It looks expensive, one of those places (1)......charge very high prices. The only

display a menu.

Emma: We just passed a cafe (5)............... does snacks.

Matthew: Oh, I didn't like the look of that.

Emma: You're one of those people (6) .....are never satisfied, aren't you?

### 3 Relative clauses (A-B)

Combine the information to make news items. Make the sentence in brackets into a relative clause with *who* or *which*. Start each sentence with *the*, e.g. *The man* ...

A man has gone to prison. (He shot two policemen.)

The man who shot two policemen has gone to prison.

- 1 A bomb caused a lot of damage. (It went off this morning.)
- 2 A scientist has won the Nobel Prize. (He discovered a new planet.)
- 3 A footballer has been banned from playing again. (He took drugs.)
- 4 A little girl has been found safe and well. (She had been missing since Tuesday.)
- 5 A company has laid off thousands of workers. (It owns Greenway Supermarkets.)
- 6 An old lady now wants to swim the English Channel. (She did a parachute jump.)

## 138 The relative pronoun as object

### A Subject and object

Harriet is showing David her holiday photos.

Harriet: That's an old castle that we visited on holiday. And those are some people we met, a couple who were staying at the campsite.

David: Mm. They look very friendly.

A relative pronoun such as **who** or **that** can be the subject of a relative clause.

Harriet talked to a couple who were staying at the camp-site. ( Theyi were staying at the camp-site.)

The postcard that came this morning was from Harriet. (

It came this morning.)

A relative pronoun can also be the object of a relative clause.

Mike and Harriet are visiting

a woman who they met on holiday.

(They met her on holiday.)

The old castle that we visited was really interesting.

(We visited it.)

We do not use another pronoun like **her** or it with the relative pronoun. NOT a woman who they met her NOT -the old castle that we visited it

### B Leaving out the relative pronoun

We can leave out the relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause. We do this especially in spoken English. Compare these examples.

WITH OBJECT PRONOUN

WITHOUT OBJECT PRONOUN

The man who Vicky saw at the concert is Sarah's

The man Vicky saw at the concert is Sarah's

That's an old castle that we visited.

That's an old castle we visited.

Here are some more examples of relative clauses without an object pronoun. We don't know the name of the person the police are questioning. The cakes Melanie baked were delicious. That jacket you're wearing is falling to pieces, Mike.

Remember that we cannot leave out a pronoun when it is the subject of a relative clause.

The man who spoke to Vicky is Sarah's boss.

### C Who and whom

In formal English, **whom** is sometimes used when the object of the relative clause is a person. *The person who/whom the police were questioning has now been released.* But in conversation **whom** is not very common.

### i Subject and object (A) Comment on the conversations. Add a sentence with who or that as the subject of the underlined part. ► She's Tom's new girlfriend. ~ Who is? ~ That girl. She just said hello. That's right. The girl who just said hello is Tom's new girlfriend. The dog has been rescued. $\sim$ What dog? $\sim$ It fell down a hole. Haven't you heard? The 2 The story was untrue. ~ What story? ~ You know. It upset everyone. Yes, the 3 He's a film producer. ~ Who is? ~ That man. He interviewed Natasha. That's what I heard. The Now comment on these conversations. Add a sentence with who or that as the object of the <u>underlined</u> part. 4 The accident wasn't very serious. ~ What accident? ~ Oh, <u>Daniel</u> saw it. Yes, the 5 He's a millionaire. ~ Who is? ~ That man. Claire knows him. It's true. The 6 The vase was extremely valuable. ~ What vase? ~ You know. David broke it. That's right. The 7 It's really nice. ~ What is? ~ The jacket. Melanie wore it at the party. Yes, it is. The 2 Leaving out the relative pronoun (B) Complete the script for these TV advertisements. Use a relative clause without a pronoun. ► Fresho soap. Beautiful people use it. *It's the soap beautiful people use*. 1 An Everyman car. You can afford it..... 2 'Hijack'. People want to see this film..... 3 Greenway Supermarket. You can trust it. 4 'Cool' magazine. Young people read it. 5 Jupiter chocolates. You'll love them..... 3 Leaving out the relative pronoun (B) Look carefully at these sentences. Are they correct without a relative pronoun? Where you see \*, you may need to put in who, which or that. Write the sentences and put in a pronoun only if you have to. ? The man \* paid for the meal was a friend of Tom's. The man who paid for the meal was a friend of Tom's. ? The meeting \* Mark had to attend went on for three hours. The meeting Mark had to attend went on for three hours. 1 Somewhere I've got a photo of the mountain \* we climbed. 2 The man \* repaired my car is a real expert. 3 The detective lost sight of the man \* he was following. 4 I thought I recognized the assistant \* served us. 5 I'm afraid the numbers \* I chose didn't win a prize.

### 139 Prepositions in relative clauses

#### Introduction

A relative pronoun (e.g. **that**) can be the object of a preposition (e.g. **for**).

This is the bus that I've been waiting for.

I've been waiting for the bus.

The restaurant **that** we normally go **to** is closed today.

We normally go to the restaurant.

In informal spoken English we normally put the preposition at the end of the relative clause. Compare the word order.

STATEMENT

I've been waiting for the bus. We go to the restaurant.



#### RELATIVE CLAUSE

the bus that **I've been waiting for** the restaurant that **we go to** 

We do not use another pronoun like **it** or **her** after the preposition. NOT the restaurant that we go to it NOT someone who / work with her

### B Leaving out the pronoun

We often leave out the relative pronoun when it is the object of a preposition.

WITH OBJECT PRONOUN

The bus that I'm waiting for is late. Is this the article which you were interested in? That's the man who I was talking about.

#### WITHOUT OBJECT PRONOUN

The bus **I'm waiting for** is late. Is this the article **you were interested in?** That's the man **I was talking about.** 

Here are some more examples of relative clauses without an object pronoun.

/ cant remember the name of the hotel we stayed at. This is the colour we've finally decided on. The shop I got my stereo from has lots of bargains.

### C A preposition at the beginning

These examples are typical of formal English.

Was that the restaurant to which you normally go?

Electronics is a subject about which I know very little.

The Sales Manager is the person from whom I obtained the figures. Here the preposition comes at the beginning of the relative clause, before which or whom.

We cannot put a preposition before that or who.

a subject (that) I know little about NOT <del>a subject—about that I know little</del> the person (who) I got the figures from NOT <del>the person from who I got the figures</del>

138C Whom

### 1 A preposition at the end (A-B)

What are they saying? Put in sentences with a preposition at the end.











▶	(Mark has been looking for this letter.) This is the letter I've been looking for
1	(Rachel was talking about that film.)
2	(Laura has decided on this wallpaper.)
3	(Matthew played tennis with that man.)
4	(David fell down those steps.)

### A preposition at the end (A-B)

Match the phrases and write the definitions. Put the preposition at the end of the relative clause.

	a kitchen	a cupboard	you nit nails with it
1	a hammer	the person	you keep valuable things in it
2	your destination	a piece of furniture	you cook in it
3	a safe	the place	you can either sit or sleep on it
4	your opponent	a room	you're going to it
5	a sofa bed	a tool	you're playing against them
$\blacktriangleright$	A kitchen is a room	n you cook in.	
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			

### 3 A preposition at the beginning (C)

It's election time. All the politicians are arguing.

Rewrite the first sentence using a preposition at the beginning of a relative clause.

- ▶ I cannot agree with that statement. I hope I've made that clear. *That is a statement with which 1 cannot agree*.
- 1 Our party believes in that idea. I say this from the bottom of my heart.
- 2 I am strongly opposed to that policy. And I am not afraid to say so ........
- 3 No one cares about these people. They are the forgotten people.
- 4 Your party should be ashamed of those mistakes. And everyone knows that.
- 5 The government is now dealing with that problem. How many times do I have to tell you?

### 140 Relative structures with whose, what and it

### A Whose

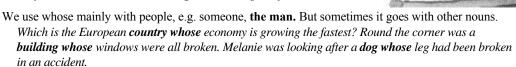
Vicky: What I'd really like is a job in television. Daniel: The other day I met a man whose sister

works in television. Vicky: Who? What's her name? Daniel: Oh, I don't know. She's the woman whose car Tom crashed into.

Here whose sister means his sister (the sister of the man Daniel met), and whose car means her car (the car belonging to the woman). Here are some more examples.

Someone **whose bicycle** had been stolen was reporting it to the police.

Wayne Johnson is the man whose goal won the game for United.



#### **B** What

We use the relative pronoun **what** without a noun in front of it. *The* shop didn't have **what** I wanted. (= the thing that I wanted) **What** we saw gave us quite a shock. (= the thing that we saw)

We can also use **what** to give emphasis to a word or phrase, to make it more important. Compare these examples.

NEUTRAL

Rachel's stereo kept me awake. Vicky is looking for a job in television. I want to make a fresh start. They booked a holiday together.

#### EMPHATIC

What kept me awake was Rachel's stereo. What Vicky is looking for is a job in television. What I want to do is make a fresh start. What they did was book a holiday together.

### C It

We also use it + be + a relative clause to give emphasis.

NEUTRAL

Tom had an accident.
The computer gives me a headache.
I'm eating chocolate cake.
Mike's uncle died on Thursday.

EMPHATIC

It was Tom who had an accident (not David).

It's the computer that gives me a headache.

It's chocolate cake (that) I'm eating.

It was on Thursday that Mike's uncle died.

We must put in a pronoun when it is the subject of the relative clause (e.g. *who had an accident*). If it is the object (e.g. *that I'm eating*), then we can leave it out (see Unit 138B).

### 1 Who or whose? (A)

You are reading a crime story. One of these people has murdered the industrialist Colin Howard. Look at the detective's notes and write a sentence about each person. Use a relative clause with *who* or *whose*.

- ? George Paxton, company director he had an argument with Colin *George is the company director who had an argument with Colin.*
- ? Vera Stokes, politician her sister once worked for Colin Vera is the politician whose sister once worked for Colin.
- 1 Felix Reeves, journalist his tape recorder was stolen
- 2 Graham Wilshaw, architect he knew Colin at school
- Rex Carter, farmer Colin bought his land
- 4 Norman Bridge, lawyer he looked after Colin's interests
- 5 Sonia Goldman, house guest her fingerprints were on the door handle

### 2 What(B)

Zedco Chief Executive Barry Douglas is telling a group of managers how to run a business successfully. He emphasizes the <u>underlined</u> words using *what*.

- ➤ You must pay attention to the details.

  What you must pay attention to are the details.
- 1 You have to think about your profit.
- 2 You must know the needs of your customers.
- 3 You should work towards a realistic target.
- 4 You need to plan ahead.

### 3 lt(C)

Quiz champion Claude Jennings is answering some questions.

Look at each question and answer and write a sentence with it + be + a relative clause.

- ▶ Who invented radio? ~ Marconi. It was Marconi who *invented radio*.
- 1 When did Columbus sail to America? ~ In 1492. It was in 1492 that .....
- 2 What does Tiger Woods play? ~ Golf.

  It's ......
- 3 Where did the Olympic Games first take place? ~ In Greece.
- 4 Which is nearest the sun, Venus or Mercury? ~ Mercury.

### 141 The use of relative clauses

#### A Introduction

There are two kinds of relative clause. Compare this conversation and newspaper report.

Laura: Art Golding has died.

Trevor: Who?

Laura: You know. The film star who played the

ship's captain in 'Iceberg'. Trevor: /

don't think I've seen that. Laura: Yes, you

have. It's the film we saw on TV the other night.

The clauses in this conversation identify which film star and which film Laura means. They are called identifying clauses.

### B Identifying clauses and adding clauses

IDENTIFYING

The man who lives next door to Melanie is rather strange. The river which flows through Hereford is the

Wye. The picture which was damaged is

thousands of pounds.

These clauses identify which thing the speaker is talking about. The clause who lives next door to Melanie tells us which man. The clause which flows through Hereford tells us which river. Without the relative clause the sentence would be incomplete. The man is rather strange makes sense only if we know which man.

An identifying clause does not have commas around it.

Most relative clauses are identifying. We use them both in speech and in writing.

### ART GOLDING DIES

The actor Art Golding, who starred in films such as 'Tornado' and 'Iceberg', has died after a long illness. He was seventy-eight. Art Golding's most famous role was as the scientist in the film 'Supernova', which broke all box-office records.

The clauses in this report add information about Art Golding and about 'Supernova'. They are called adding clauses, or sometimes non-identifying clauses.

ADDING

Jake, who lives next door to Melanie, is rather strange. The Wye (which flows through Hereford) is a

beautiful river.

This famous picture - which was damaged during the war - is worth thousands of pounds.

These clauses add extra information about something which is already identified. The clause who lives next door to Melanie adds information about Jake. But we can say the sentence on its own without the relative clause. Jake is rather strange makes sense because the name Jake identifies who we are talking about.

An adding clause has commas around it. Instead of commas, we can use brackets () or dashes —. If the adding clause is at the end of the sentence, we need only one comma or dash. That's Jake, who lives next door.

Adding clauses can be rather formal. We use them mainly in writing. They are common in news reports. In speech we often use two short sentences. Jake lives next door to Melanie. He's rather strange.

137A Identifying clauses 142A Pronouns in identifying and adding clauses

### 1 Adding clauses (A)

Match the parts and write sentences with an adding clause. Use who or which.

<b>&gt;</b>	The Grand Canyon	He was in prison for 27 years.	He was one of the Beatles.
1	Nelson Mandela	He was killed in 1980.	He became President of South Africa.
2	John Lennon	It is 140 million miles away.	It is one of the wonders of the world.
3	The Titanic	It is over 200 miles long.	It is known as the red planet.
4	Queen Victoria	It sank in 1912.	It stood for 28 years.
5	Mars	It was built in 1961.	It was supposed to be unsinkable.
6	The Berlin Wall	She came to the throne in 1837.	She ruled over the British Empire.
1 2 3 4 5	The Grand Canyon,	which is over 200 miles long, is one	of the wonders of the world.

### 2 Identifying or adding? (B)

Read the news article and then say what each relative clause does.

Does it tell us which one, or does it add information?

The play (▶) that the students put on last week was Oscar Wilde's 'The Importance of Being Earnest' (▶) which was written in 1895. The college theatre, (1) which holds over 400 people, was unfortunately only half full for the Friday evening performance. However, the people (2) who bothered to attend must have been glad they did. Lucy Kellett, (3) who played Lady Bracknell, was magnificent. Unfortunately the young man (4) who played lohn Worthing forgot his lines twice, but that did not spoil the evening, (5) which was a great success.

?	It tells us which play.
?	It adds information about 'The Importance of Being Earnest'.
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

### 3 Commas in relative clauses (B)

Put in the relative clauses. You may also need to put in one or two commas.

- ? (that Claire drives) This car is a lot cheaper than the one *that Claire drives*
- ? (who has twins) Olivia, who has twins, often needs a babysitter.
- 1 (who took Rita to the party) The person ......was Tom.
- 2 (who has a bad temper) Henry.....shouted at the waiter.
- 3 (which Tom supports) The team .....is United.
- 4 (who is afraid of heights) We all climbed up except Vicky ......
- 6 (she bought the sofa from) Sarah can't remember the name of the shop......

### 142 Relative pronouns and relative adverbs

### A Pronouns in identifying and adding clauses

There are two kinds of relative clause: identifying and adding (see Unit 141). Look at the pronouns in these examples.

#### IDENTIFYING

I'm sure I know the person **who** served us. The pop singer **whom** Guy invited onto his chat show never turned up. The woman **whose** flat was burgled spent the

night at a friend's house. Towns which/that attract tourists are usually

crowded in the summer.

In an identifying clause we can use who, whom, whose, which or that.

#### ADDING

Natalie, who served us, is a friend of Emma's.
Arlene Black, whom Guy invited onto his chat show, never turned up. Natasha, whose flat was burgled, spent the night at a friend's house. Oxford, which attracts many tourists, is often crowded in the summer. In an adding

clause we can use who, whom, whose or which. We do NOT use that.

### **B** Leaving out the pronoun

Sometimes we can leave the pronoun out of an identifying clause (see Unit 138B).

The woman (who) you met yesterday works in advertising.

Have you seen the book (that) I was reading?

Laura couldn't find the box (that) she kept her photos in.

We cannot leave the pronoun out of an adding

Sarah, whom you met yesterday, works in advertising. That book 'Brighton Rock', which 1 was reading,

is really good.

Laura had a wooden box, in which she kept her photos OR which she kept her photos in.

### C The relative adverbs where, when and why

Look at these examples.

This is the place where the accident happened.

Do you remember the day **when** we moved the piano upstairs?

The reason why Nick came was that he wanted to see Rita. We

can leave out when or why, or we can use that.

Do you remember the day (that) we moved the piano upstairs? The reason (that) Nick came was that he wanted to see Rita.

There are also adding clauses with where and when.

We went to the Riverside Restaurant, where I once had lunch with Henry.

Mark likes to travel at night, when the roads are quiet.

### D A special use of which

In an adding clause, we can use which relating to a whole sentence, not just to a noun.

It rained all night, which was good for the garden.

Here which means 'the fact that it rained all night'.

Here are some more examples.

David helped me clear up, which was very kind of him.

Sarah had to work late again, which annoyed Mark.

Tom pushed Nick into the swimming-pool, which seemed to amuse everyone.

### 1 Who, whom, whose, which, where and why (A, C) Complete this advertisement. Put in who, whom, whose, which, where or why. The town of Keswick, (▶) which lies at the heart of the Lake District, is the perfect place for a holiday, and the Derwent Hotel, (1)......overlooks the town, is the perfect place to stay. Robin and Wendy Jackson, (2).....bought this small hotel three years ago, have already won an excellent reputation. Robin, (3)...... cooking is one of the reasons (4)..... the Derwent is so popular, was once Young Chef of the Year. The comfort of the guests, (5)...... the owners treat almost as members of the family, always comes first. Peter Ustinov, (6)......once stayed at the hotel, described it as 'marvellous'. And the Lake District, (7)...... has so much wonderful scenery and (8)..... the poet Wordsworth lived, will not disappoint you. 2 Identifying clauses and adding clauses (A-C) Put in the relative clauses. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer. ► Someone knows all about it - the secretary. The person who knows all about it is the secretary. 1 Zedco has 10,000 employees. It's an international company. Zedco, , is an international company. 2 Vicky's name was missed off the list, so she wasn't very pleased. Vicky, , wasn't very pleased. 3 Laura painted a picture, and it's being shown in an exhibition. The picture is being shown in an exhibition. 4 We're all looking forward to a concert. It's next Saturday. The concert is next Saturday. 5 One week Mike and Harriet went camping. It was the wettest of the year. 6 Aunt Joan is a bit deaf, so she didn't hear the phone. Aunt Joan, , didn't hear the phone. 7 You'll meet Henry tomorrow. He's also a member of the board. Henry, , is also a member of the board. 8 I'll see you near the post office. We met there the other day. I'll see you near the post office, 3 A special use of which (D) Match the sentence pairs and join them with which. ► My phone is out of order. It means he can't get about very easily. 1 Rachel's mother paid for the meal. It's made her very depressed. 2 My brother is disabled. That was rather careless of you. You left the keys in the car. That caused a traffic jam. 4 Vicky didn't get the job. It's a real nuisance. That was very kind of her. 5 The police blocked off the road. ► *My phone is out of order, which is a real nuisance.* 2

### 143 Relative clauses: participle and to-infinitive

### A Relative clauses with a participle

Read this news report about an accident.

Several people were injured this morning when a lorry carrying concrete pipes overturned in the centre of town and hit two cars. Ambulances called to the scene took a long time to get through the rush hour traffic. The accident happened in Alfred Road, where road repairs are under way. People who saw the accident say that the lorry hit the cars after it swerved to avoid a pile of stones left in the road. The traffic chaos caused by the accident has meant long delays for people travelling to work.

Carrying concrete pipes, called to the scene, etc are relative clauses: they relate to a noun. Carrying concrete pipes tells us something about a lorry.

We can form these clauses with an active participle, e.g. **carrying**, or **a** passive participle, e.g. **called**. The participles can refer to the present or the past.

ACTIVE

There are delays this morning for people travelling to work.

(= people who are travelling to work) A lorry carrying concrete pipes has overturned. (= a lorry which was carrying pipes) the path leading to the church (= the path which leads/led to the church)

The active participle means the same as a pronoun + a continuous verb, e.g. which is/was carrying, or a pronoun + a simple verb, e.g. which leads/led.

But we do NOT use the active participle for a single action in the past.

The police want to interview people **who saw** the accident.

NOT people seeing the accident

#### PASSIVE

/ have a message for people **delayed** by the traffic chaos.

(= people who are being delayed) We noticed a pile of stones left in the road. (= stones which had been left there) food sold in supermarkets (= food which is/was sold in supermarkets)

The passive participle means the same as a pronoun + a passive verb, e.g. which is/was sold.

### B Relative clauses with a to-infinitive

Look at this structure with the to-infinitive.

**New** Zealand was the **first** country **to give** women the vote. (= the first country which gave women the vote) *Melanie was* the **only** person **to write** a letter of thanks. (= the only person who wrote a letter of thanks)

Here are some more examples.

The guest on our show is the **youngest** golfer **to win** the Open.

Emma Thompson is the **most famous** actress **to appear** on stage here. We can use a to-infinitive with these words: **first, second,** etc; **next** and **last; only;** and superlatives, e.g. **youngest, most famous.** 

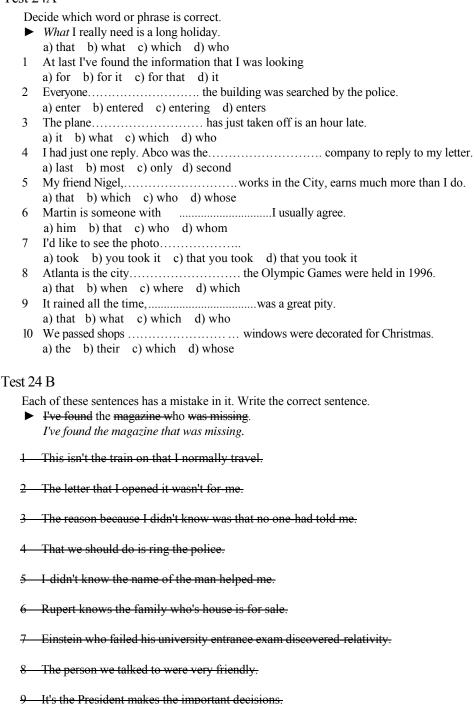
We can leave out the noun (except after **only**) if the meaning is clear. *The* captain was the *last to leave* the sinking ship.

### 1 Relative clauses with a participle (A) Complete the definitions. Put in an active or passive participle of these verbs: add, arrive, block, own, play, take, tell, watch, wear A competitor is someone *taking* part in a competition. Your property is everything owned by you. Baseball is a game..... mainly in the US. A wrist-watch is a watch ...... on your wrist. A latecomer is a person.....late. An instruction is a statement......you what to do. An extension is a new part ...... on to a building. An obstacle is something . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . your way. 2 Relative clauses with a participle (A) Write each news item as one sentence. Change the part in brackets into a clause with an active participle (e.g. *costing*) or a passive participle {e.g. found). A new motorway is planned. (It will cost £500 million.) A new motorway costing £500 million is planned. Some weapons belong to the IRA. (They were found at a flat in Bristol.) Some weapons found at a flat in Bristol belong to the IRA. Families have been evicted. (They were living in an empty office building.) 1 Families ..... A chemical company has gone bankrupt. (It employed 4,000 people.) A chemical company..... A bridge has been declared unsafe. (It was built only two years ago.) A bridge 4 People have marched to London. (They are protesting against pollution.) 5 Tennis fans have been queuing all night at Wimbledon. (They hope to buy tickets.) A new drug may give us eternal youth. (It was developed at a British university.) Relative clauses with a to-infinitive (B) Comment on each situation. Use the to-infinitive structure. ▶ David offered his help. No one else did. David was the only person to offer his help. Olivia's daughter swam a length of the pool. No other girl as young as her did that. Olivia's daughter was The secretaries got a pay rise. No one else did. The secretaries were 3 The pilot left the aircraft. Everyone else had left before him. Mrs Harper became Managing Director. No other woman had done that before. 4

Daniel applied for the job. No other candidate as suitable as him applied.

### TEST 24 Relative clauses (Units 137-143)

### Test 24A



- 10 I can't find my diary, what is real nuisnace.
- 11 Outside the door was a pair of boots covering in mud,
- 12 Lake Suiperior, that lies on the US Canadian border is the largest lake in North America.

#### Test 24C

Complete the story about a thief's punishment. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space. This is a true story (▶) which is supposed to have happened somewhere in the US. A man (1)........... was accused of housebreaking appeared in court. He had put his arm through the window of a house and stolen some money (2)...... was lying on a table inside. The argument (3)..... the man's had committed the crime and not the man himself. 'You cannot punish a man for (6).....his arm has done,' said the lawyer. Now the judge in (7)...... court the man was appearing wanted to show how stupid the lawyer's argument was. Instead of finding the man guilty, he found the man's arm guilty and everyone laugh. But (9)..... the judge didn't know was that the man had an artificial arm. He took the arm off, gave it to the judge - (10).....could hardly believe his eyes - and walked out of the Test 24D Combine the two sentences into one. ▶ That man was Anna's brother. He just walked past. The man who just walked past was Anna's brother. 1 The plane was twenty-five years old. It crashed. The plane ...... twenty-five years old. 2 One day Tessa was ill in bed. Martin rang. The day \_\_\_\_\_\_ill in bed. 3 Our offices are in Queen Street. They are new. Our ......in Queen Street. 4 Some documents have been found. They were stolen from a car. The documents found. 5 That map is out of date. You were looking at it. The map ..... out of date. 6 The King's Theatre is in the centre of town. It dates from 1896. The King's in the centre of town. I A woman was terribly upset. Her dog was run over. terribly upset. The woman 8 Janet solved the puzzle. She did it before everyone else. Janet was the puzzle.

A man ......outside the building.

The house \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is empty now.

The talk......very interesting.

9 A man was standing outside the building. He was selling newspapers.

10 The talk was very interesting. Judy gave it.

II The house is empty now. I used to live there.

144 Conditionals (1)



### B Type 1: If we hurry, we'll catch the bus

IF-CLAUSE		MAIN CLAUSE	
if	Present simple		Will
<b>If</b> we	hurry,	we	'II catch the bus.
<b>If</b> we	miss it,	there	'II be another one.
<b>If</b> it	doesn't rain,	we	'II be having a picnic.
If I	don't practise my golf,	I	won't get any better.

The verb in the if-clause (e.g. hurry) is in the present simple, not the future.

NOT If we'll hurry, we'll catch the bus. But we can use will

in the if-clause when we make a request.

If you'll just wait a moment, I'll find someone to help you. (- Please wait a moment...)

We can use the present continuous (e.g. are doing) or the present perfect (e.g. have done) in the if-clause. If we're expecting visitors, the flat will need a good clean. If you've finished with the computer, I'll put it away.

The main clause often has will. But we can use other modal verbs (e.g. can). If you haven't got a television, you can't watch it, can you? If Henry jogs regularly, he might lose weight. If Matthew is going to a job interview, he should wear a tie.

The if-clause usually comes first, but it can come after the main clause. If I hear any news, I'll phone you./I'll phone you if I hear any news.

### C More uses of type 1

We can use type 1 conditionals in offers and suggestions.

If you need a ticket, I can get you one. If you feel like seeing the sights, we can take a bus tour. We can also use them in warnings and threats.

If you go on like this, you'll make yourself ill. If you don't apologize, I'll never speak to you again.

### D If you heat water, it boils

We sometimes use the present simple in both clauses.

If you heat water, it boils. If Daniel has any money, he spends it.

If you press this switch, the computer comes on.

This means that one thing always follows automatically from another.

Pressing the switch always results in the computer coming on.

### 1 Type 1 (A-C)

Read the conversation and then choose the correct forms.

Rachel: Have you heard about the pop festival?

Vicky: Yes, it's/it'll be good if Express are playing. They're a great band.

Rachel: Will you be able to go, Nick?

Nick: If (1) I ask/I'll ask my boss, he'll give me some time off work, I expect.

Vicky: How are we going to get there?

Rachel: Well, if (2) there are/there'll be enough people, we can hire a minibus.

Vicky: I won't be going if (3) it's/it'll be too expensive.

Rachel: It (4) isn't costing/won't cost much if we all (5) share/will share the cost.

Nick: If (6) I see/I'll see the others later on tonight, (7) I ask/I'll ask them if they want to go.

### 2 Type 1 (A-C)

Comment on the situations. Use *if*+ the present tense + *will/can*.

? It might rain. If it does, everyone can eat inside.

If it rains, everyone can eat inside.

? The children mustn't go near Nick's dog. It'll bite them. *If the children go near Nick's dog, it'll bite them.* 

- 1 Rachel might fail her driving test. But she can take it again.
- 2 United might lose. If they do, Tom will be upset.
- 3 The office may be closed. In that case Mark won't be able to get in.
- 4 Nick may arrive a bit early. If he does, he can help Tom to get things ready.
- 5 The party might go on all night. If it does, no one will want to do any work tomorrow.
- 6 Emma may miss the train. But she can get the next one.
- 7 Is Matthew going to enter the race? He'll probably win it.

### Present simple in both clauses (D)

Match the sentences and join them with if

▶	You lose your credit card.	I can't sleep.
1	You get promoted.	You get a warning letter.
2	I drink coffee late at night.	You have to ring the bank.
3	You don't pay the bill.	Your salary goes up.
4	I try to run fast.	The alarm goes off.
5	Someone enters the building.	I get out of breath.
▶	If you lose your credit card, you ha	ve to ring the bank.
1		
2		
3		

## 145 Conditionals (2)

#### A Introduction

Rachel: Would you like some cake, Jessica? Jessica: No thanks. If I ate cake, I'd get fat.

Rachel: But it's delicious.

Jessica: It looks delicious. **Ifl had** your figure, I'd eat the whole lot. I ate cake and / had your figure are imaginary or unreal situations.

Jessica isn't going to eat the cake, and she hasn't got a figure like Rachel's.

### B Type 2: If I ate cake, I'd get fat

IF-CLAUSE		MAI	N CLAUSE
if	Past simple		would
///	ate cake,	I	'd get fat.
If $l$	had your figure,	I	'd eat the whole lot.
<b>If</b> we	didn't have a car,	we	' <b>d</b> find it difficult to get about.
If Rachel	got up earlier,	she	wouldn't always be late.

Note the past simple (e.g. ate). We do not use would in the if-clause. NOT If I'd-ea^eake.

But we can use **would** in the if-clause when we make a request.

If you'd like to come this way, the doctor will see you now. (= Please come this way ...)

As well as the past simple we can use the past continuous (e.g. was doing) in the if-clause.

If Rachel was playing her stereo, it wouldn't be so quiet in here. In a type 2 if-clause we sometimes use were instead of was, especially in the clause if I were you.

If Rachel were playing her stereo, it wouldn't be so quiet in here.

If I were you, I'd ask a lawyer for some advice.

The main clause often has would. We can also use could or might.

If we had a calculator, we could work this out a lot quicker.

If Rachel worked harder, she **might** do even better at her studies.

The if-clause usually comes first, but it can come after the main clause.

If I knew, I'd tell you./I'd tell you **if** I knew.

### C Type 1 and type 2

Compare these examples.

Type 1: If you have a lie-down, you'll feel better, (see Unit 144B)

Type 2: *Ifl* had a million pounds, I'd probably buy a yacht.

The present tense **(have)** refers to a possible future action, something which may or may not happen. The past tense **(had)** refers to something unreal. *If I had a million pounds* means that I haven't really got a million pounds, but I am imagining that I have. Compare these examples.

Type 1: *If we take the car, we'll have to pay for parking.* 

Type 2: If we **took** the car, we'd have to pay for parking.

Here both sentences refer to a possible future action. But in the type 2 conditional, the action is less probable. *If we took the car may* mean that we have decided not to take it.

We can use type 2 conditionals in offers and suggestions.

If you needed a ticket, I could get you one.

If you felt like seeing the sights, we could take a bus tour. Type 2 is less direct than type 1 (Unit 144C). The speaker is less sure that you want to see the sights.

### Type 2 (A-B)

Comment on these situations. Use a type 2 conditional with would or could.

- ► Andrew is such a boring person because he works all the time. You know, if Andrew didn't work all the time, he wouldn't be such a boring person.
- ➤ You can't take a photo because you haven't got your camera. How annoying. // / had my camera, I could take a photo.
- You can't look the word up because you haven't got a dictionary. I'm sorry

You don't write to your friends because you're so busy.

I've got so much to do.....

3 You can't play tennis because your back is aching. It's a nuisance.

4 Claire won't marry Henry because she doesn't love him. Of course,

5 Nick can't find the way because he hasn't got a map. Nick's lost, but

David has so many accidents because he's so clumsy.

You know,....

### Type 1 and type 2 (A-C)

Complete the conversation. Put in the correct form of the verb. You may need to use will or would.

Matthew: I haven't forgotten your birthday, you know. If you like, (▶) I'll book (1 / book) a table for Thursday at our favourite restaurant. Emma: My birthday is on Wednesday, Matthew.

You're playing basketball then, aren't you? If you

cared for me, (1)...... (you / not / play) basketball on my birthday.

What's the difference? If (2)...... (we / go) out on Thursday, it'll be just Matthew:

the same. If (3).....(I / not / play), I'd be letting the team down.

Yes, I suppose (4)......(it / be) a disaster if you missed one game. Well, Emma: if (5)......(you / think) more of your friends than you do of me, you

can forget the whole thing.

I just don't understand you sometimes, Emma. Matthew:

If (6)......(you / think) about it, you'd understand. And 1 think Emma:

(7).....(it / be) better if we forgot all about my birthday.

Don't be silly, Emma. If you get into one of your bad moods, Matthew:

(8) .....(it / not / do) any good.

If you were interested in my feelings, (9) .......(I / not / get) into a bad Emma:

mood.

### Type 1 and type 2 (C)

What does the if-clause mean? Write a sentence with isn't or might.

If this room was tidy, I could find things.

The room isn't tidy.

If we're late tonight, we can get a taxi.

We might be late tonight.

- If the phone was working, I could call you. 1
- If it rains, can you bring the washing in?
- 3 If Mike was here, he'd know what to do.
- If this spoon was silver, it would be worth a lot.
- If Sarah calls, can you say I'll ring back?

### 146 Conditionals (3)

#### A Introduction

David: How was your camping holiday?
Mike: Well, it would have been all right

if it **hadn't rained** all the time. Harriet: If we'd **gone** two weeks earlier,

we'd **have** had better weather.



If it hadn't rained and if we'd gone two weeks earlier are imaginary situations in the past. It did rain, and they didn't go two weeks earlier.

### B Type 3: If we had gone earlier, we would have had better weather

IF-CLAUSE		MAIN CLAUSE	
if	Past perfect		would have
<i>If we</i>	'd <b>gone</b> earlier,	we	'd have had better weather.
If Matthew	had phoned her,	Emma	wouldn't have been so annoyed.
<b>If</b> you	hadn't made that mistake,	you	'd have passed your test.
If David	had been more careful,	he	wouldn't have fallen.

Note the verb in the past perfect (e.g. **had been). We do** not use **would** in the if-clause. NOT *If David would have been more careful*, *he would have-fallen*.

The main clause often has would have. We can also use could have or might have.

If I'd had my mobile yesterday, I could have contacted you.

We just caught the train. If we'd stopped to buy a paper, we might have missed it.

The short form 'd can be either had or would.

If you'd rung me, I'd have come to see you. (= If you had rung me, I would have come to see you.)

### C The use of type 3

We use type 3 conditionals to talk about things in the past happening differently from the way they really happened. This sometimes means criticizing people or pointing out their mistakes.

If you'd been a bit more careful, you wouldn't have cut yourself.

If Matthew had set his alarm clock, he wouldn't have overslept.

We can also use this structure to express regret about the past.

If I hadn't fallen ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.

### D Type 2 and type 3

Compare these examples.

Type 2: If you planned things properly, you wouldn't get into a mess. (You don't plan.)

Type 3: If you had planned things properly, you wouldn't have got into a mess. (You didn't plan.) We can mix types 2 and 3.

If you had planned things at the start, we wouldn't be in this mess now.

If you hadn't left all these dirty dishes, the place would look a bit tidier.

If Matthew was more sensible, he would have worn a suit to the interview.

If I didn't have all this work to do, I would have gone out for the day.

1	Type 3 (A-C)			
	Con	nplete the	conversation. Put in the correct form of the verb. Use the past perfect or would have.	
			d didn't play very well today.	
	Ton	n: We w	ere awful. But if Hacker (▶) had taken (take) that easy chance,	
			ve would have won (we / win).	
	Nicl		dn't deserve to win. It (1)	
			(lose).	
	Ton		er was dreadful. My grandmother (3) (score) if	
			(she / be) in that position.	
	Nicl		f Burley (5)(not / be) asleep, he (6)	
			give) a goal away.	
	Ton		nson (7) (not / be) injured when we needed him most,	
			(it/be) different.	
	Nick		)(we / beat) them if (10)(he / be) fit.	
		, (	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
2	Tyr	e 3 (A-C	')	
_				
	Comment on each situation using a type 3 conditional with <i>if.</i> Use <i>would have</i> , <i>could have</i> or <i>might have</i> . In a bookshop yesterday Daniel saw a book he really wanted. The only problem was that he didn't have			
		any mone	,	
			goes to concerts at the town hall, although not to every one. There was one on Saturday, bu	
	she didn't know about it. Rita might have gone to the concert if she had known about it.			
	On Sunday the guests had to have their lunch inside. Unfortunately it wasn't warm enough to have it			
	outside			
	2 There was a bomb scare last Tuesday. Sarah wanted to fly to Rome, but she wasn't able to. The airport			
	was closed			
	3 Laura has only met Nick once, and it's possible she wouldn't recognize him. He passed her yesterday,			
		but he had a crash-helmet on		
	4	Saran nas	been quite busy, and she hash t watered her plants for some time. As a result, they we died.	
	5	Nick likes	ice hockey, but he didn't have a ticket to the game last week, so unfortunately he wasn't able	
		to get m		
3	Tyr	a 2 and	type 3 (D)	
J				
		Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of the verb.		
			imple, the past perfect, would, or would have.	
			You look tired.	
		Harriet:	Well, if you hadn't woken (you / not / wake) me up in the middle of the night,	
			I wouldn't be (I / not be) so tired.	
			Is Trevor a practical person?	
		Laura:	Trevor? No, he isn't. If (he / be) practical,	
			(he / put) those shelves up a bit quicker. It took him ages.	
		Tom:	Why are you sitting in the dark?	
		David:	Let's just say that if(I / pay) my electricity bill last month,	
			(I / not be) in the dark now.	
		Matthew:	Why are you so angry with me? All I did yesterday was play basketball.	
		Emma:	If(you / love) me,	
			(you / not / leave) me here all alone on my birthday.	

# 147 Review of conditionals



There are three main types of conditional. Study the examples.

Type 1: if... the present simple ... will/can/might, etc

If we win today, we'll go to the top of the league. (We may win, or we may not.)

Type 2: if ... the past simple ... would/could/might

If Johnson was in the team, I'd feel more confident. (Johnson isn't in the team.)

Type 3: if ... the past perfect ... would have/could have/might have If Johnson had played, we'd have won. (Johnson didn't play.)

Here are some more examples with different verb forms.

If I'm going shopping, I'll need some money. If the disco **has** finished, we **might** be able to get some sleep.

You should stay in bed if you feel unwell. Type 2

If I didn't like this pudding, I wouldn't eat it.

If the video recorder was working, we could watch a film.

The alarm **might** go off if we **tried** to get in through a window.

Type 3 If we'd dropped the piano, it would have been a disaster.

If Vicky had come to the theme park with us last week, she might have enjoyed it.

We could have given you a lift if we'd known you were coming this way.

### B Other conditional sentences

Type 1

As well as the three main types, there are other types of conditional sentence. For example, we can use two present-tense verbs (see Unit 144D). If you ring this number, no one answers.

We can also use a present-tense verb and an imperative. If you need any help, just ask. If you drink, don't drive.

### We can use be going to.

If it's going to rain, I'd better take an umbrella.

If they try to cut down the trees, there's **going to** be a big protest.

We can mix types 2 and 3 (see Unit 146D).

If Matthew had booked a table, we wouldn't be standing here in a queue. If you **needed** help, you **should have** asked me.

# 147Exercises

### Types 1, 2 and 3 (A) Match the sentences and join them with *if*. Say what type they are. ► I went to bed earlier. I'll try to follow them. The twins had worn different clothes. You might not be warm enough. 2 You tell me what the instructions say. I wouldn't have bought it. People used public transport. I wouldn't sleep. 3 You don't wear a sweater. There'd be less pollution. 4 We could have told them apart. I hadn't seen the product advertised. $\blacktriangleright$ If I went to bed earlier, I wouldn't sleep. type 2 I 2 3 4 5 Types 1, 2 and 3 (A) Adam is a music student. He rents a room from Mr Day. Put in the correct forms. Can't you stop playing that trumpet? You're making an awful noise. Mr Day: Adam: Well, if (▶) *I don't practise* (I / not practise), I won't pass my exam. Mr Day: daytime, (2)......(I / not / hear) you because I'd be at work. If (3)......(you / tell) me about this trumpet when you first came here, nuisance. If (5) ...... (you / not / play) so loud, (6) .....(it / not / be) so bad. Adam: I'm sorry, but you can't play a trumpet quietly. Mr Day: (8) ...... (I / throw) you out long ago. If (9).....(you / go) on making this noise at night, (10) ...... (I / have) to complain to your college. 3 Conditionals (A-B) What might you say in these situations? Use a conditional sentence. ➤ You think Emma should book a seat on the train. The alternative is having to stand. If Emma doesn't book a seat on the train, she'll have to stand. You didn't know how unpopular lason was when you invited him to your party. Warn your friend not to put too many tins into the plastic bag or it'll break. 2 You haven't got a pen, so you can't write down the address. You should have started your project earlier. You're so far behind now. 4

6 The automatic result of the door opening is the fan coming on.

Your friend might need some help. If so, tell her to give you a ring.

5

# 148 If, when, unless and in case

# Present simple for the future

Look at these examples.

You'll be tired tomorrow if you stay up late. Tell me when the water boils.

I won't do anything unless you agree. Write the name down in case you forget it.

We use the present simple for the future after linking words such as **if**, **when**, **unless** and **in case** (see also Units 27 and 144B).

# B If or when?

If you hear any news, can you ring me immediately?

(You <u>might</u> hear some news.) *I'll probably go* for a walk later on **if** it stays fine. (It <u>might</u> stay fine.)

We use if for something that we think might happen.

We use **if** (not **when**) for something impossible or imaginary.

If I were you, I'd refuse.

When you hear some news, can you ring me immediately?(You will hear some news.) I'll make myself

(You <u>will</u> hear some news.) *I'll make myself* an omelette **when** *I* get home tonight.

(I <u>will</u> get home tonight.) We use **when** for something that we know will happen.

We can use either if or when in contexts where they mean 'every time'.

If you run, you use up energy.

When you run, you use up energy.

# C If and unless

If... not means the same as unless.

/ can't see **if** I don't wear glasses.

The doctor will be here **if** she isn't called to an emergency.

If you **can't** pay your bills, you'll have to leave. I wouldn't say that **if** I didn't believe it.

I can't see unless I wear glasses.

The doctor will be here **unless** she's called to an emergency.

Unless you can pay your bills, you'll have to leave. I wouldn't say that unless I believed it.

#### D In case

Look at these examples.

Take a sandwich with you in case you get hungry.

I'd better reserve a seat today **in case** the train is full tomorrow.

Laura took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.

We use in case to talk about doing something to avoid a possible problem later on.

(For American English, see page 381.)

Compare if and in case.

I'll bring in the washing if it rains. (= I'll bring it in at the time it starts raining.) I'll bring in the washing in case it rains. (= I'll bring it in now because it might rain later.)

# 148 Exercises

Jake:

# 1 If or when? (B) Look at the information in brackets and complete the sentences using if or when and a verb in the present simple. (I may see Tom tonight.) If I see Tom, I'll tell him the news. (Melanie is coming soon.) When Melanie comes, can you let her in, please? (The alarm will ring soon.) we all have to leave the building. 2 (The plan may not work.) ..... we'll have to think of something else. 2 If and unless (C) Complete the sentences using *unless* and the information in brackets. ► You won't get there in time *unless you hurry*, (if you don't hurry) I wouldn't have bought the picture .......(if I didn't like it) 3 If and unless (C) Which word makes more sense? Put in if or unless. Rachel will be pleased ij she passes her driving test. The bus won't stop *unless* you ring the bell. I can't read your letters ...... you type them. 1 2 Emma will be upset .......... she doesn't get the job. You can't go into the reception you've got a ticket. Don't bother to ring me ..... it's important. 4 In case (D) What could you say in these situations? Use in case. ➤ You think Vicky had better take a coat. It might get cold. You to Vicky: You'd better take a coat in case it gets cold. You think you and Mark had better book a table. The restaurant might be busy. You to Mark: ..... 2 You think Claire ought to insure her jewellery. It might get stolen. You to Claire: 3 You'll leave David your phone number. He might want to contact you. You to David: 5 If, when, unless and in case (B-D) Jake lives next door to Melanie. Complete their conversation. Put in if, when (x2), unless or in case. A man is delivering a washing-machine this morning, but I have to go to work. I won't be here Jake: Melanie: Oh, that's no problem.

# 149 Wish and if only



We can use **I wish** or **if only** to express a wish. Jessica wishes she was slimmer. **If only** is stronger and more emphatic than **wish.** 

We can use a clause with **if only** on its own, or we can add another clause.

If only I wasn't so fat. If only I wasn't so fat, I would be able to get into these trousers.

### B Wish... would

Look at these examples.

/ wish you would put those shelves up soon.

Tom wishes his neighbours wouldn't make so much noise.

If only you'd try to keep the place tidy. Wish/If only ... would expresses a wish for something to happen, or to stop happening.

# C Wish ... the past

Look at these examples.

/ wish I lived in a big city. It's so boring in the country.

We all wish we had more money, don't we? If only I was taller, I might be better at basketball. Wish and if only with a past-tense verb express a wish for things to be different.

We can use were instead of was (see also Unit 145B).

If only I were taller, I might be better at basketball.

We cannot use would in these sentences, but we can use could.

/ wish I could sing (but I can't). I feel so helpless. If only I could speak the language.

Compare wish with would and with the past.

I wish something exciting would happen. (I wish for an action in the future.) I wish my life was more interesting. (My life isn't interesting.)

# D Wish ... the past perfect

We use wish and if only with the past perfect to express a wish about the past. / wish you had told me about the dance. I would have gone. I wish I'd got up earlier. I'm behind with everything today. I wish you hadn't lost that photo. It was a really good one. If only David had been a bit more careful, he'd have been all right.

We do not use **would have** for the past, but we can use **could have**. / wish I **could have** been at the wedding, but I was in New York.

# 149 Exercises

Wish ... would (B)

# What might you say in these situations? Begin I wish ... to someone who never answers your e-mails I wish you'd answer my e-mails. to someone who makes rude remarks about you / wish you wouldn't make rude remarks about me. to someone who won't hurry up 2 to someone who never does the washing-up 3 to someone who isn't telling you the whole story to someone who blows cigarette smoke in your face 5 to someone who won't tell you what he's thinking 2 Wish ... the past (C) Vicky is fed up. What is she saying? Use / wish or if only. ► (She can't think straight.) *I wish I could think straight*. (She is so tired.) 1 (She gets headaches.) (Her work isn't going well.) 4 (She can't concentrate.) 5 (Life is so complicated.) **3 Wish** ... the past perfect (D) Complete the sentences. Use these words: accepted, caught, found, played, saved, stayed ▶ I spent all my money. I wish now that / had saved it. I missed the train. I really wish ..... Rita left the party early. Nick wishes ..... Emma refused the offer. But her parents wish ..... 4 I looked everywhere for the key. 1 wish ..... The injured player could only watch. He wishes ..... 4 Wish and if only (B-D) Complete the conversation. Claire: Oh, Henry. You're giving me another present. It's very sweet of you, but I wish (▶)yoM *wouldn't give me* so many presents. Henry: Claire, I've been thinking. I shouldn't have asked you to marry me. I wish now that (1) ..... Now you're talking nonsense. I wish (2)..., Henry. Claire: Henry: I'm not a young man, am I? Of course I wish (3)..... Claire: Why couldn't we have met twenty years ago? I wish (5) ......you then. Henry: Henry, twenty years ago I was just starting school. Claire:

# TEST 25 Conditionals and wish (Units 144-149)

### Test 25A

Complete the news report about a protest against a new road. Put in the correct form of the verbs. Sometimes you need *will* or *would*.

Yesterday protesters managed to hold up work on the Oldbury bypass. Protest leader Alison Compton defended the action by members of the Green World group. 'If we don't protest, soon (**b**) there'll be (there / be) no countryside left,' she told reporters. The bypass is now well behind schedule, ago. 'If these fields (2)...... (disappear), we'll never see them again,' said Ms Compton. we wouldn't need new roads. If the motor car had never existed, the world (4)......(be) a more pleasant place today.' But many people in Oldbury want their new bypass. 'If (5)...... (they / not build) it soon, the traffic jams in the town will get worse,' said Asif Mohammed, whose house is beside the busy A34. 'We just can't leave things as they are. If things remained the same, people's health (6)..... (suffer) even more from all the pollution here. It's terrible. If we don't get the become impossible to sell this house because of the traffic. The government waited too long. If (10)......(they / do) something sooner, there would be less traffic today' And the protest is making the new road even more expensive. 'If this goes on, (11) ...... (there / not / be) enough money left to finish the road,' says the Transport Minister. Test 25B Look at the answers below and write the correct answer in each space. ► A: There's always something going wrong with this car. B: If you had any sense, you'd have sold it long ago. a) be selling b) have sold c) sell d) sold A: It's a pity the lake wasn't frozen yesterday. B: Yes, it is. If it ..... frozen, we could have gone skating. a) had been b) was c) would be d) would have been A: Haven't you got enough money for a holiday? B: Oh yes. I've got some saved up ...... I suddenly need it. a) if b) in case c) that d) unless A: What are you going to do next year? B: I wish I ..... the answer to that question. a) knew b) know c) could know d) would know A: These figures are too complicated to work out in your head. B: Yes, if ..... we had a calculator. a) better b) only c) really d) that A: What are you doing later this afternoon? B: Oh, ..... the game finishes, I'll go home, I expect. a) if b) in case c) unless d) when A: Do you think I should take the job? B: You shouldn't do anything...... you think it's the right thing to do. a) if b) in case c) unless d) when

### Test 25C

Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Begin with //... ► I haven't got a key, so I can't get in. If I had a key, I could get in.

- 1 You talk about football and I'm going to be very bored.
- 2 The baby didn't cry, so we had a good sleep.
- 3 You may want a chat, so just give me a ring.
- 4 Nigel hasn't got satellite TV, so he can't watch the game.
- 5 You go away and I'll miss you.
- 6 I'm not rich or I'd have given up working long ago.
- 7 We should have bought that picture five years ago because it would be quite valuable now.
- 8 Throw a stone into water and it sinks.

### Test 25 D

Write the sentences correctly.

- ► There aren't any eggs. If-we have some-eggs I couldmake an omelette. // we had some eggs, I could make an omelette.
- 1 The weather doesn't look very good. If it'll rain I'll stay here.
- 2 The programme is starting soon. Can you tell me if it starts?
- 3 Could you just listen? 1 didn't need to repeat things all the time if you listened.
- 4 It's a simple law of science, if air will get-warmer it rises.
- 5 There's only one key. I'd-better-get another one made if I-lose it.
- 6 We were really late. I wish we left home earlier.
- 7 I hope the parcel comes today, If it won't arrilve-today, we'll-have-to complain.
- 8 That radio is on loud. I wish someone turns it down.
- 9 We must do something. Until-we act quickly it'll-be too late.
- 10 Of course Martin was angry. But he hadn't been angry if you hadn't damaged his stereo

# 150 But, although and in spite of

### **A** Introduction

This is a news report about Zedco.

This year's figures show that Zedco has become profitable and is now doing well **in spite of** its recent problems. **Although** Chief Executive Barry Douglas has not been in charge for long, there has already been a dramatic upturn. **Even though** there have been very few job losses at the company, Douglas has managed to reduce costs. Nothing is certain of course, **but** Zedco can now look forward to a brighter future.

The linking words in spite of, although, etc express the idea of a contrast.

For example, there is a contrast between Zedco's profits now and its recent problems.

# B But and although

We can join two sentences with but.

The cafe was crowded, but we found a table. Nick has a car, but he doesn't often drive it.

We can also use although.

**Although** the cafe was crowded, we found a table. **Although** Nick has a car, he doesn't often drive it. The clause with **although** can come at the end.

We found a table, **although** the cafe was crowded.

# C Though and even though

Though is informal. It means the same as although.

Though/Although I liked the sweater, I decided not to buy it.

We can also use **though** at the end of a sentence.

/ liked the sweater. I decided not to buy it, though.

Even though is stronger, more emphatic than although.

Matthew looked quite fresh, even though he'd been playing squash.

Even though you dislike Jessica, you should try to be nice to her.

# D In spite of and despite

We use **in spite of** before a noun or before the ing-form of a verb.

Kitty wanted to report on the war in spite of the danger.

*Mark went on working in spite of feeling unwell.* We use **despite** in exactly the same way as **in spite of** and with the same meaning.

She wanted to go **despite** the danger. He went on working **despite** feeling unwell.

# E In spite of and although

IN SPITE OF ALTHOUGH

I'm no better in spite of the pills/in spite of taking the pills.

Laura wants to fly **in spite of** her **fear/in spite of** feeling afraid. NOT <del>in spite</del>

of she feels afraid

I'm no better, **although** I've taken the pills.

Laura wants to fly, although she feels afraid.

We can use **in spite of the fact (that)** in the same way as **although.** *I'm* no better **in spite of the fact that** *I've taken the pills.* 

> page 372 Punctuation

# 150 Exercises

### 1 But (B)

Complete each sentence with but and one of these clauses:

it didn't break, it's really quite modern, no one laughed, she turned it down

- ▶ I dropped the dish, *but it didn't break*.
- 1 The house looks old,
- 2 Emma was offered a job,
- 3 The joke was funny,

# 2 Although (B)

Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 1 using although.

► Although I dropped the dish, it didn't break.

1 2

3

# 3 In spite of and although (E)

Put in although or in spite of.

- ► My sister got the job, *although* she didn't expect to.
- 1.....I told the absolute truth, no one would believe me.
- 2 Daniel forgot his passport......having it on his list.
- 3.....it was sunny, it was quite a cold day.
- 4 The goods were never delivered......the promise we had received.

### 4 But, although, even though, in spite of and despite (A-E)

### 5 Although, even though, in spite of and despite (A-E)

Join each pair of sentences. Be careful where you put the words in brackets.

- ► Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health, (although) Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.
- ► I couldn't sleep. I was tired, (despite) / couldn't sleep despite being tired.
- 1 Trevor didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (even though)
- 2 Matthew doesn't know any French. It was one of his school subjects, (although)
- 3 Henry's friend is a millionaire. He hates spending money, (despite)
- 4 We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour, (in spite of)

# 151 To, in order to, so that and for



We use **to, in order to, so that** and **for** to express purpose, to say why we do things. The purpose of stopping is to buy a newspaper.

### В То

We can use the to-infinitive to express purpose.

Melanie was hurrying to catch her bus. Most people work to earn money. I rang to find out the train times. We went to the library to get some books.

### C In order to and so as to

In order to and so as to are more formal than to.

The government took these measures in order to reduce crime.

The staff are working at weekends so as to complete the project in time. We can use the negative in order not to or so as not to.

Melanie was hurrying in order not to miss her bus.

The staff are working at weekends so as **not to** delay the project any further. We cannot use **not to** on its own.

She was hurrying to catch her bus. NOT She was hurrying not to miss her bus.

### D So that

Look at this example.

I'll post the card today so that it gets there on Daniel's birthday. After so that we use a subject and verb, e.g. it gets. We often use will or can for a present purpose and would or could for a past purpose.

*I'll* give you a map so that you can find/you'll find the way all right.

I gave Nick a map so that he could find/would be able to find the way all right.

# E To or for?

We can use **for** with a noun to say why we do something.

The whole family have gone out **for** a bike ride. Why don't you come over **for** coffee? To talk about the purpose of a <u>thing</u>, we use either a to-infinitive or **for** + an ing-form.

This heater is to keep/for keeping the plants warm in winter.

This machine is used to cut/for cutting plastic. But we do not use for

+ an ing-form to talk about a specific action.

I put the heater on to keep the plants warm, NOT I put the heater on for keeping the plants warm.

# **Exercises**

### 1 To(B)

Complete each sentence using to and these words:

cash a cheque, finance her studies, go to sleep, hear the football results, look smart

- ▶ Laura went to the bank to cash a cheque.
- 1 Mrs Miles sometimes takes a pill ......
- 2 Tom turned on the radio ......
- 3 Just this once Mike is going to wear a suit......
- 4 Jessica is borrowing some money ........

### 2 In order to and so as to (C)

Alan works for Zedco. He wants to succeed in business, so he is listening to a talk on the subject. Here is what the speaker is showing the audience.

	ACTION	PURPOSE
•	study the market	be more successful
1	get to work earlier	impress the boss
2	work harder	achieve more
3	take risks	be a winner
4	think positively	not miss any opportunities

Say what Alan is going to do. Use either *in order to* or *so as to*. Both are correct.

- ► He's going to study the market in order to be more successful.

  1
  2
  3
  4
- 3 To, for and so that (B, D, E)

Comment on what each person says. Use the word in brackets.

- ? Ilona: I'm learning English. I want to get a better job. (to) *llona is learning English to get a better job.*
- ? Claude: I study encyclopedias. Then I can answer quiz questions, (so that) Claude studies encyclopedias so that he can answer quiz questions.
- ? Vicky: I'm saving up. I'm planning a holiday, (for) Vicky is saving up for a holiday.
- 1 Nick: I keep a dog. It guards the house, (to)
- 2 David: I'm going to be very careful. Then I won't have an accident, (so that)
- 3 Jessica: I'm going on a diet. I want to lose weight, (to)
- 4 Trevor: I often switch off the heating. It saves money, (to)
- 5 Sarah: I had to go to Birmingham. I had a business meeting, (for)
- 6 Emma: I wore boots because I didn't want my feet to get wet. (so that)

# 152 Review of linking words

### A Time words

```
Look at these examples with when, while, as soon as, etc.
```

My leg hurts when I walk.

(when I walk = at the time I walk)

Mark heard the news on the radio as/while he was driving home.

(as/while he was driving = during the time he was driving)

We're going to tidy up after everyone's gone.

(after everyone's gone = later than everyone goes)

As soon as Laura had left the house, it started to rain.

(as soon as she had left = immediately after she had left)

/ must get to the post office **before** it closes.

(before it closes = earlier than it closes)

You have to wait until the light changes to green.

(until it changes = up to the time it changes)

David hasn't been able to work since he broke his leg.

(since he broke his leg — from the time he broke his leg) Remember that we use the present simple for future time after when, etc. We say before it closes, until it changes, etc (see Unit 27).

### B If, unless and in case

We use these words to express a condition (see Unit 148).

Rachel might buy a car if she passes her test. (She may or may not pass her test.)

W to the pass her test.)

You won't learn to use a keyboard properly **unless** you practise.

(*unless* you practise = **if** you don't practise)

We'd better allow plenty of time for the journey in case there are traffic hold-ups. (in case there are hold-ups = because there may be hold-ups)

# C But, although and in spite of

We use these words to express the idea of a contrast (see Unit 150).

The jacket was nice, **but** it was too small for me.

Although the forecast said it would rain, it turned out to be a beautiful day. We still haven't got a sponsor in spite of writing/in spite of the fact that we've written to dozens of companies.

### D Because and so

We use **because** to express the reason for something and **so** to express the result of something. / turned the heating on **because** it was cold. Henry started jogging **because** his doctor told him to. It was cold, **so** I turned the heating on. The stereo didn't work, **so** Vicky took it back to the shop.

### E To, in order to and so that

We use these words to express purpose (see Unit 151). Sarah went to Birmingham to meet a client. We're having to borrow money in order to pay our bills. I took the bread out of the freezer so that it would defrost.

# 152 Exercises

# Time words (A)

Arlene Black's new CD is now available in the shops. Write the titles of her songs.

Use these words instead of the ones in brackets: as soon as, before, since, when, while, until

- ► Think of me (during the time) I'm away Think of me while I'm away
- 1 I'll love you (up to the day) I die
- 2 I hear music (at the time) I see you
- 3 Come back (earlier than) I forget you
- 4 I've been sad (from the time) you left me
- 5 I fell in love (immediately after) we met

### Linking words (B-E)

Put in these words: although, because, but, if, in case, in order to, in spite of so, so that, unless ▶ Olivia booked a babysitter *so that* she could go out for the evening. 1 it was late, Nick didn't seem in a hurry to leave. 2 They put video cameras in shops ...... stop people stealing things. We decided not to go out for a meal...... we were simply too tired. 3 4 ..... you're ready, we can start now. Our room was very small, ..... we didn't really mind. 5 No one was watching the television, I switched it off. 6 7 8 having absolutely no talent, Guy became a popular TV personality and chat show host. I think my answers are right, but can I just check them with yours .....

### Linking words (A-E)

I've made a mistake?

Complete the conversation. Choose the correct linking word.

Daniel: What are you going to do (▶) <u>after/befefe</u> you finish college, Rachel?

Rachel: Vicky and I will be off to the States (1) <u>as soon as/in spite of</u> this term is over. We're going to travel around, and we may go to Canada (2) so that/to see some friends of Vicky's. We've been thinking about nothing else (3) <u>since/until</u> we bought our plane tickets. Daniel: It sounds great. How are you getting around in the States? Rachel: By Greyhound bus. I know it takes longer than flying, (4) <u>but/in</u> spite of it'll be more interesting.

We fly to LA and then we're taking the bus to New York. We're going to buy a special ticket (5) in order/so that we can go anywhere we like on the way.

Daniel: Yes, it's better by bus (6) because/unless you can stop off at interesting places.

Rachel: Of course the bus will probably be tiring.

Daniel: Maybe you should take plenty of money (7) <u>if/in case</u> you decide to fly instead. Rachel: I'll have to be careful with my money. I'm hoping to stay out there (8) <u>unless/until</u> I have to come

back and start my job in September. I'm really looking forward to the trip, (9) <u>although/because</u> I'll be sad to leave here. And what about you? What are you doing this summer? Daniel: I'd go away somewhere (10) <u>if/in case</u> I could afford to. But I'm working. I've got no money,

(11) <u>because/so</u> I'll have to earn some. Rachel: Have you really got no money (12) <u>although/in spite</u> of the fact that you've had a part-time job

this term? Daniel: You know me, Rachel. If I've got money, I spend it.

# 153 Links across sentences

### A Introduction

Rita: You go to United's games, don't you, Tom? You watch them on TV, too. Tom: Well, I'm a fan. It's wonderful when United win.

On the other hand, it's terrible when they lose.

Rita: Why not have a change? **After all,** there are other things in life. Tom: Such as? Rita:

There's music, for example. Why don't you go to a concert some time? Tom:

But I don't like classical music.

Look at the words and phrases **too**, **on the other hand**, **after all** and **for example**. They all make a link with an earlier sentence. When Rita says *There's musk*, **for example**, she is giving an example of *other things in life*, which she has already mentioned.



# B Words and phrases meaning 'and', 'but' and 'so'

'And': Sarah often works late. She works on Saturdays sometimes, **too/as well**. Sarah often works late. She **also** works on Saturdays sometimes. Arlene Black has a yacht and a helicopter. **In addition**, she has five cars. I'm not inviting my cousin — I don't like him. **Besides**, he didn't invite me to his party. The buildings are in a very poor condition. **Furthermore**, there is no money to repair them.

'But': I haven't been very well recently. Still, it could be worse.

Nick is in love with Rita. Rita, however, is in love with Tom.

Everyone thought that Emma should accept the offer. Nevertheless/All the same, she turned it down.

I don't want to be late for the meeting. On the other hand, I don't want to get there too early.

'So': The holiday had been a complete disaster. We **therefore** decided to fly home early if we could. Someone switched the freezer off. **Consequently/As a result,** all the food was spoilt.

Some of these words and phrases are rather formal and typical of written English. They are **consequently**, **furthermore**, **however**, **in addition**, **nevertheless** and **therefore**.

### C Other linking words and phrases

Rephrasing: Jessica isn't the most popular person around here. In other words, no one likes her.

Correcting yourself: We play basketball. I mean/Or rather volleyball.

Contradicting: Sarah isn't lazy. **On the contrary**, she works extremely hard.

Picking up a topic: I like Natasha. I went on holiday with her. ~ Talking of holidays, what are your

plans for this year?

Changing the subject: It's a lovely day, isn't it? ~ Yes, beautiful. By **the way**, have you seen Melanie?

Supporting a statement: We don't need to drive to the club, do we? After all, it's only about

200 metres from here. Dismissing something: I'm not sure a thank-you letter is

really necessary. Anyway, I can't be bothered to

write one.

Giving an example: Yes, I do think Henry is rude. He shouts at waiters, for example/for instance.

# 153 Exercises

# 1 Words and phrases meaning 'and', 'but' and 'so' (B)

What do the underlined words mean? Write and, but or so.

- Daniel's suitcase got left behind. He got it back in the end, <u>however</u>. = but

  I'm too tired to go for a walk. <u>Besides</u>, it looks like rain. =
- The road was under water. The police therefore closed it to traffic.
- 3 We took lots of photos. We videoed the speeches <u>as well</u>. =
- 4 It was a terrible journey. <u>Still</u>, we got there safely in the end.
   5 A strike by air traffic controllers has begun. Many flights have
- consequently been cancelled.
   The company has spent millions on computers. Nevertheless, it does
- The company has spent millions on computers. Nevertheless, it does not seem to have become more efficient.

# 2 Links across sentences (B-C)

Complete this letter to a local newspaper. Choose the correct word or phrase.

There's been a lot of talk about a 'spaceship' seen over the town at about eleven o'clock on Friday night. (**>**) As a result/Nevertheless, hundreds of enthusiastic sky-watchers have arrived in town, hoping that it will return. But was it really a spaceship? About twenty people say they saw it. (1)

Consequently/Furthermore, there is a photograph which is supposed to show the object in the sky. We know, (2) however/as a result, that trick photos are easy to produce. (3) By the way/In other words, it is almost certainly a fake. But it would be wrong to treat the whole thing as a joke. (4) All the same/On the contrary, all such reports should be carefully investigated. (5) After all/Anyway, the arrival of a spacecraft from another world would indeed be a serious matter. But usually there is a more simple explanation. Many supposed spaceships turn out to be weather balloons, (6) for example/or rather. A similar mistake probably lies behind the belief that someone from another world really did pay us a visit last Friday.

### 3 Links across sentences (C)

What would you say? Give your answer using a linking word or phrase.

 Support Emma's opinion: she might not get another offer.

Emma: You're right. Maybe I should accept the offer.

After all, you might not get another one.

 Rephrase what Rita is saying: she doesn't want to see Nick.

Rita: I don't know if I'll have time to see Nick.

2 Change the subject and ask what the time is.

Tom: I hope Wayne Johnson will be fit to play for United on Saturday.

3 Dismiss the idea of buying a sweater: they haven't got one in your

Daniel: I'm not sure if that sweater really suits you.

4 Mention Sarah as an example.

Claire: Lots of our friends have mobile phones, don't they?

5 Contradict what Nick says.

Nick: Sorry. I persuaded you to see that film and you hated it, didn't you?

# Appendix 1. Word formation

### A Introduction

Look at these examples.

Lots of people believe that God exists.

Lots of people believe in the existence of God.

Exist is a verb and existence is a noun. The word existence has two parts: exist and ence. We call ence a 'suffix'. We add it to end of the verb exist to form a noun.

We can also use suffixes to form verbs, adjectives and adverbs.

The system is being **modernized**. (= made modern)

I grew up in an **industrial** town. (= a town where there is a lot of industry)

The man was behaving **strangely**. (= in a strange way)

There are many different suffixes, such as **ence**, **ize**, **al**, **ly**, **tion** and **ment**. Some of them can be used to form many different words. For example, there are a lot of nouns ending in **tion: action, education, explanation, information, instruction,** etc. There are no exact rules about which suffix you can add to which word. Adding a suffix can also involve other changes to the form of a word. *industry* —> *industrial* repeat —> repetition science —> scientist.

Now look at these examples.

They're going to play the match on Wednesday.

They're going to **replay** the match on Wednesday.

We can add **re** to the beginning of the verb **play.** We call **re** a 'prefix'. A prefix adds something to the meaning of a word. The verb **replay** means 'play again'. We can also add prefixes to nouns and adjectives. See G and H.

### B Noun suffixes

ment the prospects for employment reach an agreement ion/tion/sion take part in a discussion increase steel production ask for permission ation/ition an **invitation** to a party people's **opposition** to the idea ence/ance a preference for houses rather than flats a distance of ten miles no certainty that we shall succeed ty/ity keep the door locked for **security** people's willingness to help ness recovering from an illness enter a **building** reach an understanding ing

### C Nouns for people

er/or the driver of the car a newspaper editor
ist a place full of tourists a scientist doing an experiment
ant/ent an assistant to help with my work students at the university
an/ian Republicans and Democrats the electrician rewiring the house
ee an employee of the company (= someone employed)

notes for examinees (= people taking an exam)

We also use **er** for things, especially machines.

a hair-dryer a food **mixer** a cassette **player** 

### D Verb suffixes

Many verbs are formed by adding **ize** or **ise** to an adjective. Some are formed by adding **en. ize**European safety rules are being **standardized**. They **privatized** the company. **en**They're **widening** the road here. Meeting you has really **brightened** my day.

### E Adjective suffixes

Most of these adjectives are formed from nouns.

al a professional musician Britain's coastal waters

ic a metallic sound a scientific inquiry

ive an informative guidebook an offer exclusive to our readers

**ful** a **successful** career feeling **hopeful** about the future

**less** feeling **hopeless** about the future (= without hope) **powerless** to do anything about it

ous guilty of dangerous driving luxurious holiday apartments

y a rocky path the salty taste of sea water ly > 109A a friendly smile a very lively person

able/ible an acceptable error (= an error that can be accepted) a comprehensible explanation

a valuable painting (= worth a lot of money) a comfortable chair

### F Adverbs

ly>108 He looked around nervously. I moved here quite recently.

# G Some common prefixes

anti (= against) anti-roads protestors anti-government troops inter (= between) an international match interstate highways in the US the minibar in your hotel room mini (= small) a minicomputer mis (= wrongly) mishear what someone says miscalculate the amount a multimillionaire multi (= many) multicoloured lights over (= too much) too fond of **overeating** overcrowded roads post (= after) the post-war world a postgraduate student pre (— before) **pre-match** entertainment in **prehistoric** times re (— again) reread a favourite book a reunion of old friends semi (= half) semi-skilled work sitting in a semicircle a supertanker carrying oil super (= big) a huge new superstore under (= too little) thin and underweight underpaid work

### H Negative prefixes

We can also use a prefix to form an opposite. For example, the opposite of **clear** is **unclear** (= not clear). **Un** is the most common negative prefix.

dis a dishonest way to behave can't help being disorganized dislike the idea disappear from the scene a disadvantage of the plan

il (+1) an illegal drug an illiberal attitude im (+ m or p) an impossible task an impolite question

in an indirect route the invisible man a great injustice

ir (+ r) an irregular shape an irrelevant remark non non-alcoholic drinks a non-stop flight

un an uncomfortable chair an unusual event an undated letter uncertain what to do unpack your suitcase unzip the bag

# Appendix 2: The spelling of endings

### A Plural nouns

We add s to a noun to form the plural.

a car -> two cars a name --> some names

1 After s, sh, ch and x we add es /iz/.

glass -> glasses dish --> dishes match --> matches box --> boxes

2 A few nouns ending in o have es.

heroes potatoes tomatoes

But most have s.

discos kilos photos pianos radios stereos studios zoos

3 When a noun ends in a consonant + y, the y changes to ies.

penny —> pennies story —> stories We do not change y after a vowel. day —> days journey —> journeys

# B The present simple s ending

In the third person singular, a present simple verb ends in s. (See Unit 5B.)

I know —> he knows I work —> she works

- 1 After s, sh, ch and x we add es /iz/.

  pass -> passes wash --> washes

  catch --> catches mix --> mixes
- 2 Some verbs ending in o have es. go --> goes do --> does
- When a verb ends in a consonant + y, the y changes to ies.

hurry --> hurries copy --> copies We do not change y after a vowel. stay --> stays enjoy --> enjoys

### C The ed ending

Most verbs have **ed** in the past tense. (See Unit 8B.) Most past participles also end in **ed**. (See Unit 1 IB.)

look --> looked call -> called

- 1 If the verb ends in e, we add d.

  hope -> hoped save --> saved
- When a verb ends in a consonant + y, the y changes to ied.

hurry —> hurried copy —> copied

3 Sometimes we double a final consonant. This happens when a one-syllable verb ends with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. *beg, plan*.

beg —> begged plan —> planned For more details about doubling, see G.

# D The ing-form

1 We normally leave out **e** when we add **ing** to a verb.

take —> taking drive —> driving

But we keep a double e before ing.

see —> seeing agree —> agreeing

When a verb ends in ie, it changes to ying. die -> dying lie -> lying But y does not change. hurry -> hurrying

3 Sometimes we double a final consonant. This happens when a one-syllable verb ends with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. win, put.

win —> winning put --> putting
For more details about doubling, see G.

### E Adverbs

We form many adverbs from an adjective + ly. slow -> slowly calm -> calmly

1 We do not leave out e before ly.

safe —> safely strange --> strangely

But there are a few exceptions.

due —> duly true —> truly

due —> duly true —> truly whole —> wholly

2 When an adjective ends in a consonant + y, the y changes to ily.

angry —> angrily happy —> happily An exception is shy --> shyly.

3 When an adjective ends in a consonant + le, the e changes to y.

*probable* —> *probably* sensible —> sensibly

4 When an adjective ends in ic, we add ally. automatic —> automatically romantic --> romantically But there is one exception. public —> publicly

# F The comparison of adjectives

We form the comparative and superlative of short adjectives with er and est. See Unit 110.

old ---> older, oldest quick ---> quicker, quickest

- 1 If the adjective ends in e, we add r and st.

  late —> later, latest fine —> finer, finest
- When an adjective ends in a consonant + y, the y changes to ier or iest.

heavy —> heavier, heaviest lucky —> luckier, luckiest

3 Sometimes we double a final consonant. This happens when a one-syllable adjective ends with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. *big*, *flat*.

*big* —> *bigger*, *biggest* flat —> flatter, flattest For more details about doubling, see G.

# G The doubling of consonants

1 When we add ed, ing, er or est to a word, we sometimes double a final consonant. This happens when a one-syllable word ends with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. stop, get, thin sad.

stop —> stopped get —> getting thin —> thinner sad —> saddest

2 We do not double y, w or x.

play —> played new —> newest fax —> faxing

We do not double when there are two consonants.

ask —> asking short —> shortest rich —> richer

And we do not double when there are two vowels.

seem —> seemed shout—> shouting fair —> fairest

3 The rule about doubling is also true for words of more than one syllable (e.g. *permit* = *per* + *mit*), but only if the last syllable is stressed.

per'mit —> per'mitted

prefer —> preferring

We do not usually double a consonant when the syllable is unstressed.

'open —> opened 'enter—> entering An exception is that in British English 1 is usually doubled, even if the syllable is unstressed.

travel ~> travelled (US: traveled)

# **Appendix 3: Punctuation**

# A Full stop (.), question mark (?) and exclamation mark (!)

A sentence ends with one of these punctuation marks.

Full stop: It's cold today. The office was closed. Please be careful Question mark: Who's that? Did you see the show? Could you wait, please?

Exclamation mark: *Oh, no! I don't believe it!* 

In the US a full stop is called a 'period'.

### B Semi-colon (;)

We can use a semi-colon between two separate statements which are linked in meaning. *Melanie is a very kind person; she visits David in hospital every day.*We could also use a full stop here.

### C Colon (:)

We can use a colon before an explanation or before a list. Vicky felt nervous: she hated the dark. There wasn't much in the fridge: a couple of sausages, some butter, half a bottle of milk.

### D Dash (-)

A dash is rather informal. It is sometimes used instead of a colon or a semi-colon. *I'm having a great time - there's lots to do here. Vicky felt nervous - she hated the dark.* 

# E Comma (,)

We often use a comma when we link two statements with and, but or or.

Daniel was tired, and his feet were hurting. It's a really good camera, but I can't afford it. Note the two subjects in each sentence: Daniel... his feet and It... I. When there is only one subject, we do not use a comma.

Daniel sat down and took his shoes off.

We can also use a comma when a sentence has a linking word like when or although.

When the office is busy, Sarah has to work late.

For commas with relative clauses, see Unit 141.

Sometimes a comma can separate off an adverb or a phrase.

Sarah, unfortunately, has to work late. On busy days, Sarah has to work late.

Here the commas separate off on busy days and unfortunately.

The rules about commas are not very exact. In general, commas are more likely around longer phrases. With a short phrase there is often no comma. *On busy days Sarah has to work late.*Sometimes she has to work late.

It is less usual to separate off something at the end of the sentence.

Sarah has to work late when the office is busy. She stayed late to get the work done. We do not usually put a comma before **to** expressing purpose.

We also use commas in a list of more than two. The last two are linked by **and**, often without a comma. *I went out with Rachel, Vicky, Emma and Matthew.* 

# F Quotation marks (")

We put direct speech in quotation marks.

Laura said, 'You haven't put those shelves up yet.' 'I haven't had time,' replied Trevor. We normally use a comma to separate the direct speech from the rest of the sentence. The comma comes before the quotation mark. Quotation marks are also called 'quotes' or 'inverted commas'.

Double quotation marks are sometimes used. *Laura* said, "You haven't put those shelves up yet."

We can put quotation marks around titles.

Do you watch that American comedy series called 'Roseanne'? We often use quotation marks when we mention a word or phrase.

What does 'punctuation' mean? Rap music is also called 'hip hop'.

# G Hyphen (-)

We sometimes use hyphens in these structures.

Compound noun: eating ice-cream

Compound expression before a noun: *an oven-ready meal* Noun formed from a phrasal verb: *ready for take-off* Noun

+ ing-form: interested in rock-climbing

Before the last word of a compound number: a hundred and twenty-six people

After some prefixes: anti-aircraft guns Letter + noun: sending an e-mail

The rules about hyphens are not very exact. For example, you may see a compound noun written as **phonecard**, **phone-card** or **phone card**. Hyphens are not very frequent in British English, and they are used even less in American English. If you are unsure, it is usually safer to write two separate words.

# H Apostrophe (')

Look at these examples.

Today we're going for a drive in the country. Everyone is looking at Nick's car.

We use an apostrophe (') in short forms, when there is a missing letter, e.g. we're (= we are). See Unit 32. We also use an apostrophe with s to form the possessive of a noun, e.g. Nick's car. See Unit 93.

### I Capital letters

There are two capital letters (big letters) in this sentence.

The boss said I could leave early. We use a capital letter at the beginning of a sentence and for the word I.

We also use a capital letter to begin the names of people, places, companies, etc.

Mark and Sarah New Orleans the High Street Somerset House General Motors This includes the names of books, films, magazines, etc. All the important words start with a capital letter.

The Spy Who Loved Me Four Weddings and a Funeral Newsweek

We also use a capital letter for days of the week, months of the year, holidays and festivals, historical times, nationalities and most abbreviations.

Monday August Easter the New Year the Industrial Revolution some Italian wine the UN (= the United Nations)

# Appendix 5: American English

The differences between British and American English are mainly matters of pronunciation and vocabulary. There are also a few spelling differences such as British **centre** and **colour** and American **center** and **color**. There are some grammatical differences. Although they are not very great, those points that are most relevant to learners of English are explained here.

### A Seem, look, etc

Compare these examples.

BRITISH

In British English there can be a noun (e.g. pilot) after appear, feel, look, seem and sound. She seemed (to be) a good pilot.

It looks (to be) a lovely evening.

I felt a fool.

#### AMERICAN

Americans do not say *She seemed a good pilot*. They use **to be** or **like** after these verbs.

She seemed to be a good pilot.
OR She seemed like a good pilot.
It looks to be a lovely evening.
OR It looks like a lovely evening.
I felt like a fool.

### B Present perfect and past simple (Units 11-15)

The British use the present perfect for recent actions, and especially with **just**, **already** and **yet**. *Bob has washed the dishes*, *look*.

We've already eaten our lunch.

I've just seen Elaine.

Have you corrected your work yet?

The British normally use the present perfect with **ever** and **never**, not the past simple.

Have you ever played cricket?

The child has never seen snow before.

Americans can use either the present perfect or the past simple in these sentences.

Bob has washed the dishes, look.
OR Bob washed the dishes, look.
We've already eaten our lunch.
OR We already ate our lunch.
I've just seen Elaine.
OR I just saw Elaine.

Have you corrected your work yet? OR Did you correct your work yet?

Americans normally use the past simple with **ever** and **never**, but the present perfect is possible.

**Did** you ever **play** baseball? OR **Have** you ever **played** baseball? The child never **saw** snow before. OR The child **has** never **seen** snow before.

# C Shall (Unit 23D)

The British use **will** for the future, but they can also use **shall** in the first person.

I will/I shall be here tomorrow. We will/We shall contact you. Americans do not normally use **shall** for the future

I will be here tomorrow. We will contact you. The British use shall to make an offer.

**Shall** I make the coffee?

The British can use **Shall we** ...? for a suggestion.

**Shall** we go for a walk?

Americans normally use **should**. *Should I make the coffee?* 

Americans do not normally use **shall** in suggestions.

How about a walk?

Would you like to take a walk?

# D Got and gotten

Both have and have got are used in Britain and in the US.

He has a lot of money./He's got a lot of money. (= He is rich.)

The British do not use gotten.

He's **made** a lot of money from his business activities.

Your driving has got better.

In the US, have gotten expresses an action.

He's gotten/made a lot of money from his business activities.

Americans also use gotten meaning 'become'.

Your driving has gotten better.

# E Negatives and questions with **have** (Unit 31)

In Britain there are two different structures.

I haven't (got) enough time.
OR I don't have enough time.

Has Carol got a computer?

OR **Does** Carol have a computer?

Americans normally use the auxiliary **do.** *I don't have enough time.* 

**Does** Carol have a computer?

In the past tense, **did** is usual in both countries. *We didn't have tickets*.

# **F** Emphatic do (Unit 33C)

The British can use **do** with an imperative for emphasis.

Have a piece of cake. OR **Do** have a piece of cake. Do with an imperative is less common in the US.

Have a piece of cake.

### G Do for an action

The British can use **do** to refer to an action already mentioned.

I don't practise as often as I should (do). You'd better take your pill. ~ I already have (done). Americans do not use do in this way.

I don't practice as often as I should. You'd better take your pill.  $\sim$  I already have.

### H Question tags (Unit 42)

Both the British and the Americans can use question tags when talking about facts.

Blackpool is in Lancashire, isn't it?

Las Vegas is in Nevada, isn't it?

But in general Americans use tags much less often than the British. They do not use tags to persuade or to argue. A sentence like *You aren't listening to me, are you?* is British but not American. But Americans often use **right?** and **OK?** as tags.

I'll bring the luggage in, shall I?

I'll bring the baggage in, OK?

# I Can't and mustn't (Unit 46C)

The British use **can't** to say that something is impossible.

I rang, but there's no reply. They **can't** be at home

Americans can also use **mustn't** to say that something is impossible.

I called, but there's no reply. They **can't** be home./They **mustn't** be home.

# J Needn't and don't need to (Unit 48)

The British can use either form.

You needn't see the inspector.

OR You don't need to see the inspector.

Americans do not normally use **needn't.** *You don't need to see the inspector.* 

# K Group nouns (Unit 81B)

In Britain a group noun can usually take either a singular or a plural verb.

The crowd was/were getting restless. Sweden plays/play Germany tomorrow. In the US a group noun takes a singular verb, The crowd was getting restless. Sweden plays Germany tomorrow.

## L The (Unit 86C and 87A)

The British use **the** with a musical instrument. / can play **the** piano.

The British say **in hospital.** *My sister is still in hospital.* 

Americans can leave out **the**. *I can play piano/play the piano.* 

Americans say in the hospital. *My sister is still in the hospital.* 

### M Numbers

The British use **and** between **hundred** and the rest of the number.

six hundred **and** twenty

Americans can leave out **and.**six hundred twenty
OR six hundred **and** twenty

### N Dates

There are a number of different ways of writing and saying dates, but these are the most common.

BRITISH AMERICAN

23 June June 23

'the twenty-third of June'
'June twenty-third'
'June twenty-third'

The British write 23.6.98, and Americans write 6.23.98.

# 0 You and one (Unit 98C)

The British use **you** for people in general, including the speaker. In more formal English they can use **one.** 

You/One can't be too careful You can't be too careful.

# P Somewhere and someplace (Unit 103)

In informal American English, **everyplace**, **someplace**, **anyplace** and **no place** can be used as well as **everywhere**, **somewhere**, etc.

Let's find somewhere to eat.

Let's find somewhere/someplace to eat.

Americans use you for people in general. One is

# Q Adjectives and adverbs (Unit 108)

In informal speech we can sometimes use an adjective form instead of an adverb. Americans do this more than the British.

We had some **really** nice weather. We had some **really** nice/some **real** nice

weather.

unusual,

It **certainly** doesn't make things any easier. It certainly/sure doesn't make things any easier.

### R Prepositions (Units 118-126)

There are some differences in prepositions.

BRITISH AMERICAN

round/around the villagearound the villagetowards/toward the westtoward the west

looking out of the windowlooking out the window/out of the windowoutside the townoutside the town/outside of the town

In American English there is a special use of **through** as a preposition of time.

He'll be on the road **from** Tuesday **to/till**He'll be on the road (from) Tuesday **through**Friday.

He'll be on the road (from) Tuesday **through** 

They will stay in Brighton **until** the end of They will stay in Miami **through** April.

Note the prepositions after different.

BRITISH

This cup is different from/to the others.

AMERICAN

This cup is different from/than the others.

Compare these expressions.

BRITISH

in Bond Street
at the weekend, at weekends
stay at home
a player in the team
ten minutes past four
twenty to seven
write to me
talk to someone
meet someone

AMERICAN

on Fifth Avenue
on the weekend, on weekends
stay home
a player on the team
ten minutes past/after four
twenty to/of seven
write me/write to me
talk to/with someone
meet with someone

# S In case (Unit 148D)

In case can have different meanings.

BRITISH

Take an umbrella **in** case it rains. (= because it may rain)

AMERICAN

In case you're sick, you should call the office. (= if you're sick)

### T Go and...

Americans can leave out **and** from this structure.

I'll go and buy the tickets.

I'll go buy/I'll go and buy the tickets.

# U The subjunctive

We can use expressions like **I suggest that ...** and **It's important that** ... to talk about what we want to happen. Look at these examples.

BRITISH

Tim's parents have suggested that he **gets** a job/that he **should** get a job.

It's important that everything goes/everything should go according to plan.

The British normally use the present simple or **should.** (They use the subjunctive only in formal English.)

AMERICAN

Tim's parents have suggested that he get a job. It's important that everything **go** according to plan.

Americans normally use a form called the 'subjunctive', e.g. **get, go.** 

# V Irregular verbs

In the past tense some verbs can have either an irregular **t** ending or the regular **ed** ending. These verbs are **burn**, **learn**, **smell**, **spell**, **spill** and **spoil**.

The British prefer the **t** ending, although **ed** is also possible.

Americans normally use the ed ending,

They burnt/burned the old sofa. You've spelt/spelled this word wrong.

They **burned** the old sofa. You've **spelled** this word wrong.

But we say e.g. a slice of burnt toast in both British and American English.

In Britain the verbs dream, lean and leap can be regular, or they can have a t ending.

I dreamt/dreamed about you.

I dreamed about you.

These three forms ending in **t** have the vowel sound /e/. For example, **dreamt** is pronounced /dremt/, and **dreamed** is pronounced /dri:md/.

The verb **dive** is regular in Britain but can be irregular in the US.

Craig dived into the water.

Craig dived/dove into the water.

# Appendix 6: Irregular verbs

arise         arose         arisen         find         found         found           be         was, were         been         flee         fled         fled         fled           bear         bore         bore         fly         fleed         fled         fled           beat         beat         beaten         forbid         forbad(e)         forbidden           become         become         been         forgot         forgot forgave         forgotten           bed         bet         bet         forget         forgot forgave         forgove         goven	VERB	PAST TENSE	PAST/PASSIVE PARTICIPLE	VERB	PAST TENSE	PAST/PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
be         was, were been         flee         fled fled flow flow flow flow flow flow flow flow	arise	arose	arisen	find	found	found
beat         borne         fly         flew         flown           beat         beaten         forbid         forbad(e)         forbidden           become         became         become         become         beaten         berthiden           bedin         beat         bergin         forget         forgot         forgotten           bet         freeze         forget         forgot         forgoten           bet         freeze         forget         forgoten         forgoten           bind         betted         betted         betted         poten         gotten (us)           bind         bound         betted         poten         gotten (us)         gotten (us)           bite         bit         bitten         give         gove         given         goven           bite         bit         grind         ground         ground         ground           bleed         bled         bled         grow         grow         grown           blow         bled         blown         hang         hung         hung           break         broke         broken         have         had         had           bring						
beat         beat         beaten         forbid         forbad(e)         forbidden           become         become         become         been         been         been         forget         forgot         forgoten           bend         bent         bent         forgive         forgave         forgiven           bet         bet         freeze         froze         frozen           bind         bound         bound         betted           bind         bound         bound         goven         gave         given           bind         bound         bound         grown         ground         ground           bit         grind         ground         ground         ground           bleed         bled         grow         grown         grown           blow         blown         hang         hung         hung           break         broke         broken         have         had         had         had           break         broke         broadcast         hit						
become         became         become         Forget         forgot forgot forgote         forgote forgove         forgote forgove         forgove forgove         forgove forgove         forgove forgove         forgove forgove         governowne           bite         bit         bitte         go         were         governowne         power         governowne         power         power<	beat			•		
begin         began         begun         forget         forgot         forgote         forgoten         gotten				101.014	101044(0)	1010144011
bend         bent         bent         freeze         frozze         frozze         frozze           bet         bet         freeze         frozze         frozze         frozze           bind         bound         betted         petted         got         gotten (us)           bind         bound         bitten         give         gave         given           both         bitten         grow         ground         ground           bleed         bled         grow         grown         grown           bleed         bled         grown         grown         grown           bleed         bled         grown         ground         ground           bled         bled         grown         grown         grown           bled         bled         bled         grown         grown           bled         bled         bled         had         had           broadcast         broadcast         hit				forget	forgot	forgotten
bet         bet betted         freeze get         froze got         frozen got           bind         bound         bound         potted           bit         bitten         give gow         gave         given gow           bit         grind         ground         ground           bleed         bled         grow         grew         grown           bleed         bled         grow         grew         grown           bleed         bled         grow         grew         grown           bleed         bled         grow         grown         grown           bleed         bled         grown         hung         hung           broadcast         broken         have         had         had           bread         bred         hear         heard         heard           broadcast         brode         hid	-	_	_		_	
bind bound bound bound bite bit bitten grow grow grow grow grow blew blew blown break broke broken broken broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast burnt caught caught caught caught caren crept did dealt dearm dramm dra				-	_	_
bind         bound         bound         gotten (us)           bite         bit biten         give         gave         given           bit         grind         ground         ground           bleed         bled         grow         grow         grown           bleed         bled         grow         grown         grown           bleed         bled         grow         grown         grown           bleed         bled         grown         grown         grown           bled         bled         had         had         had           bread         bread         hear         had         had           bread         bread         hear         had         had           bread         bread         hear         had         hid         hit         hut	bet	oct	001			
bind         bound         bound         give         gave         given           bit         bit then         go         went         gone           ble         bit         grind         ground         ground           bleed         bled         grow         grew         grown           blowd         blew         blown         hang         hung         hung           break         broke         broken         have         had         had           break         broke         hear         heard         heard <t< th=""><th></th><th></th><th>hetted</th><th>Sec</th><th>501</th><th>801</th></t<>			hetted	Sec	501	801
bite         bit         give         gave         given           bit         grind         ground         ground           bled         bled         grow         grew         grown           blow         bled         bled         grow         grew         grown           blow         blew         blown         hang         hung         hung           bread         broke         broken         have         had         had           bread         bred         hear         heard         heard           bread         bred         hear         heard         heard           broadcast         brought         hide         hid         hide         hid         hide         hid         hide         hi	bind	bound				gotten (us)
bleed bled bled grind ground ground bleed blew blown hang hung hung break broke broken have had had had breed bring brought brought hide hid hid hidden broadcast broadcast broadcast hit hit hit build built built hold held held held burn burnt burned keep kept kept burned kneel knee				give	gave	- , ,
bleed bled bled prow grow grown blow blew blow blow how hang hung hung hung break broke broken have had had had breed brought brought blow blow broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast but hit hit build built built burnt hurt hurt hurt hurt burned keep kept kept burned keep kept kept burned kneel knelt knelt burst burst know knew known buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led choose chose chose chose lean leant leant come cost cost cost cost cot cut cut leaped dealt dearned draw drew drawn let let let let draw drawn let dramk dramk drunk drive howe meen the met meant meant feled feld feld feld meet met meet feel felt felt mow mowed mown mowed mown.	bitt	Oit	Oitten	~	-	-
bleed         bled         bled         grow         grew         grown           blow         blown         hang         hung         hung           break         broke         broken         have         had         had           bread         broad         hear         heard         heard           bring         brought         broadcast         hid         hid         hidden           bring         broadcast         broadcast         hit         hit         hit         hit           build         built         built         hold         held         held           burl         burnt         hurt         hurt         hurt         hurt         hurt           burnt         burnt         kneel         knelt         knelt           burnt         burnt         kneel         knelt         knelt           burst         burst         know         knew         known           burst         burst         know         knew         known           buy         bought         burst         know         knew         known           buy         bought         burst         know         knew			hit	U		•
blow blew blown hang hung hung break broke broken have had had had breed bred bred hear heard heard bring brought brought hide hid hidden broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast hit hit hit hit build built built hold held held held hurn burnt burned keep kept kept burned knee know knew known buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come cost cost cost cost crept crept leap leaped deal dealt dealt dealt dealt dig duy duy learned learned learned learned learned learned drawn let let let let dream dreamd dreamd dreamd dreamd dreamd dramed fell fighted field mean meant meant feled feld feld meet met met feled feld feld feld meet met met feled feld feld feld meet met meant meant meant feled feld feld feld meet met met meant meant meant meant feled feld feld feld feld feld feld meet met met meant meant meant meant feled feld feld feld feld feld feld fel	hlood	bled			_	=
break         broke         broken         have         had         had           breed         bread         hear         heard         heard           bring         brought         brought         hide         hid         hid         hidden           broadcast         broadcast         broadcast         hit         hit <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th>_</th> <th>-</th>					_	-
breed bred bred bred hear heard heard bring brought brought brought hide hid hid hidden broadcast broadcast broadcast hit hit hit hit build built built hold held held held burn burnt burnt hurt hurt hurt hurt burned keep kept kept burned kneel kneel kneel kneelt kneelt burst burst know knew known buy bought caught caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come came cost cost cost cost cost cost cost leaned dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dowe (us) learn learnt learnt left draw drew drawn let let let let dramed dramamed dramamed dramamed dramamed dramamed dramamed dramamed dramamed dr					=	_
bring brought brought hide hid hiden broadcast hit hit hit hit build built built hold held held held burn burnt burnt hurt hurt hurt hurt burned keep kept kept burned kneel knelt knelt knelt burst burst know knew known buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant leaned cost cost cost cost cost cost cost crept crept leap leapt leapt leaped deal dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt learned learned dive dived dived dived learned learned learned learned dove (us) leave left left dram dreamt dreamt dreamt lie lay lain dreamed drove driven lose lost lost lost leat fell fell fallen mean make made feel felt felt felt felt felt felt fel						
broadcast broadcast broadcast hit hit hit build built built built hold held held burn burnt burnt hurt hurt hurt hurt hurs burned keep kept kept burned kneel knelt knelt burst burst burst know knew known buy bought caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come cost cost cost cost cost cost cot cut cut cut cut cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt learnt dive dived dived done lend lent left left dramw drew drawn let let let dramw dramd dreamt dreamt dramk drank drunk drank drunk drank drank drank driven lose feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown lose feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown in meant meant feed feel felt felt mow mowed mown in mown in mowed in mown in meant meant meant meant meant meant meant meant feed feel felt felt mow mowed in mown in mown in mowed in mown in mown in mown in mown in mowed in mown in mown in mowed in mown in mow						
build built built hold held held burn burnt burnt hurt hurt hurt hurt burned keep kept kept burned kneel kneel kneel known burst burst know knew known buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come leaned cost cost cost leaped deal dealt dealt dealt leap leapt leapt cut cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt dive dived dived learned learned dove (us) leave left left do did done lend lent lent draw drew drawn let let let dramd dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk drive drove driven lose eat ate eaten make made made fell felt felt mow mowed mown		_	_			
burn burnt burnt burnt hurt hurt hurt burned keep kept kept burned kneel kneel kneel kneel known buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chose chosen lean leant leant come cost cost cost cost crept crept leap leapt leaped deal deal dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dealt dig dived dived dived drew drawn let let let let dramm dreamt dreamd dramk drunk drank drunk drowe driven lose lost lost lost eat fell fell fell fallen mean meant meant feed feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown let met feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown let met feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown						
burned keep kept kept burned kneel knelt knelt burst burst burst know knew known buy bought caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come leaned cost cost cost cost creep crept crept leap leapt leapt cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt dive dived dived learn learnt learnt draw drew drawn let let let draw dreamt dreamt lie lay lain dramed dramed light lit lit drink drank drunk drive drove driven lose eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feed fed fed meet move						
burst       burned       kneel       knelt       knew         buy       bought       bought       lay       laid       laid         catch       caught       caught       lead       led       led         choose       chose       chosen       lean       leant       leant         come       came       come       leaned       leaned         cost       cost       cost       leaned         creep       crept       crept       leap       leapt       leapt         cut       cut       cut       leaped       leaped       leaped         deal       dealt       learnt       learnt       learnt       learnt         dig       dived       learnt       learnt       learnt       learnt         dive       dived       learnt       learnt       learnt       learnt         dow       did       done       leave       left       left         draw       drew       drawn       let       let       let         dream       dreamt       dreamt       light       lit       lit         drink       drank       drunk       lighted       light	burn	burnt				
burst burst burst burst know knew known buy bought bought lay laid laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant leant come came come lean leant leant leant leaned creep crept crept crept leap leapt leaped deal dealt dealt dealt leared leaned leaned dig dug dug learn learnt learnt dive dived dived leared learned learned learned learned drawn drew drawn let let let let dream dreamed dreamt dreamt dreamt dreamt dramk drank drunk drunk lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell felt felt mow mowed mown lowen lowen mowed mown let feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown lowen mowed laid meant meant meant meant feed felt felt felt mow mowed mown lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen mowed mown lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen mowed mown lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen mowed mown lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen lowen mowed mown lowen			0.000000	-	•	_
buy bought bought lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come leaned cost cost cost leaped creep crept crept leap leapt leapet cut cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt dive dived dived leave left left do did done lend lent lent draw drew drawn let let let dreamed dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk drive drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed fed meet move	14	14				
catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leant leant leant come came come cost cost cost leaped leap leapt leapt leapt cut cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt learnt dive dived dived leave left left left left do did done lend lent let let let dream dreamt dreamt dreamt dreamed drawn light lift lift lift drink drank drunk drunk lighted lighted dread dived drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made fall felt felt mow mowed mown						
choose chose chosen lean leant leant come came come cost cost cost cost cost crept crept leap leapt leapt cut cut cut cut leaped dig dug dug learn learnt learnt dive dived dove (us) leave left left draw drew drawn let let let let dream dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed drawn lie lay lain dreamed drawk drunk drunk drunk drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made fell felt felt met met feed fed fed fed meet met met met feel felt felt felt mow mowed mown		_	_			
come came cost cost cost leaned creep crept crept leap leapt leapt leaped deal dealt dealt dealt learnd dive dived done lend lent lent draw drew drawn let dreamed drawh dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk drawh lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed fed meet mow mowed mown		-				
cost cost cost cost leaned creep crept crept leap leapt leapt cut cut cut dealt dealt leaped dig dug dug dived learned learned learned learned learned dove (us) leave left left do draw drew drawn let let let let dream dreamed dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made fall felt felt mow mowed mown				lean	leant	
creep crept crept cut cut cut cut cut cut leaped deal dealt dealt dealt dealt learn learnt learnt dive dived dived dived lend lent lent draw drew drawn let let let dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed drawed drawn light lit lit drink drank drank drunk drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made fall feld feld feld meet met feel felt felt mow mowed mown let met felt felt met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown						
cut       cut       leaped         deal       dealt       learn       learnt       learnt         dig       dug       dug       learn       learnt       learnt         dive       dived       learned       learned       learned         do       did       done       lend       lent       lent         draw       drew       drawn       let       let       let         dream       dreamt       dreamt       lie       lay       lain         dreamed       dreamed       light       lit       lit       lit         drink       drank       drunk       lose       lost       lost         drive       drove       driven       lose       lost       lost         eat       ate       eaten       make       made       made         fall       fell       fallen       mean       meant       meant         feed       fed       meet       met       met         feel       felt       felt       mow       mowed       mown				laam	100#4	
deal       dealt       dealt       learn       learnt       learnt         dive       dived       dived       learned       learned       learned         do       did       done       lend       lent       lent         draw       drew       drawn       let       let       let         dream       dreamt       dreamt       lie       lay       lain         dreamed       dreamed       light       lit       lit         drink       drank       drunk       lose       lost       lost         drive       drove       driven       lose       lost       made         fall       fell       fallen       mean       meant       meant         feed       fed       feed       meet       met       met         feel       felt       felt       mow       mowed       mown	-			<b>теар</b>	теарі	
digdugduglearnlearntlearntdivediveddivedleaveleftleftdodiddonelendlentlentdrawdrewdrawnletletletdreamdreamtdreamtlielaylaindreameddreamedlightlitlitdrinkdrankdrunklightedlighteddrivedrovedrivenloselostlosteatateeatenmakemademadefallfellfallenmeanmeantmeantfeedfedfedmeetmetmetfeelfeltfeltmowmowedmown						
dive dived dived learned learned dove (us) leave left left  do did done lend lent lent draw drew drawn let let let dream dreamt dreamt lie lay lain dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk lighted lighted drive drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown				la a sum	laamet	-
dove (us) leave left left  do did done lend lent lent  draw drew drawn let let let  dream dreamed dreamed light lit lit  drink drank drunk lighted lighted  drive drove driven lose lost lost  eat ate eaten make made made  fall fell fallen mean meant meant  feed fed fed meet met met  dove (us) leave left left  left left  left left  left left  left  left  left  left  left  left  left  let  le	_	-	-	iearn		
dodiddonelendlentlentdrawdrewdrawnletletletdreamdreamtdreamtlielaylaindreameddreamedlightlitlitdrinkdrankdrunklightedlighteddrivedrovedrivenloselostlosteatateeatenmakemademadefallfellfallenmeanmeantmeantfeedfedfedmeetmetmetfeelfeltfeltmowmowedmown	dive	dived		Lagrage		
draw     drew     drawn     let     let     let       dream     dreamt     dreamt     lie     lay     lain       dreamed     dreamed     light     lit     lit       drink     drank     drunk     lighted     lighted       drive     drove     driven     lose     lost     lost       eat     ate     eaten     make     made     made       fall     fell     fallen     mean     meant     meant       feed     fed     meet     met     met       feel     felt     felt     mow     mowed     mown	_					
dreamdreamtdreamtlielaylaindreameddreamedlightlitlitdrinkdrankdrunklightedlighteddrivedrovedrivenloselostlosteatateeatenmakemademadefallfellfallenmeanmeantmeantfeedfedmeetmetmetfeelfeltfeltmowmowedmown						
dreamed dreamed light lit lit drink drank drunk drive drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown						
drink drank drunk lighted lighted drive drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown	dream				-	
drive drove driven lose lost lost eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met fell mow mown				light		
eat ate eaten make made made fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown				•		
fall fell fallen mean meant meant feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown		drove				
feed fed fed meet met met feel felt felt mow mowed mown						
feel felt felt mow mowed mown						
1011						
<b>fight</b> fought fought mowed	feel		felt	mow	mowed	
	fight	fought	fought			mowed

VERB	PAST TE	NSE PAST/PASSIVE	VERB
nav	paid	PARTICIPLE paid	stand
pay put	pata put	put	steal
read	read	read	stick
ride	rode	ridden	sting
ring			stink
rise	rang rose	rung risen	SIIIK
run	ran	run	stride
	said	said	strike
say see	saw	seen	swear
seek		sought	
sell	sought sold	sold	sweep swim
send	sent	sent	
			swing take
set	set	set	
sew	sewed	sewn	teach
		anno d	tear
ale alea	-11-	sewed	tell
shake	shook	shaken	think
shine	shone	shone	throw
shoot	shot	shot	tread
show	showed	shown	understand
		1 1	wake
	1 1	showed	
shrink	shrank	shrunk	wear
		shrunk	weave
shut	shut	shut	
sing	sang	sung	weep
sink	sank	sunk	win
sit	sat	sat	wind
sleep	slept	slept	write
slide	slid	slid	
smell	smelt	smelt	The verbs in the
		smelled	have a prefix,
_		smelled	foretell - fore
speak	spoke	spoken	
speed	sped	sped	A few verbs ha
		speeded	
		speeded	VERB PF
spell	spelt	spelt	be I a
		spelled	<b>do</b> he
_		spelled	go he
spend	spent	spent	have he
spill	spilt	spilt	say he
		spilled	· ·
		spilled	For burnt/bur
spin	spun	spun	and American
spit	spat	spat	page 378.
split	split	split	
spoil	spoilt	spoilt	
	spoiled	spoiled	
spread	spread	spread	
spring	sprang	sprung	

		PARTICIPLE
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
		stunk
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
	waked	waked
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
	weaved	weaved
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
write	wrote	written

PAST TENSE

PAST/PASSIVE

The verbs in this list are also irregular when they have a prefix, e.g. overtake - overtook - overtaken, foretell - foretold - foretold.

A few verbs have irregular present simple forms:

VERB	PRESENT SIMPLE
be	I am; you/we/they are; he/she/it is
do	he/she/it does
go	he/she/it goes
have	he/she/it has
sav	he/she/it savs

For **burnt/burned**, **dreamt/dreamed**, etc in British and American English see page 382. For **gotten** see page 378.

# Key to the starting test

The number after the answer tells you which unit of the book has information and practice on that grammar point.

	1	
35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63	c) b)	49,53 54 55,56 57 58 60,62 61,62 64 65 66 68 70 72 73 74 76,77 78 80 81 83,84 86 87 89 90 91 92 94 95
64 65	d) a)	99 100, 101
66	b)	100, 101
67	c)	103
68	a)	105

```
69
           106
     b)
70
     a)
           108
71
     d)
           109
72
     b)
           110,111
73
     d)
           112
74
     b)
           113
75
     c)
           114
76
     d)
           115
77
     c)
           118
78
     d)
           119
     c)
           120
80
     c)
           121
81
     a)
           123
82
           124, 125
     c)
83
     d)
           126, 127
84
           128-130
     d)
85
     d)
           131
86
           132
     c)
87
     a)
           133
88
     c)
           134
89
     d)
           136
90
     d)
           137
91
           139
     b)
92
     c)
           140
93
     C)
           141,142
94
           143
     b)
95
           144,147
     a)
96
           145, 147
     b)
97
           146,147
     d)
98
     d)
           149
99
     d)
           150
100 d)
           151
```

# Key to the exercises

### Unit 1

- 1 1 determiner 8 preposition 2 linking word verb 3 pronoun 10 adverb adverb 4 11 determiner 5 12 adjective pronoun verb 13 linking word adjective 14 noun
- 2 Verb: is, loves Noun: Claire, cafe

Adjective: wonderful, old, romantic Adverb: madly, unfortunately, rather Preposition: of, for, at Determiner: a, their, some Pronoun: He, her, they Linking word: and, **but**, so

3 verb 6 verb 2 7 noun verb 3 adjective 8 noun 4 9 verb adjective 5 noun 10 verb

#### Unit 2

- 1 1 subject 4 adverbial 2 verb 5 object 3 complement 6 complement
- 2 1 e) 2 a) 3 c) 4 d)
- 3 1 Tom likes football.
  - 2 David had an accident.
  - 3 We moved the piano.
  - 4 Harriet is a tall woman.
  - 5 Everyone sat on the floor.
  - 6 Mike's friends gave him some help.
- 4 1 also, with several young people
  - 2 first, in 1994
  - 3 naturally, without help
  - 4 fortunately, from the National Lottery

#### Unit 3

- 1 David gave Melanie a sweater.
  - 2 Laura gave Trevor a scarf.
  - 3 Emma gave Matthew a tennis racket.
  - 4 Henry gave Claire a necklace.
- 2 1 sold her bike to her sister.
  - 2 told the joke to all his friends.
  - 3 gave her neighbour some help.
  - 4 wrote her teacher a letter.
- 3 1 for 2 to 3 to 4 for 5 for 6 to

- 4 1 them to the bottle bank.
  - 2 me a job.
  - 3 them to the police.
    - you my umbrella.

#### Unit 4

- 1 1 They're/They are playing basketball.
  - 2 She's/She is taking a photo.
  - 3 He's/He is painting a picture.
  - They're/They are carrying a parcel.
- 1 are trying
- 5 We aren't spending
- 2 are you finding 3 is helping
- 6 It isn't taking7 are you waiting
- 4 We're/We are
- 8 I'm/I am correcting
- getting
- 3 1 it's/it is raining.
  - 2 I'm/I am working.
  - 3 you're/you are sitting on my coat.
  - 4 I'm/I am writing an important letter.
  - 5 I'm/I am getting/feeling better.

#### Unit 5

1	1	a feeling	5	a thought
	2	a repeated action	6	a feeling
	3	a fact	7	a repeated action
	4	a fact	8	a thought
2	1	doorn't angole	6	dan't laak

- 2 1 doesn't speak 6 don't look
  - 2 walk 7 doesn't work 3 needs 8 don't like
  - 3 needs 8 don't 1 4 love 9 wins
  - 4 love 9 wins 5 doesn't eat 10 don't own
- 3 1 I go 8 does it cost 2 comes 9 I don't know
- 2 comes 9 I don't know
  3 we travel 10 that doesn't matter
  - 4 don't you come 11 I don't want
  - 5 doesn't make 12 Does that annoy
  - 6 do you take 13 it doesn't annoy 7 I love 14 find

	_		
1	1	He's/He is talking	8 You know
	2	I think	9 1 give
	3	they're/they are	10 she gives
		discussing	11 She
		lives	

- 4 Are you looking 12 It saves
  5 Do you know 13 I agree
- 6 works 14 I'm/I am wasting
- 7 She doesn't work

- 1 It's/It is snowing, It's/It is coming
  - 2 I start, I'm/I am starting
  - 3 I'm/I am going, I drive
  - 4 rises, we're/we are travelling
  - 5 I'm/I am writing, I promise
  - 6 I want, I'm/I am saving
- 1 she always takes
  - 2 She's/She is always missing
  - 3 do you always go
  - 4 They're/They are always arguing.

1	1	state	4	action
	2	action	5	state

- 3 state
- 1 I think 5 you're having you're thinking 2 I have 6 3 it didn't fit 7 I come 4 I see 8 It weighed
- 1 are being 4 're/are 3
  - 2 's/is 5 's being/is being
  - 3 're being/are being
- 1 And I've still got a chance to win.
  - 2 It's too expensive to buy.
  - 3 It uses so much petrol.
  - 4 I think it's going to be perfect for me.
  - 5 I've never wanted to change it.

#### Unit 8

- 1 She swam in the sea.
  - 2 She had a picnic.
  - 3 She played volleyball.
  - 4 She went out dancing.
- 1 7 arrived were 2 8 fought started 9 brought 3 saw 4 called 10 entered 11 found 5 tried
  - 6 was
- 1 We didn't try 5 I didn't like 2 did you see 6 did Sarah enjoy 3 I didn't know 7 I didn't want
  - 4 did you go

### Unit 9

- 1 were watching television
  - were dancing in the street
  - was driving his taxi
  - 4 was writing an essay
- 1 were you doing I was going
  - 2 I was taking 5 You weren't looking
  - 3 She was coming 6 you were going

- 11 was making phone calls all evening. 3
  - 2 I was waiting in the rain for half an hour.
  - 3 I was making sandwiches all afternoon.
  - 4 I was sitting in a traffic jam for two hours.
  - 5 My neighbour was playing loud music all night.

#### Unit 10

- 1 He sat down on a chair while I was painting it. 1
  - As he was running for a bus, he collided with a
  - His hair caught fire when he was cooking chips. 3
  - 4 When he was holding a beautiful vase, he suddenly
  - He was sitting in the garden when a wasp stung him on the nose.
- 2 We lost were playing 1
  - 7 I was working 2 it came
  - 3 was coming 8 I lost
  - 4 went 9 I got
  - did 5 fell 10
- The train was waiting when we arrived at the 3
  - I was reading a library book when I found a £10 note in it.
  - 3 Sarah had an electric shock when she touched the
  - When the doors opened, the crowd rushed in.
  - When the campers woke, they saw that the sun was shining.

#### Unit 11

- 1 She's/She has repaired it.
  - 2 I've/I have opened the window.
  - 3 They've/They have arrived.
  - 4 He's/He has moved it.
  - We've/We have watched all these.
- 1 He's/He has broken his leg. 2
  - 2 They've/They have built a house.
  - 3 They've/They have seen a film.
  - 4 She's/She has caught a fish.
  - 1 I haven't done I've/I have looked
    - 2 hasn't made

3

- 3 You haven't put
- 4 I've/I have hurt
- 5 you've/you have had
- have you put
- It's/It has
- disappeared

- have you done
- 10 I've/I have painted
- 11 I've/I have cleaned 12 We've/We have made
- 13 has that brush gone
- 14 you've/you have left

- 1 1 just tidied it.
  - 2 He's/He has just made some/it.
  - 3 I've/I have just eaten it.
  - 4 she's/she has just checked them.
  - 5 I've/I have just rung her.
- 2 1 1 haven't started it yet.
  - 2 I've/I have just seen Andrew
  - 3 he's/he has already done
  - 4 I haven't finished my plan yet.
  - 5 You've/You have already begun
  - 6 We've/We have already spent
  - 7 I haven't done any real work yet
  - 8 I've/I have just realized
  - 9 I've/I have just decided
- 3 1 He hasn't had any fun for a long time.
  - 2 He's/He has had a cold for a week.
  - 3 He hasn't seen his friends for ages.
  - 4 He hasn't done any sport since last year.
  - 5 He's/He has been busy with his studies for months.
- 4 1 rung her since
- 4 had one since
- 2 seen them for
- 5 played (it) since
- 3 watched one for

#### Unit 13

- 1 1 been 2 been 3 gone
- Have you ever been to San Francisco?
   No, I've never been to San Francisco
   I've been to Los Angeles.
  - 2 Have you ever played basketball? No, I've never played basketball I've played volleyball.
  - 3 Have you ever seen/read (the play) 'Hamlet'? No, I've never read/seen 'Hamlet' I've read/seen 'Macbeth'.
- 3 1 the second time I've lost my bank card.
  - 2 This is the third time the washing-machine has broken down.
  - 3 This is the first time I've been in/to England.
  - 4 This is the second time I've stayed in this hotel.
  - 5 This is (about) the fifth time I've missed the bus.
- 4 1 I haven't seen her today.
  - 2 we haven't been there this weekend.
  - 3 we haven't had one this term.
  - 4 has rung this evening.

#### Unit 14

- 1 1 have arrived 7 We planted
  2 repaired 8 have gone
  3 I've/I have lost 9 has turned
  4 has started 10 I phoned
  5 ran 11 I've/I have made
  - earned 12 broke

- 2 1 The train drivers have gone on strike. They stopped work(ing) at twelve o'clock.
  - 2 The Queen has arrived in Toronto. She flew there in an RAF aircraft.
  - 3 Two men have escaped from Parkhurst Prison. They got away during the night.
  - 4 The actor Howard Bates has died in a car accident. His car crashed into a wall.
  - 5 Linda Jones has won the women's marathon. She ran it in 2 hours 27 minutes.
- 3 1 haven't taken a photo since
  - 2 weeks since I last saw
  - 3 was the last time we played
  - 4 haven't eaten anything for

#### Unit 15

- 1 1 has stood 4 've/have lived 2 was 5 've/have known
  - 3 stayed 6 were
- 2 1 b) 2 b) 3 a)
- 3 1 this, last 3 last, this 2 today, yesterday 4 this, yesterday
- 4 1 What's/What has 7 You knew happened 8 you didn't tell
  2 He's/He has had 9 I didn't see
  3 He fell 10 I haven't seen
  4 broke 11 He's/He has had

12 He did

5 did it happen6 told

- 1 1 have you been doing
  - 2 She's/She has been helping
  - 3 have you been studying
  - 4 I've/I have been trying
  - 5 it's/it has been getting
- 2 1 they've/they have been arguing
  - 2 he's/he has been cooking
  - 3 he's/he has been driving
  - 4 He's/He has been waiting
- 3 1 Matthew has been swimming for an hour.
  - 2 My friends have been travelling (around the world) for three months.
  - 3 Mark has been working for ten hours.
  - 4 Melanie and Rita have been talking for forty minutes.
  - 5 How long have you been reading the/that/your book?

- 1 1 's/has left, He's/He has been cleaning, he's/he has finished
  - I've/I have been working, You've/You have done
  - I've/I have heard, have you been doing, We've/We have done
- 2 How many miles have you walked?
  - How long have they/the workmen been digging up
  - How many photos have you taken?
  - How long has it been raining?
- I've/I have been clearing
  - 2 I've/I have found
  - 3 You've/You have been sitting
  - 4 I've/I have been watching
  - 5 You've/You have been
  - 6 I've/I have had
  - 7 They've/They have been
  - 8 I've/I have never had

#### Unit 18

- 1 1 b) 2 a) 3 a) 4 b)
- 2 1 The train had just gone.
  - 2 The rain had stopped.
  - 3 I'd/1 had forgotten my ticket.
  - They'd/They had stolen it a week before. 4
  - 5 I hadn't seen her for ages.
  - 6 I'd/I had just cleaned it.
  - 7 I'd/I had already eaten my sandwiches.
- 3 1 had left
- 6 had told
- 2 've/have finished
- 7 'd had/had had
- 3 Ve/have eaten
- 8 's/has started
- 4 'd/had ordered 've/have made
- 've/have turned 9 10 'd/had made

### Unit 19

5

- 1 a) 2 a) 3 b) 4 a) 1
- 2 When Nick had saved enough money, he bought a motor bike.
  - 2 Mark put all the dishes away when he'd/he had dried them.
  - When I'd/I had looked both ways, I pulled out into

7

10

- 4 The golfers went into the clubhouse when they'd/they had played the last hole.
- had decided
- 8 They were working
- 2 We were waiting 3 I realized
- rang
- I'd/I had forgotten
- heard They found
- 5 It was
- 11 drove
- I hurried
- 12 I met

- 13 We had
- 17 were sitting
- 14 I'd/I had said
- 18 they saw 19 started
- 15 I ran 16 I got

# Unit 20

- 1 I'd/1 had been working
  - 2 I hadn't been looking
  - she'd/she had been dealing
  - I'd/I had been waiting
  - 5 I'd/I had been reading
- 2 1 She'd/She had been crying.
  - 2 He'd/He had been driving too fast.
  - They'd/They had been playing with matches.
  - 4 He'd/He had been standing under a tree.
- 3 1 had been watching
  - 2 'd/had been playing, hadn't won
  - 3 'd/had been walking, 'd/had walked
  - 4 'd/had stopped, was smoking
  - has been aching
  - was lying, 'd/had bought, 'd/had been reading

- 1 She uses it
  - 2 She's/She has lost it
  - 3 We're/We are getting them
  - 4 She's/She is enjoying it
  - 5 I hate it
  - 6 I've/I have checked them
  - They play it
  - 8 You haven't watered them
- 1 I haven't seen you for months.
  - 2 I'm/I am waiting for a (phone) call.
  - 3 I like your (new) jacket.
  - 4 It's/It has been snowing since yesterday.
- 1 a) 2 b) 3 a) 4 b) 5 a) 6 b) 3
- 1 I've/I have been working
  - 2 she went
  - 3 You've/You have been writing
  - 4 They moved
  - he stopped, I was waiting
  - I don't often drive 1 vou know
    - 2 David told
- 10 1 don't like
- 3 haven't been
- 11 I ride
- 4 I started
- 12 bought
- 5 have you sold
- 13 was working
- I've been learning
- 14 I'd been doing
- 15 I'd earned had
- 8 I've had

- 6 1 I'm/I am speaking
  - 2 knows
  - 3 had heard
  - 4 he'd/he had been taking (Also possible: he's/he has been taking)
  - 5 he's/he has answered
  - 6 he arrived
  - 7 were waiting
  - 8 has been reading

- 1 I'll be leaving here at the end of the month.
  - 2 Luckily they'll find a flat for me.
  - 3 The training programme finishes next summer.
  - 4 They'll decide about that next year.
- 2 1 future 4 future
  - 2 future 5 present
  - 3 future
- 3 1a) 2a) 3b) 4b) 5a)

### Unit 23

- 1 1 future 4 decision 2 decision 5 future
  - 3 future
- 2 1 I'll answer it/the phone.
  - 2 I'll have (the) chicken (, please).
  - 3 I'll carry the/your bag (for you).
  - 4 I'll post it/the letter (for you),
- 3 1 Tom will watch the match.
  - 2 Harriet's party will be fun.
  - 3 Trevor won't put up the shelves.
  - 4 Laura will be annoyed.
  - 5 Andrew will study all weekend.
  - 6 Rachel won't do any work.
- 4 1 will 4 will
  - 2 Shall 5 will
  - 3 will 6 Shall

### Unit 24

- 1 1 He's/He is going to light the firework.
  - 2 She's/She is going to hit the ball.
  - 3 They're/They are going to catch a bus.
  - 4 She's/She is going to answer the phone.
- 2 1 I'm/I am going to lend
  - 2 He's/He is going to take
  - 3 It's/It is going to be
  - 4 is he going to keep
  - 5 are we going to get
  - 6 He's/He is going to have
  - 7 We're/We are going to get
  - 8 it isn't going to get

- 3 1 I'm/I am going to get wet.
  - 2 I'm/1 am going to be sick.
  - 3 I'm/I am going to lose.
  - 4 It's/It is going to crash!
  - 5 It isn't going to stop.

#### Unit 25

- 1 1 's/is going to read
  - 2 '11 have
  - 3 '11 video
  - 4 are you going to buy
- 2 1 It's/It is going to attack us/me.
  - 2 aliens will land on the earth in the next ten years.
  - 3 she's/she is going to get married.
  - 4 I'll invite her for a meal.
- 3 1 We're/We are going to build
  - 2 will be (Also possible: is going to be)
  - 3 will like (Also possible: are going to like)
  - 4 will be (Also possible: are going to be)
  - 5 We aren't going to cut (Also possible: We won't cut)
  - 6 We're/We are going to have
  - 7 will be (Also possible: is going to be)
  - 8 We're/We are going to stop (Also possible: We will stop)

### Unit 26

- 1 1 future 4 future
  - 2 future 5 present
  - 3 present
- 2 1 She's/She is working on Saturday.
  - 2 She's/She is flying to Cairo on 15 May.
  - 3 He's/He is seeing his boss at four o'clock this afternoon.
  - 4 They're/They are playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
- 3 1 I'm/I am going 5 I'm/I am going
  - 2 He's/He is staying 6 finishes
  - 3 gets 7 we're/we are going
  - 4 are you doing
- 4 1 's/is about to win 4 're/are about to move
  - 2 are to go 5 are to take
  - 3 is to visit

- 1 When Mark sees the boss, he's/he is going to discuss his problem.
  - 2 When Rachel uses the computer (later), she's/she is going to send an e-mail.
  - 3 When Tom visits David in hospital, he's/he is going to tell him about United's win.
  - 4 When Matthew's/Matthew is in town tomorrow, he might buy some new trainers.

- 2 1 you need 9 I'll/I will be
  2 you get 10 1 hear
  3 I hire 11 I'm/I am
  4 it'll/it will be 12 I'll/I will lie
  - 5 I'll/I will get 13 I go
  - 6 there's/there is 14 You'll/You will be
  - 7 I arrive 15 you don't get
  - 8 I'll/I will ring
- 3 1 You shouldn't decide until you've/you have thought about it (first).
  - 2 I'll think of you next week when I'm/I am lying on the beach
  - 3 We ought to/We can leave as soon as I've/I have paid the bill.
  - 4 We can discuss it (later) while we're/we are sitting on the plane together.
  - 5 You can use the computer when I've/I have finished with it.

- 1 1 I'll/I will be earning
  - 2 I'll/I will be doing
  - 3 will you be doing
  - 4 I'll/I will be giving
  - 5 who'll/who will be doing
  - 6 you'll/you will be playing
- 2 1 I'll/I will be seeing her
  - 2 I'll/I will be going there next summer
  - 3 I'll/I will be playing (it/badminton) next weekend.
  - 4 I'll/I will be having lunch/it in the canteen tomorrow, OR I'll/I will be having lunch/it there tomorrow.
- 3 1 Will you be going to the library today?
  - 2 Will you be writing to Vicky soon?
  - 3 Will you be using your calculator this afternoon?
  - 4 Will you be seeing Daniel tomorrow?
  - 5 Will you be driving to the festival?
  - 6 Will you be phoning your sister soon?

## Unit 29

- 1 1 1 1 1 will have had
  - 2 I'll/I will have been the subject of a TV documentary
  - 3 I'll/I will have become world-famous
  - 4 I'll/I will have made millions of pounds from my pictures
- 2 1 twenty
  - 2 She will/She'll have travelled two hundred miles.
  - 3 He will/He'll have done a/one hundred and fifty (press-ups).
- 3 1 were going to go
  - 2 was going to pick
  - 3 were going to see

- 4 1 I was going to paint the door, but I didn't feel very well.
  - 2 I was going to repair the lamp, but I forgot.
  - 3 I was going to wallpaper the bedroom, but I didn't have time.

#### Unit 30

- 1 It will/It'll be
  - 2 who will/who'll answer OR who will/who'll be answering
  - 3 will be answering
  - 4 he'll/he will still be giving
  - 5 he'll/he will have replied
  - 6 he won't/will not be eating OR he won't/will not eat
  - 7 will be
  - 8 he'll/he will have earned
  - 9 we'll/we will be returning OR we'll/we will return
  - 10 he'll/he will have got
- 2 1 'm/'arn going to get up early tomorrow.
  - 2 arrives at ten thirty.
  - 3 I'm/I am seeing my bank manager tomorrow.
  - 4 I'm/I am about to go out.
  - 5 There's/There is going to be trouble.
- 3 1 I'm/I am spending OR I'm/I am going to spend
  - 2 I'm/I am going to look OR I'll/I will be looking
  - 3 That'll/That will be OR That's/That is going to be
    - 4 I'll/I will be OR I'm/I am going to be
  - 5 Are you staying/Are you going to stay OR Will you be staying/Will you stay
  - 6 I'm/I am staying OR I'm/I am going to stay OR I'll/I will be staying
  - 7 I'm/I am going to see OR I'm/I am seeing OR I'll/I will be seeing OR I'll/I will see
  - 8 I'm/I am going OR I'll/I will be going
  - 9 we might see OR we'll/we will probably see OR we're/we are probably going to see
  - 10 do you leave OR are you leaving OR will you be leaving
  - 11 is

1

12 I'll/I will see

- 1 She's/She has got a map. OR She has a map.
  - 2 He hasn't got an umbrella, OR He doesn't have an umbrella.
  - 3 They've/They have got a rabbit, OR They have a
  - 4 They haven't got a car. OR They don't have a car.
- 2 1 Has ... got 4 didn't have 2 hasn't got 5 haven't got
  - 3 didn't have
- 3 1 played 3 spent
  - 2 drinks 4 received

- I we're/we are having
  - 2 you've/you have got OR you have
  - 3 it hasn't got OR it doesn't have
  - 4 Did you have
  - 5 I had
  - 6 Have you got OR Do you have
  - 7 have
  - 8 1 didn't have

- 1 It's a difficult problem.
  - 2 I've seen the results.
  - 3 I don't have any information.
  - 4 We haven't reached a decision.
  - 5 I'm very excited about it.
  - 6 You needn't decide now.
  - 7 It isn't yet certain, OR It's not yet certain.
  - 8 We'll be pleased to see you.
  - 9 Don't worry.
  - 10 I'd like to buy a new computer.
  - 11 We're willing to help.
  - 12 We won't know the result for some time.
- 1 Where's, It's
  - 2 don't, isn't OR 's not
  - 3 What's, He's
- 1 I would like a coffee, please.
  - There has been an accident.
  - That is correct.
  - 4 I had seen the film before.
  - Who has got the key?
  - 6 We would have stopped if we had seen you.

## Unit 33

- 1 I am smiling.
  - 2 I do like my new portrait.
  - 3 It is foggy today.
  - 4 Yes, I did remember the water.
- 1 it did cost
- I did go
- 2 you do look 5 they do quarrel
- 3 it does stop
- 1 I did finish the crossword today. 3
  - 2 my room does need tidying up.
  - 3 I do find the work difficult.
  - 4 I did want to give the course up.
  - 5 Do have a chocolate.
  - 6 this place does depress me.

## Unit 34

- 1 offering
  - making a suggestion
  - asking for information
  - requesting
  - 5 inviting
  - asking for information
  - asking permission
- 2 1 Are you a rich man?
  - 2 Are guizzes your only hobby?
  - Did you work hard at school?
  - Have you got/Do you have any other interests?
  - Is it an interesting life?
  - Does your wife ask you guiz guestions?
  - Do you answer questions in your dreams?
- 1 Are you going to America?
  - 2 Does Laura play tennis?
  - Did you enjoy your holiday? 3
  - Shall we (both) go for a walk?
  - 5 Will you be at the club tonight?
  - 6 Is the train on time?
  - 7 Do Mike and Harriet go camping?
  - 8 Could I/Can I/May I borrow your squash racket?
  - 9 Have you got/Do you have a motor bike?

#### Unit 35

- 1 Yes, I can 5 No, they aren't 6 2 Yes, it is Yes, I do
  - No, he hasn't 7 No, he isn't
  - No, I haven't Yes, I did
- 2 1 No, we won't 5 Yes, she does
  - No, we aren't 2 Yes, I did
  - No, we can't 3 Yes, she has 7
  - 4 No, I didn't 8 No, I'm/I am not
- 1 b) 2 b) 3 b) 4 a) 5 b) 6 a) 7 b) 8 b)

- 1 What's/What is the date (today)?
  - 2 When does the course finish?
  - 3 Who have you invited (to your party)?
  - 4 How can I/we get tickets (to the concert)?
  - 5 Where are we going to have lunch? OR Where shall we have lunch?
- 2 1 Where How far
  - 2 How many How often
  - 3 When What kind
  - Who 4 How long
  - 5 What

4 What 3 I where do you record 3 1 Who How many programmes have you done? 2 Which 5 Which 3 How much money do you earn? What 6 Who 4 When did you start acting? Unit 40 What are your plans for the future? 1 wasn't 5 has Unit 37 2 had 6 didn't know 3 7 1 a) Rita b) Rita 2 a) Mark b) a bus don't know isn't 3 a) a/the lorry b) a/the car 4 didn't land 5 2 1 Who is/Who's having a party? 2 1 can't wasn't 2 doesn't 6 isn't 2 What were you reading? What have you learnt? 3 didn't 7 don't 3 weren't 8 haven't 4 what should we do? Who is/Who's looking for me? doesn't get headaches. Who are you looking for? can't relax. What is she planning? 3 didn't miss a lecture. Who has/Who's moved in next door? isn't a nervous person. 4 9 What is/What's worrying you? 5 doesn't lose things. 10 Who do you want to meet? wasn't a happy child. 6 1 photos can I keep? 7 hasn't decided on a career. 3 2 flowers look lovely? 1 no (money) went missing? 5 2 no No house did you pass (earlier)? 3 not 6 not children has the doctor got?/does the doctor have? (money) do doctors earn? Unit 41 uncle has died? 1 Can't you drive, Melanie? wife is coming (later)? Won't you be at the disco, Rachel? Haven't you got/Don't you have a television, Nick? Unit 38 2 Don't you feel well? OR Aren't you feeling well? 1 What are you looking at? Haven't they arrived yet? 2 What are you talking about? 3 Didn't she say hello? 3 What are you waiting for? Can't you swim? What are you pointing at? 1 What are you ashamed of? 3 1 No 2 Yes 3 Yes 4 No 2 What is she famous for? 1 Why didn't the staff know what to do? 3 What is he going to complain about? 2 Why couldn't they stop the ride? 4 What is she going to be late for? Why aren't they trained in first aid? What do you feel nervous about? Why wasn't the ambulance called immediately? 3 1 What 6 for 5 Why didn't the doctor have a mobile phone? 7 2 for What Unit 42 3 What 8 like 4 like how a comment 3 a question 5 what 2 a comment 4 a question 1 isn't it? 5 don't they? Unit 39 2 are there? can't we? Which flight did you take? 3 aren't you? 7 was it? Which hotel did you stay at? 4 didn't you? What music do you like? What magazine did you buy? 5 don't you? does it? What company do you work for? 2 haven't 1? 6 is there? 6 What language are you learning? 3 aren't you? 7 can you? do you? 2 1 Which 4 What 5 2 Which Which What

1 Let's listen to some music, shall we? Unit 46 Don't do anything silly, will you? 1 (May and might are both possible.) You haven't got a train timetable, have you? she might be 4 She may be having 4 Pass me the salt, can you?/could you? OR YOU She may be 5 You might find couldn't pass me the salt, could you? 3 She might be sitting 6 She might know Unit 43 2 1 He may/might win. 1 neither am 1 so do I 2 I may/might have one. 4 3 We may/might get one. 2 Neither can I 5 Neither have I so am I 6 so would I 4 She may/might be late. 5 They may/might be visiting me. 2 1 neither does Emma. 4 neither is Melanie. mightn't 4 3 1 couldn't 2 so has Emma. 5 so does Emma. 3 neither can Mark. 6 so does Claire. 2 mightn't 5 mightn't 3 couldn't 1 4 1 don't think so 3 I don't expect so 1 4 4 I suppose so 5 I'm afraid not can't can't I hope not 2 must 5 might 3 3 might 6 must Unit 44 Unit 47 She can't play the violin. 1 He can climb trees. 1 had to pay, did you have to pay You have to slam, You'll have to fix She can juggle. do you have to take, I'll have to take They can't lift the weights. We had to move, We didn't have to look, We've/We 2 11 can walk have had to do (Also possible: I'm able to walk) has to start, does he have to get 1 can go/I'll be able to go 2 to be able to get 2 You must get to work on time. been able to do 2 has to keep his dog under control. 3 You must listen carefully. 3 1 c) 2 a) 4 visitors have to report to the security officer. 4 was able to were able to 1 5 3 1 must have to 5 could couldn't/wasn't able to 2 has to 6 must could/was able to 3 have to 7 must 4 must Unit 45 Unit 48 (Can, could and may are all possible.) Can I borrow your calculator? 1 1 1 must, mustn't, needn't 2 May I join you? mustn't, must Could I look at your notes? 3 mustn't, needn't 4 mustn't, must, needn't 2 You can have a picnic. 1 2 You can't drop litter. didn't have to wait ages to cross the road. You can turn left. 3 2 don't have to work long hours.

3

2

waiter.

3

doesn't have to work in a factory.

don't have to wash their clothes by hand.

We needn't have left/We didn't need to leave so

you needn't have tipped/you didn't need to tip the

we didn't need to borrow any money.

didn't have to lock their doors.

I needn't have bothered.

I didn't need to pay to go in.

You can't play ball games/football.

You can't smoke.

Am I allowed to

Am 1 allowed to

May 1

I wasn't allowed to have we're/we are allowed to have

we're/we are allowed to do

we'll/we will be allowed to hold

Am I allowed to

May I

3 1

4 1

2

2

- 1 1 shouldn't 4 shouldn't 2 ought 5 should 3 should 6 oughtn't
- 2 1 We'd better wait (for Rachel).
  - 2 You'd better lock it/lock your bike.
  - 3 I'd better tidy my room.
  - 4 You'd better not drive/We'd better not go too fast.
  - 5 We'd better do some revision.
- 3 1 I'm/I am supposed to take two before meals.
  - 2 They're/They are supposed to report to the police.
  - 3 You're/You are supposed to stand in a queue.
  - 4 They aren't supposed to watch it.
- 4 1 We had/We'd better hurry. (Also possible: We should hurry./We ought to hurry.)
  - 2 We had/We'd better not be OR We oughtn't to be/We shouldn't be
  - 3 should arrive/ought to arrive
  - 4 You shouldn't take/You oughtn't to take
  - 5 We aren't supposed to get

#### Unit 50

- 1 1 Can I have a fork, please?
  - 2 Could I have a towel, please?
  - 3 Would you mind answering the phone?
- 5 2 1 Can/Could must 6 2 have Would 3 like 7 wonder 8 want Can/Could
- 3 1 Can I have a receipt, please?/Can you give me a receipt, please?
  - 2 Could you tell me the time, please?
  - 3 Can you help me, please?
  - 4 Could I have a bag, please?/Could you give me a bag, please?
  - 5 Would you mind clearing a space (on the table), please?
  - 6 Could I speak to the manager, please?

#### Unit 51

- 1 1 Shall we stop for a minute?
  - 2 Would you like a game?
  - 3 I'll post that letter for you.
- 2 1 Shall 4 Would 2 Shall 5 Will 3 could 6 Would

- 3 1 Would you like a cup of tea? OR Will/Won't you have a cup of tea?
  - What shall/can/should I say in my letter?
  - 3 Let's have/We could have a cup of coffee, OR Shall we have a cup of coffee?
  - 4 I'll/I can walk home with you. OR Shall/Can I walk home with you?
  - 5 Would you like to visit me one weekend? (Also possible: Will/Won't you visit me one weekend?)

#### Unit 52

- 1 1 will 5 would 2 won't 6 wouldn't 3 would 7 would
  - 4 will
- 2 1 will help 5 would like 2 wouldn't let 6 wouldn't open 3 will give 7 won't stand
  - 4 won't go
- 3 1 Shall we go to the swimming-pool?
  - 2 I won't take any risks.
  - 3 I'd/I would like a shower (, please).
  - 4 You shouldn't decide in a hurry.
  - 5 (I think) the world will end in the year 3000.

#### Unit 53

- 1 1 b) 2 a) 3 b)
- 2 1 They shouldn't have left/oughtn't to have left litter everywhere.
  - 2 She should say/ought to say hello to people.
  - 3 He shouldn't have been/oughtn't to have been late for the interview.
  - 4 She should have looked./She ought to have looked.
- 3 1 he shouldn't have left
  - 2 might have taken
  - 3 You must have been
  - 4 he can't have rung
- 4 1 someone must have posted it.
  - 2 she may/might not have heard the alarm.
  - 3 he shouldn't have driven/oughtn't to have driven at 100 miles an hour/so fast.
  - 4 He can't/couldn't have failed the exam.

- 1 1 Dinner is being served.
  - 2 Some houses are being built.
  - 3 The seals are being fed.
  - 4 A flag is being raised.
- 2 1 is owned 4 hadn't been looked
  - 2 was being used 5 has been done
  - 3 was bought 6 is used

- 1 will be done/are going to be done 3 2 will ... be called
  - 3 can't be bought

  - 4 should be sold
- 3 1 got hurt get broken 4 2 get lost got divorced

- 1 swept 6 were blocked 2 burst 7 were brought were rescued 3 8 is being done
  - 4 received 9 said
  - 5 reached
- 1 my brother 4 the alarm 2 The water The guide 5 3 terrorists The dog
- 1 was won by Claude Jennings.
  - did a parachute jump last week.
  - 3 been attacked by a bull.
  - 4 being built.
  - 5 likes Jessica.
  - 6 been thrown away.
  - been kidnapped by Martians.
  - 8 was seen by five people.

#### Unit 56

- 1 1 was taken
  - was done
  - was interviewed by a very nice young police officer
  - fingerprints were found (by detectives)
  - burglar was identified (by the police computer). 5
  - 6 has been arrested
  - (he) is being questioned
  - jewellery hasn't been found
- 1 didn't produce many cars for sale.
  - production was started by a German called Karl Benz.
  - is now seen as the father of the motor car.
- 1 People should use them/bicycles for short journeys.
  - 2 someone has discovered a new source of energy?
  - they're/they are going to knock it down/knock down this building.
  - you shouldn't keep them/eggs in a freezer.
  - people put it/litter in the bin?

#### Unit 57

- 1 New employees are given special training.
  - 2 Extra payments are given to staff who perform well, i
  - 3 Most employees are offered company shares.
  - 4 All Zedco staff are allowed six weeks' holiday.
  - 5 A full salary is paid to women who leave to have children.

- expected that the soap opera 'Round the Corner' will end next year.
  - It is supposed that the footballer Wayne Johnson is earning £10 million a year.
  - 3 It is believed that the Prime Minister and his wife have separated.
- is expected to end next year. 3
  - 2 The footballer Wayne Johnson is supposed to be earning £10 million a year.
  - 3 The Prime Minister and his wife are believed to have separated.

#### Unit 58

2

1

- had his car repaired.
  - is having her photo taken. 2
  - had his windows cleaned.
  - is having her eyes tested.
- David (has) had his arm bandaged. 2 1
  - Daniel is going to have his tooth filled.
  - 3 Laura is having her photos developed.
- 3 1 did you get your arm bandaged, David?
  - did you get your tooth filled, Daniel?
  - did you get your photos developed, Laura?
- Tom had his car stolen from outside his house. 4 1
  - Rita had her rent increased by ten per cent.
  - David has had his electricity cut off.

## Unit 59

- He is afraid of being sent away.
  - He doesn't want to be misunderstood. 2
  - He hopes to be offered a job.
  - He doesn't mind being paid low wages at first.
  - He is willing to be re-trained.
  - He would like to be given a chance.
- 1 being used to give
  - 5 to be invited 2 working
  - 3 to be treated 6 being taken
- 3 1 to write 6 to finish
  - 2 to be tidied 7 missing
  - to be handed hoovering/to be 8
    - 9 hoovered to be
  - to do 10 being told
  - ironing/to be ironed

- 1 Trevor promised to put up the shelves/to put the shelves up (soon).
  - Claire decided to buy both the dresses.
  - Melanie offered to cook the meal.
  - 4 Tom threatened to shoot Nick's dog/the dog.

2 1 They seem to believe 1 to drive/driving 3 to go/going 4 to search 2 to make it seems to have improved She doesn't seem to like Unit 64 4 He seems to be working 1 1 mentioning 5 to lock 5 He doesn't seem to have made agreeing 6 looking (Also possible: He seems not to have made) 3 to call 7 to look 3 1 to hang 4 to invite 4 to lock 2 to come 5 to take 2 1 running 6 3 to be having to have left to tell 6 7 to disappoint 2 to make Unit 61 3 spending 8 phoning 9 1 I've/I have given up trying, OR I gave up trying. 4 watching to explain 2 I can't imagine being 5 to work 10 going I enjoy watching it on TV. 3 1 Harriet didn't even try to move the piano. suggested having a party. Mike will never forget seeing a spaceship. 1 can't stand lying The walls need painting. couldn't/can't resist having 4 Natasha didn't mean to be unkind to Jessica. couldn't face doing Andrew went on studying through the night. 3 4 can't help feeling Mark stopped to make a phone call. 5 3 1 trying getting Unit 65 2 walking 6 changing 1 Guy invited Kitty to come on his chat show. ringing missing Sarah reminded Mark to get the theatre tickets. 4 waiting discussing The dentist told Daniel to give up eating sweets. The police ordered the gunman to come out with Unit 62 his hands up. 1 to get 6 to go 2 1 don't want her to do a parachute jump 2 to leave 7 to hire 3 staving 8 driving doesn't want him to fall in love with her would like/'d like her to go (on holiday) with them sitting 9 to spend 10 taking touring 1 The police must stop the suspects leaving the 3 taking to repair country. The President didn't expect Congress to oppose 2 losing 7 waiting 3 8 to have to insist The terrorists forced the hostages to lie down. 4 arguing 9 to accept The government doesn't mind the pound falling in 5 to be 10 saying value. 3 1 I don't mind asking to see the manager. Matthew admitted promising to go to Scotland. 4 1 to travel to use 2 buying 3 the band happened to finish playing. to take Unit 66 **Unit 63** 1 I'd like to buy this tin. 1 He can't think what to say. 2 I like driving this car. They're not sure/They aren't sure where to go. I'd like to see the manager. She doesn't know how to stop. 4 I like chasing rabbits. 1 what to expect what to do 1 he loves watching/to watch 2 where to go 5 who to contact 2 I wouldn't like to work 3 how to find I'd like to see 1 whether to do 4 I'd prefer to come/go how much (money) to spend 5 I hate queuing whether to join 6 He doesn't like cooking which route to take 7 I'd love to fly which (lottery numbers) to choose

8 I like to have

- 1 1 simple to use the computer.
  - 2 difficult to understand the handbook.
  - 3 It's easy to run any kind of software.
  - 4 It's absolutely fascinating to explore the world of Compex.
  - 5 Are you ready to try the ultimate computer experience?
- 2 1 is very simple to use.
  - 2 isn't difficult to understand.
  - 3 Any kind of software is easy to run.
  - 4 The world of Compex is absolutely fascinating to explore.
- 3 1 it's/it is likely to be pretty crowded.
  - 2 she's/she is certain to be there.
  - 3 you're/you are unlikely to find it. OR you'll be unlikely to find it.
- 4 1 of 2 for 3 of 4 of 5 for

#### Unit 68

- 1 1 (just) can't wait for it to arrive.
  - 2 It would be a mistake for him to marry her.
  - 3 It's important for advertisements to tell the truth.
- 2 1 There's a fun pool for children to swim in.
  - 2 There are quiet areas for you to relax in.
  - 3 There are regular shows for you to enjoy.
  - 4 There's a giant roller-coaster for you to ride on (if you dare).
- 3 1 It's/It is too high for her to reach.
  - 2 It's/It is too difficult for us to understand.
  - 3 It wasn't loud enough for them/everyone to hear.
  - 4 It wasn't hot enough for him to drink.
- 4 1 difficult for the town to attract new industry.
  - 2 very generous of the council to give the land to Sanko.
  - 3 is eager for production to begin soon.

#### Unit 69

- 1 have something to eat.
  - 2 nice to have a rest.
  - 3 wants Rita to speak to him.
  - 4 Daniel doesn't know how to repair the video.
  - 5 Claire and her sister have decided to go to Bali.
  - 6 Melanie has gone to the hospital to visit David.
  - 7 (Unfortunately) Vicky has to do some studying.
  - 8 It's important for Sarah to ring the office.
- 2 1 see/read 4 lie/sit/stay 2 drive/go 5 snow
  - 3 cry/weep 6 see/visit

1	to visit	8	look
2	to see	9	get
3	to have	10	to leave
4	buy	11	to change
5	to read	12	forget
6	read	13	to get
7	feel		

#### Unit 70

3

1	1	of buying	3	on buying
	2	for breaking	4	like arguing

- 2 1 blamed Trevor for forgetting the tickets.
  - 2 succeeded in saving the driver's life.
  - 3 The customers complained about not receiving the goods.
  - 4 Emma has accused Matthew of breaking his promise.
  - 5 Melanie is insisting on cooking a meal for David.
  - 6 A new traffic scheme has stopped cars from going into the town centre.
  - 7 Everyone congratulated Claude on winning the quiz competition.
  - 8 Some football fans were arrested for attacking a policeman.

3	1	about seeing	5	from doing
	2	about/at getting	6	like writing
	3	on travelling	7	with doing
	4	for not writing	8	of/about going

#### Unit 71

1	1	of falli	ng		3	to move
	•	0.1		. 4		

2 of dropping them

- 2 1 Nick was afraid to jump.
  - 2 Daniel was afraid to argue with the policeman.
  - 3 Matthew is afraid of getting sunburnt.
- 3 1 to buy 4 to read 2 of getting 5 to book 3 of being
- 4 1 about being so rude
  - 2 about losing my temper
  - 3 to interrupt you

#### Unit 72

1	1	We used to like	4	did you use to help
	2	used to be	5	1 used to look

3 we didn't use to have

- 2 1 's/is used to flying planes.
  - 2 used to play badminton.
  - 3 's/is used to climbing mountains.

3	1	to living	5	to drinking
	2	to stop	6	to being
	3	to work	7	to have

4 to be

- 1 1 by staying up all night.
  - 2 on waking (in the morning).
  - 3 without using a calculator.
  - 4 for carrying the food.
  - 4 for carrying the food.
  - 5 in spite of having it on his list.
  - 6 as well as doing the typing.
- 2 1 before signing 4 after using
  - 2 after eating 5 before changing
  - 3 Before leaving 6 before opening
- He thought carefully before deciding to buy it.
  - 2 He bought the shop despite having little money of his own.
  - 3 He became successful by giving the customers what they wanted.
  - 4 He put the profit back into the business instead of spending it on himself.
  - 5 He was happy when running his own business.
  - 6 He fell ill as a result of working too hard.
  - 7 He has made a lot of money since buying his first shop ten years ago.

#### Unit 74

- i 1 1 saw him take it.
  - 2 I watched him leave (the restaurant).
  - 3 I heard him drive away.
- 2 1 I can hear it ringing.
  - 2 I can see her waving.
  - 3 1 can hear them barking.
  - 4 I can smell it burning.
- 3 1 She felt the building shake.
  - 2 He heard people shouting.
  - 3 She could hear an alarm ringing.
  - 4 They saw the police arrive.
  - 5 He saw a woman crying.

## Unit 75

- 1 1 broke his leg skiing.
  - 2 cut his finger opening a tin.
  - 3 injured her toe running.
  - 4 hurt his back lifting weights.
- 2 1 Taking a gun out of the drawer, he put it in his briefcase. (Also possible: Having taken a gun ...)
  - 2 Having left the office, he (then) had to wait a while for the lift.
  - 3 Reaching the ground floor, he hurried outside to a taxi. (Also possible: Having reached the ground floor
  - 4 Pulling out a gun, the taxi driver shot Mitchell. (Also possible: Having pulled out a gun ...)

- 3 1 Having studied the map, Trevor knew which way to
  - 2 Feeling cold, Harriet turned on the heating.
  - 3 Not knowing French, Daniel found it hard to communicate.
  - 4 Having finished the book, Andrew took it back to the library.

#### Unit 76

1

3

1	uncountable	5	uncountable
2	countable	6	uncountable
3	countable	7	countable
4	uncountable	8	countable

1 some biscuits 6 some soap 2 a light bulb 7 a lemon 3 some wine 8 some butter

4 some mineral water 9 some eggs

5 a banana

1 a computer much 2 a job essays 3 9 some hours 4 10 a few many money pictures 6 food

#### **Unit** 77

1 1 a jar of jam

- 2 a box of matches
- 3 two loaves of bread
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 five kilos of potatoes
- 6 a box/packet of breakfast cereal
- 7 two bottles of mineral water
- 8 a tube of toothpaste

2	1	some	5	some
	2	some	6	some
	3	some	7	a
	4	a	8	some

3 1 beautiful scenery 4 fun

2 good weather 5 an awful journey

3 a meal

1	1	sport	6	a conversation
	2	some potatoes	7	some chicken
	3	painting	8	war
	4	a noise	9	life
	5	cheese	10	some egg

- 2 1 some business
  - 2 an iron
  - 3 a glass, a light
  - 4 a business, some time
  - 5 some experience, an experience

3	1	time	4	a paper	4	1	team is	5	police are
	2	an experience	5	an orange		2	choir are	6	cattle are
	3	a painting	6	fruits		3	crew are	7	population is
	т.	I:4 70				4	orchestra is		
		nit 79				T	J <b>nit 82</b>		
1		is	5	has		·			
	2	are	6	costs	1	1	a tennis-racket/a ten	nis rac	cket
	3	look	7	have		2	a television camera		
	4	are	8	weren't		3	an alarm clock		
2	1	was	5	were		4	,		
-	2	were	6	were		5	a luggage trolley		
	3	was	7	was	2	1	Have you got any co	tton sl	hirts?
	4	were	8	was/were	-	2	What shall I do with		
	7	were	G	was/were		3	Have you got a shop		
3	1	is	5	have		4	Is there a shoe shop		-
	2	isn't	6	is		5			
	3	are	7	is		6			
	4	work	8	has		7	Are you a computer	-	
4	1	Fifteen miles is a long	a wall	,		,	Are you a computer	opera	1101 !
4	2	,	_		3	1	a stone wall		
	3	Eight students are to		-		2	a tourist informatio	n cent	re
				ig for the museum to open.		3	a bath-towel/a bath	towel	
	4	Twenty kilos is the l	Jagga	ge anowance.		4	working clothes		
	U	nit8o				5	a city centre office b	olock	
1		thanks	6	goods		6	a sales graph		
1	2		7	•		7	a credit card		
	3	damages	8	damage		8	a horse-race/a horse	race	
	4	pain belongings	9	savings pains		9	the Marketing Direc	ctor	
	5		9	panis		10	a weekend bicycle to	our	
	3	saving				<b>T</b> 1	02		
2	1	mathematics/maths	4	economics		U	nit 83		
	2	history	5	geography	1	1	a	11	the
	3	athletics				2	the	12	the
3	1	are	5	is		3	a	13	the
5	2	is	6	was		4	the	14	a
	3	were	7	were		5	The	15	the
	4	seem	,	were		6	the	16	the
	4	Seem				7	the	17	an
4	1	was	6	aren't		8	a	18	the
	2	outskirts	7	crossroads		9	The	19	the
	3	headquarters	8	is		10	the	20	the
	4	savings	9	gives	2	1	Matthew won the rac		1
	5	damage			2		Suddenly a child rai		-
	T	:40:				2	•		
	U	nit8i				4	She was watching a		
1	1	don't	5	look		5	The bus was half an		
	2	go	6	suit		3	The camera videoed	the th	ilei.
	3	is	7	some	3	1	a, the, the	5	a, the
	4	fit	8	a		2	a, the, a	6	a, the
2	1	como	2	noir		3	the, the	7	a, the
2	1	some	3	pair		4	a, the, The		
	2	pairs	4	some		**	04		
3	1	are	4	are		U	nit 84		
	2	have	5	want	1	1	an, the	4	an, the
	3	know	6	has		2	The, a	5	a, the
						3	The, an	6	the, a

•			a a		Y. 4. 00
2	1 a, a 2 a, a, the, a	4 5	a, the, an, the the, a, the, the, a, The, a		Unit 88
	3 the, a	6	the, a, a, the, the	1	1 Thanksgiving, November
3	1 a DJ	5	an LA suburb		<ul><li>2 the weekend, Saturday</li><li>3 Christmas, a white Christmas</li></ul>
3	2 a VIP	6	a UFO		4 the summer, 1997
	3 an IRA member	7	an AGM		5 the afternoon, the year
	4 a PC	8	an MP		6 night, the dark, the day
	Unit 85			2	1 breakfast 4 the dinner
1	1 some luggage	4	some birds		2 lunch 5 a marvellous meal
1	2 some flowers	5	some fruit		3 the lunch
	3 a cat			3	1 breakfast 6 night
2	1 a 2 One 3 One 4	а			2 midnight 7 the day
					3 Christmas 8 Wednesday 4 Wednesday 9 the Wednesday
3	1 A violin is a musical				5 the morning 10 February
	2 A queue is a line of 3 An atlas is a book of				
	4 A spade is a tool for				Unit 89
4	1 some nuts	4	lovely bread	1	1 a very grand hotel
7	2 mineral water	5	(university) students		<ul><li>2 quite a tiring journey</li><li>3 a really big flat</li></ul>
	3 some clothes		(		4 quite a nice meal
	Unit 86			2	•
1	1 He likes chips.	3	He likes art.	2	1 so 2 such 3 such 4 so 5 such 6 so
1	2 She likes dogs.	4	She likes chemistry.	3	1 The piano was so heavy (that) Mike and Harriet
2	1 dogs, the dogs				<ul><li>couldn't move it.</li><li>Tom was so annoyed about United losing (that)</li></ul>
2	2 cars, pollution, cars,	aero	planes, the pollution		wouldn't speak to anyone.
	3 the birds, birds, wild		r, r		3 The band was such a big attraction (that) all the
	4 history, the history,	muse	eums, old buildings		tickets sold out.
3	1 the atom	4	television		4 Vicky had such a lot of work to do (that) she wa sure she'd never finish it.
	2 football	5	the telescope		5 The party made such a (lot of) noise/so much no
	3 the guitar				(that) it kept all the neighbours awake.
	Unit 87			4	1 what 2 What a 3 What
1	1 church, the church				Unit 90
	2 the cinema, the pub	_		1	
	3 hospital (In America hospital	n En	glish: the hospital), the	1	1 Lake Michigan 5 Tasmania 2 Italy 6 the West Indies
	4 school, college				3 The Andes 7 The River Nile
2		6	had		4 The United 8 Brussels
2	<ul><li>1 college</li><li>2 the cinema</li></ul>	6 7	bed work		Kingdom 9 the North
	3 the station	8	the church	2	1 the Thames
	4 sea	9	prison		2 Hyde Park
	5 home				<ul><li>3 Heathrow Airport</li><li>4 Trafalgar Square</li></ul>
3	1 at home	6	to the library		5 Westminster Bridge
	2 in bed	7	in prison		6 the Houses of Parliament
	3 to the hospital	8	at college		7 Buckingham Palace
	4 to church 5 to work	9	in the factory		8 West London
	J TO WOLK				9 The Ml motorway
					10 The Ritz

- 3 I New York
  - 2 the Statue of Liberty
  - 3 Central Park
  - 4 the Metropolitan Museum of Art
  - 5 Broadway
  - 6 Macv's
  - 7 Washington Square
  - 8 New York University
  - 9 the Paramount
  - 10 Broadway
- 4 1 the Little Theatre 4 the High Street
  - Kingston House 5 the Royal Hotel
  - 3 Wood Lane
- 5 1 is in George Street.
  - 2 The Odeon Cinema is in the Avenue.
  - 3 The Clarendon Art Gallery is in Newton Lane.
  - 4 King Edward College is in College Road.
  - 5 St John's Church is in South Street.
  - 6 Webster's department store is in the High Street.
  - 7 The Bristol Hotel is in Westville Way.
- 6 1 A day at Blenheim Palace
  - 2 A train journey in North Wales
  - 3 A tour of the White House
  - 4 A beach on the Riviera
  - 5 A shopping trip to Harrods
  - 6 A small town in France
  - 7 A trip across the Severn Bridge
  - 8 A walk around Lake Windermere
  - 9 A visit to Tower Bridge
  - 10 A journey across the Rockies
  - 11 A look around the National Gallery
  - 12 A boat trip along the Oxford Canal

1	Near	Further away
Singular		that
Plural	these	those

- 2 1 these flowers
- 3 those trees
- 2 this parcel
- 4 that dog
- 3 1 That
- 6 that
- 2 these
- 7 This
- 3 this
- 8 this, That
- 4 this
- 9 These
- 5 those

## Unit 92

- 1 1 our
- 5 yours
- 2 his
- 6 mine
- 3 his 4 their
- 7 hers 8 her
- 2 1 its 2 it's
- 3 it's 4 its

- 3 1 the 4 their
  - 2 her 5 your, your
  - 3 the (Also possible: her)
- 4 1 Harriet introduced me to a friend of hers.
  - 2 They've got their own pool.
  - 3 It's a favourite hobby of mine.
  - 4 I've got some CDs of his.
  - 5 I'd like my own room.

#### Unit 93

- 1 1 the boy's bike
  - 2 the girls' tent
  - 3 the children's skateboards
  - 4 the girl's cat
  - 5 the boys' trophies
- 2 1 the twins' 5 her children's
  - 2 Luke's 6 the Lanskys'
  - 3 Jason's 7 Olivia's
  - 4 Debbie's
- 3 1 Mr Hillman's Gun
  - 2 The Smell of Blood
  - 3 The Terrorist's Car
  - 4 The Middle of the Night
  - 5 The Death of Someone Important
  - 6 The Gangsters' Money
- 4 1 yesterday's paper
  - 2 (a) five minutes' rest
  - 3 this month's special offer
  - 4 in a week's time

## Unit 94

- 1 1 She's/She has got some cats.
  - 2 He hasn't got any petrol.
  - 3 He's/He has got some poison.
- 2 1 any 4 some 2 any 5 some
  - 3 some 6 any
- 3 1 some, anything
  - 2 someone, any/some
  - 3 anyone (Also possible: someone), any
  - 4 something, some
- 1 anyone 4 anything
  - 2 any bus 5 any day
  - 3 any colour

- 1 1 She hasn't had many lessons yet.
  - 2 I'll have to make a lot (of it).
  - 3 I haven't got much energy.
  - 4 Maybe you should add a little water/a few drops of water.
  - 5 We've invited lots of friends/a lot of friends.

1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1	-	2 many/a lot of 3 many 4 a lot of	6 many/a lot of 7 much	2 them 9 They 3 us/me 10 you 4 her 11 him
1 much	3	2 little	5 little	6 she 13 you/we 7 them 14 him
Unit 96  1	4	2 little	5 few	2 you, us 5 she, her 3 it, it, her, She 6 I, you, them, they
1   1   There's/There is a balloon in the sky.		Unit 96		
2 I She got some of them right. 2 He got most of them right. 3 He got all of them right. 4 She got none of them right. 5 He got all of them right. 5 She got none of them right. 6 She got none of them right. 7 She got none of them right. 8 She got none of them right. 9 She got none of them was there was, There have been on There was there have been on There was there was, There have been on There was there was, There have been on The was there was the samilance.  1 I all day the whole day each every 1 I There * 4 there, It, there it samilance.  2 I was there have been on	1	2 most of them	5 some of them	<ol> <li>There's/There is a balloon in the sky.</li> <li>There are some boxes on the car.</li> </ol>
2 No student/No students   2 It was Vicky.   3 Most of the money   4 All cars   5 All fruit/Most fruit   5 It st/It is a nuisance.   5 All fruit/Most fruit   5 It st/It is important to keep it somewhere safe.   6 All (of) the lights   5 It st/It is important to keep it somewhere safe.   7 It here, it   1 It here   4 It somewhere safe.   4 It st/It is important to keep it somewhere safe.   7 It here, it   1 It	2	<ul><li>He got most of them</li><li>He got all of them rig</li></ul>	right. ht.	2 1 There's/There is, There'll be 2 are there, There's/There has been OR There was
Unit 97	3	<ul><li>No student/No studen</li><li>Most of the money</li><li>All cars</li><li>All fruit/Most fruit</li></ul>	nts	<ul> <li>2 It was Vicky.</li> <li>3 It's/It is a nuisance.</li> <li>4 It's/It is very warm.</li> <li>5 It's/It is important to keep it somewhere safe.</li> </ul>
1 l each 4 each/every 2 each/every 5 every 3 every 1 l Vis looking at herself (in the mirror). 2 l all day/the whole day 2 're/are introducing themselves. 2 all night/the whole night 3 He's/He is teaching himself Arabic. 3 every morning 4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel). 4 all morning/the whole morning 5 all day/the whole day 6 every time 3 l you 4 her 3 l One of them has a separate restaurant. 2 Both of them serve bar snacks. 3 himself 3 One of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  4 l Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 each (Also possible: every)  4 Unit 98  1 l the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 5 the types them himself. 5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 4 themselves 4 Rita 8 Tom 2 itself 5 yourselves		Unit 97		
3 every  2 1 all day/the whole day 2 all night/the whole night 3 every morning 4 all morning/the whole morning 5 all day/the whole day 6 every time  3 1 One of them has a separate restaurant. 2 Both of them serve bar snacks. 3 One of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 5 whole 6 oach (Also possible: every)  Unit 98  1 1 Vis looking at herself (in the mirror). 2 2 're/are introducing themselves. 3 He's/He is teaching himself Arabic. 4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/He is teaching himself a low-like in drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/He is teaching himself arabic.  5 Joannal of themself a low-like in drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/He is teaching himself arabic.  5 Joannal of New like in drying herself (on/with a towel).  6 Or of them has a separate restaurant.  2 him 5 yourself  2 him 5 yourself  2 him 5 yourself  1 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  1 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  1 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  3 remember  1 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  3 remember  1 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  3 remember  5 relax  5 relax  6 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  6 relax  6 leel 4 worry  6 leel 4 worry  7 leel 4 leel 4 leel 4 leel	1		•	3 There, It
2 1 all day/the whole day 2 all night/the whole night 3 every morning 4 all morning/the whole morning 5 all day/the whole day 6 every time 3 1 One of them has a separate restaurant. 2 Both of them serve bar snacks. 3 One of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 4 1 the cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves.  Unit 98  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 4 Rita 8 Tom  1 1 Vis looking at herself (In the mirror). 2 're/are introducing themselves. 3 He's/He is teaching himself Arabic. 3 He's/He is teaching himself Arabic. 4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel). 4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/She is drying herself (on/with a towel).  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  3 litself  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  3 litself  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  5 let's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  6 he'r/with a towel).  4 She's/He is teaching himself Arabic.  6 ley yourselves 5 vourselves  5 relax  7 The cleans them himself.  1 He cleans them himself.  2 I bake it myself.  3 They grow them themselves.  4 We decorated it ourselves.  5 He types them himself.  6 I develop them myself.  5 He types them himself.  6 I develop them myself.		•	5 every	Unit 100
5 all day/the whole day 6 every time 3 1 One of them has a separate restaurant. 2 Both of them serve bar snacks. 3 One of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 each (Also possible: every)  Unit 98  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 4 Rita 8 Tom  3 1 you 4 her 2 him 5 yourself 2 him 5 Tourself 2 ourselves 3 itself  2 him 5 Tourself 2 ourselves 3 itself  1 1 feel 4 worry  2 help yourselves 5 relax  3 remember  Unit 101  1 1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves.  4 We decorated it ourselves.  5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 7 Mike and Harriet 2 I herself 4 themselves 2 itself 5 yourselves	2	1 all day/the whole day 2 all night/the whole ni 3 every morning	-	<ul><li>2 're/are introducing themselves.</li><li>3 He's/He is teaching himself Arabic.</li></ul>
6 every time 3 1 you 4 her 3 1 One of them has a separate restaurant. 2 Both of them serve bar snacks. 3 One of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 remember  Unit 101  1 1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves.  Unit 98  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 4 Rita 8 Tom  3 1 you 4 her 5 yourself 5 yourself 1 1 feel 4 worry 2 help yourselves 5 relax 1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves. 4 We decorated it ourselves. 5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 5 yourseles				2 1 yourself 2 ourselves 3 itself
3 himself  2 Both of them has a family room. 4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 each (Also possible: every)  Unit 98  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 4 Rita 8 Tom  3 himself  3 himself  4 1 feel 4 worry 2 help yourselves 5 relax 3 remember  Unit 101  4 1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves. 4 We decorated it ourselves. 5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 7 Unit 98 8 Tom 9 Tombor 1 feel 4 worry 1 He cleans them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 7 He types them himself. 8 I develop them myself. 9 Junit 101 9 Juni		•		3 1 you 4 her
4 Neither of them allows/allow pub games. 5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  4 1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 3 the cleans them himself. 3 each (Also possible: every)  4 Unit 98  5 Neither of them has/have live music. 6 One of them has a non-smoking area.  5 Unit 101  1 1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves.  4 We decorated it ourselves.  5 He types them himself. 5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 7 Mike and Harriet 7 A themselves 8 Tom 9 Laura 6 Rita 5 yourselves	3	2 Both of them serve ba	ar snacks.	- J
Unit 101  1 Neither 4 every 2 either 5 whole 1 1 He cleans them himself. 3 each (Also possible: every)  Unit 98  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 2 I herself 4 themselves 4 Rita 8 Tom  Unit 101  1 He cleans them himself. 2 I bake it myself. 3 They grow them themselves. 4 We decorated it ourselves. 5 He types them himself. 6 I develop them myself. 7 Mike and Harriet 2 I herself 4 themselves 7 yourselves		<ul><li>4 Neither of them allow</li><li>5 Neither of them has/h</li></ul>	vs/allow pub games. ave live music.	2 help yourselves 5 relax
2 either 5 whole 1 1 He cleans them himself. 3 each (Also possible: every)  Unit 98  4 We decorated it ourselves.  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 2 Laura 6 Rita 5 Mike and Harriet 2 1 herself 4 themselves 4 Rita 8 Tom 2 itself 5 yourselves	4		-	Unit 101
Unit 98  4 We decorated it ourselves.  1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 5 He types them himself.  2 Laura 6 Rita 6 Rita 6 I develop them myself.  3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 2 1 herself 4 themselves  4 Rita 8 Tom 2 itself 5 yourselves		2 either	5 whole	2 I bake it myself.
1 1 the dress 5 Rita and Melanie 5 He types them himself. 2 Laura 6 Rita 6 Rita 6 I develop them myself. 3 the jeans 7 Mike and Harriet 2 1 herself 4 themselves 4 Rita 8 Tom 2 itself 5 yourselves		Unit 98		
4 Rita 8 Tom 2 itself 5 yourselves	1	1 the dress		5 He types them himself.
		,		2 itself 5 yourselves

2 1 he

8 she

2 1 a lot of

5 much/a lot of

3 1 They're/They are always thinking about each other. Inner secrets They've/They have got lots of photos of each other. The only girl for me They enjoy each other's company. **Unit 105** 4 They're/They are crazy about each other. 1 a small white car 1 each other ourselves 2 an attractive old building each other 5 themselves 3 an expensive wooden garden seat 3 themselves 6 each other 4 a famous Italian opera singer **Unit 102** 1 a lovely old glass vase 2 1 a smart one or a casual one, a casual one an attractive wall mirror 2 2 a big one or a small one, A big one 3 a modern office desk 3 A white one or a brown one, A brown one red metal kitchen chairs 4 an ordinary one or an electric one, an ordinary one 5 a splendid old model boat valuable Australian postage stamps 11 haven't got one. a small wooden coffee table 2 I must get some new ones. 3 Have you seen this one? 3 1 This is a powerful Japanese business computer. 4 I've hired one. This is an excellent small electric fire. 2 Can't you find any nice ones? This is a big new chocolate bar. 6 The one in the car is better. This is a terrific American television comedy. These are stylish aluminium garage doors. 3 1 one them These are wonderful modern sports shoes. 5 2 it some This is a very good German mobile phone. 3 one **Unit 106 Unit 103** 1 1 the hungry 4 the unemployed 1 everyone/everybody, no one/nobody 2 the homeless 5 the old 2 someone/somebody, something 3 the sick somewhere, Someone/somebody 4 everywhere, nothing 1 We live near a special school for the deaf. 2 The old soldiers were holding a service for the dead. 4 2 1 someone anywhere The government should do more for the poor. 2 anyone 5 anything I'm doing a course on caring for the mentally something 3 somewhere 6 handicapped. 1 his 3 likes, they 3 5 the old people 1 The sick 2 it has, their The homeless 2 the young people 6 the unemployed 7 the deaf 1 I once met someone famous. the poor 2 Someone's car is blocking me in. I've got something else/something different to tell **Unit 107** vou. 1 exhausted faccinating We know everyone's opinions/opinion. Everyone else except you is going. Nothing exciting ever happens here. **Unit 104** 

1	1	modern chairs	4	classical music
	2	a black cat	5	an old car
	3	solar power	6	a tall building
2	-	easant, ideal, quiet,		oular, lovely, friendly,

- helpful, good, marvellous, excellent, local
- 3 1 The world is asleep
  - 2 My chief desire
  - 3 My heart is content
  - 4 The main thing to remember
  - The night is alive

1	1	extiausteu	3	rascinating
	2	interested	4	exciting
2	1	surprised	4	confusing
	2	disappointing	5	bored
	3	puzzled	6	interesting
3	1	relaxing	5	fascinating
	2	annoyed	6	thrilling
	3	amused	7	exhausting

## 4 interested **Unit 108**

1	1	brightly	6	safely
-	2	patiently	7	fluently
	3	immediately	8	carefully
	4	punctually	9	quietly
	5	secretly		

2	1 angrily5 enthusiasti 2 happily 6 reasona 3 automatically7 sec 4 publicly	=	7	1 happier 7 more exciting 2 smallest 8 most 3 best 9 wetter 4 shorter 10 lower
3	<ol> <li>United won the game</li> <li>I've/I have checked the</li> <li>Your dog barked at no</li> <li>It's/It is raining quite</li> </ol>	ne figures carefully. ne very fiercely.	1	5 most important 11 worse 6 older  Unit 111 1 The church is older than the library.
4	1 dark 6 unha 2 terribly 3 badly 4 suddenly 5 quietly	ppy 7 sadly 8 curious 9 foolishly	2	<ul> <li>2 Matthew is stronger than Daniel.</li> <li>3 Harriet is taller than Mike.</li> <li>4 Claire is more popular than Andrew.</li> <li>4 Mark's car is bigger than Sarah's.</li> <li>1 Friday is the busiest day</li> </ul>
1	Unit 109 1 adjective 2 adjective 3 adverb	4 adjective 5 adverb 6 adverb		<ul> <li>The Metropole is the nicest hotel in (the) town.</li> <li>This watch is one of the cheapest (watches) you can buy.</li> <li>This Beatles album is the best (one) they ever made.</li> <li>Alan is the most successful salesman in the</li> </ul>
2	1 hardly 2 nearly 3 long 4 late	5 fast 6 hard 7 wrong 8 straight	3	company.  Plastic isn't as strong as metal.  The stool isn't as comfortable as the armchair.  Swimming isn't as exciting as surfing.
3	<ul><li>1 bad</li><li>2 good</li><li>3 badly</li></ul>	4 well 5 ill	4	4 The post isn't as quick as e-mail.  1 me 2 1 am 3 me 4 he has
4	1 badly 2 good 3 fast 4 long 5 hardly	6 nearly 7 hard 8 lately 9 likely	1	Unit 112  1 less painful 4 less attractive 2 less busy 5 less seriously 3 less convenient 6 less optimistic 1 Yesterday was a lot colder than today.
1	Unit 110 1 are more interesting 2 is higher 3 is more beautiful		_	<ul> <li>My coat is a bit longer than is fashionable.</li> <li>I left work slightly earlier than usual this afternoon.</li> <li>The shop is much more expensive than the supermarket.</li> <li>Is the new machine any more reliable than the old</li> </ul>
2	1 richest 2 most modern 3 greatest 4 most exciting	<ul><li>5 most popular</li><li>6 most successful</li><li>7 most attractive</li><li>8 happiest</li></ul>	3	one?  1 more and more difficult 2 more and more complicated 3 more and more
3	<ul><li>1 happier</li><li>2 faster</li><li>3 more helpful</li><li>4 lovelier</li></ul>	<ul><li>5 bigger</li><li>6 more restful</li><li>7 more modern</li></ul>	4	<ul> <li>4 longer and longer</li> <li>5 worse and worse</li> <li>1 the quieter the roads (are).</li> <li>2 the wider the choice (is).</li> </ul>
4	<ul><li>1 more smartly</li><li>2 longer</li><li>3 more often</li></ul>	<ul><li>4 more carefully</li><li>5 earlier</li><li>6 louder/more loudly</li></ul>		<ul> <li>the more confused I get.</li> <li>the more fluently you can speak.</li> <li>the more crowded the beaches get.</li> </ul>
5	1 worst 2 better 3 worse	4 best 5 furthest	1	Unit 113  1 outside 4 Obviously 2 Perhaps 5 silently
6	1 least 2 less 3 more	4 Most		3 always 6 hard

- 2 1 mid 6 mid 7 2 end end 8 front 3 front 9 4 mid mid 10 mid 5 mid
- 3 1 clearly crossed
  - 2 will probably rain
  - 3 didn't fully understand
  - 4 are usually
  - 5 occasionally visited it/ visited it occasionally
  - 6 were soon working
  - 7 has obviously forgotten
- 4 1 It usually rains when David is on holiday.
  - 2 Rita's friend visits her most weekends.
    - 3 Mark gets a pay rise every year.
    - 4 Rachel never checks her work.
- 5 1 I've always known your secret.
  - 2 We certainly can't afford a new car. (Also possible: Certainly we can't afford a new car.)
  - 3 The tourists didn't walk far.
  - 4 Tom cut the paper carefully./Tom carefully cut the paper.
  - 5 Natasha can also play the violin. (Also possible: Natasha can play the violin also.)
  - 6 I read the newspaper most days./Most days 1 read the newspaper.
- 6 1 peacefully at his home
  - 2 through the streets yesterday
  - 3 to Greece last year
  - 4 there in June
- 7 1 We had a lovely time in the country.
  - 2 We arrived home safely at about eight.
  - 3 You must come and visit us before too long. (Also possible: Before too long you must come and visit us.)
  - 4 It's always nice to see you and Tony.
  - 5 Maybe you'll be able to come in the New Year./You'll be able to come in the New Year maybe. (Also possible: You'll maybe be able to come in the New Year.)
  - 6 We'll see you sometime.

- 1 1 still, yet
  - 2 still, already
  - 3 vet, still
- 2 1 I already owe Emma £20.
  - 2 We've already spent all our money./We've spent all our money already.
  - 3 But it still looks dirty. (Also possible: But it looks dirty still.)

- 4 We haven't seen them yet. (Also possible: We haven't yet seen them.)
- 5 I still can't understand the rules.
- 3 1 They/Children don't play there any more
  - 2 they/boats still come along the river
  - 3 it/the view isn't beautiful any more
  - 4 it's/it is still our home (Also possible: it's/it is our home still)
- 4 I no longer 3 any more 2 yet 4 already

#### **Unit 115**

- 1 1 She's very busy. 3 He's very strong.
  - 2 She's a bit thirsty. 4 He's extremely happy.
- 2 1 very 4 very 2 quite 5 a bit 3 a bit 6 quite
- 3 1 That radio is a bit loud.
  - 2 I quite like my new job.
  - 3 Why don't you slow down a little?
  - 4 The rain completely spoilt our day./The rain spoilt our day completely.
  - 5 We did the job fairly quickly.
  - 6 I feel a lot better now.
  - We enjoyed the concert very much. (Also possible: We very much enjoyed the concert.)
  - 8 My arms ached terribly.
- 4 1 absolutely 5 very 2 really 6 totally
  - 3 very much 7 very
  - 4 extremely

- 1 1 quite 4 quite 2 late 5 bright
  - 3 easy
- 2 1 rather better
  - 2 rather noisy
  - 3 rather/quite busy
  - 4 quite popular
- 3 1 It's/It is rather/quite complicated.
  - 2 My car is quite big.
  - 3 it went on rather longer than I expected.
  - 4 I made it quite quickly.
- 4 1 completely ridiculous
  - 2 fairly difficult
  - 3 completely different
  - 4 fairly surprised
  - 5 fairly useful
  - 6 completely certain

- 1 The plane is too low.
  - The gate isn't wide enough.
  - The water isn't warm enough.
- 2 1 sweet enough. 5 too many mistakes.
  - 2 too expensive. 6 too much traffic.
  - 7 3 enough rain. too complicated.
  - 8 4 clearly enough. enough food
- 3 1 It's too wet for a picnic/too wet to have a picnic.
  - I/We haven't got enough chairs for all my/our
  - I had too much equipment to carry.
  - (I think) Natasha is good enough to be a professional musician.

#### **Unit 118**

- 5 by/beside/next to 1 1 up 2 in/inside 6 around/round above/over 7 in front of 4 8 away from/out of along (Also possible: down)
- 2 behind, through, below 1
  - past, down, opposite
- 3 1 opposite between 2 between 5 next to
  - 3 opposite
- 4 1 under 4 around 5 2 up into
  - 3 on 6 out of
- 1 6 on
  - 2 outside 7 through
  - 8 3 in/into near
  - 4 past/by 9 among
  - 5 off

#### **Unit 119**

- He's/He is on the roof. 1 1
  - They're/They are at the disco. 2
  - He's/He is in the bath.
  - She's/She is at the lights
- 2 1 at the petrol station 4 in the restaurant 5

at the station

2 at the zoo

in the theatre

1 in 2 on 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 at 7 on 8 on 9 in 10 at

## **Unit 120**

- In 1961.
  - 2 On 22 November 1963.
  - 3 At 12.30.

- 1 X 6 on 2 7 on in 3 Х 8 in 4 9 in on 5 10 at at
- 3 3 1 in time in time 2 on time 4 on time
- 4 1 at, on 2 at, in 3 on, in 4 in, in

#### **Unit 121**

2

- 1 since 2 for 3 since 4 for 1
- 2 He's/He has been in bed for three days.
  - 2 They've/They have been in the garden since breakfast.
    - 3 He's/He has been at his desk since nine o'clock.
    - She's/She has been on the road for five hours.
- 3 1 since four o'clock 4 for six weeks
  - 2 ten years ago 5 for three years
  - since Monday/ 6 eight months ago 7 since then for three weeks
- 4 1 before 2 ago 3 before

#### **Unit 122**

- 1 1 while 2 while 3 during 4 while
- 2 1 by 2 until 3 until 4 by 5 by
- 3 1 as 2 like 3 as 4 like
- 4 1 as 2 as if 3 as 4 as if
- 5 By the time I arrived at your flat, you'd/you had left.
  - Rita went to the party with Tom, as you predicted.
  - I saw your sister while I was shopping in London.
  - You can keep the book until you've/you have finished it OR you finish it.

1	1	in	7	on
	2	from	8	in
	3	in	9	by
	4	by	10	on
	5	in	11	In
	6	on	12	on, on

- 2 I pay in cash?
  - the information up to date?
  - you drop the ball on purpose?
  - there anything (to watch) on television tonight?
  - 5 you be here at the end of July?
  - nuclear power a good idea in your opinion? 6
  - your car for sale?
  - you approve of the plan on the whole?
- 1 by 2 on 3 in 4 by 5 by

- 1 1 of 3 in
  - 2 in 4 at (Also possible: in)
- 2 1 damage to 5 tax on
  - 2 way of 6 difficulty with
  - 3 answer to 7 matter with
  - 4 cause of
- 3 1 with 5 with
  - 2 of 6 for 3 of 7 of
  - 4 for 8 between
- 4 1 answers to all the (quiz) questions
  - 2 knowledge of French
    - 3 desire for progress
  - 4 difference between the (two) colours
  - 5 preference for our/Zedco products

#### **Unit 125**

- 1 1 afraid of the dark.
  - 2 bored with the video.
  - 3 interested in computers.
  - 4 surprised at/by the news.
  - 5 proud of the/their victory.
  - 6 annoyed with her/the children.
  - 7 They're not/They aren't satisfied with their pay increase.
- 2 1 for 2 at 3 at 4 for 5 at 6 to
- 3 1 responsible for 5 full of
  - 2 ready for 6 interested in
  - 3 aware of 7 late for
  - 4 similar to 8 famous for

#### **Unit 126**

- 1 1 at 2 after 3 into
- 2 1 pay for 5 suffering from
  - 2 ask for 6 decided on
  - 3 care about 7 concentrate on
  - 4 caring for 8 agree with

  - 1 relies on 6 apologized for
    - 2 deals with 7 believed in
    - 3 feel like 8 laughing at
  - 4 reached 9 discuss 5 listening to 10 left
  - 1 to 2 to 3 to 4 about 5 of

## **Unit 127**

3

- 1 1 into 5 to 2 from 6 to
  - 3 as 7 with
  - 4 with/to

- 2 1 prefer water to wine?
  - 2 blaming Tom for the/his accident?
  - 3 thank you for the/her present?
  - 4 accuse him/the head teacher of murder?
  - 5 provide you with towels?
    - (Also possible: provide towels for you?)
  - 6 invite you to her wedding?
  - 7 congratulate them on the/their (great) victory?
  - 8 pointed a gun at Melanie?
- 3 1 about 5 about/of
  - 2 of 6 about
  - 3 to 7 about/of
  - 4 to

2

## **Unit 128**

- 1 1 stay in 6 come back
  - 2 pay ... back 7 get on
  - 3 fall over 8 take ... back
  - 4 lie down 9 go away
  - cut out 10 give away
  - 1 left out 4 put off
  - 2 sent out 5 made up
  - 3 throw away 6 go on /carry on
- 3 1 picks ... up 6 win back
  - 2 put on/put ... on 7 wash up/wash ... up
  - 3 ring ... up 8 look ... up
  - 4 hand in/hand ... in 9 held up
  - 5 written ... down 10 mixing ... up

- 1 She's picking litter up./She's picking up litter.
  - 2 They're digging the road up./They're digging up the road
  - 3 He's washing the plates up./He's washing up the plates.
  - 4 She's plugging the television in./She's plugging in the television.
- 2 1 Nick says he's/he has given up smoking.
  - 2 How did the accident come about?
  - 3 I think Matthew and Emma have fallen out.
  - 4 The problem isn't going to just go away.
  - 5 The government is bringing in a new tax on computers.
  - 6 Zedco want to set up a new sales office in Germany.
- 3 1 sort out 5 fallen behind
  - 2 taking over 6 step down
  - 3 fell through 7 taken on
  - 4 fight off 8 laying off

- 1 1 completely
  - 2 away/disappearing
  - 3 continuing
  - 4 from start to finish
  - 5 aloud
  - 6 disconnected
  - 7 away/departing
  - 8 becoming less
  - 9 completely to the ground
  - 10 from start to finish
  - 11 to different people
  - 12 increasing
  - 13 wearing
  - 14 stopping completely
- 2 1 on, off 3 down, out 2 out, out 4 on, out
- 3 1 try on 3 speak up
  - 2 taking off 4 setting off

#### **Unit 131**

- 1 1 down on 4 away from 2 out into 5 through to 3 up at 6 in from
- 2 1 run out of 8 go back on 2 send away for 9 get on to 3 look/watch out for 10 go in for
  - 4 look forward to 11 cut down on 5 keep up with 12 fall back on 6 put up with 13 get round to
  - 7 get on with 14 make up for
- 3 1 1 get on (well) with Melanie./Melanie and I get on (well).
  - 2 I might drop in on David.
  - 3 I'll fit in with everyone else.
  - 4 I can't catch up (with) Matthew.
  - 5 The sunny weather is making up for last week.

#### **Unit 132**

1 1 she can't sleep.

say

- 2 he's/he has hurt his back.
- 3 She says she feels sick all the time.
- 4 He says he fell over and hurt himself.
- 2 1 Stokeley Carmichael said (that) black is beautiful.
  - 2 Galileo said (that) the earth moves round the sun.
  - 3 Shakespeare said (that) all the world's a stage.
  - 4 George Orwell said (that) Big Brother is watching you.

say

3 1 tell 5 tell 2 say 6 tell 3 say 7 tell

## **Unit 133**

- 1 Trevor 3 April
  - 2 1998 4 (about) two weeks
- 2 1 you 3 he, you
  - 2 he, your
- 3 1 the day before/the previous day
  - 2 that day
  - 3 here

1

4 the week before/the previous week

#### **Unit 134**

- 1 was 4 was
  - 2 was 5 was (Also possible: is)
  - 3 is (Also possible: was)
- 2 1 you had finished it/your project.
  - 2 you weren't on a diet.
    - 3 you didn't enjoy them/parties.
    - 4 you weren't applying for it/the job.
- 3 1 The Sunday Times said the production was brilliant.
  - 2 Edward Devine said he couldn't remember a funnier show.
  - 3 Robert Walsh said it (had) made him laugh.
  - 4 The Evening Standard said you/people had to see it. (Also possible: The Evening Standard said you/people must see it.)
  - 5 The Telegraph said it would be a great success.
  - 6 The Express said you/people might die laughing.
  - 7 Susan Proctor said it was the funniest show she'd/she had ever seen.
  - 8 Time Out said you/people shouldn't miss it.

#### **Unit 135**

1

- She wants to know how she can find out about the area.
  - 2 He wants to know if/whether there are any guided tours.
  - 3 They want to know where they can stay.
  - 4 They want to know what shows there are.
- 2 1 Do you know if I can park here?
  - 2 Could you tell me how long the film lasts?
  - 3 Do you know how often the buses run?
  - 4 Do you know if we are/we're allowed to smoke?
  - 5 Could you tell me what time the flight is?
  - 6 Could you tell me how much a ticket costs?
- 3 1 why I wanted the job.
  - 2 how I (had) heard about it.
  - 3 if/whether I was fit.
  - 4 if/whether 1 could work on Saturdays.
  - 5 how I would/I'd travel to work.
  - 6 if/whether I had (got) a bicycle.
  - 7 how much I hoped to earn.
  - 8 when I could start.

- 1 1 The doctor told him to take more exercise.
  - 2 His boss asked/told him not to play computer games in the office.
  - 3 A traffic warden told him not to park his car in the High Street.
  - 4 Laura asked him to put some shelves up.
- 2 1 Andrew to take a break.
  - 2 for forgetting the shopping.
  - 3 singing a few songs.
  - 4 Vicky to post a/the letter.
  - 5 making a mistake.
  - 6 Laura not to touch the electric wires.
- 3 1 The builders have promised that everything will be ready on time.
  - 2 The boss insists that we (have to) check the figures carefully.
  - 3 Tom has admitted that his story wasn't completely true.
  - 4 Matthew reminded Emma that her train was about to leave.

#### **Unit 137**

- 1 1 the young man at the door
  - 2 the man who plays his stereo at night
  - 3 the very thin woman
  - 4 the girl with green eyes
    (Also possible: the green

(Also possible: the green-eyed girl)

- 5 the young woman in the office
- 6 the man who drives a taxi
- 7 the smart young man
- 8 the student who failed all her exams
- 2 1 that/which
- 4 that/which
- 2 who/that
- 5 that/which
- 3 who/that
- 6 who/that
- 3 1 The bomb which went off this morning caused a lot of damage
  - 2 The scientist who discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
  - 3 The footballer who took drugs has been banned from playing again.
  - 4 The little girl who had been missing since Thursday has been found safe and well.
  - 5 The company which owns Greenway Supermarkets has laid off thousands of workers.
  - 6 The old lady who did a parachute jump now wants to swim the English Channel.

#### **Unit 138**

- 1 dog that fell down a hole has been rescued.
  - 2 story that upset everyone was untrue.
  - 3 man who interviewed Natasha is a film producer.
  - 4 accident that Daniel saw wasn't very serious.
  - 5 man who/that Claire knows is a millionaire.

- 6 vase that David broke was extremely valuable.
- 7 jacket Melanie wore at the party is really nice.
- 2 1 It's/It is the car you can afford.
  - 2 It's/It is the film people want to see.
  - 3 It's/It is the supermarket you can trust.
  - 4 It's/It is the magazine young people read.
  - 5 They're/They are the chocolates you'll love.
- 3 1 Somewhere I've got a photo of the mountain we climbed.
  - 2 The man who/that repaired my car is a real expert.
  - 3 The detective lost sight of the man he was following.
  - 4 I thought I recognized the assistant who/that served
  - 5 I'm afraid the numbers I chose didn't win a prize.

#### **Unit 139**

- 1 That's/That is the film (that/which) I was talking about.
  - This is the wallpaper (that/which)I've/I have decided on.
  - 3 That's/That is the man (who/that) I played tennis with.
  - 4 Those are the steps (that/which) I fell down.
- 2 1 A hammer is a tool (that/which) you hit nails with.
  - 2 Your destination is the place (that/which) you're/you are going to.
  - 3 A safe is a cupboard (that/which) you keep valuable things in.
  - 4 Your opponent is the person (who/that) you're/you are playing against.
  - 5 A sofa bed is a piece of furniture you can either sit or sleep on.
- 3 1 That is an idea in which our party believes.
  - 2 That is a policy to which I am strongly opposed.
  - 3 These are people about whom no one cares.
  - 4 Those are mistakes of which your party should be ashamed.
  - 5 That is a problem with which the government is now dealing.

- 1 1 Felix Reeves is the journalist whose tape recorder was stolen.
  - 2 Graham Wilshaw is the architect who knew Colin at school.
  - 3 Rex Carter is the farmer whose land Colin bought.
  - 4 Norman Bridge is the lawyer who looked after Colin's interests.
  - 5 Sonia Goldman is the house guest whose fingerprints were on the door handle.

- 2 1 What you have to think about is your profit.
  - What you must know are the needs of your customers.
  - 3 What you should work towards is a realistic target.
  - 4 What you need to do is (to) plan ahead.
- 3 1 Columbus sailed to America.
  - 2 golf that Tiger Woods plays.
  - 3 It was in Greece that the Olympic Games first took place.
  - 4 It's/It is Mercury that is nearest the sun.

- Nelson Mandela, who was in prison for 27 years, became President of South Africa.
  - 2 John Lennon, who was killed in 1980, was one of the Beatles.
  - 3 The Titanic, which sank in 1912, was supposed to be unsinkable.
  - 4 Queen Victoria, who came to the throne in 1837, ruled over the British Empire.
  - 5 Mars, which is 140 million miles away, is known as the red planet.
  - 6 The Berlin Wall, which was built in 1961, stood for 28 years.
- 2 1 It adds information about the college theatre.
  - 2 It tells us which people.
  - 3 It adds information about Lucy Kellett.
  - 4 It tells us which young man.
  - 5 It adds information about the evening.
- 3 1 who took Rita to the party
  - 2 , who has a bad temper,
  - 3 which Tom supports
  - 4 , who is afraid of heights.
  - 5 , which is on the tenth floor,
  - 6 she bought the sofa from

#### **Unit 142**

- 1 1 which 5 whom/who 2 who 6 who 3 whose 7 which 4 why 8 where
- 2 1 which has ten thousand employees
  - 2 whose name was missed off the list
  - 3 (that/which) Laura painted
  - 4 (that/which) we're/we are all looking forward to OR to which we're/we are all looking forward
  - 5 (that/when) Mike and Harriet went camping
  - 6 who is a bit deaf
  - 7 whom/who you'll meet tomorrow
  - 8 where we met the other day
- 3 1 Rachel's mother paid for the meal, which was very kind of her.
  - 2 My brother is disabled, which means he can't get about very easily.

- 3 You left the keys in the car, which was rather careless of you.
- 4 Vicky didn't get the job, which has made her very depressed.
- 5 The police blocked off the road, which caused a traffic jam.

#### **Unit 143**

- 1 1 played 5 watching 2 worn 6 added
  - 3 arriving 7 blocking
  - 4 telling
- 2 1 living in an empty office building have been evicted.
  - 2 employing four thousand people has gone bankrupt.
  - 3 built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.
  - 4 People protesting against pollution have marched to London.
  - 5 Tennis fans hoping to buy tickets have been queuing all night at Wimbledon.
  - 6 A new drug developed at a British university may give us eternal youth.
- 3 1 the youngest girl to swim a length of the pool.
  - 2 the only people to get a pay rise.
  - 3 The pilot was the last person to leave the aircraft.
  - 4 Mrs Harper was the first woman to become Managing Director.
  - 5 Daniel was the most suitable candidate to apply for the job.

- 1 1 1 ask 5 share 2 there are 6 I see 3 it's 7 I'll ask
  - 4 won't cost
- 2 1 If Rachel fails her driving test, she can take it again.
  - 2 If United lose, Tom will be upset.
  - 3 If the office is closed, Mark won't be able to get in.
  - 4 If Nick arrives a bit early, he can help Tom to get things ready.
  - 5 If the party goes on all night, no one will want to do any work tomorrow.
  - 6 If Emma misses the train, she can get the next one.
  - 7 If Matthew enters the race, he'll probably win it.
- 3 1 If you get promoted, your salary goes up.
  - 2 If I drink coffee late at night, I can't sleep.
  - 3 If you don't pay the bill, you get a warning letter.
  - 4 If I try to run fast, I get out of breath.
  - 5 If someone enters the building, the alarm goes off.

- 1 1 If I had a dictionary, I could look the word up.
  - If I wasn't so busy, I'd/I would write to my friends.
  - If my back wasn't aching, I could play tennis.
  - if Claire loved Henry, she'd/she would marry him.
  - if he had a map, he could find the way.
  - if he/David wasn't so clumsy, he wouldn't have so many accidents.
- 2 you wouldn't play
- you thought 2 we go 7 it'd be/it would be
- it won't do
- I didn't play it'd be/it would be
- 9 I wouldn't get
- vou think
- 3 The phone isn't working.
  - It might rain.
  - 3 Mike isn't here.
  - The/This spoon isn't silver.
  - Sarah might call.

#### **Unit 146**

- 1 would have been
  - had lost
  - 3 would have scored
  - she'd been/she had been
  - hadn't been
  - wouldn't have given
  - hadn't been
  - it would have been
  - we'd have beaten/we would have beaten
  - 10 he'd been/he had been
- 2 The guests could/would have had their lunch outside if it had been warm enough/if it hadn't been so cold.
  - Sarah could/would have flown to Rome if the airport hadn't been closed/had been open.
  - Laura might have recognized Nick if he hadn't had a crash-helmet on.
  - Sarah's plants wouldn't have died/might not have died if she'd/she had watered them.
  - Nick could/would have got in (to the ice hockey game) if he'd/he had had a ticket.
- 3 he was/were, he'd/he would have put
  - I'd/I had paid, I wouldn't be
  - 3 you loved, you wouldn't have left

#### **Unit 147**

- If the twins had worn different clothes, we could have told them apart, type 3
  - 2 If you tell me what the instructions say, I'll try to follow them, type 1
  - If people used public transport, there'd be less pollution, type 2

- If you don't wear a sweater, you might not be warm enough, type 1
- If I hadn't seen the product advertised, I wouldn't have bought it. type 3
- 2. 1 you played
  - I wouldn't/couldn't hear 2
  - you'd/you had told
  - 4 I wouldn't have let
  - 5 you didn't play
  - it wouldn't be/it might not be
  - I'd/I had realized 7
  - 8 I would have thrown
  - 9 you go
  - 10 I'll have
- 3 If I'd/I had known how unpopular Jason was, I wouldn't have invited him (to my party).
  - 2 If you put too many tins into the plastic bag, it'll break.
  - If I had a pen, I could write down the address.
  - 4 If I'd/I had started my project earlier, I wouldn't be so far behind (now).
  - If you need some/any help, give me a ring.
  - 6 If the door opens, the fan comes on.

### **Unit 148**

- When the alarm rings,
  - If I feel better tomorrow,
  - When this film finishes,
  - If the plan doesn't work,
- 2 1 unless it's/it is a nice day.
  - 2 unless you're/you are watching it.
  - unless we get help.
  - unless I liked it.
- 1 unless 2 if 3 unless 4 unless
- 4 We'd/We had better book a table in case the restaurant is busy.
  - You ought to insure your jewellery in case it gets
  - 3 I'll leave you my phone number in case you want to contact me.
- 1 unless 2 If 3 in case 4 when 5

#### **Unit 149**

1 1 wish you'd/you would hurry up.

- 2 I wish you'd/you would do the washing-up.
- I wish you'd/you would tell me the whole story.
- I wish you wouldn't blow cigarette smoke in my
- I wish you'd/you would tell me what you're thinking.

- 1 I wish/If only I wasn't so tired.
  - 2 I wish/If only I didn't get (these) headaches.
  - 3 I wish/If only my work was going well/better.
  - 4 I wish/If only I could concentrate.
  - 5 I wish/If only life wasn't so complicated.
- 1 I'd/I had caught it.
  - 2 she'd/she had stayed (there).
  - she'd/she had accepted it.
  - 4 I'd/I had found it. OR I could have found it.
  - 5 he could have played
- I hadn't asked you (to marry me)
  - 2 you wouldn't talk nonsense
  - 3 I was a young man
  - 4 you would/you'd listen
  - 5 I'd/I had met you OR I could have met you

- but it's really quite modern.
  - but she turned it down.
  - but no one laughed.
- Although the house looks old, it's really quite modern.
  - 2 Although Emma was offered a job, she turned it
  - 3 Although the joke was funny, no one laughed.
- Although
- 4 in spite of
- in spite of 2
- 5 in spite of
- 3 Although
- in spite of/despite
  - 2 In spite of/Despite
  - but/although/though 3
  - Even though/Although/Though
- 1 Trevor didn't notice the sign even though it was 5 right in front of him.
  - 2 Matthew doesn't know any French although it was one of his school subjects.
  - 3 Despite being a millionaire, Henry's friend hates spending money.
  - We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.

## **Unit 151**

- to go to sleep.
  - 2 to hear the football results.
  - 3 to look smart.
  - to finance her studies.
- 1 He's/He is going to get to work earlier in order 2 to/so as to impress the boss.
  - 2 He's/He is going to work harder in order to/so as to achieve more.

- 3 He's/He is going to take risks in order to/so as to be a winner.
- 4 He's/He is going to think positively in order not to/so as not to miss any opportunities.
- 1 Nick keeps a dog to guard the house.
  - David is going to be very careful so that he doesn't/won't have an accident.
  - Jessica is going on a diet to lose weight.
  - 4 Trevor often switches off the heating to save money.
  - Sarah had to go to Birmingham for a business
  - Emma wore boots so that her feet wouldn't get wet.

#### **Unit 152**

2

- 1 I'll love you until I die
  - 2 I hear music when I see you
  - 3 Come back before 1 forget you
  - 4 I've been sad since you left me
  - 5 1 fell in love as soon as we met

1	Although	6	SO
2	in order to	7	unless
3	because	8	In spite of
4	If	9	in case
5	but		

3	1	as soon as	7	in case
	2	to	8	until
	3	since	9	although
	4	but	10	if
	5	so that	11	SO

12 in spite of 6 because

## **Unit 153**

3 In other words

1	1	and	4	but
	2	SO	5	so
	3	and	6	but
2	1	Eurthormoro	4	On the

- 1 Furthermore On the contrary 2 however 5 After all
- 1 In other words, you don't want to see him.
  - 2 By the way, what's the time/what time is it?

6

for example

- 3 Anyway, they haven't got one in my size.
- 4 Sarah ('s got one/has one), for example.
- 5 On the contrary, I loved/liked it.

# Key to the tests

The number after the answer tells you which unit of the book has information and practice on that grammar point. The letter after the number tells you which section of the unit to look at.

#### Test1

lΑ	1	aren't 4B	5	are 4B
	2	does 5C	6	doesn't 5C
	3	Do 5C	7	isn't 4B
	4	don't 5C		
lΒ	1	is 4B	7	being 7B
	2	do 5C	8	get 5B
	3	sitting 4B	9	gets 5B
	4	don't 5C	10	means 5B,7A

The girls are playing tennis at the moment. 4B

11

always 6D

12 costing 4B,7C

Both my brothers like sport. 5B

doesn't 5C,7A

go 5A-B

- 3 Anna is wearing her new coat today. 4B
- 4 What colour do you like best? 5C
- 5 My suitcase weighs ten kilos. 7B
- 6 At the moment I'm staying at a hotel. 6C
- Robert catches the same bus every morning. 5B
- What does this word here mean? 5C, 6B
- I'm thinking 7B, cost 7C, It's/It is getting 4C lD 1
  - look 7B, they don't fit 7B, I don't know 7B
  - are you doing 6A, I'm/I am weighing 7B, I need 7A
  - 4 I think 7B, is going 6A, I agree 5A
  - 5 I like 7C, Are you enjoying 7C, I'm/I am loving 7C
  - I'm/I am always falling 6D, do you go 6A, it doesn't
  - I'm living 6C, I'm looking 4C, I promise 5A
  - do you want 6B, I don't understand 6B, you're/you are being 7B

## Test 2

2A	1	left 8B	6	went 8D
	2	were 8B	7	happened 8B
	3	died 8D	8	wasn't 8C
	4	had8B	9	knew 8D
	5	didn't like 8C		

- didn't like 8C
- 2B 1 I was wearing my old coat. 9B, 9C
  - 2 We were (both) on holiday. 8B
  - I didn't make a mistake. 8C
  - 4 The boys were playing (a game of) cards. 9B, 9C
  - 5 I didn't know about the change of plan. 8C, 8D
  - 6 My friend won the competition. 8B
  - Did the Romans build this wall? 8C

2C	1	shining 9A	9	had 8B, 8D
	2	was 9B	10	was 9B
	3	wasn't 9B	11	took 8B, 8D
	4	didn't 8C	12	didn't 8C

hated/detested 13 wanted/hoped/had/ 8B,8D intended 8B, 8D

6 walked/went 8B, 8D 14 When 1 OB 7 were 9B 15 was 8B

sat 8B, 8D

2D 1 It was peaceful and the birds were singing. 9B

- I was washing my hair when the phone rang. 10B
- 3 You didn't come to the club last night. 8C
- 4 It took ages to get home. 8B
- 5 We tried to keep quiet because the baby was sleeping. 9B
- As I was watching him, the man suddenly ran away. 6
- We passed a petrol-station two minutes ago. 8B 7
- Everything seemed OK. 10A
- Where did you buy that bag? 8C
- 10 When I heard the alarm, I left the room immediately. 10B
- 2E 1 was lying 10B, rang 10B, stopped 10A
  - was 10A, left 10B, was falling IOC
  - came 10A, seemed 10A, enjoyed 10A
  - saw 10B, was standing 10B, had 10A
  - opened 1 OB, fell 10B
  - was walking 10B, felt 10B, didn't know 10A
  - were going 10A, heard 10A, drove 10A
  - happened 10A, was driving 10A, saw 10A

## Test 3

3A	1	washed 1 IB	7	scored 1 IB
	2	eaten 1 ID	8	landed 11A
	3	opened 1 IB	9	broken 1 ID
	4	written 11C	10	been 11C
	5	made 11C	11	sold 11C
	6	had 11C	12.	finished 1 IB

- 3B 1 's/has opened 1 IB
  - 2 's/has drawn 11C
  - 3 's/has broken 11C
  - 4 have won 11C
  - 've/have drunk/finished 11C, 11B
  - 've/have washed/cleaned 1 IB
  - 've/have learnt/learned 11C, 1 IB
  - 8 have arrived/come 11B, 11C
  - haven't finished 12A

3C	1	already 12A	6	long 12B
	2	yet 12A	7	gone 13A
	3	been 13A	8	since 12B
	4	ever 13B	9	time 13C
	5	this 13D	10	never 13B

3D I have 14A has 14A 4D 1 I've/I have finished 18C V 14A V 14A 2 have we been waiting 17A, We've/We have been 17B 3 have 14C 8 V 14A 3 we'd/we had drunk, she hurried 19D 4 V 14C 9 has 14B 4 I was having, I heard 19C 5 V 14A 10 have 14B 5 have you been doing 16D, We've/We have done 17A 6 she'd/she had been crying 20C, she'd had/she had 3E 1 went 14C had 18A 2 Ve/have never seen 15B 7 heard, threw 19D did 14C 4 has won 14A Test5 5 worked 15A 5A 1 I'm/I am living 21B, I've/I have found 21C 6 did you get 15C 2 I think, it belongs 21B 7 has been 15B 3 I'm/I am using 21B, I want 21B, I've/I have started 8 has come 14A 9 did you get 14C 4 You leave 21B, I've had/I have had 21D, I've/I have 10 haven't ridden 14C been rushing 21D 11 was 15B 12 Have you ever baked 15B 5B 1 heard 21E 13 was 15A 2 thought 21E 14 rang 14B 3 was 2IE 15 Have you seen 15C 4 called/rang/phoned 21F 16 've/have been 15A 5 stopped 21F 6 was 21E Test 4 7 had21F 4A 1 been 16B 6 Have 18C 8 knocked 2IF 2I'vel8C 7 was 19B 9 got/come 2IF 3werel9C 8 went 19B 10 been 21G 4 been 20B 9 I've 16B 5C 1 It's/It has been raining for ten hours. 2ID 5 hadn't 18C 2 I think it's the right thing to do. 21 B The doctor has been working since six o'clock. 16C 3 We've moved our/the sofa. 21C Rupert had forgotten his credit card. 18A 4 I was having/eating (some/my) breakfast when 3 I didn't want to go until I'd/I had taken a photo. Susan rang. 21E 19D 5 They always play badminton on Tuesday. 21B 4 Nancy has written the report. 17A 5D 1 I was looking 21E 4 I'd spent 21F 5 I've/I have been waiting in the queue (for) forty 2 I'm going 21B They opened 21C minutes (so far). 16C 3 I've been trying 21D 6 When we arrived, everyone was dancing. 19C 7 I've had/I have had the computer for four years. 5E 1 V 21B 5 have 21C 2 been21G V 2lG 6 8 When we were having/eating lunch, there was a 3 was21E 7 been 2ID knock at the door. 19C 4 are21B 8 V 21F Nigel felt sick because he'd/he had eaten too many 5F 1 failed 21C cakes. 20C 2 lives 21B 4C 1 I'd/I had been on holiday. 19D 3 left 21C 2 I've/I have been playing badminton. 16C 4 had made 21G 3 I'd had/1 had had a shock. 17A 5 were walking 21E 4 How long have you been working? 16D 6 saw21E Lots of people were walking along the street 7 has seen 21D outside. 19B 8 hadn't arrived 21F 6 She's/She has been practising her English since last had been waiting 21G/were waiting 2IE summer. 16C 10 have been trying/have tried 2ID I've/I have passed my exam. 17A 11 have had 21D 8 She'd/She had been lying in the sun for too long. 12 are taking 21B

13 believe 2IB

14 want21B

But the coach had already gone. 18A

#### 7C 1 '11/will be having 28B Test 6 was going to drive 29B 6A 1 going 24A '11/will be working 28B 2 will 23B (Also possible: won't) 4 '11/will have done 29A 3 see 27A were going to buy 29B 5 4 not 23C '11/will have had 29A 5 to 26C Shall 23D 7D 1 I'm/I am going 26A OR I'm/I am going to go 24A 6 I'm/I am leaving 26A OR I leave 26B OR I'm going to 7 is 24B 8 getting 26A leave 24A I'm/I am visiting 26A OR I'm/I am going to visit 9 has 27C 3 10 about (Also possible: going/ready) That'll/That will be 25A 6B 1 What time does it get to London? 26B 5 starts 26B/is starting 26A 2 I'll tell her when T see her this evening. 27A 6 you get 27B 3 He's about to fall asleep. 26C 7 I'll/I will send 23B 4 We're/We are meeting in town later, OR We're/We are going to meet in town later. 26A 7E 1 We'll wait for you. 23B I'll send you a postcard. 23B 5 This train stops at Bath. 26B 2 I can read a book while I'm waiting. 27C My friend was going to meet us. 29B I'm/I am going to lie down. 24A Adrian is having a job interview on 17 October. 26A All your friends will be there. 23D We'll/We will have finished our meal by eight No one can go into the building until the police o'clock. 29A have searched it. 27C 6 I might go on the trip. 30C The fire is about to go out. 26C 6C 1 will 25A 6 have 27C 7 2 is 27A will 25A 7F 1 I'm going to move 24A having/holding 26A 3 will 25A 8 2 I'll take 23B 4 going 24A 9 starts/begins 26B 3 we're going 26A 5 to 24B 10 will25A 4 He's going to jump 24C 5 I'll be using 28C 6D 1 leaves 26B 2 I'm going to apply 25A Test 8 I'll help 25B 8A 1 Where have you been? 36B 4 it's about to open 26C Do you sell postcards? 34B 5 I go 27A Who does this calculator belong to? 39A 6 Are you doing 26A How long are you staying here? 36C 6E 1 I'm/I am going to have a rest. 24A 5 What is your new office like? 38B 2 (The) term starts on 6 September. 26B Which of the flights are full? 39B 6 3 There will be a world war in five years' time. 23B What time does the carnival start? 36C 4 Judy and I are/We're playing tennis tomorrow. 26A 8 What holiday has Nancy decided on? 38A 5 Prices will probably fall. 25C 8B 1 7 How old 36C Who 39B (Also possible: Prices are probably going to fall.) What colour 36C How 38B 2 8 6 The car is/We're going to crash! 24C 3 Whose 37B 9 How far 36C Test 7 4 How much 36C 10 How often 36C 5 Which 39A 11 What 39A going 24C 7a 1 5 was 29B What kind 36C 6 2 be 28C are 26A 6 7 will 23A to 24B 8C 1 Are you a student here? 34B 3 4 don't 26B 8 about 26C How many cakes have you eaten? 37B Did you enjoy your walk? 34B 3 7B 1 is26B 5 V 28c 4 Where have your friends gone? 36B 2 V26C 6 V29b 5 What kind of music do you like? 36C 3 be 23C 7 will 27B Does Peter play tennis? 34B 4 for 26C to 29A What are you talking about? 38A What has happened? 37A

8D	1	Where did you buy your coat? 36B	7 won't 35B 12 don't 41E	
	2	Can Amy swim? 34B	8 not 43B 13 Which 39A	
	3	Which band do you like best? 37B	9 will 42C 14 so 43A	
	4	Who am I speaking to? 38A	10 far36C 15 hasn't 41E	
	5	How much do video recorders cost? 36C	11 so43B 16 Which 40B	
	6	May/Can I come in (, please)? 34A	T410	
	7	How long does the journey take? 36B	Test 10	
	8	What did you lock the door for? 38B	<b>10A</b> 1 mustn't 48A 5 needn't 48A	
	9	What happens next? 37A	2 Would 51C 6 Shall 51B	
	10	Shall we (all) go out together? 34A	3 might 46B 7 had 49C	
8E	1	How many cars have the Smiths got/do the Smiths	4 would 52A 8 wouldn't 52C	
		have? 36C	10BI V5IC 6 V52A	
	2	Where does Janet work? 36B	2 V 47A 7 been 53B	
	3	Why is Andrea learning English? 36A	3 to 44C 8 V 49D	
	4	What was the film like? 38B	4 for 50A 9 V 48B	
	5	When will the meeting take place? 36B	5 be46A 10 be 45C	
	6	Who switched off the computer? 37A	<b>10C</b> 1 We ought to be careful. 49B	
	7	Whose burglar alarm was ringing? 37B	2 I was able to finish all my work. 44C	
	8	Who did Anna go to the dance with? 38A	3 It must have been a terrible experience for you.	53D
	$T\epsilon$	est 9	4 Players aren't allowed/are not allowed to have a	
9A			drink. 45C	
9A	2	Who's 37A 7 they 42B don't 42B 8 Which 39B	5 You'd/You had better sit down. 49C	
	3	not40B 9 don't 40B	6 The report has to be on my desk tomorrow	
	4	has 35B 10 neither 42A	morning. 47A	
	5	Haven't 41B 11 doesn't 41B	7 Joanne mightn't have/might not have received	my
	6	so43B 12 Let's 42C	message. 53C	
			8 Martin can't be jogging in this weather. 46C	
9B		Where do you live? 36B	9 Tessa would like a cup of coffee. 52B	
	2	What are you thinking about? 38A	10 Nancy didn't need to clean the flat. 48C	
	3 4	Would you like to come to my room? 34A	<b>10D</b> 1 asking permission 45A	
	4	Didn't you watch the football match on television? 41C	2 giving an order 50B	
	5	May I take a photo (, please)? 34A	3 asking for advice 49B	
	6	Have you seen Polly? 34B	4 inviting 51C	
	7	How many letters have you written? 37B	5 offering to help 5IB	
	8	Who is/Who's coming to your party? 37A	6 making a suggestion 51A	
	9	How often does Martin cook? 36C	7 refusing permission 45B	
	10	What will the weather be (like) tomorrow? 38B	8 making a request 50A	
9C	1	No, it hasn't. 35B	9 expressing a wish 47B	
,,	2	No, 1 hate it/Yes, 1 love it. 41D	10E 1 have/need 48B	
	3	Yes, I expect so. 43B	2 may/might (Also possible: could) 46A	
	4	It isn't very nice, is it? 42B	3 has 47A	
	5	Yes, please. 35C	4 can 44A	
	6	So am I./I am too. 43A	5 allowed 45C	
	7	I hope not. 43B	6 supposed 49D	
	8	Neither did the second. 43A	7 shouldn't 49B (Also possible: mustn't 48A)	
9D	1	How old are you? 36C	8 able 44B	
עו	2	Did you go to college? 34B	Test 11	
	3	What are your interests? 39A	11A 1 The film may be banned. 54C	
	4	Which company do you work for? 38A	2 Nancy was offered a pay increase. 57A	
	5	What don't you like about your job? 41E	The mistakes need correcting/need to be correct	eted.
OF:	1		59B	
9E		doesn't 40B 4 No 41D	4 The situation was reported to be under control	. 57C
	2	course 35C 5 for 38B neither/nor 43A 6 did 42B	5 The new drug is being tested. 54B	
	5	normor/nor 43A 0 ulu 42D	6 The machine hasn't been used for ages 55B	

6 The machine hasn't been used for ages. 55B

<b>11</b> B 1 is 54B 6 been 54B	5 need 64G (Also possible: have/ought)				
2 by 55B 7 have 58B	6 not61A				
3 be 54C/get 54D 8 to 57C	7 help 61C (Also possible: stop 64D)				
4 were 54B 9 being 59A	8 to 62D				
5 it 57B	9 on61D				
IIC 1 The song was sung by Pavarotti. 55B	12D 1 We've finished decorating the flat. 61A				
2 Nigel had his passport stolen. 58D	2 I regret saying what I did. 63B				
3 Doctors are paid a lot of money. 57A	3 Tessa decided not to go to work. 60A				
4 1 hope to be interviewed for the job. 59A	4 Do you mind helping me? 61B				
5 The floor was being cleaned. 54B	5 I'm beginning to get worried. 63C				
6 Judy is having her car repaired. 58B	6 I can't afford to buy a new car. 60A				
7 Tessa got lost. 54D	7 I hope to avoid making things worse. 62E				
8 It was agreed that the plan should go ahead. 57B	8 Peter seems to have gone away already. 60B				
<ul><li>9 When did you get your kitchen decorated? 58C</li><li>10 Exercise is said to be good for you. 57C</li></ul>	12 E 1 The children couldn't wait to see their presents. 62C				
10 Exercise is said to be good for you. 57C	2 I can't stand getting up in the dark. 61C				
<b>IID</b> 1 b) 55A 4 a) 55A	3 I happened to see your brother yesterday. 62D				
2 b) 55A 5 b) 55A	4 The shop tends to open ten minutes late. 60C				
3 a) 55A	5 Do you fancy going for a walk? 62C				
IIE 1 The story was written by Agatha Christie. 55B	6 The police carried on watching the house. 61D				
2 Baseball is played at this stadium. 54B	7 I'll/I will never forget seeing Nelson Mandela. 64A				
3 This shirt needs ironing/needs to be ironed. 59 B	Test 13				
4 I got my hair cut yesterday. 58C	<b>13A</b> 1 for 67B 6 to 69B(3)				
5 It is believed that there is going to be a war. 57B	2 in 75A 7 enough 68C				
6 My parents got divorced last year. 54D	3 V 70C 8 for 74C				
7 I've got a report to write. 59B	4 V 66C 9 them 67C				
8 The winner was given a prize 57A	5 V 6 5 D 10 V 73B				
9 This man on TV is supposed to be the tallest person in the world. 57C	<b>13B</b> 1 to get 71B 8 to follow 68B				
in the world. 37C	13B 1 to get 71B 8 to follow 68B 2 making 70B 9 to be 67D				
Test 12	3 reaching 70B 10 to do 65B				
<b>12A</b> 1 to organize 62B 6 to be 62B	4 running 65D 11 respect 69B(3)				
2 wearing 62B 7 working 62B	5 dreaming 73A 12 to do 65B				
3 to approve 62B 8 to buy 62B	6 to happen 65C 13 buying 65E				
4 to be 62B 9 waiting 62B	7 ordering 73B 14 order 69B(2)				
5 reminding 62B	13C 1 We saw Rupert looking in a shop window. 74A				
12B 1 We must avoid wasting so much time. 61A	2 I remember the clown falling over. 65D				
2 Sometimes a country refuses to take part in the	3 Tessa wasn't sure which way to go. 66C				
Olympics. 62B	4 The porter just stood there expecting a tip. 75A				
3 I'd/I would like to see the Rocky Mountains some	5 How about going to the barbecue? 73B				
day. 63B	6 Susan is used to (always) living in the country. 72B				
4 I meant to give Judy a nice welcome yesterday. 64E	7 I'm afraid of hurting myself. 71A				
5 I always like to see my doctor once a year. 63A	8 Christopher apologized for forgetting to pay. 70B				
6 The buses usually stop running before midnight.	9 The food was too cold for Michelle to eat. 68C				
64D 7 I can't face getting up at five tomorrow. 61C	10 It was silly of Polly to give away the secret. 67E				
8 Last year we made an agreement to work together.	(Also possible: Polly was silly to give away the				
60D	secret.)				
9 Yesterday you promised to carry on shooting the	<b>13</b> D 1 after 73C 8 to 72B				
film. 62B	2 to 65B 9 how 66B				
10 My father seems to be getting better now. 60B	3 used72A 10 of71A				
<b>12</b> C 1 wait 62C	4 to71B 11 for68A				
12C 1 wait 62C 2 to 60A	5 having/eating 70B 12 by 73B				
3 seeing/meeting 61A	6 of 67E 13 Having 75B				
4 would 63B	7 to 68D 14 put 74D				

13E I	breaking 70C, kno	ock 74D		<b>15B</b> 1	work 87B		
2	to see 69A(8), to	forget 68	BD	2	quite a difficult 8	89B	
3	doing 73C, to wr	rite 69A(2	2)	3	Golf 86B		
4	to bother 71C, to	ask 66B		4	School 87A		
5	to play 72A, water	ch 69B(2)		5	a really nice 89B		
т	V4 1 4			6	some photos 851	)	
1	est 14			7	the violin 86C		
<b>14A</b> 1	a 77B	5	V 77B	8	breakfast 84F		
2	V76A	6	some 77A	9	an X-ray 84D		
3	V 77B	7	an 78C	10	0 the radio 86C		
4	a 76A	8	an 78C	1	1 the environment	84B	
<b>14B</b> 1	much 76C	6	saving 80A	12	2 such terrible 89C		
2	clothes 80A	7	doesn't 79C	<b>15C</b> 1	X 86B		
3	pairs 81A	8	was 79A	2			
4	fun 76A	9	was 79A	3	X 88B		
5	is/was 79E	10	piece/slice 78A	4	an 84D		
			•	5	a 83B		
<b>14C</b> 1	Every window wa			6	the 90C		
2	My earnings arer	_		7	X90F		
3	There was litter e	-		8	a83B		
4		_	t some food. 76A	9	X 88D		
5	Judy bought a pa	ir of bino	culars. 81A	10		D (Also)	accible: V)
6	1 need a new che	-		11		D (Also J	bossible. A)
7	I'll have a glass o	f orange j	uice, please. 78C		2 a84C		
8	The reporter need	ded two p	ieces/bits/items of		3 one85B		
	information. 77B					مسم بماليان	`
<b>14D</b> 1	We can't sit here h	secauce th	ne grass is wet. 79A		a 83B (Also poss	ibie: one	)
2			r on your bread? 76A		the83B	م ا مانه م	C. ala)
3	All my belonging		•		What 89D (Also	possible	(Such)
4			ion about hotels? 77B		7 so 89C		
5	The police are qu			18	3 the 84C		
6		_	cups of coffee, please? 78D	<b>15D</b> 1	V 87B	7	V 87A
7	The news isn't ve			2	V 88F	8	A 85B
8	I just want to go			3	The 86B	9	V 89C
9	It's only a short j		•	4	the89D	10	V 90 J
9	it's only a short j	ourney by	ruaiii. 19D	5	V 85D	11	V 86C
14E 1	wears 79B	10	any 77B	6	the 88E		
2	a piece of advice	11	meat 76A	15TC 1	a baantiful aitu 0/	ıc	
	77B	12	were 80A	15E 1	a beautiful city 84	C	
3	the football match	13	A noise 78 B	2	The weather 84B		
	82A	14	were81C	3	Easter 88C	٦.	
4	customs 80A	15	is 79C		Princes Street 900		001
5	are 8IB	16	light 78C	5	the Royal Scottisl		n 901
6	many76C	17	sports club 82B	6	the Highlands 90	D	
7	is 79E	18	means 80C	7	mountains 86B		
8	these glasses 81A	19	woods 78D	8	a thing 89C		
9	steelworks 80C	20	has 79B	9	the sea 87B		
T	est 15			10 11		D (Also	possible: sunshine)
			1.045		beach holidays 88		possible, sunsiline)
15A 1	a 83B	9	the 84B		-		
2	the84C	10	the 83B	T	est 16		
3	the88B	11	a 89B	<b>16A</b> 1	b) 97B	4	a) 95C
4	The 83B	12	a 83B	2	b) 93A	5	b) 97C
5	the90E	13	one 85B	3	a) 92D	6	c) 94A
6	a 85C	14	the 83B	3	u) 12D	U	0) 7711
7	The83B	15	The 83B				
8	the 83B						

8 the 83B

	either 97C	5	Some 96A	7 everyone/ 10 each 10 IB
2	Someone 94B	6	People's 93A	everybody 103C 11 them 98B
3	these 91A	7	that 9IB	8 it 99B 12 him 98B
4	a few 95C	8	Polly's 92E	9 there 99A
<b>16C</b> 1	a 95C	6	None 96D	17E 1 There's/There is a train leaving in ten minutes. 99C
2	mine92A	7	all 96B	2 I think someone is/someone's coming up the stairs.
3	of92E	8	lot95A	103C
4	many95B	9	whole 97B	3 Let's meet at eight o'clock, shall we? 100E
5	anyone 94B			4 We haven't got a camcorder, but we'd like one. 1020
ICD 1	Tl -4			5 Let's do something different/something else today.
16D 1	That was a very good		•	103D
2	You've got a lot of bo I don't know the tim		•	6 They are/They're going to build a new motorway
4	Nigel has hurt his les		-	through here. 98C
	-	-		7 I'm afraid I haven't done anything all day. 103B
5	` '		nouse were cold. 96B	8 Everyone enjoyed themselves at the barbecue. 100B,
6	Wear anything - it d Each of the four doo			100D
7				9 If you're buying'a loaf, get a nice fresh one. 102B
8	I live my life, and my			10 I've looked everywhere for my credit card. 103A
9			Both of the socks have	11 The two friends still see each other/see one another
10	got holes in them. 97		da magazina 02C	occasionally. 101B
	Here's a copy of this This sweater is losing		-	T
		-	ere's none in here. 96D	Test 18
12	* * *			<b>18A</b> 1 freely 109C
<b>16E</b> 1	I've lived here most of	f my	ife. 96B	2 The young man 106C
2	Every hotel was full.			3 hungry 104B
3			s bigger than ours. 92A	4 thoughtfully 108C
4	I've forgotten the na			5 right 109B
5	We have had/We've	had li	ttle warning of the	6 fascinating 107B
	changes. 95C			7 similar 104C
6	So many people have			8 well 109D
7	I met an old boyfrier			9 the disabled 106B
8	Neither of the chairs			10 confused 107B
9	My holiday starts in	ten d	ays' time. 93C	11 scientifically 108B
Т	est 17			12 frightened 104C
17A 1	himself 100C	7	It 99B	<b>18</b> B 1 This is a nice place. 104B
	They98B	8	They 98C	2 I can't find the large biscuit tin. 105B
2	We 98B	9	ourselves 98D	3 Tessa behaved in a silly way. 109A
4	them98B	10	her 98B	4 Your coffee is getting cold. 104B
			me98B	5 They live in a lovely old stone house. 105C
5 6	us98B themselves 100D	11	шеявь	6 This hospital is for the mentally ill. 106B
U	themserves 100D			19C1
<b>17B</b> 1	yourself 100C	6	ones 102B	18C 1 expensive 104B 5 amusing 107B 2 nice 104B 6 elderly 109A
2	it 99B	7	there 99A	•
3	some 102C	8	each other's 101B	3 surprised 107B 7 friendly 109A
4	us 100C	9	else 103D	4 carefully 108A 8 free 109C
5	Me 98B			18D1 The drink tasted strange. 108C
<b>17C</b> 1	one 102C	5	It 99B	2 Obviously, the sick need to be looked after. 106A
2	everyone/everybody	6	something 103A	3 The dog was asleep. 104C
2	103A	7	one 102C	4 The young woman spoke politely. 108A
2	herself 100C	8	You 98C	5 The train arrived late. 109C
3	one 102B	8		6 The film ends dramatically. 108B
1	OHE TUZD	9	ourselves 101A	7 Polly shouted angrily. 108B
4		4	it 99B	8 Billiards is an indoor game. 104C
4 1 <b>7D</b> 1	one 102C	4		
	one 102C himself 100D	5	her 98B	9 The clown was amusing. 107B
1 <b>7D</b> 1				

18E I I tasted the soup carefully. 108C Test 20 2 V 105C 20A 1 I quite like old cowboy films. 115C 3 Are the children asleep? 104C Have you finished this magazine yet? 114B 4 It's a school for the deaf/for deaf people. 106C This coat is too big. 117B 5 It's a nice new leather jacket. 105C 4 Have the children already had their tea?/Have the 6 The rich are/Rich people are very lucky. 106A children had their tea already? 114C 7 V 109D You certainly don't look ill. 113G He used a thick green paper towel. 105C We don't go out much. 115D V 106A I think everyone works fairly hard. 115B 10 The course I started was boring./I was bored with 8 I still don't know the date of the meeting. 114C the course I started. 107B 9 The others are just getting ready. 113B 11 I often talk to the two old people/men/women next 10 I have to go to work on Saturdays./On Saturdays I door. 106C have to go to work. 113H 12 The smoke rose high into the air. 109C 20B 1 This game is rather silly. 115B 13 V 104B 2 I've already paid the bill./I've paid the bill already. 14 We felt disappointed when we lost. 107B 15 Everyone seemed very nervous. 108C 3 The alarm isn't loud enough. 117B 16 Tessa drives too fast. 109B 17 V 107B Jonathan passed the test easily./Jonathan easily passed the test. 113C Test 19 5 The children play cards a lot. 115C 19A 1 more intelligent HOB They didn't sell enough tickets. 117B You ask too many questions. 117B 2 cleaner HOB I'm not a member of the club any more. 114D 3 thinner HOC It's warm enough to sit outside. 117C 4 more carefully 110D 5 worse 11OE **20C** 1 yet 114B 6 later HOC 2 still 114C longer 110D 7 3 rather 116C 8 more useful 11 OB 4 enough 117B 9 sooner HOD 5 many 117B 10 busier HOC toll7C 11 more annoyed HOB 7 any 114D 12 more nervous HOB noll4D bit 115A farthest/furthest 110E 19B 1 funniest HOC 6 most helpful 11 OB 10 soon 113E 2 most horrible HOB 7 20DI I didn't sleep very well last night./Last night I didn't

3	most recent HOB	8	most modern HO
4	largest HOC	9	earliest HOD
5	most boring 11 OB	10	saddest HOC
<b>19C</b> 1	V 111D	6	V 111B
2	the 11 IB	7	mostllOA
3	V111C	8	V 111E
4	all2B	9	of 111C
5	soll2D	10	more 112C
<b>19D</b> 1	nicer 111B	5	in 111C
2	as 111D	6	bit 112B
3	least 112A	7	as 111D
4	than me 111E	8	the easier 112D

- 19E 1 is bigger than the living-room 11 IB
  - 2 fitter than I am 11OC, 111B
  - 3 is as big as 111D
  - just get higher and higher 112C
  - 5 is more expensive than 110A, 111B
  - 6 is the least difficult 112A
  - more and more excited 112C
  - 8 most romantic story I've ever 111C

- sleep very well. 113E
  - I think I need to rest a little. 115C
  - I don't work for the company any longer. 114D
  - The article is fairly interesting. 115A
  - Tessa locked the door carefully./Tessa carefully locked the door. 113C
  - You aren't tall enough to play basketball. 117B
  - We went to town yesterday./Yesterday we went to town. 113H
  - I like this music very much./I very much like this music. 115D
- **20E** 1 We go to the cinema a lot. 115C
  - Adrian always wears jeans. 113F
  - 3 These shoes aren't big enough. 117A
  - I no longer live in Birmingham. 114D
  - Polly spent too much money in the sales. 117B

#### Test 21

- **2lA** 1 The doctor has been working for twelve hours.
  - 2 We had a great time at the disco. 119B
  - 3 The woman was getting out of the car. 118A
  - 4 The players had numbers on their shirts. 119A
  - 5 The new manager takes over in two weeks' time. 120C
  - 6 Anna drove to the garage to get some petrol. 118B
  - 7 We were sitting at the back of the room. 119C
- 21B 1 on 119C 6 on 119A 2 ago 121C 7 in 120C 3 on 120A 8 across 118 A 4 at 120A/by 122B 9 during 122A/in 5 atl19C 10 until/till 122B 2IC 1 the 120B 5 on 120A
- 2IC 1 the 120B
   5 on 120A

   2 V118A
   6 V 119C

   3 V 122C
   7 V 122B
- 4 thell8A 2ID 1 on 119C 10 between 124C 2 for 123A 11 like 122C 3 by 122B 12 with 125B 4 at 123B 13 ago 121C 5 since 121B 14 for 124D 6 with 124B 15 until 122B 7 above 118A 16 for 125A 8 ofl24C 17 in 120A
- 2IE 1 Scott lives in Washington. 119A

9 while 122A

- 2 I'm travelling to Italy on business. 120A
- 3 I'm busy on Friday morning. 120A
- 4 They've/They have been playing (for) an hour.

18 to 125D

- 5 Jonathan is very good at tennis. 125C
- 6 I'm rather busy at the moment. 120A
- 7 We went/travelled to Budapest by air. 123C
- 8 Nigel goes past the newsagent's every day. 118A
- 9 The company is planning (to make) a reduction in the workforce. 124C
- 10 We got to our guest house in time for a meal. 120B

## Test 22

- 22A 1 I must pay for my ticket. 126B
  - 2 I'm going to put on that expensive grey coat I bought. 128C
  - 3 She's invited us to lunch. 127B
  - 4 He's looking at them. 126A
  - 5 The police prevented me from leaving. 127B
  - 6 I'm going to turn it off. 128C
- 22B 1
   about 126C
   5
   up 130B

   2
   out BOB
   6
   at 126B

   3
   on 128B
   7
   through 129C

   4
   off128A
   8
   up for 131B

- 22C 1 You've left one out. 128B
  - 2 I've never heard of it. 126C
  - 3 They ran away from it. 131A
  - 4 You must congratulate her on her success. 127B
  - 5 She's going to set up her own company. 129B
  - 6 He reminds me of an old schoool friend of mine. 127C
  - 7 He wants to put it forward at the meeting. 129C

#### 22DI as 127B

- 2 about/of 127C
- 3 look/watch 13 IB
- 4 in 126B
- 5 from 127A
- 6 on 127B
- 7 at 127B
- 8 out 129A (Also possible: over)
- 9 out 125A
- 10 forward 13IB
- 11 woke 129A
- 12 up 129A
- 22E 1 You're too young to give up working. 129B
  - 2 This bag belongs to Janet. 126A
  - 3 Everyone carried on working as usual. 130B
  - 4 They discussed the plan. 126C
  - 5 I've/1 have run out of money. 13 IB
  - 6 I explained the problem to the police./I explained to the police what the problem was. 127C
  - 7 I wouldn't put up with such terrible conditions. 131B
  - 8 They'll have to put off the game/put the game off. 128B

## Test 23

23A 1	me 135D	5	V 133B
2	did 135C	6	me 132C
3	V 136B	7	did 134B
4	that 135B	8	for 136A
23B 1	12.4D	-	told 132C
23B 1	was 134B	5	1010 132C
236 1	previous 133B	6	that 133B
2	previous 133B	6	that 133B

- **23**C 1 they 133B
  - 2 that/if/whether 132B
  - 3 she 133B
  - 4 to 132A
  - 5 didn't 134B
  - 6 had 134B
  - 7 wouldn't/didn't 134C
  - 8 if/whether 135B
  - 9 wanted/needed/had 135A
  - 10 next/following/same 134B

- **23D** I she said she felt quite excited. 133B, 134B
  - 2 he said he couldn't remember the code word. 133B, 134C
  - 3 he said he wouldn't be at the next meeting. 133B, 134C
  - 4 they said they had/they'd got a problem. 133B, 134B
  - 5 she said she'd been swimming/she had been swimming. 133B, 134B
  - 6 they said they would like to be in the show. 133B,
  - 7 he said he didn't need any help. 133B, 134B
  - 8 she said her sister was coming to see her. ] 33B, 134B
- **23E** 1 A policeman told Christopher to stop shouting. 136A
  - 2 Tessa admitted eating all the cake/having eaten all the cake the day before/the previous day. 133B, 136B
  - 3 Adrian apologized for being rude/for having been rude. 136B
  - 4 Simon invited Susan to join him for lunch. 133B, 136B
  - 5 Martin asked Nancy if/whether someone rang her/someone had rung her an hour before. 133B, 135B
  - 6 Peter insisted on leaving. 136B

#### Test 24

- 24A 1 for 139A
  - 2 entering 143A
  - 3 which 136B
  - 4 only 143B
  - 5 who 142A
  - 6 whom 139C7 that you took 138A
  - 8 where 142C
  - 9 which 142D
  - 10 whose 140A
- 24B 1 This isn't the train on which I normally travel.
  - This isn't the train (that/which) I normally travel on. 139B
  - 2 The letter that I opened wasn't for me. 137B
  - 3 The reason (why/that) I didn't know was that no one had told me. 142C
  - 4 What we should do is ring the police. HOB
  - 5 I didn't know the name of the man who/that helped me. 138B
  - 6 Rupert knows the family whose house is for sale.
  - 7 Einstein, who failed his university entrance exam, discovered relativity. 141B
  - 8 The person we talked to was very friendly./138B The people we talked to were very friendly.
  - 9 It's the President who makes the important decisions. 14OC

- 10 I can't find my diary, which is a real nuisance. 142D
- 11 Outside the door was a pair of boots covered in mud. 143A
- 12 Lake Superior, which lies on the US-Canadian border, is the largest lake in North America. 142A
- **24C** 1 who 133B
  - (Also possible: that)
  - 2 that/which 133B
  - 3 that/which 135A
  - 4 it 136C
  - 5 that/which 133B
  - 6 what 136B
  - 7 whose 136A
  - 8 which 138D
  - 9 what 136B
  - 10 who 138A
- 24DI that/which crashed was 137B/, which crashed, was
  - 2 (when/that) Martin rang (,) Tessa was 142C
  - 3 new offices are 133A/offices, which are new, are 142A
  - 4 stolen from a car have been 143A / that/which were stolen from a car have been 137B
  - 5 (that/which) you were looking at is 139A-B
  - 6 Theatre, which dates from 1896, is 142A
  - 7 whose dog was run over was 140A
  - 8 the first (person) to solve 143B/the first (person) who solved 137B
  - 9 selling newspapers was standing 143A / who was selling newspapers was standing 137B
  - 10 (that/which) Judy gave was 138A-B/, which Judy gave, was 142A
  - 11 where I used to live is 142C/(that/which) I used to live in 139A-B/in which 1 used to live 139C

## Test 25

- 25A 1 it would have opened 146B
  - 2 disappear 144B
  - 3 travelled 145B
  - 4 would be 147B
  - 5 they don't build 144B
  - 6 would suffer 145B
  - 7 I'll go 144B/I'm going to go 147B
  - 8 I'd/I had known 146B
  - 9 I'd/I would have moved 146B
  - 10 they'd/they had done 147B
  - 11 there won't be/there might not be 144B
- **25B** 1 had been 146B
  - 2 in case 148D
  - 3 knew 149C
  - 4 only 149A5 when 148B
  - 6 unless 148C

- **25**C I If you talk about football, I'm going to be very bored. 147B
  - 2 If the baby had cried, we wouldn't have had a good sleep. 146B
  - 3 If you want a chat, just give me a ring. 147B
  - 4 If Nigel had satellite TV, he could watch/would be able to watch the game. 145B
  - 5 If you go away, I'll miss you. 144B
  - 6 If I was/were rich, I'd/1 would have given up working long ago. 146D
  - 7 If we'd/we had bought that picture five years ago, it would be quite valuable now. 146D
  - 8 If you throw a stone into water, it sinks, OR If you throw a stone into water, it'll/it will sink. 144D

## **25D** 1 If it rains, I'll stay here. 144B

- 2 Can you tell me when it starts? 148B
- 3 I wouldn't need to repeat things all the time if you listened. 145B
- 4 If air gets warmer, it rises. 144D
- 5 I'd better get another one made in case I lose it. 148D
- 6 I wish we'd/we had left home earlier. 149D
- 7 If it doesn't arrive today, we'll have to complain. 144B
- 8 I wish someone would turn it down. 149B
- 9 Unless we act quickly, it'll be too late. 148C
- 10 But he wouldn't have been angry if you hadn't damaged his stereo. 146B



# **NEW EDITION**

# **Oxford Practice Grammar**

# with answers

Here is a reference and practice book for all students at intermediate and upper-intermediate level, whether working with a teacher or alone. *Oxford Practice Grammar* gives clear explanations of English grammar with exercises on the facing page which provide practice in form and use. Lots of example sentences, stories and illustrated conversations show how structures are used.

This new, extensively revised edition provides even more help for students wanting to improve their use of English grammar.

# More explanation

There are now 153 units, covering a wider range of grammar topics.

## New exercises

New types of exercise place even more emphasis on practising forms in context.

## Twenty-five tests

A diagnostic test at the beginning helps students decide what to study. They can check their progress using the 25 other tests throughout the book.

# More illustrated dialogues and texts

Units begin with a picture, conversation or story to show the grammar in use.

# Ideal for FCE preparation

All the grammar needed for the First Certificate exam is covered.

There are two editions of *Oxford Practice Grammar*: one with answers and one without.



Oxford University Press

17	Our friendsmeet us at the airport tonight.  a) are b) are going to c) go to d) will be to
18	a party next Saturday. We've sent out the invitations. a) We had b) We have c) We'll have d) We're having
19	I'll tell Anna all the news whenher. a) I'll see b) I'm going to see c) I see d) I shall see
20	At this time tomorrow
21	Where's Robert? a shower?  a) Does he have b) Has he c) Has he got d) Is he having
22	Ilike that coat. It's really nice. a) am b) do c) very d) yes
Qı	uestions, negatives and answers
23	What's the weather like in Canada? How often there?  a) does it snow b) does it snows c) snow it d) snows it
24	Which team the game?  a) did it win b) did they win c) won d) won it
25	What did you leave the meeting early? $\sim$ I didn't feel very well. a) away b) because c) for d) like
26	Unfortunately the driver the red light. a) didn't saw b) didn't see c) no saw d) saw not
27	You haven't eaten your pudding it?  a) Are you no want b) Do you no want c) Don't want you d) Don't you want
	a) Are you no want b) Do you no want e) Don't want you a) Don't you want
	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,?  a) is it b) isn't it c) was it d) wasn't it
28	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,?
28 29	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,?  a) is it b) isn't it c) was it d) wasn't it  Are we going the right way? ~ I think
28 29 Mc	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,?  a) is it b) isn't it c) was it d) wasn't it  Are we going the right way? ~ I think  a) indeed b) it c) so d) yes
28 29 Mc 30 31	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,
28 29 Mc 30 31 32	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,
28 29 Mc 30 31 32	I really enjoyed the disco. It was great,

•	
Ac	djectives and adverbs
68	The house wasbuilding.
	a) a nice old stone b) a nice stone old c) a stone old nice d) an old nice stone
69	The government is doing nothing to help
70	The young man seems verya) sensible b) sensiblely c) sensibley d) sensibly
71	Imissed the bus. I was only just in time to catch it. a) mostly b) near c) nearest d) nearly
72	This detailed map is the atlas.  a) more useful as b) more useful than c) usefuller as d) usefuller than
73	This place getscrowded with tourists every summer. a) always more b) crowded and more c) from more to more d) more and more
74	Yes, I have got the report it. a) I just am reading b) I'm just reading c) I'm reading just d) Just I'm reading
75	I've read this paragraph three times, and I understand it. a) can't still b) can't yet c) still can't d) yet can't
76	We're really sorry. We regret what happened
Pr	epositions
77	The village is
78	You can see the details the computer screen. a) at b) by c) in d) on
79	I've got a meetingThursday afternoon. a) at b) in c) on d) to
80	We've lived in this flat five years.  a) ago b) already c) for d) since
81	This car is, if you're interested in buying it. a) for sale b) in sale c) at sale d) to sell

# Verbs with prepositions and adverbs

a) about b) for c) on d) with

- 83 I prefer dogs ...... cats. I hate cats. a) from b) over c) than d) to
- 84 My father used the money he won to set ...... his own company. a) forward b) on c) out d) up

82 Polly wants to cycle round the world. She's really keen ...... the idea.

85 Don't go too fast. I can't keep ......you.
a) on to b) on with c) up to d) up with

R	eported speech
86	Someonethe tickets are free. a) said me b) said me that c) told me d) told to me
87	Last week Justin said 'I'll do it tomorrow.' He said he would do it
88	I don't know why Nancy didn't go to the meeting. She said she definitely going.  a) be b) is c) was d) would
89	The librarian asked usso much noise. a) don't make b) not make c) not making d) not to make
R	elative clauses
90	What's the name of the man
91	What was that notice?  a) at that you were looking b) you were looking at c) you were looking at it d) which you were looking
92	Susan is the woman
93	York,last year, is a nice old city.  a) I visited b) that I visited c) which I visited d) whom I visited
94	The accident was seen by some people
С	onditionals and wish
95	Ifmy passport, I'll be in trouble. a) I lose b) I'll lose c) I lost d) I would lose
96	I haven't got a ticket. Ifone, I could get in. a) I'd have b) I had c) I have d) I've got
97	If the bus to the airport hadn't been so late, we the plane.  a) caught b) had caught c) would catch d) would have caught
98	If only peoplekeep sending me bills! a) don't b) shouldn't c) weren't d) wouldn't
Lir	nking words
99	I just had to take the dog out of the awful weather.  a) although b) despite c) even though d) in spite
100	Anna put the electric fire on warm.

a) for getting b) in order get c) so she gets d) to get